

# ATHENAZE

AN INTRODUCTION TO ANCIENT GREEK  
BOOK I

MAURICE BALME *and*  
GILBERT LAWALL

Second Edition



# **ATHENAZE**

## **An Introduction to Ancient Greek**

**Second Edition**

**Book I**

**Maurice Balme**

**and**

**Gilbert Lawall**

**with drawings by Catherine Balme**

**New York | Oxford**  
**OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS**  
**2003**

Oxford University Press

Oxford New York

Auckland Bangkok Buenos Aires Cape Town Chennai  
Dar es Salaam Delhi Hong Kong Istanbul Karachi Kolkata  
Kuala Lumpur Madrid Melbourne Mexico City Mumbai  
Nairobi São Paulo Shanghai Taipei Tokyo Toronto

Copyright © 2003 by Oxford University Press, Inc.

Published by Oxford University Press, Inc.

198 Madison Avenue, New York, New York, 10016

<http://www.oup-usa.org>

Oxford is a registered trademark of Oxford University Press

All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced,  
stored in a retrieval system, or transmitted, in any form or by any means,  
electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording, or otherwise,  
without the prior permission of Oxford University Press.

#### Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Balme, M. G.

Athenaze : an introduction to ancient Greek, Book I / Maurice Balme and Gilbert Lawall  
; with drawings by Catherine Balme.-- 2nd ed.

p. cm.

Includes index.

ISBN 0-19-514956-4

1. Greek language--Grammar. 2. Greek language--Readers. I. Lawall, Gilbert. II. Title.

PA258.B325 2003

488.2'421--dc21

2002045015

Printing number: 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2

Printed in the United States of America  
on acid-free paper



# PREFACE

---

This second edition of *Athenaze* was produced on the basis of suggestions made by anonymous reviewers contacted by Oxford University Press and with inspiration from L. Miraglia and T. F. Bórri's Italian edition of *Athenaze*. We are grateful to these teachers and professors and also to the following, who read versions of the revised edition at various stages, offered innumerable helpful suggestions, and caught many errors, typographical and other: Elizabeth Baer of the Berkshire Country Day School, Jessica Mix Barrington of the Northfield Mount Hermon School, James Johnson of Austin College, Cynthia King of Wright State University, Rosemary Laycock of Dalhousie University, Mark Riley of California State University at Sacramento, Kolbeinn Sæmundsson of the Menntaskólinn í Reykjavík, and Rex Wallace of the University of Massachusetts at Amherst. Thanks also go to Latin teachers in Sunday afternoon Greek classes who used preliminary versions of the revised chapters and made many useful observations.

The new features of the revised textbooks include the following:

- Short passages from Classical and New Testament Greek in virtually every chapter
- A strand titled Greek Wisdom, with sayings of the seven wise men of Archaic Greece at various points throughout Book I and fragments of Heraclitus at various points throughout Chapters 18–28 in Book II (Greek Wisdom in Chapter 29 contains material on Socrates)
- Some rearrangement of the sequence in which grammar is introduced, so that the future tense and the passive voice are now introduced in Book I and the first three principal parts of verbs are now listed from Chapter 10, with full sets of principal parts being given in Book II, as before
- Fuller grammatical and linguistic explanations throughout, including material on accents provided along the way, as needed for completing exercises accurately
- New, descriptive terminology used for the tenses of verbs
- Many new exercises, including periodic requests for students to photocopy blank Verb Charts at the ends of Books I and II and to fill in forms of requested verbs, adding new forms as they are learned
- New insertions in Book I titled PRACTICE, requesting that students write out sets of nouns or sets of nouns and matching adjectives
- Presentation of most of the new grammar by Chapter 28 and consolidation of the extracts from Thucydides and Aristophanes' *Acharnians* in the last two chapters, 29 and 30

The purposes of the course remain as they were in the first edition, as they are spelled out in the Introduction. We hope that inclusion of Classical and New Testament passages will attract more students to the study of Greek and that this revised edition will help expand interest in the study of Greek in North America.

—Maurice Balme and Gilbert Lawall



# CONTENTS

---

## INTRODUCTION ix

### Readings

#### 1 Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΙΑΙΣ (α) 2

The Athenian Farmer 6  
Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΙΑΙΣ (β) 8  
Ο ΚΑΗΡΟΣ 10  
Classical Greek: Heraclitus 11  
New Testament Greek:  
Title of the Gospel of Luke 11

#### 2 Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (α) 12

Slavery 15  
Greek Wisdom:  
Cleobulus of Lindos 16  
Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (β) 18

Ο ΔΟΥΛΟΣ 22  
Classical Greek: Callimachus 23  
New Testament Greek: Luke 3.22 23

#### 3 Ο ΑΠΟΤΟΣ (α) 24

The Deme and the Polis 28  
Ο ΑΠΟΤΟΣ (β) 30

ΟΙ ΒΟΕΣ 34  
Classical Greek: Menander 35  
New Testament Greek: Luke 6.46 35

### Grammar

1. Verb Forms: Stems and Endings 4
2. Nouns: Genders, Stems, Endings, Cases, and Agreement 4
3. Labeling Functions of Words in Sentences 6
4. Use of the Definite Article 6
5. Accents 9
1. Verb Forms: Indicative Mood; 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Persons Singular 13
2. Proclitics 14
3. The Imperative 15
4. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular, All Cases 20
5. Uses of the Cases 20
6. Persistent Accent of Nouns and Adjectives 20
7. Recessive Accent of Verbs 21
1. Verb Forms: 3rd Person Plural, Imperatives, and Infinitives 26
2. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular and Plural, All Cases 31
3. Accent Shifting 32

- 
- 4 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ (α) 36
- Women 43  
Greek Wisdom: Pittacus of Mitylene 45  
ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ (β) 46
- ΑΙ ΓΥΝΑΙΚΕΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΑΝΔΡΑΣ  
ΠΕΙΘΟΥΣΙΝ 51  
Classical Greek: Callimachus 53  
New Testament Greek: Luke 6.45 53
- 5 Ο ΛΥΚΟΣ (α) 54
- Gods and Men 59  
Greek Wisdom: Chilon of Sparta 61  
Ο ΛΥΚΟΣ (β) 62
- Ο ΑΡΙΟΣ ΤΑ ΠΡΟΒΑΤΑ ΣΩΖΕΙ 69  
Greek Wisdom: The Seven Wise Men 70  
Classical Greek: Anacreon 71  
New Testament Greek: Luke 4.22 and 24 71
- 6 Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (α) 72
- Myth 81  
Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (β) 84
1. Verb Forms: All Persons, Singular and Plural 38
  2. Declensions of Nouns and Adjectives 40
  3. Feminine Nouns and Adjectives of the 1st Declension 40
  4. Masculine Nouns of the 1st Declension 47
  5. Feminine Nouns of the 2nd Declension 48
  6. 1st and 2nd Declension Adjectives 48
  7. Formation of Adverbs 50
  8. The Definite Article as Case Indicator 50
  1. Contract Verbs in -α- 56
  2. Recessive Accent of Finite Verbs 56
  3. Article at the Beginning of a Clause 58
  4. Elision 58
  5. Agreement of Subject and Verb 64
  6. Personal Pronouns 64
  7. Attributive and Predicate Position 66
  8. Possessives 66
  9. The Adjective αὐτός, -ή, -ό 68
  1. Verb Forms: πλέω 74
  2. Verbs: Voice 75
  3. Verb Forms: Middle Voice 76
  4. Deponent Verbs 78
  5. Middle Voice: Meaning 86
  6. Some Uses of the Dative Case 88
  7. Prepositions 89



Ο ΘΗΣΕΥΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΡΙΑΔΗΝΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΛΕΙΠΕΙ 91 Classical Greek: Marriage 93 New Testament Greek: Luke 13.10–16 93	
7 Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (α) 94	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Substantive Use of Adjectives 96</li> <li>2. Nouns: Declensions 97</li> <li>3. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Velar and Dental Stems 97</li> <li>4. Reflexive Pronouns 100</li> <li>5. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Nasal Stems 106</li> <li>6. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Labial and Liquid Stems 107</li> <li>7. A 3rd Declension Adjective: <i>σώφρων, σῶφρον, of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled</i> 107</li> <li>8. The Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective 108</li> <li>9. The Indefinite Pronoun and Adjective 109</li> </ol>
Homer 102 Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (β) 104	
Ο ΤΟΥ ΘΗΣΕΩΣ ΠΑΤΗΡ ΑΠΟΘΝΗΣΚΕΙ 110 Classical Greek: Sophocles 111 Greek Wisdom: Thales of Miletus 111	
8 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (α) 112	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Middle Voice 114</li> <li>2. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Stems in -ρ- 124</li> <li>3. Two Important Irregular Nouns: <i>ἡ γυνή, τῆς γυναικός, woman; wife, and ἡ χεὶρ, τῆς χειρός, hand</i> 125</li> <li>4. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective <i>πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, all; every; whole</i> 126</li> <li>5. Numbers 128</li> <li>6. Expressions of Time When, Duration of Time, and Time within Which 128</li> </ol>
Athens: A Historical Outline 117 Classical Greek: Archilochus 121 New Testament Greek: Luke 5.20–21 121 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (β) 122	
Greek Wisdom: Periander of Corinth 127	
Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Ο ΑΙΟΛΟΣ 130	

Classical Greek: Sappho: The Deserted Lover:  
A Girl's Lament 131

9 Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (α) 132

The City of Athens 139

Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (β) 142

Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Η ΚΙΡΚΗ 149

Classical Greek: Simonides 151

New Testament Greek: Luke 6.31–33:

The Sermon on the Mount 151

REVIEW OF VERB FORMS 152

PREVIEW OF NEW VERB FORMS 154

10 Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (α) 156

Festivals 162

Classical Greek: Theognis 163

New Testament Greek: Luke 6.35–36:

The Sermon on the Mount 163

Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (β) 164

Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΕΤΑΙΡΟΥΣ

ΑΠΟΛΛΥΣΙΝ 171

Classical Greek: Menander 173

1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Active Voice 135
2. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in -ντ- 145
3. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in a Vowel: ἡ πόλις and τὸ ἄστυ 145
4. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in Diphthongs or Vowels: ὁ βασιλεὺς and the Irregular Nouns ἡ ναῦς and ὁ βοῦς 146
5. Uses of the Genitive Case 147
6. Some Uses of the Article 148
1. Verb Forms: Verbs with Sigmatic Futures 158
2. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs in -ίζω 159
3. Verb Forms: The Sigmatic Future of Contract Verbs 159
4. Verb Forms: Verbs with Dependent Futures 159
5. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems 166
6. The Irregular Verb εἶμι 168
7. Future Participle to Express Purpose 170
8. Impersonal Verbs 170
9. Review of Questions 171

## New Testament Greek: Luke 5.30–32 173

## 11 Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (α) 174

Greek Science and Medicine 183  
 Classical Greek: Theognis 185  
 New Testament Greek: Luke 6.20–21:  
 The Beatitudes 185  
 Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (β) 186

Ο ΔΗΜΟΚΡΑΤΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΑ  
 ΙΑΤΡΕΥΕΙ 192  
 New Testament Greek: Luke 6.27–29:  
 The Sermon on the Mount 193

## 12 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (α) 194

Trade and Travel 200  
 Classical Greek: Scolion:  
 The Four Best Things in Life 203  
 New Testament Greek: Luke 15.3–7:  
 The Parable of the Lost Sheep 203  
 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (β) 204

Ο ΚΩΛΑΙΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΤΑΡΤΗΣΣΟΝ  
 ΕΥΡΙΣΚΕΙ 210  
 Greek Wisdom: Bias of Priene 211

## 13 ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (α) 212

The Rise of Persia 218

1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Aorist 176
2. Verb Forms: The Thematic 2nd Aorist 177
3. Aspect 178
4. Thematic 2nd Aorist Active and Middle Participles 180
5. Verb Forms: Common Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists 180
6. Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists from Unrelated Stems 189
7. Accents on Thematic 2nd Aorist Active Imperatives 189
8. Augment 190
1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Sigmatic 1st Aorist 196
2. Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active and Middle Participles 199
3. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic 1st Aorist of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems 207
4. Irregular Sigmatic 1st Aorists 208
5. Verb Forms: Augment of Compound Verbs 209
1. Verb Forms: The Imperfect or Past Progressive Tense 213
2. Aspect 216

- 
- ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (β) 222
- Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΕΛΛΗΣΠΟΝΤΟΝ  
ΔΙΑΒΑΙΝΕΙ 228  
Greek Wisdom: Solon of Athens 230  
Classical Greek: Archilochus 231  
New Testament Greek: Luke 21.1–4:  
The Widow's Mite 231
- 14 Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ  
ΜΑΧΗ (α) 232
- The Rise of Athens 238  
Classical Greek: Archilochus 241  
New Testament Greek: Luke 10.25–29:  
The Good Samaritan 241  
Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ  
ΜΑΧΗ (β) 242
- ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑ ΥΠΕΡ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΩΝ  
ΣΤΕΝΑ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ 247  
Classical Greek: Theognis 249  
New Testament Greek: Luke 10.30–37:  
The Good Samaritan (concluded) 249
- 15 Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (α) 250
- Aeschylus's *Persae* 255  
New Testament Greek: Luke 2.1–14:  
The Birth of Jesus 257  
Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (β) 258
- ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑΣ ΑΘΗΝΑΣ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ 264
- 16 ΜΕΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ  
ΜΑΧΗΝ (α) 266
3. Relative Clauses 224  
4. 3rd Declension Nouns and Adjectives with Stems in -εσ- 226  
5. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective with 3rd Declension Stems in -υ- and -ε- 227
1. Comparison of Adjectives 234  
2. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives 235  
3. Comparison of Adverbs 236  
4. Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives 236
5. Demonstrative Adjectives 244  
6. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs 246
1. Athematic 2nd Aorists 252  
2. More 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems in -εσ- 254
3. Contract Verbs in -ο- 261  
4. Contract Nouns of the 2nd Declension 263  
5. More Numbers 263  
6. Uses of ὡς and Its Compounds 264
1. The Passive Voice 269



The Athenian Empire 271  
META THN EN THI ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ  
ΜΑΧΗΝ (β) 274

Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΣΙΑΝ  
ΑΝΑΧΩΡΕΙ 278

Classical Greek: Sappho: Love's Power 280

Classical Greek: Simonides 281

New Testament Greek: Luke 2.15–20:

The Birth of Jesus (concluded) 281

2. Verbs with Athematic Presents  
and Imperfects: δύνάμαι,  
κείμαι, and ἐπίσταμαι 276

VERB CHARTS 282

SYLLABLES AND ACCENTS 284

ENCLITICS AND PROCLITICS 285

FORMS 287

INDEX OF LANGUAGE AND GRAMMAR 312

GREEK TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY 323

ENGLISH TO GREEK VOCABULARY 341

GENERAL INDEX 350

LIST OF MAPS 356

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS 356

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS 357



# INTRODUCTION

---

## Part I: About This Course

The aim of *Athenaze* is to teach you to read ancient Greek as quickly, thoroughly, and enjoyably as possible, and to do so within the context of ancient Greek culture. This means within the context of the daily life of the ancient Greeks as it was shaped and given meaning by historical developments, political events, and the life of the mind as revealed in mythology, religion, philosophy, literature, and art. The stories that you will read in Greek provide the basic cultural context within which you will learn the Greek language, and most of the chapters contain essays in English with illustrations drawn from ancient works of art and with background information to deepen your understanding of some aspects of the history and culture of the Greeks.

The course begins with the story of an Athenian farmer named Dicaeopolis and his family; they live in a village or deme called Cholleidae, located north of Athens. The events are fictitious, but they are set in a definite historical context—autumn 432 B.C. to spring 431. The Athenian democracy, led by Pericles, is at its height; the Athenians rule the seas and control an empire, but their power has aroused the fears and jealousy of Sparta and her allies in the Peloponnesus, especially Corinth. By spring 431, Athens and the Peloponnesian League are engaged in a war, which leads twenty-seven years later to the defeat and downfall of Athens.

The story begins with life in the country, but with Chapter 6 a subplot of mythical narrative begins with the story of Theseus and the Minotaur. This mythological subplot continues in Chapter 7 with the story of Odysseus and the Cyclops and runs through Chapter 10 with further tales from the *Odyssey* briefly told at the end of each chapter. The main plot continues in Chapter 8 as the family visits Athens for a festival, and the tempo quickens.

A terrible misfortune that strikes the family in Athens in Chapter 10 precipitates a plot that is interwoven with narratives of the great battles of the Persian Wars, based on the accounts of the historian Herodotus. As the main plot reaches its resolution in Chapters 18–20 of Book II, the family becomes embroiled in the tensions between Athens and Corinth that triggered the Peloponnesian War, and this sets the stage for the remaining chapters.

The experiences of the family of Dicaeopolis at the beginning of the Peloponnesian War in Chapters 21–23 are based on the accounts of the war written by the historian Thucydides. When the son Philip is left behind in Athens to further his education, we hear something of Plato's views on education (Chapter 24) and then read stories from a book of Herodotus's histories that Philip's teacher gives to him (Chapters 25–28). These are some of the most famous tales from Herodotus, including those dealing with Solon the Athenian and his encounter with Croesus, king of Lydia. In Chapter 28 you will

read the account by the lyric poet Bacchylides of Croesus's miraculous rescue from the funeral pyre. Chapter 29 returns us to the Peloponnesian War with Thucydides's descriptions of naval battles and the brilliant victories of the Athenian general Phormio. The course concludes with extracts from Aristophanes showing us Dicaeopolis the peacemaker. From there you will be ready to go on to read any Greek author of your choice with considerable confidence in your ability to comprehend what the ancient Greeks had to say.

The Greek in much of the main story line has been made up to serve the instructional purposes of this book. Most of the subplots, however, are based on the ancient Greek writings of Homer, Herodotus, and Thucydides. They move steadily closer to the Greek of the authors themselves. The extracts from Bacchylides and Aristophanes are unaltered except for cuts.

The readings in the early chapters are simple in content and grammatical structure. They are so constructed that with knowledge of the vocabulary that is given before the reading passage and with help from the glosses that are given beneath each paragraph, you can read and understand the Greek before studying the formal elements of the grammar. After you have read the story out loud, understood and translated it, and discovered the new elements of its grammar for yourself, you will study formal presentations of the grammar that usually incorporate examples from the reading passage. There are then exercises of various sorts to help you consolidate your understanding of the grammar and give you skill in manipulating the new forms and structures of the language as you learn them.

Grammar is introduced in small doses to start with and should be reviewed constantly. We also recommend frequent rereading of the stories themselves—preferably out loud—as the best way to reinforce your fluency of pronunciation, your knowledge of the grammar, and your skill in reading new Greek at sight—which is the main goal of any course in Greek.

At the beginning of each section of the narrative is a picture with a caption in Greek. From the picture you should be able to deduce the meaning of the Greek caption. Pay particular attention to these captions, since each has been carefully written to include and reinforce a basic grammatical feature or features of the Greek language that you will be learning in that particular chapter. It may help even to memorize the captions!

The vocabulary given in the lists before the reading passages is meant to be learned thoroughly, both from Greek to English and from English to Greek. Learning the vocabulary will be easier if the words are always studied aloud, combining the advantages of sight *and* sound. The words given in glosses beneath the paragraphs in the readings are not meant to be mastered actively, but you should be able to recognize the meaning of these words when you see them again in context. Fluency of reading depends on acquiring a large, working vocabulary as soon as possible.

Important words are continually reintroduced in the readings in this course to help you learn them. Your skill in recognizing the meaning of Greek words that you have not met will be greatly enhanced by attention to some basic principles of word building. We have therefore laid out some of



these basic principles and incorporated a coherent set of word building exercises in this course.

One of the widely recognized goals of classical language study is attainment of a better understanding of English. With regard to the study of Greek, this means largely a knowledge of Greek roots, prefixes, and suffixes that appear in English words. The influence of Greek on English has been especially notable in scientific and medical terminology, but it is also evident in the language of politics, philosophy, literature, and the arts. We have accordingly incorporated word study sections in the chapters of this course, highlighting the influence of Greek on English vocabulary and providing practice in deciphering the meaning of English words derived from Greek elements.

Finally, at the end of almost every chapter and sometimes in the middle of a chapter you will find passages from a wide variety of Classical Greek authors and from the gospels of Luke and John in the New Testament. These have been carefully chosen and are accompanied by glosses that will allow you to read the passages at the points in the course where they are located. We have also included sayings of the seven wise men of Archaic Greece at various points throughout Book I. You will thus be reading authentic Greek from the very beginning of the course and gaining access to the wisdom and the style of writing and thinking of the ancient Greeks and of the writers of the gospels. This is the icing on the cake, and we hope that you will enjoy it thoroughly and learn much from it.



Myrrhine and her daughter Melissa,  
two characters from our story, and their dog Argus

## Part II: The Greek Alphabet

Many of the letters of the Greek alphabet will already be familiar to you.

<i>Letter</i>		<i>Name</i>	<i>Translit- eration</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
A	α	ἄλφα	alpha	α (short alpha), as the sound in <i>top</i> ; ᾱ (long alpha), as the sound in <i>top</i> , but held longer
B	β	βῆτα	bēta	= b
Γ	γ	γάμμα	gamma	= g (but before γ, κ, ξ, or χ = the sound in <i>sing</i> )
Δ	δ	δέλτα	delta	= d
E	ε	ἐ ψιλόν	epsilon	as the sound in <i>get</i>
Z	ζ	ζῆτα	zēta	= σ + δ = sd as in <i>wisdom</i>
H	η	ῆτα	ēta	as the sound in <i>bed</i> , but held longer
Θ	θ	θῆτα	thēta	= aspirated t as in <i>top</i>
I	ι	ἰῶτα	iōta	ι (short iota), as the sound in <i>it</i> ; ῖ (long iota), as the sound in <i>keen</i>
K	κ	κάππα	kappa	= the sound of k (without aspiration), as in <i>sack</i>
Λ	λ	λάμβδα	lambda	= l
M	μ	μῦ	mū	= m
N	ν	νῦ	nū	= n
Ξ	ξ	ξῖ	xī	= κ + σ = the sound of x in <i>axe</i>
O	ο	ὀ μικρόν	omīcron	as the sound in <i>boat</i> or <i>goat</i>
Π	π	πί	pī	= p (without aspiration), as in <i>sap</i>
P	ρ	ῥῶ	rhō	= a trilled r
Σ	σ, ς	σίγμα	sigma	= s as in <i>sing</i> , but = z before β, γ, δ, and μ (written ς when last letter of a word)
T	τ	ταῦ	tau	= t (without aspiration), as in <i>sat</i>
Υ	υ	Ϝ ψιλόν	upsilon	υ (short upsilon), as the sound in French <i>tu</i> ; ῥ (long upsilon), as the sound in French <i>tu</i> , but held longer
Φ	φ	φῖ	phī	= aspirated p as in <i>pot</i>
X	χ	χῖ	chī	= aspirated k as in <i>kit</i>
Ψ	ψ	ψῖ	psī	= π + σ = ps as in <i>lips</i>
Ω	ω	ὦ μέγα	ōmega	as the sound in <i>caught</i> , but held longer

The symbol  $\sim$  will occasionally be used over a Greek vowel to indicate a vowel of short quantity. The symbol  $\bar{\phantom{a}}$  indicates a vowel of long quantity (see  $\bar{\alpha}$ ,  $\bar{\iota}$ , and  $\bar{\upsilon}$  in the right-hand column in the list above). Normally short vowels have neither mark above them (see  $\alpha$ ,  $\iota$ , and  $\upsilon$  in the right-hand column above). When these three vowels are long, they will usually be printed in *Athenaze* with long marks over them ( $\bar{\alpha}$ ,  $\bar{\iota}$ , and  $\bar{\upsilon}$ ). The long mark is referred to as a macron (Greek μακρόν, *long*). A long vowel is held approximately twice as long as a short vowel. The vowels  $\eta$  and  $\omega$  are always long and are therefore not marked with macrons. The digraphs  $\epsilon\iota$  and  $\omicron\upsilon$  represent two additional long vowels in Greek (see Long Vowel Digraphs below). The vowels  $\epsilon$  and  $\omicron$  are always short.

All vowels marked with a circumflex accent ( $\circ$ ) or with an iota subscript (see below) are always long and will usually not be marked with macrons.

In the Greek names for the letters of the alphabet given on the previous page, identify all long and all short vowels. Practice pronouncing the names of the letters, paying special attention to proper pronunciation of the long and short vowels. Hold the long vowels for twice the length of time as the short vowels.

## Breathings

There is no letter *h* in the Attic alphabet, but this sound occurs at the beginning of many Greek words. It is indicated by a mark called a *rough breathing* or *aspiration*, written over the first vowel of a word (over the second vowel of a diphthong), e.g.:

$\epsilon\nu$  (pronounced *hen*)

$\omicron\upsilon$  (pronounced *hou*)

When an *h* sound is not to be pronounced at the beginning of a word beginning with a vowel or diphthong, a *smooth breathing* mark is used, e.g.:

$\epsilon\nu$  (pronounced *en*)

$\omicron\upsilon$  (pronounced *ou*)

Thus, every word beginning with a vowel or a diphthong will have a rough or smooth breathing. Initial  $\rho$  always has a rough breathing, e.g.,  $\rho\acute{\alpha}\beta\delta\omicron\varsigma$ , *wand*.

## Diphthongs

Diphthongs are glides from one vowel sound to another within the same syllable. Attic Greek has the following diphthongs:

<i>Diphthongs</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
$\alpha\iota$	$\alpha\iota\gamma\acute{\iota}\varsigma$	as the sound in <i>high</i>
$\alpha\upsilon$	$\alpha\upsilon\tau\omicron\kappa\rho\alpha\tau\acute{\eta}\varsigma$	as the sound in <i>how</i>
$\epsilon\upsilon$	$\epsilon\upsilon\gamma\epsilon\nu\acute{\eta}\varsigma$	$\epsilon + \upsilon$ pronounced as one syllable
$\eta\upsilon$	$\eta\upsilon\rho\eta\kappa\alpha$	$\eta + \upsilon$ pronounced as one syllable
$\omicron\iota$	$\omicron\iota\kappa\nu\nu\omicron\mu\acute{\iota}\alpha$	as the sound in <i>foil</i>
$\upsilon\iota$	$\upsilon\iota\acute{\omicron}\varsigma$	$\upsilon + \iota$ pronounced as one syllable

## Long Vowel Digraphs

Digraphs are combinations of letters that represent a single sound. Two long vowel sounds are represented in Greek by the following digraphs:

<i>Digraphs</i>	<i>Words</i>	<i>Pronunciation</i>
ει	εἵκοσι	as the sound in <i>they</i>
ου	οὔτις	as the sound in <i>mood</i>

## Iota Subscript

Sometimes the letter ι (*iōta*) is written under a vowel, e.g., α, η, and φ (these combinations are referred to as *long diphthongs*); when so written it is called *iota subscript*. In classical Greek this iota was written on the line after the vowel and was pronounced as a short iota. Its pronunciation ceased in post-classical Greek, and we usually do not pronounce it now. When it appears in a word that is written entirely in capital letters (as in the titles to the readings in this book), it is written on the line as a capital iota. Thus πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ > ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΙ ΚΡΗΝΗΙ. Note that accents and breathing marks are not used when all letters are capitalized.

## Paired Consonants

Paired consonants such as λλ, μμ, ππ, and ττ should be pronounced double and held approximately twice as long as the single consonant, e.g., the μμ in γάμμα.

Exceptions are γγ, γκ, γξ, and γχ (where the first γ is pronounced as the *ng* in *sing*), as in ἄγγελος, *messenger*, and ἄγκυρα, *anchor*.

## Double Consonants

Three consonants represent combinations of other sounds and are called *double consonants*:

$$\zeta = \sigma + \delta$$

$$\xi = \kappa + \sigma \text{ or } \gamma + \sigma \text{ or } \chi + \sigma$$

$$\psi = \pi + \sigma \text{ or } \beta + \sigma \text{ or } \phi + \sigma$$

## Aspirated Consonants

Three consonants represent certain sounds followed by an *h* sound or aspiration:

$$\theta = \text{an aspirated } \tau$$

$$\phi = \text{an aspirated } \pi$$

$$\chi = \text{an aspirated } \kappa$$



## Consonant Sounds

Nasals	μ	ν	and γ when followed by γ, κ, ξ, or χ	
Liquids	λ	ρ		
Spirant	σ			
Stops	Voiceless		Voiced	Voiceless Aspirated
Labial	π		β	φ
Dental	τ		δ	θ
Velar	κ		γ	χ
Double	ζ	ξ	ψ	

## Stops Followed by σ

Labial: β or π or φ, when followed by σ, becomes ψ.

Dental: δ or ζ or θ or τ, when followed by σ, is lost.

Velar: γ or κ or χ, when followed by σ, becomes ξ.

Compare what is said about the double consonants ξ and ψ above. These linguistic phenomena will be very important in understanding certain forms of nouns and verbs.

## Punctuation

The period and the comma are written as in English. A dot above the line (·) is the equivalent of an English semicolon or colon. A mark that looks like an English semicolon (;) is used at the end of a sentence as a question mark.

## Accents

Nearly every word in Greek bears an accent mark: an acute (τίς), a grave (τὸ), or a circumflex (ὀρῶ). These marks seldom affect the sense. They were invented as symbols to provide written aid for correct pronunciation; originally they indicated a change in *pitch*, e.g., the acute accent showed that the syllable on which it fell was pronounced at a higher pitch than the preceding or following syllables. Later *stress* replaced pitch, and now ancient Greek is usually pronounced with stress on the accented syllables (with no distinction among the three kinds of accents) instead of varying the pitch of the voice. For those who wish to use the pitch accent, we recommend the recording of Stephen Daitz, mentioned below.

Note that the grave accent stands only on the final syllable of a word. It usually replaces an acute accent on the final syllable of a word when that word is followed immediately by another word with no intervening punctuation, e.g., instead of τό δῶπον, we write τὸ δῶπον.

## Transliteration

Note the following standard transliteration of Greek into English letters:

$\alpha = a$	$\eta = \bar{e}$	$\nu = n$	$\tau = t$
$\beta = b$	$\theta = th$	$\xi = x$	$\upsilon = u \text{ or } y$
$\gamma = g$	$\iota = i$	$\omicron = o$	$\phi = ph$
$\delta = d$	$\kappa = k$	$\pi = p$	$\chi = ch$
$\varepsilon = e$	$\lambda = l$	$\rho = r$	$\psi = ps$
$\zeta = z$	$\mu = m$	$\sigma, \varsigma = s$	$\omega = \bar{o}$

Remember the following:  $\gamma\gamma = ng$ ;  $\gamma\kappa = nk$ ;  $\gamma\xi = nx$ , and  $\gamma\chi = nch$ ;  $\alpha\upsilon, \epsilon\upsilon, \eta\upsilon, \omicron\upsilon, \upsilon\iota = au, eu, \bar{e}u, ou, ui$ , but when  $\upsilon$  is not in a diphthong it is usually transliterated as *y*. And note that  $\alpha, \eta$ , and  $\phi$  are transliterated  $\bar{a}i, \bar{e}i$ , and  $\bar{o}i$ , to distinguish them from the short diphthongs,  $\alpha\iota, \epsilon\iota$ , and  $\omicron\iota$ , transliterated *ai, ei, and oi*.

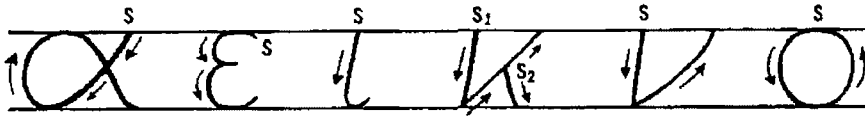
[The recommendations for pronunciation given above (the *restored pronunciation*) are based on W. Sidney Allen, *Vox Graeca: A Guide to the Pronunciation of Classical Greek*, Cambridge University Press, 3rd ed., 1988, pages 177–179. For demonstration of the restored pronunciation, including the pitch accents, students should consult the cassette recording of Stephen G. Daitz, *The Pronunciation and Reading of Ancient Greek: A Practical Guide*, 2nd ed., 1984, Audio Forum, Guilford, CT 06437 (U.S.A.).]

## Part III: Writing Greek Letters

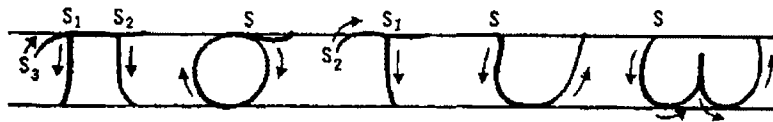
Certain conventions may be observed in writing Greek letters. With practice one can write them with ease and speed. There should be no difficulty in imitating the printed forms of the capitals; the small letters may be written as indicated below. A small “s” indicates the point where each letter should be begun (“s<sub>1</sub>,” “s<sub>2</sub>,” etc., are used if it is necessary to lift the pen or pencil), and an arrowhead (--->) indicates the direction in which the pen or pencil should move. For convenience, the letters may be divided into four groups:

(1) Eleven of the Greek small letters do not extend below the line of writing, and are approximately as wide as they are high (cf. English *a, c, e*, etc.). (The corresponding capitals are given first, then the printed forms of the small letters, then the “diagrams” for imitation.)

A	E	I	K	N	O
α	ε	ι	κ	ν	ο



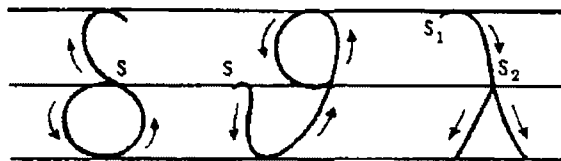
Π	Σ	Τ	Υ	Ω
π	σ	τ	υ	ω



Note that ν has a point at the bottom, whereas υ is round.

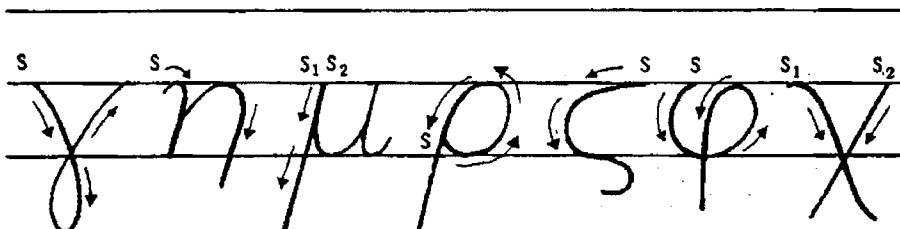
(2) Three of the Greek small letters rest on the line of writing but are twice as high as the letters in group 1:

Δ	Θ	Λ
δ	θ	λ

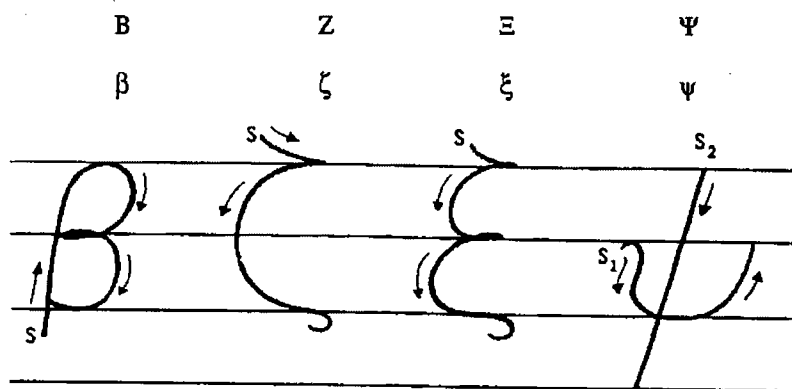


(3) Seven of the Greek small letters rest on the line of writing and extend below it, but do not extend above the letters of group 1:

Γ	Η	Μ	Π	(Σ)	Φ	Χ
γ	η	μ	ρ	ς	φ	χ



(4) Four of the Greek small letters extend both above and below the line of writing:



Students will, of course, develop their own writing style, and slight variations from the method of forming the letters that has just been described will not, in general, cause confusion.

[Most of the material in the above section is taken from *The Language of the New Testament* by Eugene Van Ness Goetchius, © Reprinted by permission of Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, NJ.]

## Part IV: Practice in Pronunciation and Writing

Practice pronouncing the following words, imitating your teacher. Then copy the Greek words onto a sheet of paper; write the English transliteration of each Greek word, and give an English derivative of each.

- |              |             |              |              |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. αἶνιγμα   | 11. δόγμα   | 21. μάθημα   | 31. ῥεῦμα    |
| 2. ἀξίωμα    | 12. δρᾶμα   | 22. μίασμα   | 32. στίγμα   |
| 3. ἄρωμα     | 13. ἐμβλημα | 23. νόμισμα  | 33. σύμπτωμα |
| 4. ἄσθμα     | 14. ζεῦγμα  | 24. ὄνομα    | 34. σύστημα  |
| 5. γράμμα    | 15. θέμα    | 25. πλάσμα   | 35. σχῆμα    |
| 6. δέρμα     | 16. θεώρημα | 26. πνεῦμα   | 36. σχίσμα   |
| 7. διάδημα   | 17. ἰδίωμα  | 27. πρᾶγμα   | 37. σῶμα     |
| 8. διάφραγμα | 18. κίνημα  | 28. ποίημα   | 38. φλέγμα   |
| 9. δίλημμα   | 19. κλίμα   | 29. πρίσμα   | 39. χάσμα    |
| 10. δίπλωμα  | 20. κόμμα   | 30. πρόβλημα | 40. χρῶμα    |

Copy the following names, practice pronouncing the Greek, imitating your teacher, and write the standard English spelling of each name:

#### The Twelve Olympians

Ζεύς	Ἄρτεμις	Ἥφαιστος
Ἡρᾶ	Ποσειδῶν	Ἄρης
Ἀθηνᾶ	Ἀφροδίτη	Διόνυσος
Ἀπόλλων	Ἑρμῆς	Δημήτηρ

#### The Nine Muses

Κλειώ	Μελπομένη	Πολύμνια
Εὐτέρπη	Τερψιχόρᾳ	Οὐρανία
Θάλεια	Ἑρατώ	Καλλιόπη

#### The Three Graces

Ἀγλαΐα	Εὐφροσύνη	Θάλεια
--------	-----------	--------

#### The Three Fates

Κλωθώ	Λάχεσις	Ἄτροπος
-------	---------	---------

Practice reading the following passage of Greek, imitating your teacher, and then copy the first two sentences. In writing the Greek, it will be helpful always to insert the macron over the vowel to which it belongs. As with the accent and breathing mark, the macron should be considered an integral part of the spelling of the word.

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις Ἀθηναῖός ἐστιν· οἰκεῖ δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἀλλὰ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς· αὐτουργὸς γάρ ἐστιν. γεωργεῖ οὖν τὸν κλῆρον καὶ πονεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς. χαλεπὸς δὲ ἐστιν ὁ βίος· ὁ γὰρ κλῆρὸς ἐστὶ μικρὸς, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος. αἰεὶ οὖν πονεῖ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις καὶ πολλάκις στενάζει καὶ λέγει· “ὦ Ζεῦ, χαλεπὸς ἐστιν ὁ βίος· ἀπέραντος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ πόνος, μικρὸς δὲ ὁ κλῆρος καὶ οὐ πολὺν σῖτον παρέχει.” ἀλλὰ ἰσχυρὸς ἐστιν ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ ἄοκνος· πολλάκις οὖν χαίρει· ἐλεύθερος γάρ ἐστι καὶ αὐτουργός· φιλεῖ δὲ τὸν οἶκον. καλὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος καὶ σῖτον παρέχει οὐ πολὺν ἀλλὰ ἱκανόν.

## Part V: Date Chart

### BRONZE AGE

Ca. 1220 B.C. Minos, king of Crete; Theseus, king of Athens  
Sack of Troy by Agamemnon of Mycenae

### DARK AGE

Ca. 1050 B.C. Emigration of Ionians to Asia Minor

### RENAISSANCE

Ca. 850 B.C. Formation of city states (Sparta, Corinth, etc.)  
776 B.C. First Olympic Games  
Ca. 750–500 B.C. Trade and colonization  
Ca. 725 B.C. Composition of *Iliad* and *Odyssey* by Homer (Ionia)  
Ca. 700 B.C. Composition of *Works and Days* by Hesiod (Boeotia)  
Ca. 657–625 B.C. Cypselus, tyrant of Corinth  
Ca. 594 B.C. Solon's reforms in Athens

### PERSIAN INVASIONS

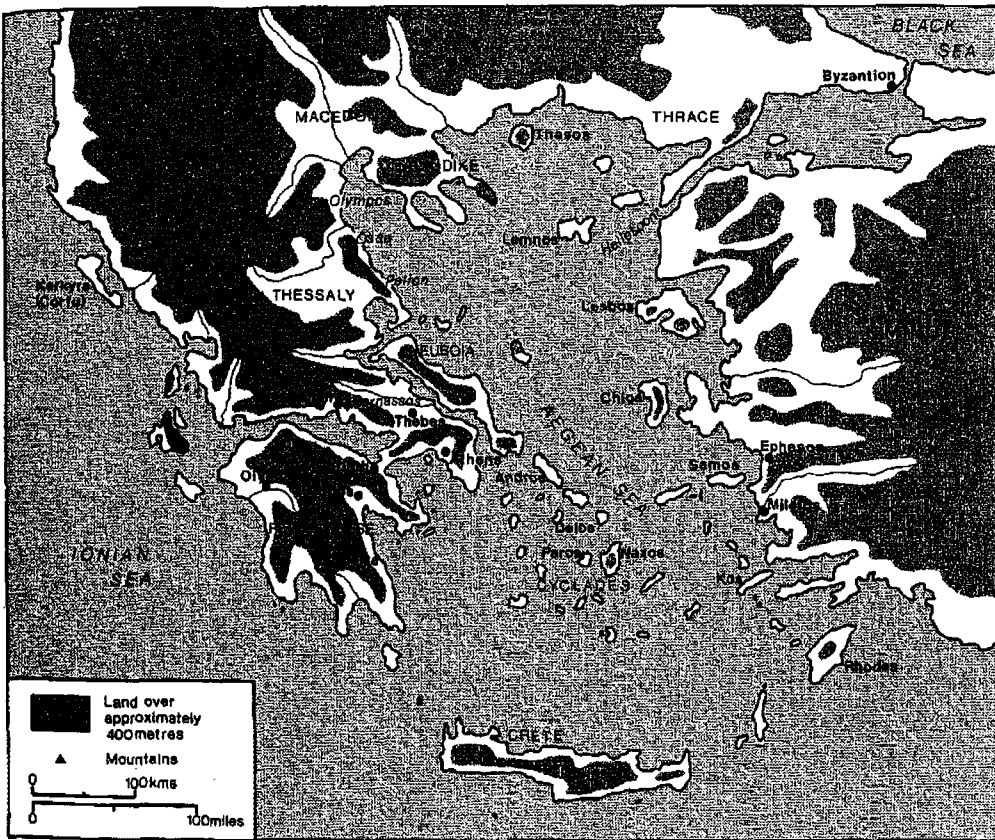
546 B.C. Defeat of Croesus of Lydia and Greeks in Asia Minor  
by Cyrus of Persia  
507 B.C. Foundation of democracy in Athens by Cleisthenes  
490 B.C. Expedition sent against Athens by Darius of Persia;  
battle of Marathon  
480 B.C. Invasion of Greece by Xerxes: Thermopylae (480),  
Salamis (480), Plataea (479)  
Simonides, poet

### IMPERIAL ATHENS

478 B.C. Foundation of Delian League, which grows into Athe-  
nian Empire  
472 B.C. Aeschylus's *Persians*  
461–429 B.C. Pericles dominant in Athens: radical democracy and  
empire  
War between Athens and Sparta  
446 B.C. Thirty Years Peace with Sparta  
Parthenon and other buildings  
Herodotus, *History*

### PELOPONNESIAN WAR

431 B.C. Outbreak of war between Athens and the Pelopon-  
nesian League  
430–429 B.C. Plague at Athens; death of Pericles  
425 B.C. Aristophanes' *Acharnians*  
421 B.C. Temporary peace between Athens and Sparta  
415 B.C. Athenian expedition to Sicily  
413 B.C. Sicilian expedition defeated; war between Athens and  
Sparta  
404 B.C. Surrender of Athens  
Thucydides, *Histories*



Greece and the Aegean Sea

# 1

## Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ (α)

---



ὁ Δικαιόπολις αὐτουργός ἐστιν· φέρει δὲ τὸν μόσχον.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἐστί(ν), *he/she/it is*  
λέγει, *he/she says; he/she tells;  
he/she speaks*  
οἰκεῖ, *he/she lives; he/she  
dwells*  
πονεῖ, *he/she works*  
φιλεῖ, *he/she loves*  
χαίρει, *he/she rejoices*

#### Nouns

ὁ ἀγρός,\* *field*  
ὁ ἄνθρωπος, *man; human be-  
ing; person*  
ὁ αὐτουργός, *farmer*  
ὁ οἶκος, *house; home; dwelling*  
ὁ πόνος, *toil, work*  
ὁ σῖτος, *grain; food*

#### Adjectives

καλός, *beautiful*  
μακρός, *long; large*  
μικρός, *small*  
πολύς, *much; pl., many*

#### Prepositional Phrase

ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις, *in Athens*

#### Adverbs

οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ,\*\* *not*  
οὖν, *a connecting adverb, post-  
positive,\*\*\* so (i.e., because of  
this); then (i.e., after this)*

#### Conjunctions

ἀλλά, *but*  
γάρ, *postpositive,\*\*\* for*  
καί, *and*

#### Particle

δέ, *postpositive,\*\*\* and, but*

#### Proper Names and Adjectives

Ἀθηναῖος, *Athenian*  
ὁ Δικαιόπολις, *Dicaeopolis*

\*ὁ is the definite article, *the*; when the noun is used as an object, the article becomes τὸν. Sometimes the article need not be translated in English; sometimes it can best be translated as a possessive adjective, e.g., *his*. There is no indefinite article in Greek.

\*\*οὐ before consonants, οὐκ before vowels or diphthongs, and οὐχ be-



fore aspirated vowels or aspirated diphthongs (e.g., οὐχ αἰρεῖ, *he/she does not take*)

\*\*\*These words are always "placed after" and never occur first in their clause.

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις Ἀθηναῖός ἐστιν· οἰκεῖ δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις ἀλλὰ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς· αὐτουργὸς γάρ ἐστιν· γεωργεῖ οὖν τὸν κλῆρον καὶ πονεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς· χαλεπὸς δὲ ἐστιν ὁ βίος· ὁ γὰρ κλῆρὸς ἐστὶ μικρὸς, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος· ἀεὶ οὖν πονεῖ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις καὶ πολλάκις στενάζει καὶ λέγει· "ὦ Ζεῦ, χαλεπὸς ἐστὶν ὁ βίος· ἀπέραντος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ πόνος, μικρὸς δὲ ὁ κλῆρος καὶ οὐ πολὺν σῖτον παρέχει." ἀλλὰ ἰσχυρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ἄνθρωπος καὶ ἄοκνος· πολλάκις οὖν χαίρει· ἐλεύθερος γάρ ἐστι καὶ αὐτουργός· φιλεῖ δὲ τὸν οἶκον· καλὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος καὶ σῖτον παρέχει οὐ πολὺν ἀλλὰ ἱκανόν.

[ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς, *in the country* (lit., *in the fields*) γεωργεῖ, *he farms, cultivates* τὸν κλῆρον, *the (= his) farm* χαλεπὸς, *hard* ὁ βίος, *the (= his) life* ἀεὶ, *always* πολλάκις, *often* στενάζει, *groans* ὦ Ζεῦ, *O Zeus* ἀπέραντος, *endless* παρέχει, *provides* ἰσχυρὸς, *strong* ἄοκνος, *energetic* ἐλεύθερος, *free* ἱκανόν, *enough*]

## WORD STUDY

Many English words are derived from Greek. Often these derivatives are scientific and technical terms formed in English from Greek stems because the precision of the Greek language makes it possible to express a complex concept in a single word.

*What Greek words from the story at the beginning of this chapter do you recognize in the following English words? Define the words, using your knowledge of the Greek:*

1. anthropology
2. polysyllabic
3. philosophy
4. microscope

*English words such as those above often contain more than one Greek stem. Which of the words above contain stems of the following Greek words?*

1. σκοπεῖ, *he/she looks at, examines*
2. σοφίᾱ, *wisdom*
3. λόγος, *word; study*

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Stems and Endings

Greek verbs have *stems*, which give the meaning of the word, and variable *endings*, which show such things as *number* and *person*. In addition to *singular* and *plural* number, Greek has *dual* number, used when referring to two people or things; it is fairly rare, however, and will not be taught in this course.

Number:	Singular	Plural
Person: 1st	I	we
2nd	you	you
3rd	he, she, it	they

This chapter introduces only the third person singular of the present tense, e.g., *he/she/it is*.

The Greek verb for *loosen*, *loose* will serve as an example of a regular Greek verb; the verb for *love* will serve as an example of a contract verb (a type of verb in which the vowel at the end of the stem contracts with the initial vowel of the ending). The irregular verb for *be* is also given.

**Stem:** λῡ-, *loosen, loose*

3rd singular λῡ-ει *he/she loosens, is loosening, does loosen*

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

3rd singular φιλέ-ει > φιλεῖ *he/she loves, is loving, does love*  
Note that > means "becomes."

**Stem:** ἐσ-, *be*

3rd singular ἐστί(ν)\* *he/she/it is*

\*ἐστίν is used when followed by a word beginning with a vowel or when coming as the last word in a clause. The -ν is called *movable ν*. The word ἐστί(ν) is *enclitic*, which means that it "leans upon" the previous word and often loses its accent. The rules for accenting enclitics and the words that precede them will be presented as needed for writing Greek in the exercises.

### 2. Nouns: Genders, Stems, Endings, Cases, and Agreement

#### a. Grammatical Gender

Greek nouns are usually *masculine* or *feminine* or *neuter* (neither masculine nor feminine) in gender. Some words such as Δικαιοπόλις, which is masculine, have *natural gender*; the gender of

other words such as ἄγρός is not determined by the gender of the thing referred to. Such words have what is called *grammatical gender*, this one being masculine. In learning vocabulary, always learn the article with the noun; this will tell you its gender: ὁ for masculine; ἡ for feminine; and τό for neuter. In this chapter all the nouns listed in the Vocabulary are masculine and are therefore accompanied by the masculine definite article, ὁ.

### b. Stems, Endings, and Cases

Greek nouns, pronouns, and adjectives have *stems*, which give the meaning of the word, and variable *endings*, which show the function of the word in the sentence. The endings of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives are called *cases*.

There are five cases in Greek (nominative, genitive, dative, accusative, and vocative); in this chapter we focus on the use of two of them—the *nominative* and the *accusative*.

**Stem:** κληρο-, *farm*

**Nominative Ending:** -ς. κληρο- + -ς > κλῆρος. This case is used for the *subject* of the verb and the *complement* after the verb "is," e.g.:

Subject	Verb	Complement
ὁ κλῆρος	ἐστι	μικρός.
<i>The farm</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>small.</i>

**Accusative Ending:** -ν. κληρο- + -ν > κλῆρον. This case is used for the *direct object* of the verb, e.g.:

Subject	Verb	Direct Object
ὁ ἄνθρωπος	γεωργεῖ	τὸν κλῆρον.
<i>The man</i>	<i>cultivates</i>	<i>the farm.</i>

Note that it is the endings of the words and not the order in which they are placed in the sentence that builds the meaning of the sentence. The first sentence above could be written μικρός ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος (the definite article marks ὁ κλῆρος as the subject). The second sentence could be written τὸν κλῆρον γεωργεῖ ὁ ἄνθρωπος, with a change in emphasis but no change in basic meaning.

### c. Agreement

Definite articles and adjectives agree with the nouns they go with in gender, number (singular or plural), and case, e.g.:

ὁ καλὸς ἄγρός: masculine singular nominative  
τὸν μικρὸν οἶκον: masculine singular accusative

### 3. Labeling Functions of Words in Sentences

In exercises you will be asked to label the functions of words in sentences. Label the subject S, the complement C, and the direct object DO. Label linking verbs such as ἐστί(ν) LV. Verbs that take direct objects, such as γεωργεῖ in the sentence above, are *transitive* and are to be labeled TV (Transitive Verb); verbs that do not take direct objects, such as οἰκεῖ in the sentence below, are *intransitive* and are to be labeled IV (Intransitive Verb):

S                      IV

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οἰκεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς.

Note that the complement can be either an adjective as in the sentence ὁ κληρὸς ἐστί μικρός above or a noun as in the following sentence:

S                      C                      LV

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις αὐτουργός ἐστιν.

### 4. Use of the Definite Article

The definite article is sometimes used in Greek where it is not used in English, e.g., ὁ Δικαιοπόλις = *Dicaeopolis*, and sometimes it can be translated with a possessive adjective in English, e.g.:

ὁ ἄνθρωπος γεωργεῖ τὸν κληρὸν.  
*The man cultivates his farm.*

#### Exercise 1a

Copy the following sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, or IV above the appropriate words (do not label words in prepositional phrases). Then translate the sentences into English:

1. ὁ πόνος ἐστὶ μακρός.
2. καλός ἐστιν ὁ οἶκος.
3. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὸν οἶκον φιλεῖ.
4. πολὺν σίτον παρέχει ὁ κληρὸς.
5. ὁ ἄνθρωπος οὐ πονεῖ ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς.

## The Athenian Farmer

Dicaeopolis lives in a village in Attica called Cholleidae, about ten miles or sixteen kilometers north of Athens. Although Athens and its port, the Piraeus, formed a very large city by ancient standards, the majority of the Athenian people lived and worked in the country. The historian Thucydides (2.14) says that when Attica had to be evacuated before the Peloponnesian in-

vasion of 431 B.C. "the evacuation was difficult for them since the majority had always been accustomed to living in the country."

Most of these people were farmers like Dicaeopolis. Their farms were small; ten to twenty acres would be the average size. What they grew on their farms would depend partly on the district in which they lived. On the plain near Athens no doubt the staple products would have been vegetables and grain, but most of Attica is hilly; this poorer land would be more suitable for grape vines, olive trees, sheep, and goats (cows were not kept for milk). All farmers aimed at self-sufficiency, but few would have attained it (two-thirds of the grain consumed by the Athenians was imported). If they had a surplus, e.g., of olive oil or wine, they would take it to the market in Athens for sale and buy what they could not produce themselves.

For purposes of administration, the Athenian citizens were divided into four classes, based on property. The top class, the *pentacosiomedimnoi* or "millionaires," a very small class, were those whose estates produced five hundred *medimnoi* of grain a year (a *medimnos* = about one and a half bushels or fifty-two to fifty-three liters). The second class, also small, were the *hippeis*, "knights," whose estates could support a horse (ἵππος); these provided the cavalry for the army (see illustration, page 162). The third and largest class were the farmers like Dicaeopolis, called the *zeugitai*, who kept a team of oxen (ζεύγος). These provided the heavy infantry of the army. The fourth class were the *thetes*, "hired laborers," who owned no land or not enough to support a family.

Our sources represent the farmers as the backbone of the Athenian democracy—sturdy, industrious, thrifty, and simple, but shrewd. In the comedies of Aristophanes they are often contrasted with self-seeking politicians, decadent knights, and grasping traders. The name of our main character, Dicaeopolis, contains the concepts δίκαιο-, *just*, and πόλις, *city*, and means something like *honest citizen*. He is taken from a comedy of Aristophanes called the *Acharnians*; the play was produced in 425 B.C., and at the end of this course you will read extracts from it.



Scenes of plowing and sowing on a Greek vase

# Ο ΔΙΚΑΙΟΠΟΛΙΣ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις μέγαν λίθον αἶρει καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ φέρει.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

αἶρει, *he/she lifts*

βαδίζει, *he/she walks; he/she goes*

καθίζει, *he/she sits*

φέρει, *he/she carries*

### Nouns

ὁ ἥλιος, *sun*

ὁ χρόνος, *time*

### Pronoun

αὐτόν, *him*

### Adjectives

ἰσχυρός, *strong*

χαλεπός, *difficult*

### Preposition

πρός + acc., *to, toward*

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ πονεῖ· τὸν γὰρ ἀγρὸν σκάπτει. μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ πόνος καὶ χαλεπός· τοὺς γὰρ λίθους ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ φέρει. μέγαν λίθον αἶρει καὶ φέρει πρὸς τὸ ἔρμα. ἰσχυρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ἄνθρωπος ἀλλὰ πολὺν χρόνον πονεῖ καὶ μάλα κάμνει. φλέγει γὰρ ὁ ἥλιος καὶ κατατρίβει αὐτόν. καθίζει οὖν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ καὶ ἡσυχάζει οὐ πολὺν χρόνον. δι' ὀλίγου γὰρ ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν καὶ πονεῖ. τέλος δὲ καταδύνει ὁ ἥλιος. οὐκέτι οὖν πονεῖ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἀλλὰ πρὸς τὸν οἶκον βαδίζει.

[ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ, *in the field* σκάπτει, *he is digging* τοὺς... λίθους, *the stones* ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ, *out of the field* μέγαν, *big* τὸ ἔρμα, *the stone heap* πολὺν χρόνον, *for a long time* μάλα κάμνει, *he is very tired* φλέγει, *is blazing* κατατρίβει, *wears out* ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ, *under the tree* ἡσυχάζει, *he rests* δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν, *he lifts himself, gets up* τέλος, *adv., finally* καταδύνει, *sets* οὐκέτι, *no longer*]

## WORD BUILDING

*What is the relationship between the words in the following sets? You have not yet met two of these words (φίλος and γεωργός). Try to deduce their meanings (they both refer to people) from studying the relationship between the words in each set:*

- |    |         |           |
|----|---------|-----------|
| 1. | οἰκεῖ   | ὁ οἶκος   |
| 2. | πονεῖ   | ὁ πόνος   |
| 3. | γεωργεῖ | ὁ γεωργός |
| 4. | φιλεῖ   | ὁ φίλος   |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Accents

Attic Greek has three kinds of accent marks: acute ´, grave ` , and circumflex ˘. The acute accent will be found only on one of the last three syllables of a word, e.g.: ἄνθρωπος, λέγει, μακρός. An acute accent on the final syllable of a word will be changed to a grave accent if it is followed immediately by another word with no punctuation (comma, semicolon, or period) in between, thus ἀλλά + καλός > ἀλλὰ καλός.

An important exception to this rule occurs when *enclitics*, words such as ἐστί(ν), which usually lose their accent and instead “lean upon” the previous word for their accent, follow words with an acute accent on their final syllable, e.g.:

χαλεπός + ἐστί(ν) becomes χαλεπός ἐστί(ν).

The acute on the final syllable of χαλεπός does not change to a grave when the word is followed by an enclitic, and the enclitic loses its accent.

Note also what happens when words accented like ἄνθρωπος, πόνος, and οἶκος are followed by enclitics:

ἄνθρωπος + ἐστί(ν) becomes ἄνθρωπός ἐστί(ν).

An acute accent is added to ἄνθρωπος, and the enclitic loses its accent.

πόνος + ἐστί(ν) remains πόνος ἐστί(ν).

The enclitic keeps its accent.

οἶκος + ἐστί(ν) becomes οἶκός ἐστί(ν).

An acute accent is added to οἶκος, and the enclitic loses its accent.

**Exercise 1β**

*Copy the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, or IV above the appropriate words (do not label words in prepositional phrases). Then translate the pairs of sentences. When translating from English to Greek, keep the same word order as in the model Greek sentence. Pay particular attention to accents, following the rules given above. Do not forget to add the movable ν where necessary (see Grammar 1, page 4).*

1. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ οἰκεῖ ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις.  
The farmer walks to the field.
2. μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ ἀγρός.  
The house is small.
3. ὁ αὐτουργὸς ἐστὶν ἰσχυρὸς.  
Dicaeopolis is a farmer.
4. ὁ κλῆρος πολὺν σῖτον παρέχει.  
The man carries the big stone.
5. ὁ ἄνθρωπος τὸν σῖτον παρέχει.  
Dicaeopolis lifts the small stone.

**Ο ΚΛΗΡΟΣ**

*Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:*

μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ πόνος καὶ χαλεπός. ὁ δὲ αὐτουργὸς οὐκ ὀκνεῖ ἀλλ' αἰεὶ γεωργεῖ τὸν κλῆρον. καλὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ κλῆρος καὶ πολὺν σῖτον παρέχει. χαίρει οὖν ὁ ἄνθρωπος· ἰσχυρὸς γάρ ἐστι καὶ οὐ πολλαῖς κάμνει.

[ὀκνεῖ, shirks]

1. What is the farmer not doing? What does he always do?
2. What does the farm provide?
3. Why does the man rejoice?

**Exercise 1γ**

*Translate into Greek:*

1. Dicaeopolis does not always rejoice.
2. He always works in the field.
3. So he is often tired; for the work is long.
4. But he does not shirk; for he loves his home.



## Classical Greek

### Heraclitus

Heraclitus of Ephesus (fl. 500 B.C.) was a philosopher who maintained that, despite appearances, everything was in a continual state of change. Plato (*Cratylus* 402a) quotes him as saying "You cannot step into the same river twice."

In the same passage of the *Cratylus*, Plato reports that Heraclitus said:

πάντα χωρεῖ καὶ οὐδὲν μένει.

[πάντα, everything χωρεῖ, is on the move οὐδὲν, nothing μένει, stays (unchanged)]

## New Testament Greek

### Title of the Gospel of Luke

The New Testament readings in Book I of *Athenaze* are taken from the Holy Gospel according to Luke. Here is the title of this gospel in Greek:

ΤΟ ΑΓΙΟΝ ΕΥΑΓΓΕΛΙΟΝ ΤΟ ΚΑΤΑ ΛΟΥΚΑΝ

or

τὸ ἅγιον εὐαγγέλιον τὸ κατὰ Λουκᾶν

[τὸ, the ἅγιον, holy εὐαγγέλιον, good news, gospel (= Old English *gōd*, "good" + *spel*, "news") κατὰ, according to]

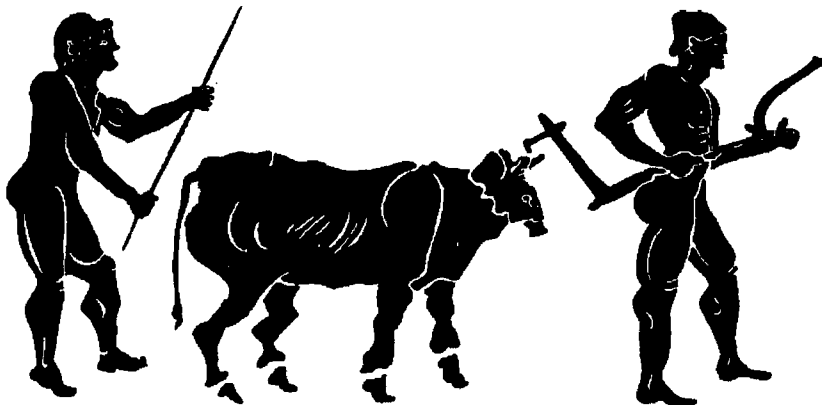


A farmer in contemporary Greece, carrying a kid

## 2

# Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (α)

---



ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τὸν βοῦν, ὁ δὲ δοῦλος φέρει τὸ ἄροτρον.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἐκβαίνει, *he/she steps out;*  
*he/she comes out*  
 ἐλαύνει, *he/she drives*  
 ἐλθέ, *come!*  
 καθεύδει, *he/she sleeps*  
 καλεῖ, *he/she calls*  
 πάρεστι(ν), *he/she/it is present;*  
*he/she/it is here;*  
*he/she/it is there*  
 σπεύδει, *he/she hurries*

#### Nouns

τὸ ἄροτρον, *plow*  
 ὁ δοῦλος, *slave*

#### Pronoun

ἐγώ, *I*

#### Adjective

ἄργός, *lazy*

#### Adverbs

οὕτως, *before consonants,*  
 οὕτω, *so, thus*  
 μή, *not; + imperative, don't . . . !*  
 τί; *why?*

#### Particles

μὲν . . . δέ . . . , *postpositive, on*  
*the one hand . . . and on the*  
*other hand . . . ; on the one*  
*hand . . . but on the other hand*

#### Proper Name

ὁ Ξανθίας, *Xanthias*

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου καὶ καλεῖ τὸν Ξανθίαν. ὁ Ξανθίας δοῦλός ἐστιν, ἰσχυρὸς μὲν ἄνθρωπος, ἄργός δέ· οὐ γὰρ πονεῖ, εἰ μὴ πάρεστιν ὁ Δικαιοπόλις. νῦν δὲ καθεύδει ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ Ξανθία. τί καθεύδεις; μὴ οὕτως ἄργός ἴσθι ἀλλὰ σπεῦδε.” ὁ οὖν Ξανθίας

βραδέως ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου καὶ λέγει· “τί εἶ οὕτω χαλεπός, ὦ δέσποτα; οὐ γὰρ ἄργός εἰμι ἀλλὰ ἤδη σπεύδω.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο καὶ συλλάμβανε· αἶρε γὰρ τὸ ἄροτρον καὶ φέρε αὐτὸ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐλαύνω τοὺς βοῦς. ἀλλὰ σπεῦδε· μῆκρὸς μὲν γὰρ ἐστὶν ὁ ἀγρός, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος.”

10

[ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου, *out of the house* εἰ μὴ, *unless* νῦν, *now* ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ, *in the house* δεῦρο, *here = hither* μὴ . . . ἴσθι, *don't be!* βραδέως, *slowly* δέσποτα, *master* ἤδη, *already* συλλάμβανε, *help!* αὐτὸ, *it* τοὺς βοῦς, *the oxen*]

## WORD STUDY

1. What do *despotic* and *chronology* mean? What Greek words do you find embedded in these English words?
2. What does a *dendrologist* study?
3. Explain what a *heliocentric* theory of the universe is.
4. What is a *chronometer*? What does τὸ μέτρον mean?

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Indicative Mood; 1st, 2nd, and 3rd Persons Singular

The *moods* indicate whether an action is viewed as being real or ideal. The *indicative* mood is used to express statements and questions about reality or fact:

ἐλαύνω τοὺς βοῦς. *I am driving the oxen.*  
τί καθεύδεις; *Why are you sleeping?*

The different endings of the verb show not only who or what is performing the action (I; you; he/she/it; we; you; they) but also how the action is being viewed (mood). In the following examples we give only the singular possibilities (I; you; he/she/it) in the indicative mood:

**Stem:** λῶ-, *loosen, loose*

<b>1st singular</b>	λῶ-ω	<i>I loosen, am loosening, do loosen</i>
<b>2nd singular</b>	λῶ-εις	<i>you loosen, are loosening, do loosen</i>
<b>3rd singular</b>	λῶ-ει	<i>he/she loosens, is loosening, does loosen</i>

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

<b>1st singular</b>	φιλέ-ω > φιλῶ	<i>I love, am loving, do love</i>
<b>2nd singular</b>	φιλέ-εις > φιλεῖς	<i>you love, are loving, do love</i>
<b>3rd singular</b>	φιλέ-ει > φιλεῖ	<i>he/she loves, is loving, does love</i>

**Stem:** ἔσ-, *be*

<b>1st singular</b>	εἰμί*	<i>I am</i>
<b>2nd singular</b>	εἶ	<i>you are</i>
<b>3rd singular</b>	ἐστί(ν)*	<i>he/she/it is</i>
*enclitic		

Since the endings differ for each person, subject pronouns need not be expressed in Greek, e.g.:

ἐλαύνω = *I drive*.

ἐλαύνεις = *you drive*.

ἐλαύνει = *he/she drives*.

But they are expressed if they are emphatic, e.g.:

ἐγὼ μὲν πονῶ, σὺ δὲ καθεύδεις. *I am working, but you are sleeping.*

### Exercise 2α

*Read aloud and translate into English:*

1. τὸν δοῦλον καλῶ.
2. ὁ δοῦλος ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ πονεῖ.
3. τί οὐ σπεύδεις;
4. οὐκ εἰμι ἄργός.
5. ἰσχυρὸς εἶ.
6. τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει.
7. πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν σπεύδω.
8. τί καλεῖς τὸν δοῦλον;
9. ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἔστιν ἄργός.
10. ὁ δοῦλος ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου.

## 2. Proclitics

The negative adverb οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ is called a *proclitic*. Proclitics normally do not have accents but “lean forward” onto the following word (cf. enclitics, page 4), e.g., τί οὐ σπεύδεις; (Exercise 2α, no. 3, above). When the proclitic οὐ is followed by the enclitic εἰμί (1st person singular), the enclitic retains an accent on its second syllable, e.g., οὐκ εἰμι ἄργός (Exercise 2α, no. 4, above). When οὐκ is followed by the enclitic ἐστί(ν) (3rd person singular), the enclitic receives an acute accent on its first syllable, e.g., ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἔστιν ἄργός (Exercise 2α, no. 9, above).

### Exercise 2β

*Translate into Greek. Do not begin your Greek sentence with an enclitic. When necessary, apply the rules for proclitics and enclitics given above and in Chapter 1, Grammar 5, page 9.*

1. He/she is not hurrying.

2. Why are you not working?
3. I am carrying the plow.
4. You are hurrying to the field.
5. He is lazy.
6. I am not strong.
7. You are not a slave.
8. The slave is not working.
9. The slave is carrying the plow to the field.
10. He is not lazy.

### 3. The Imperative

The *imperative* mood is used to express commands:

σπεῦδ-ε *hurry!*      φίλε-ε > φίλει *love!*      ἴσθι *be!*

In prohibitions (negative commands), μή + the imperative is used:

μὴ αἶρε τὸ ἄροτρον. *Don't lift the plow!*  
 μὴ ἄργος ἴσθι. *Don't be lazy!*

#### Exercise 2γ

Copy the following sentences and write C, DO, or IMP for imperative above the appropriate words. Then translate the sentences into English:

1. ἔκβαινε ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου, ὦ Ξανθίᾱ, καὶ ἔλθε δεῦρο.
2. μὴ κάθειρδε, ὦ δοῦλε, ἀλλὰ πόνει.
3. μὴ οὕτω χαλεπὸς ἴσθι, ὦ δέσποτα.
4. αἶρε τὸ ἄροτρον καὶ σπεῦδε πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν.
5. κάλει τὸν δοῦλον, ὦ δέσποτα.

## Slavery

The adult male population of the city-state of Athens in 431 B.C. has been calculated as follows: citizens 50,000, resident foreigners 25,000, slaves 100,000. The resident foreigners (*metics*, μέτοικοι) were free men who were granted a distinct status; they could not own land in Attica or contract marriages with citizens, but they had the protection of the courts, they served in the army, they had a role in the festivals, and they played an important part in commerce and industry.

Slaves had no legal rights and were the property of the state or individuals. The fourth-century philosopher Aristotle describes them as "living tools." They were either born into slavery or came to the slave market as a result of war or piracy. They were nearly all barbarians, i.e., non-Greek (a document from 415 B.C. records the sale of fourteen slaves—five were from Thrace, two from Syria, three from Caria, two from Illyria, and one each from Scythia and Colchis). It was considered immoral to enslave Greeks, and this very rarely happened.

The whole economy of the ancient world, which made little use of machines, was based on slave labor. Slaves were employed by the state, e.g., in the silver mines; they worked in factories (the largest we know of was a shield factory, employing 120 slaves); and individual citizens owned one or more slaves in proportion to their wealth. Every farmer hoped to own a slave to help in the house and fields, but not all did. Aristotle remarks that for poor men "the ox takes the place of the slave."

It would be wrong to assume that slaves were always treated inhumanely. A fifth-century writer of reactionary views says:

Now as to slaves and metics, in Athens, they live a most undisciplined life. One is not permitted to strike them, and a slave will not stand out of the way for you. Let me explain why. If the law permitted a free man to strike a slave or metic or a freedman, he would often find that he had mistaken an Athenian for a slave and struck him, for, as far as clothing and general appearance go, the common people look just the same as slaves and metics. (Pseudo-Xenophon 1.10)

Slaves and citizens often worked side by side and received the same wage, as we learn from inscriptions giving the accounts of public building works. Slaves might save enough money to buy their freedom from their masters, though this was not as common in Athens as in Rome.

In the country, the slaves of farmers usually lived and ate with their masters. Aristophanes' comedies depict them as lively and cheeky characters, by no means downtrodden. We have given Dicaeopolis one slave, named Xanthias, a typical slave name meaning "fair-haired."

## Greek Wisdom

See page 70

μέτρον ἄριστον.

Κλεόβουλος (of Lindos)



A farmer on his way to market; he is followed by a slave carrying two baskets of produce and accompanied by a pig and a piglet.

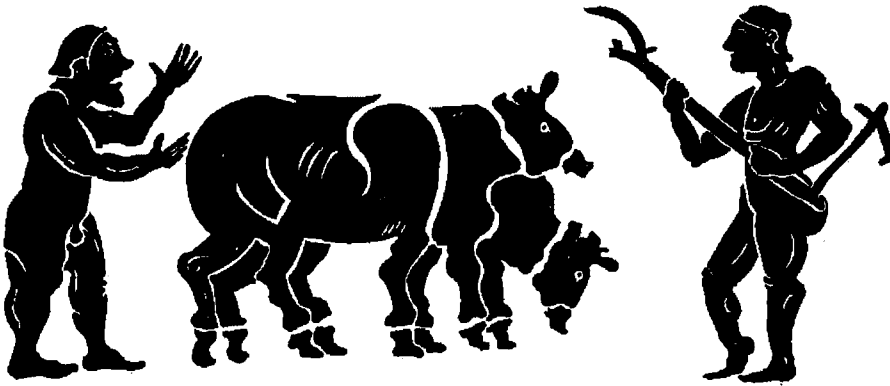


Slaves working in a clay pit



Women picking apples—slave and free

## Ο ΞΑΝΘΙΑΣ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις λέγει· “σπεῦδε, ὦ Ξανθιά, καὶ φέρε μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.”

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἄγω, *I lead; I take*  
 εἰσάγω, *I lead in; I take in*  
 βαίνω, *I step; I walk; I go*  
 βλέπω, *usually intransitive, I look; I see*  
 λαμβάνω, *I take*  
 συλλαμβάνω [= συν-, *with* + λαμβάνω], *I help*

## Nouns

ὁ βοῦς, *ox*  
 τὸ δένδρον, *tree*  
 ὁ δεσπότης, *master*

## Preposition

εἰς + acc., *into; to; at*

## Adverbs

βραδέως, *slowly*  
 ἔπειτα, *then, thereafter*  
 ἤδη, *already; now*

ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς ὀπισθεν βαδίζει καὶ φέρει τὸ ἄροτρον. δι' ὀλίγου δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις εἰσάγει τοὺς βοῦς εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν καὶ βλέπει πρὸς τὸν δοῦλον· ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς οὐ πάρεστιν· βραδέως γὰρ βαίνει. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “σπεῦδε, ὦ Ξανθιά, καὶ φέρε μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.” ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς λέγει· “ἀλλ' ἤδη σπεύδω, ὦ δέσποτα· τί οὕτω χαλεπὸς εἶ;” βραδέως δὲ φέρει τὸ ἄροτρον πρὸς αὐτόν. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις ἄγει τοὺς βοῦς ὑπὸ τὸ ζυγὸν καὶ προσάπτει τὸ ἄροτρον. ἔπειτα δὲ πρὸς τὸν δοῦλον βλέπει· ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς οὐ πάρεστιν· καθεύδει γὰρ ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ.

[ὀπισθεν, *behind* δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* μοι, (to) *me* ὑπὸ τὸ ζυγόν, *under the yoke* προσάπτει, *attaches*]



ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ 10  
κατάρᾱτε. μὴ κάθειυδε ἀλλὰ συλλάμβανε. φέρε γὰρ τὸ σπέρμα καὶ  
ὄπισθεν βάδιζε.” ὁ μὲν οὖν δοῦλος τὸ σπέρμα λαμβάνει καὶ  
ἀκολουθεῖ, ὁ δὲ δεσπότης καλεῖ τὴν Δήμητρα καὶ λέγει· “ἴλεως ἴσθι, ὦ  
Δήμητερ, καὶ πλήθυνε τὸ σπέρμα.” ἔπειτα δὲ τὸ κέντρον λαμβάνει  
καὶ κεντεῖ τοὺς βοῦς καὶ λέγει· “σπεύδετε, ὦ βόες· ἔλκετε τὸ ἄροτρον 15  
καὶ ἀροῦτε τὸν ἀγρόν.”

[ὦ κατάρᾱτε, *you cursed creature* τὸ σπέρμα, *the seed* ἀκολουθεῖ, *follows* τὴν  
Δήμητρα, *Demeter* (goddess of grain) ἴλεως, *gracious* πλήθυνε, *multiply* τὸ  
κέντρον, *the goad* κεντεῖ, *goads* ἔλκετε, *drag* ἀροῦτε, *plow*]

## WORD BUILDING

In the readings you have met the following prepositions: εἰς, *into*; ἐκ, *out of*; ἐν, *in*; and πρὸς, *to, toward*. These prepositions may be prefixed to verbs to form compound verbs, e.g.:

βαίνει, *he/she walks, steps*

ἐκβαίνει, *he/she steps out*

*Deduce the meaning of the following compound verbs:*

1. προσφέρει

4. προσβαίνει

2. ἐκφέρει

5. ἐκκαλεῖ

3. προσελαύνει

6. εἰσελαύνει

You can easily deduce the meanings of many more compound verbs of this sort, which are very frequent in Greek. Right from the start of your study of Greek you should begin to recognize the meaning of many new words from your knowledge of ones with which you are already familiar. To encourage you to develop and use this skill, the meaning of compound verbs will not be given in the chapter vocabularies when the meaning is clear from the separate parts of the word. When compound verbs have *special* meanings, they will be given in the vocabulary lists.

## GRAMMAR

## 4. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular, All Cases

	Masculine			Neuter		
<b>Nominative</b>	ὁ	καλὸς	ἀγρός	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Genitive</b>	τοῦ	καλοῦ	ἀγροῦ	τοῦ	καλοῦ	δένδρου
<b>Dative</b>	τῷ	καλῷ	ἀγρῷ	τῷ	καλῷ	δένδρῳ
<b>Accusative</b>	τὸν	καλὸν	ἀγρόν	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ*	καλὲ	ἀγρέ	ὦ	καλὸν	δένδρον

N.B. The endings for the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative cases are the same.

\*Not a definite article, but an interjection used with the vocative.

## 5. Uses of the Cases

The subject of the sentence and the complement of the verb “to be” are in the *nominative case*, e.g., ὁ ἀγρὸς καλὸς ἐστίν = *The field is beautiful*. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις αὐτουργός ἐστιν. *Dicaeopolis is a farmer*.

The *genitive case* is at present used only after certain prepositions, including those that express motion from a place, e.g., ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου = *He/She steps/comes out of the house*.

The *dative case* is also at present used only after certain prepositions, including those that indicate the place where someone or something is or something happens, e.g., καθεύδει ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ = *He/She sleeps in the house*.

The *accusative case* indicates the direct object of a transitive verb (e.g., καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον) and is used after certain prepositions, including those that indicate motion toward someone or something, e.g., πρὸς τὸν οἶκον βαδίζει = *He/She walks toward the house*.

The *vocative case* is used when addressing a person, e.g., ἔλθε δεῦρο, ὦ δοῦλε = *Come here, slave!* It is usually preceded by ὦ, which need not be translated.

## 6. Persistent Accent of Nouns and Adjectives

The accents of nouns and adjectives are *persistent*, i.e., they remain as they are in the nominative case unless forced to change because of one of several rules. One such rule is that nouns and adjectives such as those in the chart above, if they are accented in the nominative with an acute on the final syllable, change their accent to a circumflex on the final syllable in the genitive and dative cases. Note how this rule applies to the adjective καλός/καλόν and to the noun ἀγρός above. (Of course, the adjective καλός/καλόν as written above in the nominative, accusative, and vocative

cases has changed its acute to a grave because of the nouns immediately following.) Note also that the definite article follows a similar rule and has a circumflex accent on the genitive and dative.

### Exercise 2δ

*Give the correct form of the article to complete the following phrases; be careful with the accents:*

1. \_\_\_\_ δοῦλον
2. ἐν \_\_\_\_ ἀγρῷ
3. \_\_\_\_ ἀνθρωπος
4. ἐκ \_\_\_\_ οἴκου
5. \_\_\_\_ ἄροτρον
6. ὑπὸ \_\_\_\_ δένδρῳ
7. ἐν \_\_\_\_ οἴκῳ

### Exercise 2ε

*Complete the following sentences by giving correct endings to the verbs, nouns, and adjectives, and then translate the sentences into English:*

1. ὁ δοῦλος σπεύδ\_\_\_\_ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρ\_\_\_\_.
2. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὸν ἀργ\_\_\_\_ δοῦλον καλ\_\_\_\_.
3. ἐλθ\_\_\_\_ δεῦρο καὶ συλλάμβα\_\_\_\_.
4. ἐγὼ ἐλαύν\_\_\_\_ τοὺς βοῦς ἐκ τοῦ ἀγρ\_\_\_\_.
5. μὴ χαλεπ\_\_\_\_ ἴσθι, ὦ δοῦλ\_\_\_\_, ἀλλὰ πόν\_\_\_\_.

## 7. Recessive Accent of Verbs

More will be said about accents on verbs later in this course (e.g., Chapter 5, Grammar 2, pages 56–57), but for now observe that the forms ἐλαύνω, ἐλαύνεις, and ἐλαύνει have accents on the next to the last syllable, when the final syllable has a long vowel or diphthong. When the final syllable is short, as in the imperative, the accent recedes to the third syllable from the end, thus, ἔλαυνε. In the second paragraph of story β, find six verbs accented on the third syllable from the end.

### Exercise 2ζ

*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

1. ὁ δοῦλος οὐκ ἔστιν Ἀθηναῖος.  
Xanthias is not strong.
2. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐκβαίνει ἐκ τοῦ οἴκου καὶ καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον.  
The slave hurries to the field and carries the plow.

3. ὁ δοῦλος οὐ συλλαμβάνει ἀλλὰ καθεύδει ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ.  
The man is not working but walking to the house.
4. εἴσελθε εἰς τὸν οἶκον, ὦ Ξανθίᾳ, καὶ φέρε τὸν σίτον.  
Come, slave, and lead in the oxen.
5. μὴ πόνει, ὦ Ξανθίᾳ, ἀλλὰ ἐλθὲ δεῦρο.  
Don't sleep, man, but work in the field.

## Ο ΔΟΥΛΟΣ

*Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:*

ὁ αὐτουργὸς σπεύδει εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν καὶ καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον. ὁ δὲ δοῦλος οὐ πάρεστιν· καθεύδει γὰρ ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ. ὁ οὖν δεσπότης βαδίζει πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ δοῦλε ἄργε, καὶ πόνει.” ὁ οὖν δοῦλος βαδίζει πρὸς αὐτὸν καὶ λέγει· “μὴ χαλεπὸς ἴσθι, ὦ δέσποτα· ἤδη γὰρ πάρεμι ἐγὼ καὶ φέρω σοι τὸ ἄροτρον.” ὁ οὖν δεσπότης λέγει· “σπεῦδε, ὦ Ξανθίᾳ· μικρὸς μὲν γὰρ ἐστὶν ὁ ἀγρὸς, μακρὸς δὲ ὁ πόνος.” 5

[σοι, *to you*]

1. What is the farmer doing?
2. What is the slave doing?
3. When told to come and help, what does the slave do?
4. Why is the slave urged to hurry?

### Exercise 2η

*Translate into Greek. When you need to use μέν and another postpositive word together, always put μέν before the other postpositive (see line 5 of the story above):*

1. Dicaeopolis no longer (οὐκέτι) works but loosens the oxen.
2. And (use δέ, postpositive) then he calls the slave and says: “Don't work any longer (μηκέτι) but come here and take the plow.
3. “For I (use personal pronoun) on the one hand am driving the oxen to the house, you (σύ) on the other hand carry (imperative) the plow.”
4. So on the one hand Dicaeopolis drives the oxen out of the field, and on the other hand the slave takes the plow and carries (it) toward the house.

## Classical Greek

### Callimachus

Callimachus of Alexandria (fl. 250 B.C.) was a poet who rejected traditional genres such as epic and advocated the writing of short, light poems. The following saying based on fragment 465 (Pfeiffer) makes his preference clear:

μέγα βιβλίον μέγα κακόν.

[βιβλίον, *book*; supply ἐστί κακόν, *evil, trouble*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 3.22

The context is: "And it happened that while all the people were being baptized and Jesus had been baptized and was praying, the heaven was opened, the Holy Ghost came down upon him in bodily form like a dove, and a voice came from heaven." The voice said:

"σὺ εἶ ὁ υἱός μου ὁ ἀγαπητός. . . ."

[ὁ υἱός μου, *my son* ὁ ἀγαπητός, *the beloved*]

See Acknowledgments, page 356.



Youth with cow in a sacrificial procession

# 3

## Ο ΑΡΟΤΟΣ (α)

---



ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες τὸ ἄροτρον ἔλκουσιν.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

μένω, *I stay* (in one place);  
*I wait; I wait for*  
 πίπτω, *I fall*  
 προσχωρέω + dat., *I go toward,*  
*approach*  
 φησί(v), *postpositive enclitic,*  
*he/she says*

#### Noun

ὁ λίθος, *stone*

#### Pronouns

αὐτό, *it*  
 αὐτόν, *him; it*

#### Adjectives

αἷτιος, *responsible (for); to*  
*blame*

δυνατός, *possible*

μέγας, *big, large; great*

#### Preposition

ἐκ, ἐξ *before words beginning*  
*with vowels + gen., out of*

#### Adverbs

ἀθίς, *again*  
 δεῦρο, *here, i.e., hither*  
 ἔτι, *still*

οὐκέτι, *no longer*

#### Particle and Conjunction

τε . . . καί or τε καί, *the τε is*  
*postpositive and enclitic, both*  
 . . . and

#### Expression

ὦ Ζεῦ, *O Zeus*

ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον, ὁ δὲ Ξανθίᾱς σπείρει τὸ σπέρμα. ἀλλὰ ἰδού, μένουσιν οἱ βόες καὶ οὐκέτι ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον. ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τοὺς βοῦς καλεῖ καί, “σπεύδετε, ὦ βόες,” φησὶν· “μὴ μένετε.” οἱ δὲ βόες ἔτι μένουσιν. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις, “τί μένετε, ὦ βόες;” φησὶν, καὶ βλέπει 5

πρὸς τὸ ἄροτρον, καὶ ἰδοὺ, λίθος ἐμποδίζει αὐτό. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις λαμβάνει τὸν λίθον ἀλλ' οὐκ αἶρει αὐτόν· μέγας γάρ ἐστιν. καλεῖ οὖν τὸν δοῦλον καί, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ Ξανθίᾱ,” φησὶν, “καὶ συλλάμβανε· λίθος γὰρ μέγας τὸ ἄροτρον ἐμποδίζει, οἱ δὲ βόες μένουσιν.”

10

[ἔλκουσι, (they) are dragging σπείρει, is sowing τὸ σπέρμα, the seed ἰδοὺ, look! ἐμποδίζει, is obstructing]

ὁ οὖν Ξανθίᾱς βραδέως προσχωρεῖ ἀλλ' οὐ συλλαμβάνει· βλέπει γὰρ πρὸς τὸν λίθον καί, “μέγας ἐστὶν ὁ λίθος, ὃ δέσποτα,” φησὶν· “ἰδοὺ, οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν αἶρειν αὐτόν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “μὴ ἄργος ἴσθι,” φησὶν, “ἀλλὰ συλλάμβανε. δυνατόν γάρ ἐστιν αἶρειν τὸν λίθον.” ἅμα οὖν ὃ τε δεσπότης καὶ ὁ δοῦλος αἴρουσι τὸν λίθον καὶ φέρουσιν αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.

15

[ἅμα, together]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ φέρουσιν αὐτόν, πταίει ὁ Ξανθίᾱς καὶ καταβάλλει τὸν λίθον· ὁ δὲ λίθος πίπτει πρὸς τὸν τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος πόδα. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις στενάζει καί, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” φησὶν, “φεῦ τοῦ ποδός· λάμβανε τὸν λίθον, ὃ ἀνόητε, καὶ αἶρε αὐτόν καὶ μὴ οὕτω σκαιὸς ἴσθι.” ὁ δὲ Ξανθίᾱς, “τί οὕτω χαλεπὸς εἶ, ὃ δέσποτα,” φησὶν· “οὐ γὰρ αἵτιός εἰμι ἐγώ· μέγας γάρ ἐστιν ὁ λίθος, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν αὐτὸν φέρειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “μὴ φλυᾶρει, ὃ μαστιγίᾱ, ἀλλ' αἶρε τὸν λίθον καὶ ἔκφερε ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.” αὐθις οὖν αἴρουσι τὸν λίθον καὶ μόλις ἐκφέρουσιν αὐτόν ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες οὐκέτι μένουσιν ἀλλὰ ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον.

20

25

[ἐν ᾧ, while πταίει, stumbles καταβάλλει, drops πρὸς τὸν τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος πόδα, upon Dicaeopolis's foot στενάζει, groans φεῦ τοῦ ποδός, oh, my poor foot! ὃ ἀνόητε, you fool σκαιὸς, clumsy φλυᾶρει, talk nonsense! ὃ μαστιγίᾱ, you rogue (deserving of a whipping) μόλις, with difficulty]

## WORD STUDY

1. What does *lithograph* mean? What does γράφω mean?
2. What is a *monolith*? What does μόνος mean?
3. What does *megalithic* mean?
4. What is a *megaphone*? What does ἡ φωνή mean?

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: 3rd Person Plural, Imperatives, and Infinitives

- a. In Chapter 2 you learned the 1st, 2nd, and 3rd person singular indicative forms of λύω, φιλέω, and εἰμί. Here are the 3rd person plural indicative forms:

**Stem:** λῡ-, *loosen, loose*

**3rd plural** λῡ-ουσι(ν) *they loosen, are loosening, do loosen*

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

**3rd plural** φιλέ-ουσι(ν) > φιλοῦσι(ν) *they love, are loving, do love*

**Stem:** ἐσ-, *be*

**3rd plural** εἰσί(ν)\* *they are*

\*enclitic

Locate twelve 3rd person plural verb forms in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter.

- b. In Chapter 2 you learned some forms of the *imperative* mood. These were the singular forms, used to address a command to one person:

σπεῦδε *hurry!*

φίλει *love!*

ἵσθι *be!*

έλθέ *come! go!*

Note the accent of ἐλθέ, which is irregular.

In the reading at the beginning of this chapter you have met plural forms of the imperative (see also Chapter 2β, lines 15–16), used to address a command to more than one person (or animal!). The plurals of the imperatives given above are:

σπεύδετε

φιλέ-ετε > φιλεῖτε

ἔστε

ἔλθετε

Note the accent of ἔλθετε; compare ἐλθέ above.



Locate two plural imperatives in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter. To whom (or what) are the commands addressed?

- c. The *infinitive* is the form of the verb that we create in English by using the word *to*. Greek forms the infinitive by use of an ending:

**Stem:** λύ-, *loosen, loose*

**Infinitive**      λύ-ειν      *to loosen, to be loosening*

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

**Infinitive**      φιλέ-ειν > φιλεῖν      *to love, to be loving*

**Stem:** ἔσ-, *be*

**Infinitive**      ἔσ- + -ναι > εἶναι      *to be*

Locate three infinitives in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter.

### Exercise 3α

Copy the first five of the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, IMP, or INF for infinitive above the appropriate words (do not label adverbs, conjunctions, particles, words in prepositional phrases or the exclamatory ἰδοῦ). Then translate all of the sentences.

- οἱ βόες οὐκέτι ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον.
- ὁ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλος προσχωροῦσι καὶ βλέπουσι πρὸς τὸ ἄροτρον.
- ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, "ἰδοῦ," φησὶν· "λίθος μέγας τὸ ἄροτρον ἐμποδίζει.
- "αἶρε τὸν λίθον καὶ ἔκφερε ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ."
- ὁ δὲ δοῦλος, "ἰδοῦ," φησὶν· "μέγας ἐστὶν ὁ λίθος· οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν αἶρειν αὐτόν."
- ὁ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλος τὸν λίθον αἶρουν καὶ ἐκφέρουσιν ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
- μὴ μένετε, ὦ βόες, ἀλλὰ σπεύδετε.
- οἱ βόες οὐκέτι μένουσιν ἀλλὰ τὸ ἄροτρον αὐθις ἔλκουσιν.

### Exercise 3β

Translate into Greek:

- The oxen are sleeping in the field.
- Come here and drive out (*use ἐξελαύνω*)\* the oxen, slaves (ὁ δοῦλοι).\*\*

\* I.e., use the correct form of the word given in parentheses.

\*\* I.e., use the words given in parentheses without changing them.

- They take the goad (τὸ κέντρον) and slowly approach the oxen (τοῖς βουσί(ν)).



The men worked most of the day in the fields, and no doubt in the evenings they spent their time in the wineshop in the agora or marketplace, discussing farming and politics with their friends. Life was enlivened by a succession of religious festivals. An inscription from the deme of Ercheia records a list of over fifty public sacrifices performed annually, and a public sacrifice usually entailed a public feast. In the winter, at the festival of the Rural Dionysia, touring companies from Athens even brought plays out to the demes. There were also private functions performed with traditional rituals, especially celebrations of birth, marriage, and death.

The farmer's horizon was by no means bounded by the deme. When he produced a surplus of any product such as wine or olives, he would go to Athens to sell it and to buy necessities he could not produce himself. There were religious festivals at regular intervals throughout the year at Athens (see Chapter 10), which he could attend with his wife and family; these included musical, dramatic, and athletic competitions.

There were important political functions that, as an Athenian citizen, the farmer was bound to perform. Forty times a year there were regular meetings of the Athenian Assembly, attended by all adult male citizens. The farmer would in fact have been prevented by his work from attending all of these, but he would certainly have gone to some of them. Every year the assembly of the deme chose representatives for the Council of 500, which was the executive committee of the Assembly. Councilors had to be over thirty years old, and no man could serve more than twice in his lifetime. It has been calculated that sooner or later nearly every farmer would have to take his turn in this office. This might involve residence in the city since the Council met every day.

Lastly, the farmers provided the heavy armed infantry, the *hoplites* (ὁπλίται), of the army. On reaching manhood they would have to do military training, since fighting in a hoplite line involved much practice and good discipline. In the fourth century every citizen did two years military service from the age of eighteen and thereafter was liable to be called up in an emergency.

At the end of the first year of the great war between Athens and Sparta (about a year after our story begins), the Athenian leader Pericles made a funeral oration over those who had been killed in the war. Most of his speech was devoted to praise of the ideals of Athenian democracy for which they had died. In the course of this he says: "The same people [i.e., the whole citizen body] are concerned not only with their domestic affairs but also with politics [i.e., the affairs of the city]; and although employed in different occupations, they are adequately informed on political matters. We alone consider a man who plays no part in these not as one who minds his own business but as useless" (Thucydides 2.40). The farmer's life under the Athenian democracy, despite primitive physical conditions, was far from drab.

# Ο ΑΡΟΤΟΣ (β)



“οὐ δυνατόν ἐστίν, ὦ δέσποτα, τοσούτους λίθους ἐκφέρειν.”

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

λείπω, *I leave*

λύω, *I loosen, loose*

### Nouns

τὸ δείπνον, *dinner*

ὁ υἱὸς ἢ παῖς (ὦ παῖ), *boy; girl; son; daughter; child*

ὁ πατήρ (τὸν πατέρα, ὦ πάτερ), *father*

### Pronoun

σύ, *sing., you*

### Adjectives

ἀνδρεῖος, *brave*

πολλοί, *many*

τοσούτος, *so great; pl., so great; so many*

### Preposition

ἐν + *dat., in; on*

### Adverb

μηκέτι + *imperative, don't . . . any longer!*

### Conjunction

ἐπεὶ, *when*

### Proper Name

ὁ Φίλιππος, *Philip*

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ προσχωρεῖ ὁ Φίλιππος· ὁ Φίλιππός ἐστιν ὁ τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος υἱός, παῖς μέγας τε καὶ ἀνδρεῖος· φέρει δὲ τὸ δείπνον πρὸς τὸν πατέρα. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσβαίνει, τὸν πατέρα καλεῖ καὶ λέγει· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ πάτερ· ἰδοὺ, τὸ δείπνον φέρω. μηκέτι οὖν πόνει ἀλλὰ κάθιζε καὶ δεῖπνεi.”

5

[ἐν . . . τούτῳ, *meanwhile* ὁ τοῦ Δικαιοπόλιδος υἱός, *Dicaeopolis's son* δεῖπνεi, *eat!*]

ὁ οὖν πατήρ λείπει τὸ ἄροτρον καὶ καλεῖ τὸν δοῦλον. καθίζουσιν οὖν ἅμα καὶ δειπνοῦσιν. μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “μένε, ὦ παῖ,” φησὶν, “καὶ συλλάμβανε. φέρε τὰ σπέρμα καὶ σπείρε. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ξανθιά, σκάπτε τοὺς λίθους καὶ ἔκφερε ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ. πολλοὶ γάρ εἰσιν οἱ λίθοι καὶ μόλις δυνατόν ἐστιν ἄροῦν.” ὁ 10 δὲ Ξανθιάς, “ἀλλ’ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστὶ τοσούτους λίθους ἐκφέρειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “μὴ φλυᾶρει, ὦ Ξανθιά, ἀλλὰ πόνει.” πονοῦσιν οὖν ὁ τε πατήρ καὶ ὁ παῖς καὶ ὁ δοῦλος. τέλος δὲ καταδύνει μὲν ὁ ἥλιος, οἱ δὲ ἄνθρωποι οὐκέτι πονοῦσιν ἀλλὰ λῦουσι μὲν τοὺς βοῦς, τὸ δὲ ἄροτρον λείπουσιν ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καὶ πρὸς τὸν οἶκον βραδέως 15 βαδίζουσιν.

[μετὰ, after σκάπτε, dig! μόλις, with difficulty, scarcely ἄροῦν, to plow τέλος, adv., finally καταδύνει, sets]

## WORD BUILDING

Here are more verbs with prepositional prefixes. Give the meaning of each:

1. εἰσπίπτω 2. ἐκπίπτω 3. εἰσάγω 4. προσάγω 5. προσβλέπω

## GRAMMAR

### 2. Articles, Adjectives, and Nouns; Singular and Plural, All Cases

In Chapter 2 you learned the singular forms of masculine and neuter articles, adjectives, and nouns. Here are the singulars and plurals:

	Masculine			Neuter		
<b>Nominative</b>	ὁ	καλὸς	ἄγρός	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Genitive</b>	τοῦ	καλοῦ	ἀγροῦ	τοῦ	καλοῦ	δένδρου
<b>Dative</b>	τῷ	καλῷ	ἀγρῷ	τῷ	καλῷ	δένδρῳ
<b>Accusative</b>	τὸν	καλὸν	ἄγρόν	τὸ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	καλὲ	ἀγρέ	ὦ	καλὸν	δένδρον
<b>Nominative</b>	οἱ	καλοὶ	ἄγροί	τὰ	καλὰ	δένδρα
<b>Genitive</b>	τῶν	καλῶν	ἀγρῶν	τῶν	καλῶν	δένδρων
<b>Dative</b>	τοῖς	καλοῖς	ἀγροῖς	τοῖς	καλοῖς	δένδροις
<b>Accusative</b>	τούς	καλοὺς	ἀγρούς	τὰ	καλὰ	δένδρα
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	καλοὶ	ἄγροί	ὦ	καλὰ	δένδρα

Note:

1. In the neuter singular the nominative, accusative, and vocative all end in -ov; in the plural these cases all end in -α. The other neuter case endings are the same as for the masculine.
2. The genitive and dative, singular and plural, of the definite article have circumflex accents.
3. When adjectives and nouns of the type seen above are accented on the final syllable in the nominative case (e.g., καλός and ἀγρός), they change that accent to a circumflex in the genitive and dative, singular and plural (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, page 20).

### 3. Accent Shifting

Note what happens with the accents in the nouns ἄνθρωπος and οἶκος:

<b>Nominative</b>	ὁ	ἄνθρωπος	ὁ	οἶκος
<b>Genitive</b>	τοῦ	ἀνθρώπου	τοῦ	οἴκου
<b>Dative</b>	τῷ	ἀνθρώπῳ	τῷ	οἴκῳ
<b>Accusative</b>	τὸν	ἄνθρωπον	τὸν	οἶκον
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	ἄνθρωπε	ὦ	οἶκε
<b>Nominative</b>	οἱ	ἄνθρωποι	οἱ	οἶκοι
<b>Genitive</b>	τῶν	ἀνθρώπων	τῶν	οἴκων
<b>Dative</b>	τοῖς	ἀνθρώποις	τοῖς	οἴκοις
<b>Accusative</b>	τούς	ἀνθρώπους	τούς	οἴκους
<b>Vocative</b>	ὦ	ἄνθρωποι	ὦ	οἶκοι

The acute accent can normally stand on the third syllable from the end of a word only when the final syllable has a short vowel (not a long vowel or a diphthong), thus, ἄνθρωπος, ἄνθρωπον, and ἄνθρωπε. The accent of nouns and adjectives is persistent (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, pages 20–21), which means that the accent remains as it is in the nominative case unless forced to change because of one of several rules. One such rule is that when the final syllable of a word with its accent on the third syllable from the end in the nominative, such as ἄνθρωπος, becomes long (i.e., has a long vowel or a diphthong), the accent shifts one syllable toward the end of the word, thus the genitive and dative singulars, ἀνθρώπου and ἀνθρώπῳ, and the genitive, dative, and accusative plurals. However, the masculine nominative plural ending -οι, although a diphthong, is counted as *short* in determining the accent, and therefore the nominative plural is ἄνθρωποι.

If a word is accented on the next to the last syllable and that syllable is long and the final syllable is short, then the accent is a circumflex, as in οἶκος, οἶκον, etc. When the final syllable becomes long, the accent changes to an acute, as in οἶκου, οἶκῳ, οἴκων, οἴκοις, and οἴκους. Note οἶκοι.

What is said above about οἶκος applies to verbs as well. Thus we have σπεύδει with an acute accent but the imperative σπεύδε with a circumflex, since the final syllable is now short.

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of the forms of ὁ ἀνδρεῖος δοῦλος and of τὸ μακρὸν ἄροτρον.

### Exercise 3γ

*Give the correct form of the article to complete the following phrases:*

1. \_\_\_ ἀνθρώπους
2. \_\_\_ δοῦλοι
3. ἐν \_\_\_ οἴκοις
4. ἐκ \_\_\_ ἀγρῶν
5. πρὸς \_\_\_ δένδρα
6. \_\_\_ Ἀθηναίων
7. \_\_\_ ἄροτρον
8. \_\_\_ χρόνον
9. \_\_\_ πόνοι
10. \_\_\_ δούλους

### Exercise 3δ

*Complete the following sentences by giving correct endings to the verbs and nouns, and then translate:*

1. οἱ δοῦλ\_\_\_ πον\_\_\_ ἐν τοῖς ἀγρ\_\_\_.
2. οἱ ἄνθρωπ\_\_\_ σπεύδ\_\_\_ πρὸς τὸν οἶκ\_\_\_.
3. ὁ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλ\_\_\_ μέν\_\_\_ ἐν τ\_\_\_ ἀγρῶ.
4. λείπ\_\_\_ τὰ ἄροτρ\_\_\_, ὃ δοῦλοι, ἐν τῷ ἀγρ\_\_\_.
5. αἶρ\_\_\_ τοὺς λίθ\_\_\_, ὃ δοῦλοι, καὶ ἐκφέρ\_\_\_ ἐκ τῶν ἀγρ\_\_\_.
6. οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι τοὺς λίθους αἶρ\_\_\_ καὶ ἐκφέρ\_\_\_.

### Exercise 3ε

*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

1. ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς, οἱ δὲ βόες οὐκέτι ἔλκουσι τὸ ἄροτρον.  
The master calls the slaves, but the slaves do not drive the oxen.
2. μὴ καθίζετε ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ, ὦ παῖδες, ἀλλὰ ἔλθετε δεῦρο καὶ συλλαμβάνετε.  
Don't stay in the fields, boys, but walk to the house and sleep.
3. οἱ παῖδες ἰσχυροὶ εἰσιν· λίθους γὰρ μεγάλους φέρουσιν.  
The slaves are lazy; for they are no longer working.
4. λαμβάνετε τὰ ἄροτρα, ὦ δοῦλοι, καὶ σπεύδετε πρὸς τοὺς ἀγρούς.  
Loosen the oxen, slaves, and leave the plows in the field.

5. μὴ ὀκνεῖτε (*shirk*), ὦ παῖδες. ἀνδρεῖοι ἔστε.  
Don't wait, boys. Don't be so lazy.

## ΟΙ ΒΟΕΣ

*Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:*

Ὁ τε δεσπότης καὶ ὁ δοῦλος βαδίζουσι πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν. ὁ μὲν δοῦλος τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει, ὁ δὲ δεσπότης ἐλαύνει τοὺς βοῦς. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ ἀγρῷ προσχωροῦσιν, οἱ βόες οὐκέτι βαίνουνσιν. ὁ οὖν δεσπότης καλεῖ αὐτοὺς καί, “μὴ μένετε, ὦ βόες,” φησὶν, “ἀλλὰ σπεύδετε εἰς τὸν ἀγρόν.” οἱ δὲ βόες ἔτι μένουσιν. ὁ οὖν δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον καλεῖ καί, “ἔλθε δεῦρο, ὦ Ξανθίᾱ,” φησὶν, “καὶ συλλάμβανε. οἱ γὰρ βόες μένουσιν, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν ἐλαύνειν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὸν ἀγρόν.” ὁ μὲν οὖν δοῦλος προσχωρεῖ καί, “ἀλλὰ δυνατόν ἐστιν,” φησὶν. “ἰδοῦ,” καὶ κεντεῖ τοὺς βοῦς. οἱ δὲ οὐκέτι μένουσιν ἀλλὰ σπεύδουσιν εἰς τὸν ἀγρόν.

[αὐτοὺς, *them* κεντεῖ, *he goads* οἱ δέ, *and they*]

1. What are the master and slave doing?
2. What happens when they approach the field?
3. What does the master do and with what result?
4. What does the master do in his helplessness?
5. What does the slave do that the master did not do? With what result?

### Exercise 3ζ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. The master hurries into the field.
2. He looks at (toward) the field and says, “So many stones are in the field! It is not possible to plow (ἀροῦν).”
3. “Come here, slave, and carry the stones out of the field.”
4. But the slave says, “It is not possible to carry so many stones out of the field. So *you* help!”



## Classical Greek

Menander

Menander of Athens (344—ca. 292 B.C.) wrote over 100 comedies of the type now called New Comedy, concerned with the every-day life of ordinary Athenians. One of his most famous sayings is the following (*Twice a Swindler*, fragment 4):

ὃν οἱ θεοὶ φιλοῦσιν, ἀποθνήσκει νέος.

[ὃν, (He) whom οἱ θεοὶ, the gods ἀποθνήσκει, dies νέος, young]

## New Testament Greek

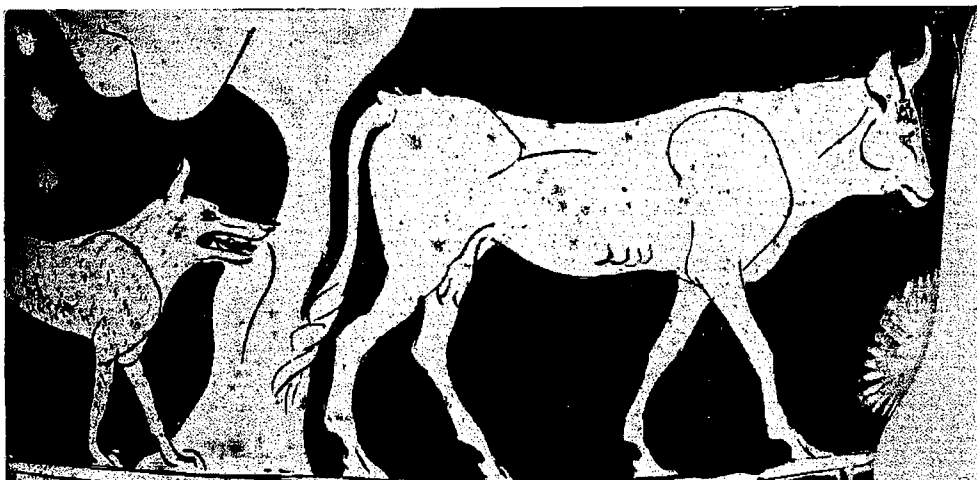
Luke 6.46

Early in his ministry Jesus said to his disciples:

“τί δέ με καλεῖτε, ‘κύριε, κύριε,’ καὶ οὐ ποιεῖτε ἃ λέγω;”

[με, me κύριε, Lord ποιεῖτε, you do ἃ, (the things) that, what]

The passage continues with the contrast between the man who hears Jesus' words and acts on them, like a man who builds a house with solid foundations, and the man who hears and does not act, like a man who builds his house without foundations.



Dog and cow in a field with a tree

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ (α)



αἱ κόραι πληροῦσι τὰς ὑδρίδας πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀκούω *I listen*; + gen. of person, acc. of thing, *I listen to*;

*I hear*

ἐθέλω + infin., *I am willing*;

*I wish*

ἔχω, *I have*; *I hold*

θεωρέω, *I watch*; *I see*

ποιέω, *I make*; *I do*

χαίρω, *I rejoice*

χαῖρε; pl., χαίρετε,  
*greetings!*

### Nouns

ὁ ἄγγελος, *messenger*

ὁ ἀνὴρ (τὸν ἄνδρα, ὁ ἄνερ),  
*man*; *husband*

ἡ γυνή (ἡ γύναι, αἱ γυναῖκες,  
τὰς γυναῖκας), *woman*; *wife*

ἡ ἑορτή, *festival*

ἡ θυγάτηρ (ἡ θύγατερ), *daughter*

ὁ καιρὸς, *time*; *right time*

ἡ κρήνη, *spring*

ἡ μήτηρ, *mother*

ἡ ὑδρία, *water jar*

ὁ χορὸς, *dance*; *chorus*

### Adjectives

ἄργος [= ἀεργός = ἀ-, *not* + ἐργ-,  
*work*], ἄργόν,\* *not working*,  
*idle*, *lazy*

φίλος, φίλη, φίλον, *dear*; as  
noun, ὁ φίλος or ἡ φίλη, *friend*

### Prepositions

ἀπὸ + gen., *from*

ἀπο-, as a prefix in compound  
verbs, *away*

πρὸς + dat., at, near, by,\*\*  
+ acc., *to*; *toward*

### Adverbs

ἰδοῦ, *look!*

καί, *even*; *also*, *too*

μάλα, *very*

μόλις, *with difficulty*; *scarcely*;  
*reluctantly*

πρῶτον, *first*

ταχέως, *quickly*, *swiftly*

### Particle

ἄρα: introduces a question

### Expression

ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have in*  
*mind*; *I intend*

*Proper Names*

τὰ Διονύσια, *the festival of Dionysus*

τὰ Διονύσια ποιῶ, *I celebrate the festival of Dionysus*

ἡ Μέλιττα [= *bee*], *Melissa*  
(daughter of Dicaeopolis and Myrrhine)

ἡ Μυρρίνη [= *myrtle*, a shrub or

tree], *Myrrhine* (wife of Dicaeopolis)

\*Compound adjectives do not have separate feminine forms; the masculine serves for feminine as well; thus, ἀργός can be either masculine or feminine.

\*\*Note that new meanings of prepositions are underlined and that previously given meanings are repeated.

τῇ δὲ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἀνατέλλει ὁ ἥλιος, ἡ γυνὴ τὸν ἄνδρα καλεῖ καί, “ἐπαίρε σεαυτὸν ὦ ἄνερ,” φησὶν· “ὁ γὰρ ἥλιος ἀνατέλλει, ὁ δὲ δοῦλος ἤδη ἄγει τοὺς βοῦς πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν, ἐγὼ δὲ καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ ἐν νῶ ἔχομεν βαδίζειν πρὸς τὴν κρήνην. ἐπαίρε σεαυτὸν· 5  
καιρὸς γάρ ἐστι βαδίζειν πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις μάλα κάμνει καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει ἐπαίρειν ἑαυτὸν· λέγει οὖν· “μὴ χαλεπὴ ἴσθι, ὦ γύναι· μάλα γὰρ κάμνω καὶ ἐθέλω καθεύδειν.” ἡ δὲ γυνή, “ἀλλ’ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν,” φησὶν, “ἔτι καθεύδειν· καιρὸς γάρ ἐστι πονεῖν. ἐπαίρε σεαυτὸν, ὦ ἀργέ.”

[τῇ . . . ὑστεραίᾳ, *the next day* ἀνατέλλει, *is rising* ἐπαίρε σεαυτὸν, *lift yourself = get up!* κάμνει, *is tired* ἑαυτὸν, *himself*]

ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις μόλις ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν καὶ βαδίζει πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν, ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη καὶ ἡ Μέλιττα πρὸς τὴν κρήνην βαδίζουσιν (ἡ Μέλιττα θυγάτηρ ἐστίν, κόρη μάλα καλὴ). ἡ τε οὖν μήτηρ καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ βραδέως βαδίζουσιν· ὑδρίᾱς γὰρ φέρουσιν· μεγάλαι δ’ εἰσὶν αἱ ὑδρίαι, ὥστε οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι σπεύδειν. 10

[κόρη, *girl* ὥστε, *so that*]

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ κρήνῃ προσχωροῦσιν, ἰδοῦ, ἄλλαι γυναῖκες ἤδη πάρεισι καὶ τὰς ὑδρίᾱς πληροῦσιν. ἡ οὖν Μυρρίνη τὰς γυναῖκας καλεῖ καί, “χαίρετε, ὦ φίλοι,” φησὶν· “ἄρα ἤδη πληροῦτε τὰς ὑδρίᾱς;” αἱ δὲ λέγουσιν· “χαῖρε καὶ σύ· ναί, ἤδη πληροῦμεν τὰς ὑδρίᾱς· πρῶ γὰρ πάρεσμεν. ἀλλ’ ἐλθὲ δεῦρο ταχέως καὶ ἄκουε· ἄγγελος γὰρ ἔκει ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄστεως· λέγει δὲ ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὰ Διονύσια ποιοῦσιν. ἡμεῖς 20

οὖν ἐν νῶ ἔχομεν βαδίζειν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ· τοὺς γὰρ χοροὺς ἐθέλομεν θεωρεῖν καὶ τοὺς ἀγῶνας καὶ τὰ δράματα. ἄρα ἐθέλεις καὶ σὺ τὴν ἑορτὴν θεωρεῖν;

[ἄλλαι, *other* πληροῦσιν, *are filling* πληροῦτε, *are you (pl.) filling?* αἱ δὲ, *and they* ναί, *yes* πρῶ, *early in the day* ἦκει, *has come* τοῦ ἄστεως, *the city* ὅτι, *that* ἡμεῖς, *we* τοὺς ἀγῶνας, *the contests* τὰ δράματα, *the plays*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

- |                  |                   |
|------------------|-------------------|
| 1. acoustics     | 5. tachometer     |
| 2. angel         | 6. philanthropist |
| 3. gynecology    | 7. polyandry      |
| 4. choreographer | 8. misogynist     |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: All Persons, Singular and Plural

The reading passage at the beginning of this chapter introduces 1st and 2nd person plural verb forms, so you have now met verbs in all three persons, singular and plural. The following chart contains imperatives and infinitives as well. Be sure to learn all of the following forms thoroughly:

**Stem:** λύ-, *loosen, loose*

Indicative		Imperative	Infinitive
Singular			
1st	λύ-ω		λύειν
2nd	λύ-εις	λύε	
3rd	λύ-ει		
Plural			
1st	λύ-ομεν		
2nd	λύ-ετε	λύετε	
3rd	λύ-ουσι(ν)		

**Stem:** φιλε-, *love*

	<b>Indicative</b>		<b>Imperative</b>	<b>Infinitive</b>
<b>Singular</b>				
<b>1st</b>	φιλέ-ω >	φιλῶ		φιλέ-ειν > φιλεῖν
<b>2nd</b>	φιλέ-εις >	φιλεῖς	φίλε-ε > φίλει	
<b>3rd</b>	φιλέ-ει >	φιλεῖ		
<b>Plural</b>				
<b>1st</b>	φιλέ-ομεν >	φιλοῦμεν		
<b>2nd</b>	φιλέ-ετε >	φιλεῖτε	φιλέ-ετε > φιλεῖτε	
<b>3rd</b>	φιλέ-ουσι(v) >	φιλοῦσι(v)		

**Stem:** ἐσ- (with some changes in some of the forms), *be*

<b>Singular</b>				
<b>1st</b>	εἰμί*			εἶναι
<b>2nd</b>	εἶ		ἴσθι	
<b>3rd</b>	ἐστί(v)*			
<b>Plural</b>				
<b>1st</b>	ἐσμέν*			
<b>2nd</b>	ἐστέ*		ἔστε	
<b>3rd</b>	εἰσί(v)*			

\*enclitic

N.B. Verbs with stems ending in -ε- (e.g., φιλε-) are called *contract verbs*, because the vowel of the stem contracts with the vowel of the ending (remember that ει and ου represent long vowels; see page xiv). You have observed this with verbs such as φιλέω from the beginning of the course. The following rules for contractions may be observed:

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. ε + ω > ω   | 4. ε + ο > ου  |
| 2. ε + ει > ει | 5. ε + ου > ου |
| 3. ε + ε > ει  |                |

The reading passage above contains the following -ε- contract verbs: καλεῖ, προσχωροῦσιν, and θεωρεῖν. Locate all examples of these verbs in the reading.

The reading passage also contains examples of a contract verb of another type, with stem ending in -ο-, namely, the verb πληρόω, *I fill*. Locate three examples of this verb in the reading. For another example of a verb with its stem in -ο-, see ἀροῦτε (2β:16). There are few verbs of this type, and their forms need not be learned now but will be presented in Chapter 15.

A third type of contract verb, with stem ending in  $-\alpha-$ , e.g., τιμάω, *I honor*, will be presented in Chapter 5.

### Exercise 4a

Make two photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present indicative, imperative, and infinitive forms of ἔχω and θεωρέω. Keep these charts for reference.

## 2. Declensions of Nouns and Adjectives

Greek nouns and adjectives are divided into three groups or *declensions*. In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter are three feminine nouns (ἡ κρήνη, ἡ ὕδρις, and ἡ Μέλιτις), which are said to belong to the *1st declension*, which has nouns with stems that originally ended in  $-\tilde{\alpha}$  or  $-\tilde{\alpha}$  (this group of nouns is therefore sometimes called the *alpha declension*). In nouns like ἡ κρήνη, the original  $\tilde{\alpha}$  of the stem has been changed to  $\eta$  in the singular in Attic Greek.

In Chapters 2 and 3 you saw charts of masculine and neuter nouns and adjectives (καλὸς ἀγρός and καλὸν δένδρον) that are said to belong to the *2nd or omicron declension*.

Nouns such as ἀνὴρ, γυνή, θυγάτηρ, and μήτηρ, which you have met in the reading at the beginning of this chapter, are said to belong to the *3rd declension*. The endings of 3rd declension nouns will be presented in Chapter 7; for the time being you can identify their case and number by observing the article that accompanies them.

## 3. Feminine Nouns and Adjectives of the 1st Declension

Most nouns of the 1st declension are feminine in gender. It is convenient to divide them into the following four types (masculine nouns of the 1st declension will be presented in the second half of this chapter).

### Type 1: ἡ κρήνη

The original  $\tilde{\alpha}$  of the stem has been changed to  $\eta$  in the singular in Attic Greek:

	Singular			Plural		
<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	καλή	κρήνη	αἱ	καλαί	κρήναι
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	καλῆς	κρήνης	τῶν	καλῶν	κρηνῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	καλῇ	κρήνῃ	ταῖς	καλαῖς	κρήναις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν	καλήν	κρήνην	τὰς	καλὰς	κρήνας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	καλή	κρήνη	ὦ	καλαί	κρήναι

Note:

1. The genitive and dative, singular and plural, of the feminine definite article have circumflex accents, just as do those forms of the masculine and neuter (see Chapter 3, Grammar 2, pages 31–32).
2. When adjectives and nouns of the 1st declension are accented on the final syllable in the nominative case (e.g., καλή), they change that accent to a circumflex in the genitive and dative, singular and plural (again, see Chapter 3, Grammar 2, pages 31–32, for the same thing with masculine and neuter adjectives and nouns).
3. The accent of nouns and adjectives is persistent (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, pages 20–21). However, in any Greek word, when the next to the last syllable is long and receives the accent and the final syllable is short, the next to the last syllable will have a circumflex instead of an acute accent (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32). The nominative plural ending -αι, although a diphthong, is counted as *short* in determining the accent, thus κρήναι has a circumflex accent. Remember that the nominative plural ending of masculine nouns and adjectives of the 2nd declension, -οι, is also counted as short (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32).
4. The genitive plural of all 1st declension nouns has a circumflex accent on the final syllable; the original -ᾶων ending contracted to -ῶν.

### Type 2: ἡ ὑδρία

After ε, ι, or ρ, the original -ᾶ of the stem was retained in Attic Greek:

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	ὑδρία	αἱ	ὑδρίαί
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	ὑδριᾶς	τῶν	ὑδριῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	ὑδρίᾳ	ταῖς	ὑδρίαῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	τήν	ὑδρίαν	τάς	ὑδρίας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	ὑδρία	ὦ	ὑδρίαί

The word κόρη, *girl*, is an exception to this rule; it has the same endings as κρήνη above.

### Type 3: ἡ μέλιττα

A third group consists of nouns ending in -ᾶ, as Μέλιττα; as a common noun meaning *bee*, this noun is declined as follows:

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	μέλιττα	αἱ	μέλιτται
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	μελίττης	τῶν	μελιττῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	μελίττῃ	ταῖς	μελίτταις
<b>Acc.</b>	τήν	μέλιτταν	τάς	μελίττας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	μέλιττα	ὦ	μέλιτται

Note the forms with η in the genitive and dative singular.

**Type 4: ἡ μάχαιρᾶ**

If the -ᾶ is preceded by ε, ι, or ρ, long α appears in the genitive and dative, as in μάχαιρᾶ, *knife*:

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ	μάχαιρᾶ	αἱ	μάχαιραι
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς	μαχαίρᾶς	τῶν	μαχαίρων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ	μαχαίρᾳ	ταῖς	μαχαίραις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν	μάχαιρᾶν	τὰς	μαχαίρας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	μάχαιρᾶ	ὦ	μάχαιραι

Note that all 1st declension nouns decline alike in the plural.

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of the forms of ἡ ἑορτή, *festival*; ἡ οἰκία, *house*; ἡ θάλαττα, *sea*; and ἡ μοῖρα, *fate*.

**Exercise 4β**

*Give the genitive of the following phrases:*

- |                 |                     |
|-----------------|---------------------|
| 1. ἡ Μυρρίνη    | 5. ἡ καλὴ κρήνη     |
| 2. ἡ Μέλιττα    | 6. ὁ μακρὸς πόνος   |
| 3. ἡ καλὴ ὕδριᾶ | 7. ἡ καλὴ μέλιττα   |
| 4. ἡ καλὴ ἑορτή | 8. τὸ καλὸν δένδρον |

**Exercise 4γ**

*Supply the correct form of the definite article in the following phrases:*

- \_\_\_ καλαὶ γυναῖκες
- ἐν \_\_\_ ἀγρῷ
- πρὸς \_\_\_ κρήνη
- \_\_\_ ἄλλων ἀνδρῶν
- ἐκ \_\_\_ γῆς (*earth*)
- ἐν \_\_\_ ὕδρῃαις
- \_\_\_ μεγάλα δένδρα
- \_\_\_ ἄγγελοι

**Exercise 4δ**

*Copy the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, IMP, or INF above the appropriate words (do not label other words). Then put into the plural and translate:*

- ἡ κόρη ἄγει τὴν φίλην ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
- ἡ δούλη τὴν ὕδριᾶν φέρει πρὸς τὴν κρήνην.
- καλὴ ἐστὶν ἡ κόρη· ἄρ' οὐκ ἐθέλεις αὐτὴν (*her*) καλεῖν;



4. χαίρε, ὦ κόρη· ἄρα βαδίζεις πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν; (ἡ οἰκίᾱ, *house, home*)
5. ἐν νῶ ἔχω λείπειν τὴν ὑδρίαν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ καὶ συλλαμβάνειν.

### Exercise 4e

*Put into the singular and translate:*

1. αἱ φίλαι μένουσι πρὸς ταῖς κρήναις.
2. οἱ ἄνθρωποι φέρουσι τὰ ἄροτρα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν.
3. ἀκούετε, ὦ φίλοι· ἐν νῶ ἔχομεν βαδίζειν πρὸς τὰς οἰκίας.
4. τί (*what*) ποιεῖτε, ὦ δοῦλοι; μὴ οὕτω σκαιοὶ (*clumsy*) ἔστε.

## Women

When Pericles drew to the end of his funeral oration, he finally had a word for the widows of the dead: "If I should say a word on the duties of the wives who will now be widows, I will sum up the whole in a short piece of advice: your great glory is not to fall beneath the nature you have been given, and hers is the greatest glory who is least talked about among the men for praise or for blame." Women lived in the shadows of their men. This is clearly seen from their legal position; they were treated in law as minors, being under the tutelage of their fathers or guardians until they were married and thereafter under the tutelage of their husbands. They could not own property in their own right; they had no place in public life, no vote in the Assembly, and no seat on the juries.

Their life centered on the *oikos*, and here they were important and respected figures. The fourth century Athenian writer Xenophon in a work called *Oikonomikos* (which means "management of the *oikos*," not "economics" in its modern sense) gives this advice to a young bride:



Two girls, one holding a writing tablet

Your business will be to stay indoors and help to dispatch the servants who work outside, while supervising those who work indoors. You will receive incoming revenue and allocate it to any necessary expenditure; you will be responsible for any surplus and see that the allocation for the year's expenses is not spent in a month. When wool is delivered to you, you will see that garments are made for those who need them, and you will take care that the dried grain is kept fit for consumption. And there is another of your duties that I'm afraid may seem to you rather thankless—you will have to see that any of the servants who is ill gets proper treatment. (*Oikonomikos* 7.35–37)

The duties of a farmer's wife were similar, though instead of organizing slaves she had to do the work herself. The work was endless and gave women little leisure.

Marriages took place early; a girl might be betrothed at five and married at fifteen, and marriages were arranged by parents, often with considerations of property in mind.

Nevertheless, Athenian art shows us many scenes of contented domestic life, and inscriptions testify to happy marriages: "In this tomb lies Chaerestrates: her husband loved her while she was alive and grieved for her when she died" (G. Kaibel, *Epigrammata Graeca ex lapidibus collecta*, 44, 2–3, Piraëus, fourth or third century B.C.). The husband was his wife's protector and kept her safe from the dangers of life that lay outside the *oikos*. Even in the house she had no contact with men outside the family; if strangers called, she would retire to the women's quarters. In the opening scene of Euripides' tragedy, *Electra*, Electra is talking to women of the village outside her house, when two strange men appear. She immediately says to the women: "You flee down the path and I will take refuge in the house." Later her husband, a farmer, appears when she is talking to the men who claim to have brought news of her brother; he says: "Who are these strangers at our door? Why have they come to our country dwelling? Do they want me? (*to Electra*) It's a disgrace, you know, for a woman to stand around with young men."

But women's lives were not as confined as we have so far suggested. They attended the religious festivals in both deme and city, including, probably, the dramatic festivals. They had important functions in religious rites; they were priestesses in more than forty public cults, and they formed choirs and played a leading role in processions. Some of the most powerful figures in Greek tragedy are women, and all three of the great tragedians, especially Euripides, show deep insight into the character of women and portray them sympathetically. Despite the restrictions that hedged her around, the Athenian woman was no cipher. The sixth-century poet Semonides writes of the good woman:

The gods made her of honey, and blessed is the man who gets her. His property flourishes and is increased by her. She grows old with a husband she loves and who loves her, the mother of a handsome and reputable family. She stands out among all women, and a godlike beauty plays around

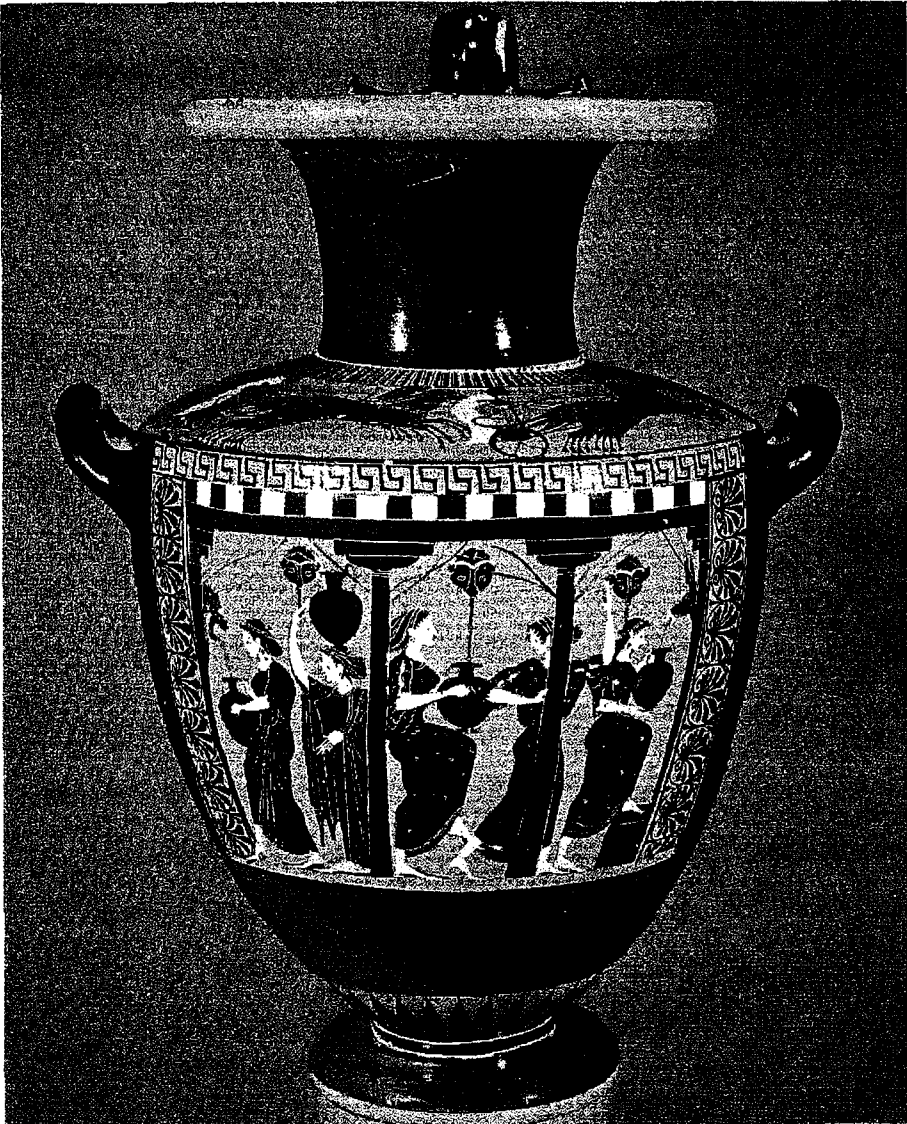
her. She takes no pleasure in sitting among women where they tell stories about love. (Semonides 7.83–91)

### Greek Wisdom

See page 70

καὶρὸν γνῶθι.

Πιττακός (of Mitylene)



Women drawing water at a fountain

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗ ΚΡΗΝΗ (β)



ἡ Μέλιττα, “οὐκ αἰτία ἐγώ,” φησὶν· “μεγάλη γάρ ἐστιν ἡ ὑδρίᾱ.”

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

πείθω, *I persuade*

στενάζω, *I groan*

### Noun

ἡ γῆ, *land; earth; ground*

ἡ ὁδός, *road; way; journey*

### Adjectives

ἄλλος, ἄλλη, ἄλλο, *other, another*

ῥάδιος, ῥαδίᾱ, ῥάδιον, *easy*

### Adverbs

ἀεί, *always*

μάλιστα, *most, most of all; very much; especially*

οἴκαδε, *homeward, to home*

### Expressions

ἐορτὴν ποιῶ, *I celebrate a festival*

τί; adv., *why?* pronoun, *what?*

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “τί λέγετε, ὦ φίλοι; ἄρα ἀληθῶς ἐορτὴν ποιοῦσιν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι; ἐγὼ μὲν μάλιστα ἐθέλω αὐτὴν θεωρεῖν· σὺ δέ, ὦ Μέλιττα, ἄρα καὶ σὺ ἐθέλεις θεωρεῖν; ἀλλ’ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν· χαλεπὸς γάρ ἐστιν ὁ ἀνήρ· ἀεὶ γὰρ πονεῖ καὶ σπανίως ἐθέλει ἰέναι πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.”

[ἀληθῶς, *truly, really* αὐτὴν, *it* σπανίως, *rarely* ἰέναι, *to go*]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ἀλλ’ οὐ μάλα χαλεπὸς ἐστιν ὁ πατήρ· ῥάδιον γάρ ἐστι πείθειν αὐτόν.” ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “μὴ οὕτω φλυᾶρει ἀλλὰ τὴν ὑδρίαν ταχέως πλήρου· καιρὸς γάρ ἐστιν οἴκαδε ἐπανιέναι.”

[φλυᾶρει, *talk nonsense* πλήρου, *fill!* ἐπανιέναι, *to come back, return*]

ἢ τε οὖν μήτηρ καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ τὰς ὑδρίᾱς ταχέως πληροῦσι καὶ οἴκαδε βαδίζουσιν. ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πταίει ἡ Μέλιττα καὶ καταβάλλει τὴν ὑδρίαν πρὸς τὴν γῆν καὶ θραύει αὐτήν. στενάζει οὖν καί, “οἴμοι,” 10  
 φησίν, “οὐκ αἰτίᾱ εἰμὶ ἐγώ· μεγάλη γάρ ἐστιν ἡ ὑδρίᾱ, καὶ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστι φέρειν αὐτήν.” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “τί λέγεις, ὦ θύγατερ; μὴ φλυᾶρει ἀλλὰ οἴκαδε σπεῦδε καὶ ἄλλην ὑδρίαν φέρε.”

[πταίει, *stumbles* καταβάλλει, *drops* θραύει, *breaks* οἴμοι, *alas!*]

ἡ μὲν οὖν Μέλιττα οἴκαδε σπεύδει, ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη βραδέως βαδίζει· 15  
 μεγάλη γάρ ἐστιν ἡ ὑδρίᾱ, καὶ ἡ Μυρρίνη οὐκ ἐθέλει καταβάλλειν αὐτήν.

## WORD BUILDING

*Deduce the meaning of the words at the right from your knowledge of those at the left:*

- |               |          |                                 |           |
|---------------|----------|---------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. ὁ χορός    | χορεύω   | 4. ὁ ἵππος ( <i>horse</i> )     | ἵππεύω    |
| 2. ὁ δοῦλος   | δουλεύω  | 5. ὁ κίνδυνος ( <i>danger</i> ) | κινδυνεύω |
| 3. τὸ ἄροτρον | ἀροτρεύω | 6. ὁ ἱατρός ( <i>doctor</i> )   | ἱατρεύω   |

## GRAMMAR

### 4. Masculine Nouns of the 1st Declension

Some nouns of the 1st declension are masculine in gender and end in -ης or -ᾱς in the nominative singular, in -ου in the genitive singular, and in -ᾱ or -ᾶ (or sometimes -η, not shown here) in the vocative singular. The ending -ᾱς occurs after stems ending in ε, ι, or ρ. Otherwise they have the same endings as κρήνη and ὑδρίᾱ. As examples, we give ὁ δεσπότης in the singular and plural and ὁ Ξανθίᾱς in the singular:

	Singular	Plural	Singular
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ δεσπότης	οἱ δεσπότες	ὁ Ξανθίᾱς
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ δεσπότη	τῶν δεσποτῶν	τοῦ Ξανθίου
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ δεσπότῃ	τοῖς δεσπότης	τῷ Ξανθίᾳ
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν δεσπότην	τούς δεσπότης	τὸν Ξανθίᾱν
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ δέσποτα	ὦ δεσπότες	ὦ Ξανθίᾱ

Remember that all 1st declension nouns have a circumflex accent on the final syllable of the genitive plural.

The accent of the vocative singular of ὁ δεσπότης is irregular in that it is not persistent, i.e., it does not stay on the same syllable as in the nominative. Usually the accent is persistent, as in the vocative of ὁ πολίτης, *citizen*, which is ὦ πολίτα.

Here is the full declension of ὁ νεανίας, *young man*, a 1st declension masculine noun like ὁ Ξανθίας above:

	Singular		Plural	
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ	νεανίας	οἱ	νεανίαι
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ	νεανίου	τῶν	νεανιῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ	νεανίᾳ	τοῖς	νεανίαις
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν	νεανίαν	τούς	νεανιάς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	νεανιᾶ	ὦ	νεανίαι

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of the forms of ὁ πολίτης, *citizen*, and of ὁ ἄργος νεανίας, *the lazy young man*.

### Exercise 4ζ

Locate all examples of the words ὁ δεσπότης and ὁ Ξανθίας in the stories in Chapters 2 and 3.

## 5. Feminine Nouns of the 2nd Declension

Some nouns of the 2nd declension decline like ἄγρός but are feminine in gender, e.g., ἡ ὁδός, *road; way; journey*, and ἡ νῆσος, *island*.

### Exercise 4η

Locate one example of the noun ἡ ὁδός in the reading passage above.

## 6. 1st and 2nd Declension Adjectives

Many Greek adjectives have 1st and 2nd declension endings, e.g., the adjective καλός, καλή, καλόν, *beautiful*, which we have shown along with the nouns ἄγρός, δένδρον, and κρήνη on pages 20, 31, and 40. Here are all the forms of this typical 1st and 2nd declension adjective:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	καλός	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά
<b>Gen.</b>	καλοῦ	καλῆς	καλοῦ	καλῶν	καλῶν	καλῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	καλῷ	καλῇ	καλῷ	καλοῖς	καλαῖς	καλοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	καλόν	καλήν	καλόν	καλούς	καλάς	καλά
<b>Voc.</b>	καλέ	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά

Note that adjectives with ε, ι, or ρ preceding -ος have feminine endings that show ᾱ instead of η in the singular (like the noun ἡ ὑδρίᾱ), e.g., ῥαδιος, ῥαδιᾶ, ῥαδιον:

<b>Nom.</b>	ῥαδιος	ῥαδιᾶ	ῥαδιον	ῥαδιοι	ῥαδιαι	ῥαδια
<b>Gen.</b>	ῥαδιου	ῥαδιᾶς	ῥαδιου	ῥαδιων	ῥαδιων	ῥαδιων
<b>Dat.</b>	ῥαδιῳ	ῥαδιᾷ	ῥαδιῳ	ῥαδιοις	ῥαδιαῖς	ῥαδιοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	ῥαδιον	ῥαδιᾶν	ῥαδιον	ῥαδιους	ῥαδιᾶς	ῥαδια
<b>Voc.</b>	ῥαδιε	ῥαδιᾶ	ῥαδιον	ῥαδιοι	ῥαδιαι	ῥαδια

Remember:

1. The accent of adjectives is persistent, i.e., it stays where it is in the nominative masculine singular unless forced to move.
2. 1st and 2nd declension adjectives with an acute accent on the ultima circumflex the genitive and dative singular and plural.
3. Unlike nouns of the 1st declension, these adjectives do not circumflex the ultima of the genitive plural (e.g., ῥαδιων) unless the accent is already on the ultima (e.g., καλων).

In future vocabulary lists adjectives with 1st and 2nd declension endings will be given in abbreviated form, e.g., καλός, -ή, -όν or ῥαδιος, -ᾶ, -ον (remember the accent shift in the feminine: ῥαδιᾶ).

Two common Greek adjectives, μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *big*, and πολός, πολλή, πολύ, *much*, pl., *many*, have forms from two different stems:

**Stems:** μεγα- and μεγαλ-

<b>Nom.</b>	<u>μέγα</u> -ς	μεγάλη	<u>μέγα</u>	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
<b>Gen.</b>	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
<b>Dat.</b>	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
<b>Acc.</b>	<u>μέγα</u> -ν	μεγάλην	<u>μέγα</u>	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα
<b>Voc.</b>	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	<u>μέγα</u>	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα

**Stems:** πολυ- and πολλ-

<b>Nom.</b>	<u>πολύ</u> -ς	πολλή	<u>πολύ</u>	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
<b>Gen.</b>	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ	πολλων	πολλων	πολλων
<b>Dat.</b>	πολλῳ	πολλῇ	πολλῳ	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	<u>πολύ</u> -ν	πολλήν	<u>πολύ</u>	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
<b>Voc.</b>	none					

### Exercise 40

Locate all examples of the adjectives μέγας and πολός in the stories in Chapters 1, 2, 3, and 4.

## 7. Formation of Adverbs

Many adverbs may be formed in Greek by changing the last letter of the genitive plural of the corresponding adjective from *v* to *ς*, e.g.:

καλῶν > καλῶς, *beautifully; well*

### Exercise 4i

*Find five adverbs ending in -ως in the reading passage on pages 46–47.*

## 8. The Definite Article as Case Indicator

Along with your study of 1st and 2nd declension nouns on pages 31 and 40 you have learned all the forms of the definite article. Review them in the following chart:

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ	ἡ	τό	οἱ	αἱ	τά
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	τόν	τήν	τό	τούς	τάς	τά

In your reading of Greek you should take full advantage of the definite article as a case indicator, which enables you to determine the case of nouns that you have not yet learned to decline. For example in the phrase τοῦ ἀνδρός the definite article τοῦ tells you that ἀνδρός is genitive singular. Remember that the vocative, which is not accompanied by the definite article, is usually preceded by ὦ.

### Exercise 4k

*Give the case and number of each of the following phrases:*

- |                |                     |                    |
|----------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. τοὺς ἄνδρας | 6. τὸν βασιλέα      | 11. οἱ κύνες       |
| 2. τῇ μητρί    | 7. τῆς πόλεως       | 12. τῆς μητρός     |
| 3. τῷ παιδί    | 8. τοῦ δεσπότου     | 13. τοῖς παισίν(ν) |
| 4. τὴν ναῦν    | 9. ταῖς γυναιξίν(ν) | 14. τὸν πατέρα     |
| 5. ὦ πάτερ     | 10. τοῦ κυνός       | 15. ὦ γόναι        |



## ΑΙ ΓΥΝΑΙΚΕΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΑΝΔΡΑΣ ΠΕΙΘΟΥΣΙΝ

*Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:*

πολλαὶ γυναῖκες ἤκουσιν εἰς τὴν κρήνην. ἐν ᾧ δὲ πληροῦσι τὰς ὑδρίᾱς, ἄγγελος προσχωρεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάρεστιν, “ἀκούετε, ὦ γυναῖκες,” φησὶν· “οἱ γὰρ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐορτὴν ποιοῦσιν. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλετε αὐτὴν θεωρεῖν; πείθετε οὖν τοὺς ἄνδρας ὑμᾶς ἐκεῖσε ἄγειν.” αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες χαίρουσι καὶ λέγουσιν· “μάλιστα ἐθέλομεν θεωρεῖν, καὶ ἐν νῷ ἔχομεν τοὺς ἄνδρας πείθειν.” τὰς οὖν ὑδρίᾱς ταχέως 5 πληροῦσι καὶ οἴκαδε σπεύδουσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤκουσιν οἱ ἄνδρες ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν, ἐκάστη ἡ γυνὴ λέγει· “ἄκουε, ὦ φίλε ἄνερ· ἄγγελος γὰρ πάρεστι καὶ λέγει ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐορτὴν ποιοῦσιν. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλεις με ἐκεῖσε ἄγειν;” καὶ ῥαδίως πείθουσιν αὐτούς· οἱ γὰρ ἄνδρες αὐτοὶ ἐθέλουσι τὴν ἐορτὴν θεωρεῖν.

[ἐν ᾧ, *while* ὑμᾶς, *acc. pl., you* ἐκεῖσε, *there = thither* ἐκάστη, *each* με, *me* αὐτούς, *them* αὐτοὶ, *themselves*]

1. What are the women doing when the messenger approaches?
2. What are the Athenians doing?
3. What does the messenger tell the women to do? (Quote his words.)
4. How do the women react to the messenger's announcement?
5. What do the women do with haste?
6. What do the women do when their husbands return from the fields?
7. Why do they succeed in persuading their husbands?



Two women are folding up a finished piece of cloth over a stool, on which lies another finished piece. On either side a woman stands spinning. On page 112 there is a scene of weaving from the same vase.

**Exercise 4λ**

*Translate into Greek:*

1. Dicaeopolis approaches Myrrhine and says, "Greetings, dear wife (γύναι). What are you doing?"
2. "I am hurrying to the spring. For I wish to carry water (τὸ ὕδωρ) to the house. But what are *you* doing?"
3. "The slave and I are hurrying to the field. But listen.  
(Reverse the polite order of the subjects in the English and put the 1st person pronoun first in the Greek.)
4. "The Athenians are celebrating a festival. Do you wish to see it?"
5. "I very much wish to see it. So don't go (μὴ . . . ἵθι; put μή first in your sentence) to the field but take me to the city (τὸ ἄστυ)."



Four dancing girls on a sheep's knucklebone in ceramic

## Classical Greek

Callimachus

For Callimachus, see page 23. His work included a number of funerary epigrams, including the following (21), in which a father laments his dead son.

δωδεκέτη τὸν παῖδα πατὴρ ἀπέθηκε Φίλιππος

ἐνθάδε, τὴν πολλὴν ἐλπίδα Νικοτέλην.

[δωδεκέτη, *twelve year old* ἀπέθηκε, *laid to rest* ἐνθάδε, *here* ἐλπίδα, *hope*]

## New Testament Greek

Luke 6.45

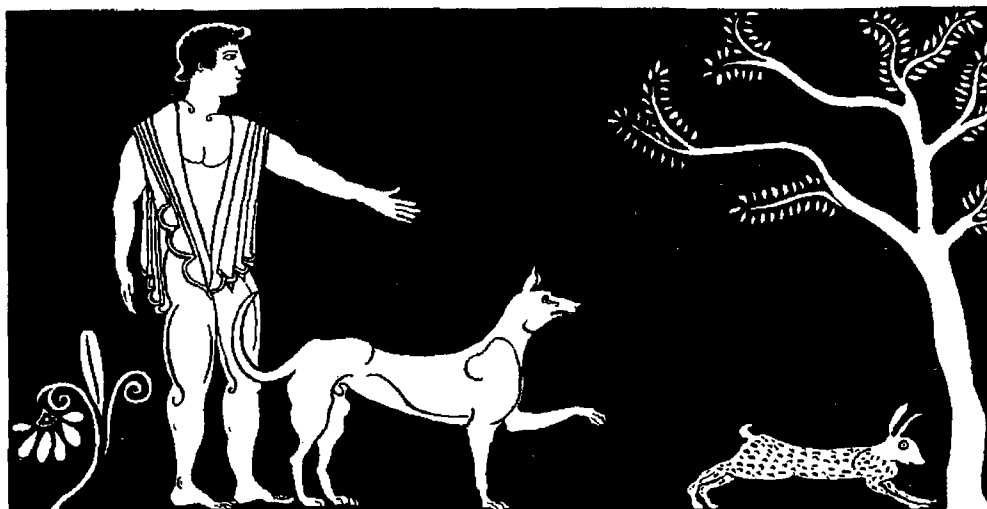
The following comes from a collection of the sayings of Jesus.

“ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἄνθρωπος ἐκ τοῦ ἀγαθοῦ θησαυροῦ τῆς καρδίᾳς προφέρει τὸ ἀγαθόν, καὶ ὁ πονηρὸς ἐκ τοῦ πονηροῦ προφέρει τὸ πονηρόν.”

[ἀγαθός, *good* θησαυροῦ, *treasure* τῆς καρδίᾳς, *of his heart* προφέρει, *brings forth* πονηρὸς, *evil*]

Jesus concludes: “For his mouth speaks from the abundance of his heart.”

# 5 Ο ΛΥΚΟΣ (α)



ὁ Φίλιππος λαγὼν ὄρᾳ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ τρέχοντα καὶ βοᾷ, "ἴθι δὴ, "Ἄργε, διώκε."

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἄπειμι, *I am away (from)*

Cf. πάρειμι

βοάω, *I shout*

διώκω, *I pursue, chase*

ζητέω, *I seek, look for*

ἴθι; pl., ἴτε, *go!*

ἴθι δὴ, *go on!*

ὁράω, *I see*

τιμάω, *I honor*

τρέχω, *I run*

φεύγω, *I flee; I escape*

φυλάττω, *I guard*

### Nouns

ὁ σὺ ἡ κύων (τὸν σὺ τὴν κύνα, ὦ κύων), *dog*

ὁ λαγῶς (τὸν λαγῶν), *hare*

ὁ λύκος, *wolf*

ἡ οἰκία, *house; home; dwelling*

τὸ ὄρος (τοῦ ὄρους, τοῖς ὄρεσι(ν)),  
*mountain; hill*

ὁ πάππος, *grandfather*

τὰ πρόβατα, pl., *sheep*

### Adjective

ἄκρος, -ᾱ, -ον, *top (of)*

ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος, *the top of the mountain / hill*

ῥάθυμος [= ῥᾶ, *easily* + θυμός, *spirit*], -ον, *careless*

### Prepositions

ἀνά + acc., *up*

κατά + acc., *down*

### Adverb

ποῦ; *where?*

### Conjunctions

οὐδέ, *and . . . not; nor; not even*

οὔτε . . . οὔτε, *note the accent, neither . . . nor*

ὥστε, *note the accent + indicative or infinitive, introducing a clause that expresses result, so that, that, so as to*

## Expression

δι' ὀλίγου, soon

## Proper Name

ὁ "Αργος, Argus (name of a dog;  
cf. ἀργός, -ή, -όν, shining;  
swift)

ἐν ᾧ δ' ἄπεισιν ἢ τε Μυρρίνη καὶ ἡ Μέλιττα, ὁ μὲν πάππος πονεῖ ἐν τῷ κήπῳ, ὁ δὲ παῖς καὶ ὁ "Αργος βαδίζουσι πρὸς τὸ αὐλίον· ὁ "Αργος κύων ἐστὶ μέγας τε καὶ ἰσχυρός· τὴν τ' οἰκίαν φυλάττει καὶ τὰ πρόβατα. ἐν ᾧ δὲ βαδίζουσιν ὃ τε παῖς καὶ ὁ κύων ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ὁ Φίλιππος λαγὼν ὁρᾷ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ τρέχοντα· λῦει οὖν τὸν κύνα καί, 5  
"ἴθι δὴ, "Αργε," φησὶν· "δίωκε." ὁ μὲν οὖν "Αργος ὑλακτεῖ καὶ διώκει τὸν λαγὼν, ὁ δὲ φεύγει ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος. οὕτω δὲ ταχέως τρέχουσιν ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν ὁρᾶν οὔτε τὸν κύνα οὔτε τὸν λαγὼν.

[ἐν ᾧ, while τῷ κήπῳ, the garden τὸ αὐλίον, the sheepfold τρέχοντα, running ὑλακτεῖ, barks]

ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος σπεύδει μετ' αὐτοὺς καὶ βοᾷ· "ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, "Αργε· ἐπάνελθε, ὃ κύων κατάρᾳτε." ἀλλ' ἔτι διώκει ὁ κύων. τρέχει οὖν ὁ 10  
Φίλιππος εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἀλλ' οὐχ ὁρᾷ τὸν κύνα. μέγα οὖν βοᾷ καὶ καλεῖ, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀκούει ὁ "Αργος. τέλος δ' ἀθῦμει ὁ παῖς καὶ καταβαίνει τὸ ὄρος.

[μετ(ὰ) αὐτοὺς, after them ἐπάνελθε, come back! κατάρᾳτε, cursed μέγα, loudly τέλος, finally ἀθῦμει, despairs]

ἐπεὶ δὲ προσχωρεῖ τῷ κήπῳ, ὁρᾷ αὐτὸν ὁ πάππος καί, "τί ποιεῖς, ὃ παῖ;" φησὶν· "πόθεν ἦκεις καὶ ποῦ ἐστὶν ὁ "Αργος;" ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, 15  
"ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐλίου ἦκω, ὃ πάππε· ὁ δ' "Αργος ἐστὶ πού ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν· λαγὼν γὰρ διώκει." ὁ δὲ πάππος, "ἴθι δὴ, ὃ παῖ· τί οὐ ζητεῖς αὐτόν; μὴ οὕτω ῥάθῃμος ἴσθι." ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, "οὐ ῥάθῃμός εἰμι, ὃ πάππε, οὐδὲ αἵτιος ἐγώ. μέγα γὰρ βοῶ καὶ καλῶ, ἀλλ' οὐκ ἀκούει ὁ κύων." ὁ δὲ πάππος, "ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὃ παῖ," φησὶν. οὕτω λέγει καὶ τὴν 20  
βακτηρίαν λαμβάνει καὶ σπεύδει ἅμα τῷ παιδὶ ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδόν.

[πόθεν ἦκεις, from where have you come? πού, somewhere τὴν βακτηρίαν, his stick ἅμα + dat., together with]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. geology
2. geography
3. geometry (what was the original meaning of geometry?)
4. geocentric

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Contract Verbs in -α-

In the story at the beginning of this chapter you have seen two contract verbs, βοάω and ὀράω, with stems in -α- instead of in -ε-, as were the contract verbs presented in earlier chapters. Contract verbs in -α- show their endings as follows (we use the verb τιμάω, *I honor*, as a model):

**Stem:** τιμα-, *honor*

	Indicative		Imperative		Infinitive
<b>Singular</b>					
<b>1st</b>	τιμά-ω >	τιμῶ			τιμά-ειν > τιμᾶν
<b>2nd</b>	τιμά-εις >	τιμᾷς	τίμα-ε >	τίμᾱ	
<b>3rd</b>	τιμά-ει >	τιμᾷ			
<b>Plural</b>					
<b>1st</b>	τιμά-ομεν >	τιμῶμεν			
<b>2nd</b>	τιμά-ετε >	τιμᾶτε	τιμά-ετε >	τιμᾶτε	
<b>3rd</b>	τιμά-ουσι(ν) >	τιμῶσι(ν)			

The following rules for these contractions may be observed:

1. α + ω, ο, or ου > ω.
2. α + ει > ᾱ (the infinitive is an exception to this rule).
3. α + ε > ᾱ.

The third type of contract verbs, having stems in -ο-, like πληρόω, *I fill*, will be presented in Chapter 15. There are few verbs of this type.

### 2. Recessive Accent of Finite Verbs

While the accents of nouns and adjectives are *persistent* (see Chapter 2, Grammar 6, pages 20–21), the accents of finite forms of verbs (i.e., forms limited by person and number) are *recessive* (see Chapter 2, Grammar 7, page 21). This means that the accent of these forms recedes to

the third syllable from the end of the word if the final syllable is short, but only to the second syllable from the end of the word if the final syllable is long.

Thus, in the uncontracted form τιμά-ω the accent cannot stand on the third syllable from the end because the final syllable is long; it therefore stands on the second syllable from the end. In the uncontracted form τιμά-ομεν, however, the final syllable is short, and the accent recedes to the third syllable from the end. The uncontracted form of the singular imperative clearly shows how the rule operates; this is the only form on the chart in which the accent falls on the first syllable of the verb: τίμα-ε.

When forms contract (as they do in the Attic dialect), an acute accent over the first of the vowels to contract becomes a circumflex over the resulting contracted vowel, thus τιμά-ω > τιμῶ.

Study the charts of verbs in Chapter 4, Grammar 1, pages 38–39, and observe how these rules operate in the forms presented there, except in the enclitic forms of the verb *to be*, which by convention receive an acute on the final syllable in charts of forms.

### Exercise 5α

1. Locate seven -α- contract verb forms in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter.
2. Make two photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present indicative, imperative, and infinitive forms of βοάω and ὁράω. Keep these charts for reference.

### Exercise 5β

Read and translate the following forms, and then give the corresponding singular forms:

- |                     |                   |
|---------------------|-------------------|
| 1. τιμᾶτε (2 ways)  | 5. ποιοῦμεν       |
| 2. φιλοῦσι(ν)       | 6. βοῶσι(ν)       |
| 3. ὁρῶμεν           | 7. ὁρᾶτε (2 ways) |
| 4. οἰκεῖτε (2 ways) | 8. πονοῦσι(ν)     |

### Exercise 5γ

Read and translate the following forms, and then give the corresponding plural forms:

- |           |          |
|-----------|----------|
| 1. τιμᾶ   | 5. βοᾶς  |
| 2. φιλεῖς | 6. οἰκεῖ |
| 3. ζητῶ   | 7. φίλει |
| 4. ὁρῶ    | 8. τίμα  |

### Exercise 58

Copy the following Greek sentences and label the function of each noun and verb by writing *S*, *C*, *DO*, *LV*, *TV*, *IV*, *IMP*, or *INF* above the appropriate words (do not label other words). Then translate the pairs of sentences:

1. ὁ κύων τὸν λαγὼν ὀρᾷ καὶ διώκει πρὸς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος.  
Father shouts loudly (**μέγα**) and calls the slave out of the house.
2. ἄρ' ὀρᾶτε τὸν λαγὼν; τί οὐ λύετε τὸν κύνᾱ;  
What are you doing, friends? Why are you silent (*use σιγάω*)?
3. οὕτω κωφός (*deaf*) ἐστὶν ὁ ἀνὴρ ὥστε ἀεὶ μέγα βοῶμεν.  
The boy is so brave that we honor him greatly (**μέγα**).
4. ἐν νῶ ἔχομεν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ (*the city*) βαδίζειν καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς ὀρᾶν.  
We wish to walk to the temple (τὸ ἱερόν) and honor the god (*use ὁ θεός*).
5. μὴ οὕτω ῥάθυμος ἴσθι, ὦ παῖ· ἴθι πρὸς τὸ ὄρος καὶ ζήτει τὸν κύνᾱ.  
Don't be so difficult, grandfather; for *I* am not to blame.

### 3. Article at the Beginning of a Clause

The article + *δέ* is often used at the beginning of a clause to indicate a change of subject; the article is translated as a pronoun, e.g.:

ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἄργος ὑλακτεῖ καὶ διώκει τὸν λαγὼν, ὁ δὲ φεύγει ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος.  
*And so Argus barks and pursues the hare, but it (i.e., the hare) flees up the hill.*

ὁ δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον καλεῖ, ὁ δὲ οὐ πάρεστιν.  
*The master calls the slave, but he is not present.*

ὁ πατήρ τὴν κόρην καλεῖ, ἡ δὲ ταχέως προσχωρεῖ.  
*The father calls the girl, and she approaches quickly.*

### 4. Elision

If a word ends in a short vowel, this vowel may be *elided* (cut off) when the following word starts with a vowel, e.g., διὰ ὀλίγου > δι' ὀλίγου. Note that the elision is marked by an apostrophe. Further examples;

ἄρα ἐθέλεις > ἄρ' ἐθέλεις  
ἀλλὰ ἰδοὺ > ἀλλ' ἰδοὺ

If the following word begins with an aspirated vowel (i.e., a vowel with a rough breathing), the consonant left after elision is itself aspirated if possible, i.e., π becomes φ, and τ becomes θ. Thus:



ἀπὸ 'Ελλάδος (*from Greece*) > ἀφ' 'Ελλάδος  
 μετὰ ἡμῶν (*with us*) > μεθ' ἡμῶν  
 κατὰ ἡμέρᾱν (*by day = day by day, daily*) > καθ' ἡμέρᾱν  
 κατὰ ὅλου (*on the whole, in general*) > καθ' ὅλου or καθόλου, which  
 gives English *catholic*, "comprehensive, universal."

Elision usually occurs when a compound verb is formed by prefixing a preposition that ends in a vowel to a verb that begins with a vowel, e.g.:

ἀνα- + αἶρω > ἀναίρω

ἀπο- + ἐλαύνω > ἀπελαύνω

ἐπι- + αἶρω > ἐπαίρω

ἀπο- + αἰρέω > ἀφαιρέω

παρα- + εἰμί > πάρειμι

κατα- + ὀράω > καθοράω

Exceptions: *περι-* and *προ-*, prefixes that you will meet later, do not elide, e.g., *περι-* + ὀράω > *περιοράω*, *I overlook, disregard*, and *προ-* + ἔρχομαι > *προέρχομαι*, *I go forward, advance*.

## Gods and Men

When Dicaeopolis was about to start plowing, he first made a prayer to Demeter, goddess of grain. When he is about to take his family to Athens to the festival of Dionysus, god of wine, he first goes to the altar in the courtyard



Life-size bronze statue of Zeus hurling a thunderbolt

of his house and pours a libation (drink offering) to Zeus, father of gods and men. Religion permeated Greek life; prayer and offerings were daily obligations. Hesiod, the eighth-century poet, says:

Appease the immortal gods with libations and sacrifices, when you go to bed and when the holy light returns, so that they may have a kindly heart and spirit toward you, and you may buy other people's land and not have someone else buy yours. (*Works and Days*, 338–341)

The Greeks were polytheists (that is, they worshiped many gods), and their religion was an amalgam of many elements. For instance, when Greek speakers first entered Greece from the north about 2,000 B.C., they brought with them as their principal deity Zeus the Father (Ζεὺς πατήρ = Latin *Iuppiter*). The religion of the older inhabitants of Greece centered around a goddess, the Earth Mother, worshiped under various names, including Demeter. Eventually the various deities of different localities and different origins were united into the family of the twelve Olympian gods. They were called Olympian because they were thought to live on the top of the heavenly mountain Olympus, and each god had his (or her) special sphere of influence. Zeus was lord of the thunderbolt and father of gods and men; Hera was his wife and the patron goddess of women; Athena was his daughter and the goddess of wisdom and crafts; Apollo was the god of light, prophecy, and healing; Artemis, his sister, was a virgin huntress and goddess of the moon; Poseidon, Zeus' brother, was god of the sea; Aphrodite was goddess of love; Hermes was the messenger of the gods and bringer of good luck; Hephaestus was the god of fire and smiths; Ares was the god of war; Dionysus was the god of wine; and Demeter was the goddess of grain (for the Greek names, see page xix). Besides the great Olympians, there were many lesser gods, such as Pan and the nymphs, and many foreign gods whose worship was introduced to Greece at various times and who joined the pantheon.

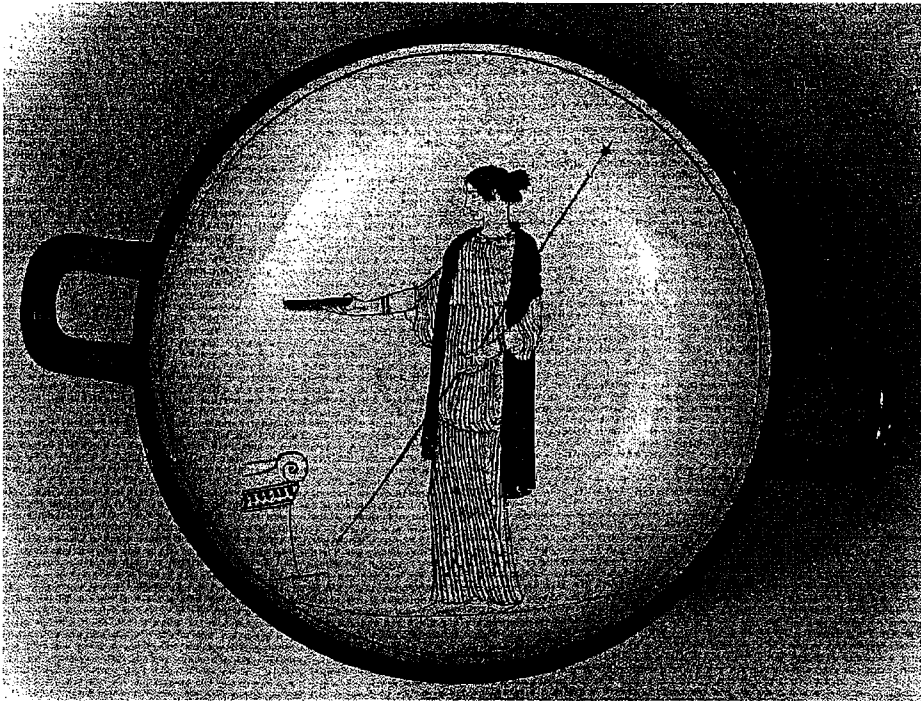
There were in Greek religion no church, no dogma, and no professional full-time priests. Temples were built as the homes of the deity to which they were dedicated; no services were held inside, and the altar at which offerings were made stood in the open outside the temple. The gods were worshiped with prayer and offerings, both privately by the family and publicly by the deme and state at regular festivals recurring throughout the year. The usual offering in private worship was a libation of wine poured over the altar or a pinch of incense burnt in the altar fire. Public ritual culminated in animal sacrifice by the priest of the cult, often on a large scale, followed by a public banquet.

The gods were conceived in human form, and human characteristics were attributed to them. They were immortal, all powerful, and arbitrary. They were primarily interested not in the behavior of humans toward each other (morality) but in the maintenance of the honors due to themselves, and in this respect they were demanding and jealous. If you gave the gods the honors and offerings that were their due, you could expect them to repay you with their help and protection. At the beginning of Homer's *Iliad*, Chryses,

whose daughter the Greeks have captured and refuse to return for ransom, prays to Apollo:

Hearken to me, God of the Silver Bow, protector of Chryse and holy Cilla, mighty ruler of Tenedus, Smintheus, if ever I have built a temple pleasing to you, if ever I have burned the rich thighs of a bull or a goat for you, fulfill now my prayers: may the Greeks pay for my tears through your arrows.

Chryses prays to Apollo by two of his cult titles (the meaning of the second, Smintheus, is not known for certain) and three of the centers of his worship (the gods were not omnipresent, and Apollo might be resident in any one of these places). Chryses reminds Apollo of past services and only then makes his request, that Apollo may punish the Greeks by striking them down with disease (Apollo's arrows brought sickness and death—since he was the god of healing, he was also the god who sent sickness). The prayer was answered, and the Greeks were struck by a plague.



Woman pouring a libation

## Greek Wisdom

See page 70

ἐγγύα, πάρα δ' ἄτη.

Χείλων (of Sparta)

# Ο ΛΥΚΟΣ (β)



ὁ Ἄργος ὁρμᾷ ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

- ἀποφεύγω, *I flee away, escape*  
 γινώσκω, *I get to know, learn*  
 Cf. Latin *cognōscō* and English  
*know*  
 ἤκω, *I have come*  
 θαυμάζω, intransitive, *I am*  
*amazed*; transitive, *I wonder*  
*at*; *I admire*  
 πάσχω, *I suffer*; *I experience*  
 τύπτω, *I strike, hit*

### Noun

- ὁ μῦθος, *story*

### Pronouns

- ἡμεῖς, *we*  
 ὑμεῖς, pl., *you*

### Adjectives

- ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, *good*  
 ἄγριος, -ᾱ, -ον, *savage*; *wild*;  
*fierce*  
 πρῶτος, -η, -ον, *first*

### Adjective or Pronoun

- αὐτός, -ή, -ό, intensive adjective,  
*-self, -selves*; adjective,  
*same*; pronoun in nom., gen.,  
 dat., and acc. cases, *him, her,*  
*it, them* (see Grammar 6 and  
 Grammar 9)

### Prepositions

- ἐπί + dat., *upon, on*; + acc., *at*;  
*against*  
 ὑπό + dat., *under*; + acc., *under*

### Adverbs

- ἐνταῦθα, *then*; *here*; *hither*;  
*there*; *thither*  
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ, *at that very*  
*moment, then*

### Conjunctions

- καί . . . καί, *both . . . and*  
 ὅτι, *that*

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῷ αὐλίῳ προσχωροῦσιν ὃ τε Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ πάππος,  
 πολὺν ψόφον ἀκούουσιν· ὑλακτεῖ γὰρ ἀγρίως ὁ Ἄργος, τὰ δὲ  
 πρόβατα πολὺν θόρυβον ποιεῖ. σπεύδουσιν οὖν· βούλονται γὰρ

γιγνώσκειν τί πάσχει τὰ πρόβατα. πρῶτος οὖν πάρεστιν ὁ παῖς, καὶ  
 ἰδού, ὁ μὲν Ἄργος μένει πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ καὶ ἀγρίως ὑλακτεῖ καταβαίνει 5  
 δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους πρὸς τὸ αὐλίον λύκος μέγας. ὁ μὲν οὖν Φίλιππος  
 μέγα βοᾷ καὶ λίθους λαμβάνει καὶ βάλλει τὸν λύκον· ὁ δὲ Ἄργος  
 ὀρμᾷ ἐπ' αὐτὸν καὶ οὕτως ἀγρίως ἐμπίπτει ὥστε ἀναστρέφει ὁ λύκος  
 καὶ ἀποφεύγει. διώκει μὲν οὖν ὁ κύων, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος σπεύδει μετ'  
 αὐτόν. 10

[ψόφον, noise θόρυβον, uproar βούλονται, they want βάλλει, pelts ὀρμᾷ,  
 rushes ἐμπίπτει (ἐν- + πίπτει), falls upon, attacks ἀναστρέφει, turns back  
 μετ(ὰ) αὐτόν, after him]

ὁ δὲ πάππος ἤδη εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἤκει καὶ τὸν λύκον ὀρᾷ καὶ  
 βοᾷ, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, Φίλιππε· μὴ δίωκε ἀλλ' ἐπάνελθε.” νῦν δὲ ὁ  
 Ἄργος τὸν λύκον ὁδᾷ λαμβάνει καὶ κατέχει, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος αὐτὸς  
 ἤδη πάρεστι καὶ τὴν μάχαιραν λαμβάνει καὶ τύπτει τὸν λύκον. ὁ δὲ  
 ἀσπαίρει καὶ καταπίπτει πρὸς τὴν γῆν. 15

[ὁδᾷ, with his teeth κατέχει, holds (it) fast τὴν μάχαιραν, his knife ἀσπαί-  
 ρει, struggles]

ἐνταῦθα δὴ προσχωρεῖ ὁ πάππος καὶ τὸν λύκον ὀρᾷ ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ  
 κείμενον. θαυμάζει οὖν καί, “εὖ γε, ὦ παῖ,” φησὶν· “μάλα ἀνδρείος εἶ.  
 μέγας γάρ ἐστιν ὁ λύκος καὶ ἄγριος. σὺ δέ, ὦ Ἄργε, ἀγαθὸς εἶ κύων·  
 εὖ γὰρ τὰ πρόβατα φυλάττεις. νῦν δέ, ὦ Φίλιππε, οἵκαδε σπεύδε· ἡ  
 γὰρ μήτηρ δήπου ἐθέλει γινώσκειν ποῦ εἶ καὶ τί πάσχεις.” 20

[κείμενον, lying εὖ γε, well done! εὖ, well δήπου, I suppose]

ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ οἰκίᾳ προσχωροῦσιν, τὴν μητέρα ὀρῶσιν. ὁ μὲν οὖν  
 πάππος σπεύδει πρὸς αὐτήν καὶ πάντα λέγει. ἡ δέ, “ἄρα τὰ ἀληθῆ  
 λέγεις;” φησὶν. “εὖ γε, ὦ παῖ· μάλα ἀνδρείος εἶ. ἀλλ' ἰδού—προσχωρεῖ  
 ἡ Μέλιττα ἀπὸ τῆς κρήνης. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ Μέλιττα, καὶ ἄκουε· ὁ γὰρ  
 Φίλιππος λύκον ἀπέκτονεν.” ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος πάντα αὐτῆς λέγει, ἡ 25  
 δὲ Μέλιττα μάλα θαυμάζει καὶ λέγει ὅτι καὶ ὁ Ἄργος καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος  
 μάλα ἀνδρεῖοί εἰσι καὶ ἰσχυροί.

[πάντα, all things, everything τὰ ἀληθῆ, the true things, the truth ἀπέκτονεν, has  
 killed]

ἔπειτα δὲ ἡ μήτηρ, “νῦν δὲ ἔλθε δεῦρο, ὦ φίλε,” φησίν, “καὶ κάθιζε μεθ’ ἡμῶν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ· μάλα γὰρ κάμνεις. σὺ δέ, ὦ Μέλιττα, κάθιζε καὶ σύ. ἀκούετε οὖν· ἐγὼ γὰρ μέλλω καλὸν μῦθον ὑμῖν λέγειν.”

[μεθ’ ἡμῶν, *with us* κάμνεις, *you are tired* μέλλω + infin., *I am about (to)* ὑμῖν, *to you*]

ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος καθεύδει—μάλα γὰρ κάμνει—οἱ δὲ παῖδες καθίζουσιν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ καὶ ἀκούουσιν· ἐπιθυμοῦσι γὰρ ἀκούειν τὸν μῦθον.

[ἐπιθυμοῦσι, *they desire*]

## WORD BUILDING

*From your knowledge of the verbs at the left, deduce the meaning of the nouns at the right:*

- |                                   |           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------|
| 1. βοάω                           | ἡ βοή     |
| 2. τιμάω                          | ἡ τιμή    |
| 3. ὀρμάω ( <i>I rush</i> )        | ἡ ὀρμή    |
| 4. νικάω ( <i>I defeat; win</i> ) | ἡ νίκη    |
| 5. τελευτάω ( <i>I end; die</i> ) | ἡ τελευτή |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Agreement of Subject and Verb

Note that in Greek neuter plural subjects take singular verbs, e.g.:

τὰ πρόβατα πολλὸν θόρυβον ποιεῖ.

τὰ ἄροτρα μικρά ἐστιν.

Translate the examples above.

### 6. Personal Pronouns

In previous chapters you have met the nominative singular personal pronouns ἐγώ, *I*, and σύ, *you*, and you have met the accusative singular pronouns αὐτόν, *him* or *it*, αὐτήν, *her* or *it*, and αὐτό, *it*. Personal pronouns in the genitive and dative cases (ἡμῶν and ὑμῖν) appear in the next to the last paragraph of the reading passage above (locate five personal pronouns in that paragraph).

The full declensions of the personal pronouns are given below:

1st Person Singular			1st Person Plural	
<b>Nom.</b>	ἐγώ	<i>I</i>	ἡμεῖς	<i>we</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	ἐμοῦ μου	<i>of me</i>	ἡμῶν	<i>of us</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	ἐμοί μοι	<i>to or for me</i>	ἡμῖν	<i>to or for us</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	ἐμέ με	<i>me</i>	ἡμᾶς	<i>us</i>
2nd Person Singular			2nd Person Plural	
<b>Nom.</b>	σύ	<i>you</i>	ὑμεῖς	<i>you</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	σοῦ σου	<i>of you</i>	ὑμῶν	<i>of you</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	σοί σοι	<i>to or for you</i>	ὑμῖν	<i>to or for you</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	σέ σε	<i>you</i>	ὑμᾶς	<i>you</i>

Note: the accented forms ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ and σοῦ, σοί, σέ are emphatic and are used at the beginning of clauses and in expressing contrasts, e.g.:

ἐμὲ οὐ σὲ ἡ Μέλιντα φιλεῖ. *Melissa loves me not you.*

These forms are usually used after prepositions, e.g.:

ὁ λύκος ὁρμᾷ ἐπ' ἐμέ. *The wolf rushes at me.*

The unaccented forms are unemphatic and enclitic.

### 3rd Person

The following forms are used as genitive, dative, and accusative 3rd person pronouns:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Singular</b>			
<b>Gen.</b>	αὐτοῦ <i>of him or it</i>	αὐτῆς <i>of her or it</i>	αὐτοῦ <i>of it</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	αὐτῷ <i>to or for him or it</i>	αὐτῇ <i>to or for her or it</i>	αὐτῷ <i>to it</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	αὐτόν <i>him or it</i>	αὐτήν <i>her or it</i>	αὐτό <i>it</i>
<b>Plural</b>			
<b>Gen.</b>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	αὐτοῖς <i>to or for them</i>	αὐταῖς <i>to or for them</i>	αὐτοῖς <i>to or for them</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	αὐτούς <i>them</i>	αὐτάς <i>them</i>	αὐτά <i>them</i>

Note that these words can refer to either persons or things. When they refer to things, the gender of the pronoun depends on the gender of the noun to which it refers, e.g.: ὁ Ξανθίας αἶρει τὸν λίθον. αἶρει αὐτόν (*He lifts it*). The word αὐτόν is translated *it*, but it is masculine because it refers to the masculine noun λίθον. Translate the following examples:

ὁρῶ τὴν οἰκίαν. ὁρᾷς αὐτήν; φέρω τὸ ἄροτρον. σὺ αὐτὸ οὐ φέρεις.

**Exercise 5e**

Look back through story  $\alpha$  in Chapter 3 and story  $\beta$  in Chapter 5 and locate at least eight examples of personal pronouns and forms of αὐτός in each story.

**7. Attributive and Predicate Position****a. Attributive Position**

Note the position of the adjective in the following phrases:

ἡ καλὴ οἰκίᾱ

ἡ οἰκίᾱ ἡ καλή

Both phrases mean *the beautiful house*. The adjective is said to be in the *attributive* position in these examples, in which it is placed either between the article and the noun or after the repeated article.

**b. Predicate Position**

In the following examples the adjective stands outside the article-noun group. The following examples constitute complete sentences (note that the verb “to be” may be omitted in simple sentences of this sort), and the adjective is said to be in the *predicate* position. Both sentences mean *The house is beautiful*.

καλὴ ἡ οἰκίᾱ.

ἡ οἰκίᾱ καλή.

**8. Possessives**

The following possessive adjectives correspond to the personal pronouns above:

**1st Person Singular**

ἐμός, -ή, -όν *my, mine*

**1st Person Plural**

ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον *our, ours*

**2nd Person Singular**

σός, -ή, -όν *your, yours*

**2nd Person Plural**

ὑμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον *your, yours*

Here are some examples:

ὁ μὲν ἐμός κύων τὸν λύκον διώκει, ὁ δὲ κύων ὁ σὸς πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ καθίζει.

*My dog is pursuing the wolf, but your dog is sitting by the road.*

ὁ μὲν ἡμέτερος πατήρ πονεῖ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ, ὁ δὲ ὑμέτερος ἄργός ἐστιν.

*Our father works in the field, but your (father) is lazy.*

ὁ κύων ἐμός ἐστιν, οὐ σός.

*The dog is mine, not yours.*

In the first two examples the possessive adjectives occupy the attributive position, while in the third they occupy the predicate position.



There is no possessive adjective for the 3rd person, but instead the genitive of αὐτός is used:

<b>Masculine</b>	αὐτοῦ <i>of him, his; of it, its</i>
<b>Feminine</b>	αὐτῆς <i>of her, her; of it, its</i>
<b>Neuter</b>	αὐτοῦ <i>of it, its</i>
<b>M., F., N. (Plural)</b>	αὐτῶν <i>of them, their</i>

These possessive genitives occupy the predicate position, i.e., they stand outside the article-noun group to which they belong, and they refer to someone other than the subject of the verb (they are not reflexive), e.g.:

ὁ πάππος πρὸς τὸν παῖδα τρέχει, ὁ δὲ τὴν μάχαιραν αὐτοῦ λαμβάνει.  
*Grandfather runs to the boy, and he (the boy) takes his (the grandfather's) knife.*

ἡ κόρη μάλα κάμνει· ἡ οὖν μήτηρ τὴν ὑδρίαν αὐτῆς φέρει.  
*The girl is very tired; and so her mother carries her (i.e., the girl's) water jar.*

οἱ μὲν παῖδες ἐν τῇ ἀγρῷ μένουσιν, οἱ δὲ πατέρες τοὺς κύνας αὐτῶν οἴκαδε ἄγουσιν.  
*The boys stay in the field, but the fathers lead their (i.e., the boys') dogs home.*

The genitives of the personal pronouns (see above, Grammar 6, page 65), used to indicate possession, also occupy the predicate position, e.g.:

“σὺ εἶ ὁ υἱός μου ὁ ἀγαπητός.” (Luke 3.22; see page 23)

Note that Greek frequently does not use possessives if the possessor is the same as the subject of the verb, e.g.:

ὁ Φίλιππος τὴν μάχαιραν λαμβάνει καὶ τύπτει τὸν λύκον.  
*Philip takes his knife and strikes the wolf.*

## Exercise 5ζ

Read aloud and translate:

1. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ· ὁ γὰρ ἡμέτερος δεσπότης ἡμᾶς καλεῖ.
2. τί ποιεῖτε, ὦ δοῦλοι; ἐγὼ μὲν γὰρ ὑμᾶς καλῶ, ὑμεῖς δὲ οὐκ ἀκούετε.
3. ἄρ' οὐκ ἀκούετέ μου; φέρετέ μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.
4. ἀλλ', ὦ δέσποτα, νῦν φέρομεν αὐτό σοι.
5. ἡμῖν προσχώρει, ὦ παῖ, καὶ λέγε μοι τί πάσχεις.
6. τὸν ἐμὸν κύνα ζητῶ, ὦ πάτερ· ὁ δὲ φεύγει ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδὸν καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει ἐπανιέναι (*to come back*).

7. θάρρει (*cheer up*), ὦ παῖ· ἐγὼ γὰρ ἀκούω αὐτοῦ ὑλακτοῦντος (*barking*). ζήτει οὖν αὐτόν.
8. ὁρῶ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ ἄκρῳ τῇ ὄρει μένοντα (*waiting*)· ἰδοῦ, νῦν τρέχει πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
9. ἄγριος μὲν ὁ λύκος καὶ μέγας, ὁ δὲ παῖς τὴν μάχαιραν λαμβάνει καὶ τύπτει αὐτόν.
10. ὁ μὲν πάππος ἤδη πάρεστιν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος τὴν μάχαιραν αὐτοῦ λαμβάνει καὶ ἀποκτείνει (*kills*) τὸν λύκον.

## 9. The Adjective αὐτός, -ή, -ό

The same word that is used in the genitive, dative, and accusative cases as the 3rd person pronoun (see above, Grammar 6) may be used in any case as an *intensive adjective*, meaning *-self* or *-selves*, e.g.:

μάλα ἀνδρεῖοί ἐστε αὐτοί. *You yourselves are very brave.*

Here are all of its forms:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Singular</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
<b>Gen.</b>	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
<b>Dat.</b>	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
<b>Acc.</b>	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
<b>Plural</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
<b>Gen.</b>	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

There is no vocative.

This adjective may be used to intensify or emphasize the implied subject of a verb or to intensify or emphasize a noun, e.g.:

ὁ δοῦλος πάρεστιν· αὐτὸς αἶρει τὸν λίθον.

*The slave is present; he **himself** lifts the stone.*

ὁ πάππος τὸν λύκον αὐτὸν ὁρᾷ.

ὁ πάππος αὐτὸν τὸν λύκον ὁρᾷ.

*The grandfather sees the wolf **itself**.*

αἱ μὲν κόραι τὰς ὑδρίδας πληροῦσιν, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες αὐταὶ οὐ.

αἱ μὲν κόραι τὰς ὑδρίδας πληροῦσιν, αὐταὶ δὲ αἱ γυναῖκες οὐ.

*The girls fill their water jars, but the women **themselves** do not.*

When used to intensify a noun, this adjective occupies the *predicate* position, as in the second and third examples above.

This same adjective when placed in the *attributive* position means *same*, e.g.:

τὸν αὐτὸν λύκον *the **same** wolf*

αἱ αὐταὶ γυναῖκες *the **same** women*

δις ἐς τὸν αὐτὸν ποταμὸν οὐκ ἂν ἐμβαίης.

*You couldn't step into the **same** river twice.* —Heraclitus

### Exercise 5η

*Read aloud and translate:*

- αὐτὸς ὁ πάππος ἡμᾶς κελεύει (*orders*) σπεύδειν πρὸς τὸ αὔλιον· ὁ γὰρ αὐτὸς λύκος καταβαίνει ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους.
- τὸν κύνα αὐτοῦ καλεῖτε· ἀνδρείος γάρ ἐστι καὶ τὰ πρόβατα εὖ φυλάττει.
- σπεύδετε, ὦ παῖδες· τὰ γὰρ πρόβατα αὐτὸν τὸν λύκον ὄρᾳ καὶ πολλὸν θόρυβον ποιεῖ.
- ὁ κύων οὐ διώκει τὸν λύκον ἀλλὰ αὐτὸς ἀποφεύγει· ἄγριος γάρ ἐστιν ὁ λύκος καὶ μέγας.
- νῦν δὲ ὁ αὐτὸς κύων τὸν λύκον διώκει· ὁ δὲ ἀποφεύγει πρὸς τὸ ὄρος.

## Ο ΑΡΓΟΣ ΤΑ ΠΡΟΒΑΤΑ ΣΩΙΖΕΙ

*Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:*

ὁ τε Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ πατήρ βραδέως βαδίζουσιν ἀνὰ τὴν ὁδὸν· ζητοῦσι γὰρ τὰ πρόβατα. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἤκουσιν, τὰ πρόβατα ὀρώσιν· μένει γὰρ τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ καὶ πολλὸν θόρυβον ποιεῖ. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις, “τί πάσχει τὰ πρόβατα;” φησὶν· “σπεῦδε κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν, ὦ παῖ, καὶ γίγνωσκε τί τοσοῦτον θόρυβον ποιεῖ.” ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος αὐτὸς σπεύδει κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν. ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῖς προβάτοις 5 προσχωρεῖ, μέγαν λύκον ὄρᾳ· τὸν οὖν πατέρα καλεῖ καὶ βοᾷ· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ πάτερ, καὶ βοήθει· μέγας γὰρ λύκος πάρεστι καὶ μέλλει τοῖς προβάτοις ἐμπίπτειν.”

[βοήθει, *come to the rescue! come to (my) aid!*]

1. What are Philip and his father seeking?
2. When do they see the flocks? What are the flocks doing?
3. What does Philip see when he approaches the flocks?
4. What does he urge his father to do?

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τὸν κύνα λῦει καί, “ἴθι δὴ, Ἄργε,” φησὶν· “τὸν λύκον δῖωκε· σὺ δέ, ὦ παῖ, μένε ἐνταῦθα.” ὁ μὲν οὖν Φίλιππος μένει πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ, ὁ δὲ Ἄργος ὑλακτεῖ καὶ οὕτως ἀγρίως ὀρμᾷ ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον ὥστε ὁ λύκος ἀποφεύγει. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος καὶ ὁ πατήρ τρέχουσι μετ’ αὐτοὺς καὶ βοῶσι καὶ λίθους βάλλουσιν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὸν κύνα καλοῦσι καὶ τὰ πρόβατα οἴκαδε ἐλαύνουσιν. 10

[βάλλουσιν, *throw*]

5. What does Dicaeopolis do?
6. Does Philip obey his father?
7. What does Argos do? With what result?
8. What do Philip and his father do at the end of the story?

### Exercise 50

*Translate into Greek:*

1. We no longer see many wolves in the hills, and they rarely (σπανίως) come down (*use καταβαίνω*) into the fields.
2. So we are amazed that Philip has killed (ἀπέκτονε(ν)) a wolf.
3. The same boy guards the flocks well (εὖ), but he does not always speak (say) the truth (τὰ ἀληθῆ).
4. So we ourselves intend to hurry to the hill and look for the body (*use ὁ νεκρός*).

## Greek Wisdom

### The Seven Wise Men

The Greeks recognized seven “wise men” or “sages” (σοφοί), who lived in the early decades of the sixth century B.C. To each was attached a piece of proverbial wisdom, which is quoted on the page of this book to which reference is made opposite each name in the following list (the names are given in the order in which they were listed in antiquity):

Θαλῆς (of Miletus)	page 111
Σόλων (of Athens)	page 230
Περίαςδρος (of Corinth)	page 127
Κλεόβουλος (of Lindos)	page 16
Χείλων (of Sparta)	page 61
Βίας (of Priene)	page 211
Πιττακός (of Mitylene)	page 45

## Classical Greek

### Anacreon

Anacreon of Teos (fl. 535 B.C.) was a lyric poet, whose work included many love poems. Long after his death, a collection of poems was published that were written in his style and called *Anacreontea*, including the following (no. 34), written to a cicada (τέττιξ), a type of Mediterranean grasshopper.

μακαρίζομέν σε, τέττιξ.  
 ὅτε δενδρέων ἐπ' ἄκρων  
 ὀλίγην δρόσον πεπωκὼς  
 βασιλεὺς ὅπως αἰεῖδεις.  
 σὰ γάρ ἐστι κείνα πάντα,  
 ὅποσα βλέπεις ἐν ἀγροῖς  
 χάποσα φέρουσιν ὕλαι.

[μακαρίζομεν, *we regard X as blessed* ὅτε, *when* δενδρέων = δένδρων ἐπ(ι) + gen., *on* ὀλίγην δρόσον, *a little dew* πεπωκὼς, *after drinking* βασιλεὺς ὅπως, *like a king* αἰεῖδεις, *you sing* κείνα πάντα, / ὅποσα, *all those things, as many as* χάποσα = καὶ ὅποσα, *and as many as* ὕλαι, *the woods*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 4.22 and 24

When Jesus went to his home village of Nazareth and taught in the synagogue, the people were amazed and said:

“οὐχὶ υἱὸς ἐστὶν Ἰωσήφ οὗτος;”

[οὐχί, *emphatic* οὐ υἱός, *son* Ἰωσήφ, *of Joseph* οὗτος, *this man*, subject of the sentence]

They told him to perform a miracle in his home village, but he said:

“ἀμὴν λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι οὐδεὶς προφήτης δεκτός ἐστιν ἐν τῇ πατρίδι αὐτοῦ.”

[ἀμὴν, *in truth* οὐδεὶς, *no* προφήτης, *prophet* δεκτός, *acceptable* τῇ πατρίδι αὐτοῦ, *his own country*]

# 6

## Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (α)

---



ὁ τε Θησεύς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν Κρήτην.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἀποκτείνω, *I kill*  
 ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἰκνέομαι],  
*I arrive; + εἰς + acc., I arrive*  
*at*  
 βασιλεύω, *I rule*  
 βοηθέω, *I come to the rescue;*  
*+ dat., I come to X's aid;*  
*I come to rescue/aid X*  
 βούλομαι + infin., *I want;*  
*I wish*  
 γίγνομαι, *I become*  
*γίνεται, he/she/it becomes;*  
*it happens*  
 δέχομαι, *I receive*  
 ἐκφεύγω, *I flee out, escape*  
 ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*  
 ἀπέρχομαι [= ἀπο- + ἔρχομαι],  
*I go away*  
 πεύθομαι + dat., *I obey*  
 πέμπω, *I send*  
 πλέω, *I sail*  
 σόζω, *I save*  
 φοβέομαι, intransitive, *I am*

*frightened, am afraid; transi-*  
*tive, I fear, am afraid of*  
*(something or someone)*

#### Nouns

ὁ βασιλεύς, *king*  
 ὁ ἐταῖρος, *comrade, companion*  
 ἡ ἡμέρα, *day*  
 ἡ ναῦς (τῆς νεώς, τῇ νηί, τὴν  
 ναῦν), *ship*  
 ἡ νῆσος, *island*  
 ἡ νύξ, *night*  
 ὁ πάππας (ὦ πάππα), *papa*  
*Cf. ὁ πάππος, grandfather*  
 ἡ παρθένος, *maiden; girl*

#### Adjective

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *terrible*

#### Preposition

μετά + gen., *with; + acc., after*

#### Adverb

ἐκεῖ, *there*

#### Proper Names

αἱ Ἀθῆναι, *Athens*  
 ὁ Αἰγεύς, *Aegeus (king of*  
*Athens)*

ἡ Ἀριάδνη, *Ariadne* (daughter  
of King Minos)  
ὁ Θησεύς (τὸν Θησεῖα, ὃ Θησεῦ),  
*Theseus* (son of King Aegeus)  
ἡ Κνωσός, *Knossos*

ἡ Κρήτη, *Crete*  
ὁ Μίνως (τοῦ Μίνω), *Minos*  
(king of Crete)  
ὁ Μινώταυρος, *Minotaur*

“ὁ Μίνως οἰκεῖ ἐν τῇ Κρήτῃ· βασιλεὺς δέ ἐστι τῆς νήσου. καὶ ἐν τῇ  
τοῦ Μίνω οἰκίᾳ ἔστιν ὁ λαβύρινθος· ἐκεῖ δ’ οἰκεῖ ὁ Μινώταυρος,  
θηρίον τι δεινόν, τὸ μὲν ἡμῖν ἄνθρωπος, τὸ δ’ ἡμῖν ταῦρος. ὁ δὲ  
Μινώταυρος ἐσθίει ἀνθρώπους. ὁ οὖν Μίνως ἀναγκάζει τοὺς  
Ἀθηναίους ἐπτά τε νεᾶνιάς πέμπειν καὶ ἐπτά παρθένους κατ’ ἔτος 5  
πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην καὶ παρέχει αὐτοὺς τῷ Μινωταύρῳ ἐσθίειν.

[ὁ λαβύρινθος, *the labyrinth* θηρίον τι, *a certain beast* τὸ ... ἡμῖν, *half*  
ταῦρος, *bull* ἐσθίει, *eats* ἀναγκάζει, *compels* ἐπτά, *seven* νεᾶνιάς, *youths*  
κατ’ ἔτος, *each year* παρέχει, *hands over, provides* τῷ Μινωταύρῳ, *to the Mino-*  
*taur*]

“ἐν δὲ ταῖς Ἀθήναις βασιλεύει ὁ Αἰγεύς· ἔστι δὲ αὐτῷ παῖς τις  
ὀνόματι Θησεύς. ὁ δὲ ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡβῶν, τοὺς ἐταίρους οἰκτίζει καὶ  
βούλεται βοηθεῖν αὐτοῖς. προσχωρεῖ οὖν τῷ πατρὶ καί, ‘ὦ πάπα  
φίλε,’ φησὶν, ‘τοὺς ἐταίρους οἰκτῖρω καὶ βούλομαι σφῆξιν. πέμπε με 10  
οὖν μετὰ τῶν ἐταίρων πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην.’ ὁ δ’ Αἰγεύς μάλα φοβεῖται  
ἄλλ’ ὅμως πείθεται αὐτῷ.

[ἔστι ... αὐτῷ, *there is for him, he has* παῖς τις, *a child* ὀνόματι, *by name*  
ἡβῶν, *grows up* οἰκτίζει, *pities* ὅμως, *nevertheless*]

“ὁ οὖν Θησεὺς εἰς ναὺν εἰσβαίνει μετὰ τῶν ἐταίρων καὶ πλεῖ πρὸς  
τὴν Κρήτην. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν νῆσον ἀφικνοῦνται, ὃ τε βασιλεὺς αὐτὸς  
καὶ ἡ βασίλεια καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ αὐτῶν, ὀνόματι Ἀριάδνη, δέχονται 15  
αὐτοὺς καὶ ἄγουσι πρὸς τὴν Κνωσὸν (οὕτω γὰρ τὴν τοῦ Μίνω πόλιν  
ὀνομάζουσιν) καὶ φυλάττουσιν ἐν τῷ δεσμοτηρίῳ.

[ἡ βασίλεια, *the queen* τὴν ... πόλιν, *the city* ὀνομάζουσιν, *they call* τῷ  
δεσμοτηρίῳ, *the prison*]

“ἡ δ’ Ἀριάδνη, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ὀρᾷ τὸν Θησεῖα, ἐρᾷ αὐτοῦ καὶ  
βούλεται σφῆξιν. ἐπεὶ οὖν νύξ γίγνεται, σπεύδει πρὸς τὸ δεσμοτήριον  
καὶ τὸν Θησεῖα καλεῖ καί, ‘σίγα, ὦ Θησεῦ,’ φησὶν· ‘ἐγώ, Ἀριάδνη, 20  
πάρειμι. ἐρῶ σοῦ καὶ βούλομαι σφῆξιν. ἰδού, παρέχω γάρ σοι τοῦτο

τὸ ξίφος καὶ τοῦτο τὸ λίνον. μὴ οὖν φοβοῦ ἀλλὰ ἀνδρείως εἰσβαίνει εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον καὶ ἀπόκτεινε τὸν Μῖνώταυρον. ἔπειτα δὲ ἔκφευγε μετὰ τῶν ἐταίρων καὶ σπεῦδε πρὸς τὴν ναῦν. ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐν νῶ ἔχω πρὸς τῇ νηὶ μένειν· βούλομαι γὰρ ἀπὸ τῆς Κρήτης ἀποφεύγειν καὶ μετὰ σοῦ πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας πλεῖν. οὕτω λέγει καὶ ταχέως ἀπέρχεται πρὸς τὴν πόλιν. ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς μάλα μὲν θαυμάζει, δέχεται δὲ τὸ ξίφος καὶ μένει τὴν ἡμέραν.”

[ἐρᾷ αὐτοῦ, *loves him*    σίγα, *be quiet!*    τοῦτο τὸ ξίφος, *this sword*    τοῦτο τὸ λίνον, *this thread*    μὴ ... φοβοῦ, *don't be afraid!*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. phobia
2. acrophobia
3. agoraphobia
4. entomophobia
5. triskaidekaphobia
6. Anglophobia

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: πλέω

In the two-syllable contract verb πλέω, ε does not contract with ο or ω, thus:

**Stem:** πλε-, *sail*

#### Indicative

##### Singular

**1st**    πλέ-ω >    πλέω

**2nd**    πλέ-εις >    πλεῖς

**3rd**    πλέ-ει >    πλεῖ

##### Plural

**1st**    πλέ-ομεν >    πλόομεν

**2nd**    πλέ-ετε >    πλεῖτε

**3rd**    πλέ-ουσι(ν) >    πλόουσι(ν)

#### Imperative

πλέ-ε > πλεῖ

πλέ-ετε > πλεῖτε

#### Infinitive

πλέ-ειν > πλεῖν



## 2. Verbs: Voice

### a. Active Voice

You have met many verbs that are *active* in voice and take direct objects, e.g.:

ὁ Μινώταυρος ἐσθίει ἀνθρώπους.  
*The Minotaur eats men.*

### b. Passive Voice

Sentences of this sort can be turned around so that the direct object becomes the subject, e.g.:

*Men are eaten by the Minotaur.*

The verb is now said to be *passive* in voice, and the subject of the sentence is acted on rather than being the actor. The passive voice of Greek verbs will be presented later in this course.

### c. Middle Voice

In Greek, verbs may be in a third voice termed *middle*. The middle voice is often reflexive, denoting that the subject acts *on* or *for* itself, e.g.:

Active: ὁ παῖς τὸν κύνα λούει.  
*The boy washes the dog.*

Middle: ὁ παῖς λούεται.  
*The boy washes himself or The boy washes.*

In this case the subject is thought of as acting *on* itself, and the verb in the middle voice implies a reflexive direct object in the accusative case, *himself*. The middle voice verb here can also be translated as *intransitive*, with no direct object, simply, *The boy washes*.

Here is another set of similar examples:

Active: ἡ Μυρρίνη τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγείρει.  
*Myrrhine wakes up her husband.*

Middle: ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἐγείρεται.  
*Dicaeopolis wakes himself up/wakes up.*

In the above examples, the middle voice verbs are *reflexive with accusative sense*.

Verbs in the middle voice, however, may also be *transitive* and take direct objects:

Active: ὁ παῖς τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει.  
*The boy carries the plow.*

Middle: ὁ παῖς τὸ ἄθλον φέρεται.

*The boy carries off the prize for himself.*

*The boy wins the prize.*

Here the subject is thought of as acting *for itself, in its own interests, to its own advantage*, and the verb, which takes a direct object, is reflexive with an implied dative of reference, *for himself*.

In the above example, the middle voice verb is *reflexive with dative sense*.

Verbs in the middle voice may occasionally have a *causative sense*. Here the subject of the verb causes someone else to do something. Compare the following sentences:

Active: ὁ παῖς λύει τοὺς βοῦς.

*The boy looses/frees the oxen.*

Middle: ὁ πατὴρ τὸν παῖδα λύεται.

*The father causes his son to be set free.*

*The father ransoms his son.*

### 3. Verb Forms: Middle Voice

Verbs in the middle voice can easily be recognized from their endings, which are different from the endings of the active voice that you learned in Chapters 1–5. Almost any verb can be used in the middle voice, and as samples of verbs in the middle, we will use our familiar λύω and φιλέω. As shown above, λύω in the middle voice may mean *I ransom*. In the case of the verb φιλέω there is no real difference in meaning between the active and middle voices; they are both transitive, and they both mean *I love* (someone or something). The verb τιμάω is used in the middle voice as a legal term in estimating or proposing a penalty; you may meet it later when reading Plato's *Apology*.

In the following sets of forms note the *thematic or variable vowels* (ο or ε) between the verb stem and the endings. In the second person singular indicative and the singular imperative, the σ between the two vowels (*intervocalic sigma*) is lost, and the vowels then contract: ε + αι > ει or η, and ε + ο > ου. The diphthong αι in the endings below is counted as short in determining placement of accents, e.g., λύ-ο-μαι.

## Middle Voice

## λύομαι

Stem: λῡ-, *loosen, loose*

## Indicative

## Imperative

## Infinitive

## Singular

λῡ-ο-μαι

λῡ-ε-σαι &gt; λῡει\* or λῡῃ

λῡ-ε-ται

λῡ-ε-σο &gt; λῡου

λῡ-ε-σθαι

## Plural

λῡ-ό-μεθα

λῡ-ε-σθε

λῡ-ο-νται

λῡ-ε-σθε

## φιλέομαι

## Indicative

## Imperative

## Infinitive

Stem: φιλε-, *love*

## Singular

φιλέ-ο-μαι &gt; φιλοῦμαι

φιλέ-ε-σαι &gt; φιλεῖ\* or φιλῇ φιλέ-ε-σο &gt; φιλοῦ

φιλέ-ε-ται &gt; φιλεῖται

φιλέ-ε-σθαι &gt; φιλεῖσθαι

## Plural

φιλε-ό-μεθα &gt; φιλούμεθα

φιλέ-ε-σθε &gt; φιλεῖσθε

φιλέ-ο-νται &gt; φιλοῦνται

φιλέ-ε-σθε &gt; φιλεῖσθε

\*The endings in -ει and -εῖ are more common in Attic prose and are used in this book.

## τίμάομαι

## Indicative

## Imperative

## Infinitive

Stem: τίμα-, *honor*

## Singular

τίμά-ο-μαι &gt; τιμῶμαι

τίμά-ε-σαι &gt; τιμᾶ

τίμά-ε-ται &gt; τιμᾶται

τίμά-ε-σο &gt; τιμῶ

τίμά-ε-σθαι &gt; τιμᾶσθαι

**Plural**

τιμα-ό-μεθα > τιμώμεθα  
 τιμά-ε-σθε > τιμάσθε      τιμά-ε-σθε > τιμάσθε  
 τιμά-ο-νται > τιμῶνται

Remember that when contraction takes place, an acute accent over the first of the vowels to contract becomes a circumflex over the resulting contracted vowel (see Chapter 5, Grammar 2, page 57), and remember that *ει* and *ου* represent long vowels (see page xiv); thus in the chart above φιλέ-ο-μαι > φιλοῦμαι. An acute accent over the second of two vowels that contract remains acute in the contracted form, thus in the chart above φιλε-ό-μεθα > φιλούμεθα.

Explain the accents in each of the forms above. Remember that the diphthong *αι* is counted as short in these forms.

**4. Deponent Verbs**

There are many Greek verbs that have some of their forms *only* in the middle voice; they are said to be *deponent*, as if they had “put aside” (Latin *dēpōnere*) or lost their active forms. In the vocabulary list and the first reading passage in this chapter you have met the following deponent verbs:

ἀφικνέομαι, *I arrive*; + εἰς + acc., *I arrive at*  
 βούλομαι + infin., *I want*; *I wish*  
 γίγνομαι, *I become*  
     γίνεται, *he/she/it becomes*; *it happens*  
 δέχομαι, *I receive*  
 ἔρχομαι, *I come*; *I go*  
     ἀπέρχομαι, *I go away*

These verbs have no active forms. The verbs πείθομαι and φοβέομαι, however, which have similar endings, do not belong in this list because they *may* be used in the active voice and therefore are not deponent: πείθω = *I persuade X*, and φοβέω = *I put X to flight*; *I terrify X*.

**Exercise 6α**

Locate thirteen verbs in the middle voice in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, and translate the sentences in which they occur. Identify the verbs that are deponent.

**Exercise 6β**

Make three photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present indicative, imperative, and infinitive forms of the deponent verbs γίγνομαι and ἀφικνέομαι and the forms of the verb ὁρμάομαι, *I hasten*, which you will meet in the next chapter. Write only the contracted forms. Keep these charts for reference.

**Exercise 6γ**

*Read aloud and translate the following sets of sentences containing verbs in the active and middle voices (the middle voice verbs are all reflexive with accusative sense):*

1. τὸν κύνα λούω (*wash*).  
ἡμεῖς λουόμεθα.
2. ἡ μήτηρ τὸν παῖδα ἐγείρει (*wakes up*).  
ὁ παῖς ἐγείρεται.
3. ὁ δεσπότης τὸν δοῦλον τοῦ πόνου παύει (*stops from + gen.*).  
τοῦ πόνου παύομαι.
4. ὁ δοῦλος τοὺς λίθους αἶρει.  
ὁ δοῦλος ἐγείρεται καὶ ἐπαίρει ἑαυτὸν (*himself*).
5. οἱ παῖδες τὸν τρόχον (*the wheel, hoop*) τρέπουσιν (*turn*).  
ὁ δοῦλος πρὸς τὸν δεσπότην τρέπεται.

**Exercise 6δ**

*Read aloud and translate the following sets of sentences containing verbs in the active and middle voices (the middle voice verbs are all reflexive with dative sense or causative):*

1. τί οὐ λῦεις τοὺς βοῦς;  
ὁ ἱερεὺς (*the priest*) τὴν παῖδα λύεται.
2. τὸ ἄροτρον μοι φέρετε.  
ὁ νεανίας τὸ ἄθλον φέρεται.
3. οἱ ναῦται ναῦν μεγάλην ποιοῦσιν.  
οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἐορτὴν ποιοῦνται.  
(N.B. Either the active or the middle voice may be used here with little difference in meaning.)
4. ὁ βασιλεὺς τοὺς νεανίας αἰρεῖ.  
ὁ Θησεὺς τοὺς ἐταίρους αἰρεῖται.  
(αἰρέω = *I take*; αἰροῦμαι = *I take for myself* = *I choose*)
5. ὁ βασιλεὺς οὐκ ἐθέλει τοὺς Ἀθηναίους λῦειν.  
ἡ βασιλεία βούλεται τοὺς Ἀθηναίους λῦεσθαι.

**Exercise 6ε**

*Change the following forms to their corresponding plurals and translate the plurals:*

- |             |             |               |
|-------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. λῦομαι   | 3. δέχει    | 5. ἀφικνεῖται |
| 2. βούλεται | 4. φοβοῦμαι | 6. γίγνομαι   |

**Exercise 6ζ**

*Change the following forms to their corresponding singulars and translate the singulars:*

- |                    |                        |                |
|--------------------|------------------------|----------------|
| 1. λύεσθε (2 ways) | 3. βούλονται           | 5. φοβούμεθα   |
| 2. πειθόμεθα       | 4. ἀφικνεῖσθε (2 ways) | 6. ἀφικνοῦνται |

**Exercise 6η**

*Read aloud and translate the following sentences containing deponent verbs:*

1. ὁ τε Θησεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι ἀπὸ τῶν Ἀθηνῶν ἀποπλέουσι καὶ δι' ὀλίγου εἰς τὴν Κρήτην ἀφικνοῦνται.
2. ὁ τε βασιλεὺς αὐτοὺς καὶ ἡ βασίλεια αὐτοὺς δέχονται.
3. αἱ μὲν παρθένοι μάλα φοβοῦνται, ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται.
4. ἄρ' οὐ φοβεῖ τὸν Μινώταυρον; θήριον γὰρ δεινὸν ἐστίν.
5. οὐ βουλόμεθα εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον εἰσιέναι (*to go into*).
6. ἀνδρεῖοι γίγνεσθε. ἐγὼ γὰρ βούλομαι ὑμᾶς σφάζειν.
7. ἐπεὶ νῦν γίνεται, ἡ Ἀριάδνη πρὸς τὸ δεσμωτήριον προσέρχεται.
8. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνεῖται, τὸν Θησέα καλεῖ. βούλεται γὰρ αὐτὸν σφάζειν.
9. "μὴ φοβοῦ," φησὶν. "ἐγὼ γὰρ βούλομαί σε σφάζειν."
10. ὁ Θησεὺς τὸ ξίφος δέχεται καὶ ἀνδρείως εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον εἰσέρχεται.

**Exercise 6θ**

*Translate into Greek:*

- |                               |                                  |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. We want to stay.           | 4. Don't be frightened, friends. |
| 2. I am not afraid of you.    | 5. They are becoming lazy.       |
| 3. They arrive at the island. |                                  |



Theseus slays the Minotaur.

## Myth

The Greek word μῦθος means *story*, and the Greeks were great storytellers. Many of the stories were of immemorial antiquity, told to all children at their mothers' knees. There were stories about the times before man existed at all, about times when men and gods were on much closer terms than they are today, and about the gods and the heroes of old. The myths included stories of widely differing types. Some, like the creation myths, were concerned exclusively or primarily with the gods. For instance, Hesiod (*Works and Days* 42–105) relates how the demigod Prometheus, in pity for mankind, stole fire from heaven and gave it to man:

Zeus the Cloud-Gatherer, angry with Prometheus, said to him: "Prometheus, wise beyond all others, you are very pleased to have stolen fire and to have deceived me, but it shall be a cause of suffering both to you and to men to come. In return for the theft of fire, I shall give them a great evil, in which they shall all rejoice, hugging to themselves their own trouble." So spoke the Father of men and gods and laughed aloud. He ordered Hephaestus with all speed to mix earth and water, to put in it the speech and strength of a human, and in face to give it the fair, delightful form of a young girl like the immortal goddesses. He told Athena to teach it crafts to enable it to weave the rich web on the loom; he told golden Aphrodite to pour over its head grace and troublesome desire and pains that melt the limbs; but he bade Hermes put in it the mind of a dog and a deceitful character.

The gods and goddesses did as they were told, and Hermes called the woman Pandora, "because all (πάντες) the gods who live on Olympus gave (ἐδώρησαν) her a gift (δῶρον) for men who eat bread."

The Father sent the swift messenger of the gods, who took the gift to Epimetheus (Prometheus's brother). Epimetheus did not reflect on how Prometheus had told him never to accept a gift from Olympian Zeus but to send it back, lest it bring some evil to mortals. After he had received the evil, he remembered.



Athena decks out Pandora before sending her to Epimetheus.

Before this men lived on earth free from troubles and hard toil and the grievous diseases that bring destruction.

But the woman took the lid off the great jar and scattered the contents, and so she brought suffering on the people. Hope alone remained inside in her indestructible home beneath the rim of the jar and did not fly out, for Pandora put the lid back before Hope could escape, through the will of Zeus the Cloud-Gatherer. Countless troubles roam among the people. The earth is full of evils, and full is the sea. Diseases come upon men in the day and others come at night, bringing suffering to mortals, silently, since Zeus has taken from them the power of speech. It is impossible to escape the will of Zeus.

This myth offers an explanation of why men suffer diseases and other troubles. (Why, for instance, should men have to work for their food? In the Golden Age earth produced all manner of food spontaneously.) The story is told in allusive style: Pandora takes the lid off a great jar, from which all troubles fly out, but we are told nothing about this jar or about how it got there and why Pandora took the lid off. Hesiod's audience presumably knew the story, and he had no need to tell them. Nor is it clear why Hope is said to remain in the jar. Is the human condition hopeless?

Other myths are based on history or what the Greeks believed to be history. The story of Theseus and the Minotaur falls into this class. Theseus was an early king of Athens, around whom a whole cycle of myths crystalized. He belonged to the generation before the Trojan War and was thought to be responsible for the unification of Attica. Minos, king of Knossos in Crete, was also believed to be a historical figure. Thucydides discusses the extent of his sea-power in the introduction to his history. *Labyrinthos* means in the ancient Cretan language *House of the Double Axe*, which may have been the name of the great palace at Knossos, where the double axe frequently appears as a religious symbol. The large size and complicated plan of this palace may account for the change in meaning of the word *labyrinth* to its later sense of "maze." Bull-jumping played an important part in Cretan ritual and is often portrayed in works of Cretan art. The bull-jumpers may well have been young captives taken from Athens and other places. We thus find in the myth of Theseus historical elements strangely transmuted in the course of time.

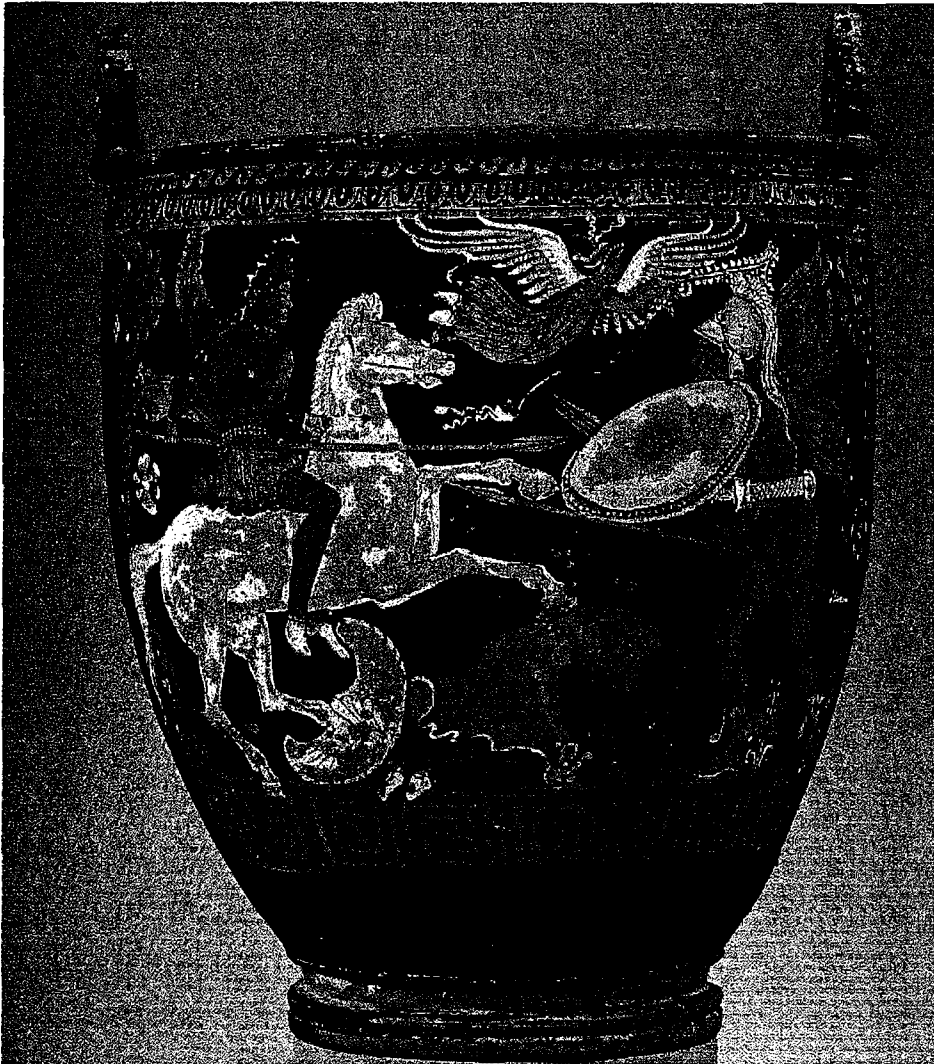
In another foreign adventure, Theseus is said to have accompanied Heracles on an expedition to fight the Amazons, a race of female warriors living on the south shore of the Black Sea; according to some accounts, Theseus led the expedition himself. He captured the queen of the Amazons and brought her back to Athens, but the Amazons came in pursuit and laid siege to Athens. They were defeated, but the queen of the Amazons bore Theseus a child, named Hippolytus, who was destined to be the cause of much sorrow for Theseus.

The myth of Odysseus and the Cyclops (Chapter 7) is taken from Homer's *Odyssey*, which is mainly concerned with the adventures of Odysseus during his journey home to Ithaca from Troy. It illustrates a third strand often found



in Greek myth: folk tale. The story of the little man who outwits a one-eyed man-eating giant is found in the folk tales of many other peoples, and the whole structure of the story as told by Homer shows the symmetry common in folk tales.

The making of myths seems to be a universal human activity, and myths are said to enshrine the corporate wisdom of primitive peoples. Their interpretation remains a vexed question, on which no two scholars agree. The strands that go to form the corpus of Greek myth are so many and various that any attempt to form general rules for their interpretation seems doomed to failure. However we look at them, they are stories that have caught the imagination of Western man throughout recorded history.



An Amazon in combat with a Greek warrior

## Ο ΜΥΘΟΣ (β)



ὁ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβείται ἀλλὰ ἀνδρείως μάχεται καὶ τὸν Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνει.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἐξέρχομαι + ἐκ + gen., *I come out of; I go out of*

ἡγέομαι + dat., *I lead*

μάχομαι, *I fight*

παρέχω, *I hand over; I supply, provide*

πορεύομαι, *I go; I walk;*

*I march; I journey*

προχωρέω, *I go forward; I come forward, advance*

Cf. προσχωρέω + dat., *I approach*

φασί(ν), *postpositive enclitic, they say*

## Noun

αἱ πύλαι, pl., *double gates*

## Adverbs

οὐδαμῶς, *in no way, no*

πολλάκις, *many times, often*

ὦς, *in exclamations, how . . . !*

## Particles

γε, *postpositive enclitic; restrictive, at least; intensive, indeed*

δή, *postpositive; emphasizes that what is said is obvious or true, indeed, in fact*

“ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρᾱ γίγνεται, ὁ Μίνως ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸ δέσμωτήριον καὶ καλεῖ τὸν τε Θησέᾱ καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους καὶ ἄγει αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὸν λαβύρινθον. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνοῦνται, οἱ δοῦλοι ἀνοίγουσι τὰς πύλας καὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους εἰσελαύνουσιν. ἔπειτα δὲ τὰς πύλας κλείουσι καὶ ἀπέρχονται· οὕτω γὰρ τῷ Μίνωταύρῳ σῖτον παρέχουσιν εἰς πολλὰς ἡμέρας. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἐταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται, ὁ δὲ Θησεύς, ‘μὴ φοβεῖσθε, ὦ φίλοι,’ φησὶν· ‘ἐγὼ γὰρ ὑμᾶς σώσω. ἔπεσθέ μοι οὖν ἀνδρείως.’ οὕτω λέγει καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον.

[ἀνοίγουσι, *open* κλείουσι, *they shut* εἰς πολλὰς ἡμέρας, *for many days* σώσω, *I will save* ἔπεσθέ μοι, *follow me!*]

“ὁ μὲν οὖν Θησεὺς ἐν μὲν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ ἔχει τὸ λίνον, ἐν δὲ τῇ δεξιᾷ  
 τὸ ξίφος, καὶ προχωρεῖ εἰς τὸν σκότον. οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται, 10  
 ἀλλ’ ὅμως ἔπονται· ἡ γὰρ ἀνάγκη αὐτοὺς ἔχει. μακρὰν οὖν ὁδὸν  
 πορεύονται καὶ πολλάκις μὲν τρέπονται, πολλάκις δὲ ψόφους  
 δεινούς ἀκούουσιν· ὁ γὰρ Μῖνώταυρος διώκει αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ σκότῳ  
 καὶ μάλα δεινῶς βρῦχᾷται. ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὸν τῶν ποδῶν ψόφον  
 ἀκούουσι καὶ τὸ τοῦ θηρίου πνεῦμα ὁσφραίνονται, καὶ ἰδού, ἐν τῇ 15  
 ὁδῷ πάρεστιν ὁ Μῖνώταυρος. δεινῶς δὴ βρῦχᾷται καὶ ἐπὶ τὸν Θησέα  
 ὀρμᾷται.

[τῇ ἀριστερᾷ, *the left hand* τῇ δεξιᾷ, *the right hand* τὸν σκότον, *the darkness*  
 ἡ . . . ἀνάγκη, *necessity* τρέπονται, *they turn* ψόφους, *noises* βρῦχᾷται,  
*roars* τῶν ποδῶν, *of feet* τὸ τοῦ θηρίου πνεῦμα, *the breath of the beast* ὁσ-  
 φραίνονται, *they smell* ὀρμᾷται, *rushes*]

“ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται, ἀλλὰ μάλα ἀνδρείως μάχεται· τῇ μὲν  
 γὰρ ἀριστερᾷ λαμβάνεται τῆς τοῦ θηρίου κεφαλῆς, τῇ δὲ δεξιᾷ τὸ 20  
 στήθος τύπτει. ὁ δὲ Μῖνώταυρος δεινῶς κλάζει καὶ καταπίπτει πρὸς  
 τὴν γῆν. οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι, ἐπεὶ ὀρώσι τὸ θηρίον ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενον,  
 χαίρουσι καί, ‘ὦ Θησεῦ,’ φασίν, ‘ὥς ἀνδρείος εἶ. ὥς θαυμάζομέν σε  
 καὶ τιμῶμεν. ἀλλὰ νῦν γε σῶζε ἡμᾶς ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου καὶ ἡγοῦ  
 ἡμῖν πρὸς τὰς πύλας. μακρὰ γὰρ ἐστὶν ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ πολὺς ὁ σκότος·  
 τὴν δ’ ὁδὸν ἀγνοοῦμεν.’ 25

[λαμβάνεται . . . τῆς κεφαλῆς, *takes hold of the head* τὸ στήθος, *its breast*  
 κλάζει, *shrieks* κείμενον, *lying* ἀγνοοῦμεν, *we do not know*]

“ὁ δὲ Θησεὺς οὐ φοβεῖται, ἀλλὰ τὸ λίνον λαμβάνει—οὕτω γὰρ  
 τὴν ὁδὸν γινώσκει—καὶ ἡγεῖται τοῖς ἐταίροις πρὸς τὰς πύλας. ἐπεὶ δ’  
 ἀφικνοῦνται, τὸν μόχλον διακόπτουσι καὶ μένουσιν ἐκεῖ· ἔτι γὰρ  
 ἡμέρᾳ ἐστίν. ἐπεὶ δὲ νύξ γίγνεται, ἐξέρχονται ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου καὶ  
 σπεύδουσι πρὸς τὴν ναῦν. ἐκεῖ δὲ τὴν Ἀριάδνην αὐτὴν ὀρώσιν· μένει 30  
 γὰρ πρὸς τῇ νηϊ. ταχέως οὖν εἰσβαίνουσι καὶ ἀποπλέουσι πρὸς τὰς  
 Ἀθηνᾶς. οὕτως οὖν ὁ Θησεὺς τὸν τε Μῖνώταυρον ἀποκτείνει καὶ  
 τοὺς ἐταίρους σῶζει εἰς τὰς Ἀθηνᾶς.”

[τὸν μόχλον, *the bolt* διακόπτουσι, *they cut through* σῶζει εἰς, *brings . . . safely to*]

οὕτω περαίνει τὸν μῦθον ἡ Μυρρίνη, ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “καὶ ἡ Ἀριάδνη;” φησὶν· “ἄρα χαίρει; ἄρα φιλεῖ αὐτὴν ὁ Θησεύς;” ἡ δὲ 35 Μυρρίνη, “οὐδαμῶς· οὐ χαίρει ἡ Ἀριάδνη οὐδὲ φιλεῖ αὐτὴν ὁ Θησεύς.” ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “τί οὐ φιλεῖ αὐτὴν ὁ Θησεύς; τί γίνεται;” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “ἐκείνον τὸν μῦθον οὐκ ἐθέλω σοι λέγειν νῦν γε.”

[περαίνει, *ends* ἐκείνον, *that*]

## WORD BUILDING

*Describe the relationship between the words in the following sets. From your knowledge of the words at the left, deduce the meaning of those on the right:*

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| 1. ὁ δοῦλος  | ἡ δούλη  |
| 2. ὁ φίλος   | ἡ φίλη   |
| 3. ὁ θεός    | ἡ θεᾶ    |
| 4. ὁ ἐταῖρος | ἡ ἐταίρᾱ |
| 5. ὁ οἶκος   | ἡ οἰκίᾱ  |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Middle Voice: Meaning

Note the following verbs in the middle voice in the reading passage above:

φοβοῦνται, etc. (6, 7, 10, 18, 26) = *they are afraid*, etc.

φοβέω, active voice, transitive = *I put X to flight; I terrify X*

φοβέομαι, middle voice, intransitive = *I am frightened, am afraid*

φοβέομαι, middle voice, transitive + acc. = *I fear, am afraid of X*

τρέπονται (12) = *they turn*

τρέπω, active voice, transitive = *I turn X* (direct object)

τρέπομαι, middle voice, intransitive, reflexive with accusative sense = *I turn myself, I turn*

ὀρμάται (17) = *rushes*

ὀρμάω, active voice, transitive = *I set X* (direct object) *in motion*

This verb may also be intransitive in the active voice:

ὀρμάω, active voice, intransitive = *I start; I rush*

ὀρμάομαι, middle voice, intransitive, reflexive with accusative sense = *I set myself in motion; I start; I rush; I hasten*

λαμβάνεται (19) = *takes hold of*

λαμβάνω, active voice, transitive = *I take X* (direct object in accusative case); *I take hold of X* (direct object in accusative case)

λαμβάνομαι, middle voice, reflexive with dative sense, object in genitive case = *I take hold of X for myself/in my own interests*

Note also the meanings of the following verbs in active and middle voices:

καθίζω, active voice, transitive = *I make X sit down; I set; I place*

This verb may also be intransitive in the active voice:

καθίζω, active voice, intransitive = *I sit*

καθίζομαι, middle voice, intransitive, reflexive with accusative sense = *I seat myself, sit down*

πείθω, active voice, transitive = *I persuade*

πείθομαι, middle voice, reflexive with accusative sense = *I persuade myself for + dat. (someone or something) = I obey someone or something*

πείθομαι αὐτῷ = *I obey him.*

πείθομαι τοῖς νόμοις = *I obey the laws.*

### Exercise 6i

Read aloud and translate the following sentences containing verbs with middle voice forms. Identify deponent verbs, and identify the non-deponent verbs that are used here in the middle voice:

1. οἴκαδε βαδίζειν βουλόμεθα.
2. οἱ νεᾶνιαι καὶ αἱ παρθέναι ἐν τῷ λαβυρίνθῳ μέγα φοβοῦνται.
3. ἄργος γίγναι, ὃ δοῦλε.
4. εἰς τὴν Κρήτην ἀφικνούμεθα.
5. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἡμᾶς δέχεται.
6. ὁ κύων ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον ὀρμᾶται.
7. αἱ γυναῖκες πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ καθίζονται.
8. ὁ Θησεὺς τοῦ ξίφους λαμβάνεται.
9. ἄρ' οὐκ ἐθέλεις τῷ πατρὶ πείθεσθαι;
10. μὴ φοβεῖσθε τὸν λύκον, ὃ παῖδες.

## 6. Some Uses of the Dative Case

- a. The *indirect object* of verbs of giving, showing, and telling is in the dative case, e.g., οὕτω γὰρ τῷ Μινωταύρῳ σίτον παρέχουσιν = *In this way they supply food to the Minotaur* or *In this way they supply the Minotaur with food*. Here the word σίτον is the direct object of the verb παρέχουσιν, and the words τῷ Μινωταύρῳ are the indirect object.
- b. The dative case may be used with linking verbs, such as ἐστί(ν) and γίγνεται, to indicate the person who *possesses* something, e.g., ἔστιν αὐτῷ παῖς τις ὀνόματι Θησεύς, lit., *there is for him a child. . . .* = *he has a child. . . .* This is called the *dative of the possessor*.
- c. The Greek sentence in b above shows another use of the dative case, the *dative of respect*: ὀνόματι Θησεύς, lit., *Theseus with respect to his name* = *called Theseus*. ὁ Μινώταυρος δεινός ἐστιν ὄψει καὶ φωνῇ = *The Minotaur is terrible with respect to in appearance and voice*.
- d. The dative case may be used to indicate the *means* or *instrument* by which an action is carried out, e.g., τῇ μὲν γὰρ ἀριστερᾷ λαμβάνεται τῆς τοῦ θηρίου κεφαλῆς, τῇ δὲ δεξιᾷ τὸ στήθος τύπτει = *with his left hand he takes hold of the head of the beast, and with his right hand he strikes its chest*.
- e. The dative case may be used to indicate the *time when* an action takes place, e.g., τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ = *on the next day*. Note that the Greek does not use a preposition here.
- f. The dative case is used after certain prepositions, especially those that indicate the *place where* someone or something is or something happens, e.g., ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ and πρὸς τῇ νηϊ.
- g. The dative case is used with *certain verbs*, e.g.: οἱ βόες τῷ ἀγρῷ προσχωροῦσιν = *the oxen approach the field*.

Your English translation will use a direct object in the accusative case, e.g., ὁ Αἰγεὺς πείθεται αὐτῷ = *Aegeus obeys him*; ἔπεσθέ μοι ἀνδρείως = *follow me bravely*; and ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς εἰς τὸν λαβύρινθον = *he leads them into the labyrinth*.

Verbs that take the dative case:

ἕπομαι, *I follow*

βοηθέω, *I come to (someone's) aid*

ἡγέομαι, *I lead*

πείθομαι, *I obey*

προσχωρέω, *I go toward, approach*

συλλαμβάνω, *I help*

**Exercise 6κ**

*Locate at least twenty words or phrases in the dative case in reading passages α and β and identify each use of the dative case.*

**Exercise 6λ**

*Read aloud, translate, and identify each use of the dative case:*

1. ὁ ἀνὴρ ἡμῖν οὐ πείθεται.
2. πείθεσθέ μοι, ὦ παῖδες.
3. πάρεχέ μοι τὸ ἄροτρον.
4. τὸν μῦθον τῷ παιδί λέγω.
5. ἔστι τῷ αὐτουργῷ ἄροτρον.
6. ὁ αὐτουργός, Δικαιοπόλις ὀνόματι, τοῖς βουσίν εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἡγεῖται.
7. ὁ παῖς τὸν λύκον λίθοις βάλλει (*pelts*).
8. ἡ γυνὴ τῷ ἀνδρὶ πολλὴν σίτον παρέχει.
9. ὁ δεσπότης τοὺς δούλους τοσαύτη βοῇ καλεῖ ὥστε φοβοῦνται.
10. ἔστι τῷ παιδί καλὸς κύων.

**7. Prepositions**

While, as seen above, prepositions that take the dative case usually refer to the *place where* someone or something is or *where* some action takes place, prepositions that take the genitive often express ideas of *place from which*, and prepositions that take the accusative often express ideas of *place to which*. Observe the following examples that have been given in the vocabulary lists so far:

With genitive: ἀπό, *from*; ἐκ/ἐξ, *out of*; μετά, *with* (with this last example there is no sense of motion from a place)

With dative: ἐν, *in*; ἐπὶ, *upon, on*; πρὸς, *at, near, by*; ὑπό, *under*

With accusative: ἀνά, *up*; εἰς, *into*; το; at; ἐπί, *at; against*; κατά, *down*; μετά, *after*; πρὸς, *to, toward*; ὑπό, *under*

**Exercise 6μ**

*Write out the following sentences, putting the nouns in the correct case, and then translate the sentences:*

1. πρὸς (ὁ ἀγρός) ἐρχόμεθα.
2. πρὸς (ἡ ὁδός) καθίζουσιν.
3. ἐκ (ἡ οἰκία) σπεύδει.
4. ἀπὸ (ἡ νῆσος) πλέουσιν.
5. κατὰ (ἡ ὁδός) πορεύονται.
6. μετά (οἱ ἐταῖροι) φεύγει.
7. ἐν (ὁ λαβύρινθος) μένετε.

8. ἡγεῖσθε ἡμῖν πρὸς (ἢ κρήνη).
9. οἱ παῖδες τρέχουσιν ἀνὰ (ἢ ὁδός).
10. αἱ παρθέναι καθίζονται ὑπὸ (τὸ δένδρον).
11. ὁ κύων ὀρμᾶται ἐπὶ (ὁ λύκος).
12. οἱ ἑταῖροι εἰς (ὁ λαβύρινθος) εἰσέρχονται.

### Exercise 6v

*Translate into Greek:*

1. Aren't you willing to obey me, boy? (Use ἄρα.)
2. Tell me the story.
3. I hand the plow over to you.
4. The farmer has a big ox. (Use dative of the possessor; see *Exercise 6λ*, no. 5, for placement and accent of the verb.)
5. The young man (ὁ νεᾶνίς), called Theseus, leads his comrades bravely.
6. The boy strikes (use βάλλω) the wolf with a stone.
7. The girl hands over food to her friend.
8. The slave strikes the oxen with a goad (use τὸ κέντρον).
9. The girl approaches the gates.
10. On the next day the Athenians flee out of the labyrinth.

### Exercise 6ξ

*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

1. ὁ Θησεὺς βούλεται τοὺς ἑταίρους σφάζειν.  
Aegeus is very afraid but obeys him.
2. οἱ μὲν Ἀθηναῖοι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν νῆσον, ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς δέχεται αὐτούς.  
The comrades are especially frightened, but Theseus leads them bravely.
3. μὴ μάχεσθε, ὦ φίλοι, μηδὲ (and don't) βοᾶτε ἀλλὰ σιγᾶτε (be quiet).  
Don't fear the Minotaur, friends, but be brave!
4. ἐπεὶ νῦξ γίγνεται, ἡ παρθένος ἔρχεται πρὸς τὰς πύλας.  
When day comes (becomes), the ship arrives at the island.
5. ἐπεὶ ὁ Θησεὺς ἀποκτείνει τὸν Μινώταυρον, ἐπόμεθα αὐτῷ ἐκ τοῦ λαβυρίνθου.  
When we are journeying to Crete, we see many islands.





Theseus deserts Ariadne.

## Ο ΘΗΣΕΥΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΡΙΑΔΝΗΝ ΚΑΤΑΛΕΙΠΕΙ

*Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:*

οὕτως οὖν ὁ Θησεὺς τοὺς ἐταίρους σφάζει καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Κρήτης ἀποφεύγει. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν πρὸς νησὸν τινα, Νάξον ὀνόματι, πλέουσιν. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφικνοῦνται, ἐκβαίνουσιν ἐκ τῆς νεῶς καὶ ἀναπαύονται. ἐπεὶ δὲ νύξ γίνεται, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι καθεύδουσιν· αὐτὸς δὲ ὁ Θησεὺς οὐ καθεύδει ἀλλὰ ἤσυχος μένει· οὐ γὰρ φιλεῖ τὴν Ἀριάδνην οὐδὲ βούλεται φέρειν αὐτὴν πρὸς τὰς Ἀθήνας. δι' ὀλίγου οὖν, ἐπεὶ καθεύδει ἡ Ἀριάδνη, ὁ Θησεὺς ἐγείρει τοὺς ἐταίρους καί, “στυγάτε, ὦ φίλοι,” φησὶν· “καιρὸς ἐστὶν ἀποπλεῖν. σπεύδετε οὖν πρὸς τὴν ναῦν.” ἐπεὶ οὖν εἰς τὴν ναῦν ἀφικνοῦνται, ταχέως λῶσιν τὰ πείσματα καὶ ἀποπλέουσιν· τὴν δ' Ἀριάδνην λείπουν ἐν τῇ νήσῳ. 5

[τινα, *a certain* Νάξον, *Naxos* (an island in the middle of the Aegean Sea, north of Crete) ἀναπαύονται, *they rest* ἤσυχος, *quiet(ly)* ἐγείρει, *wakes up* τὰ πείσματα, *the cables*]

1. Where do Theseus and his comrades sail first?
2. What do they do first when they arrive there?
3. Why does Theseus not sleep?
4. What does Theseus say to his men when he awakens them?

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμέρᾳ γίνεται, ἀνεγείρεται ἡ Ἀριάδνη καὶ ὁρᾷ ὅτι οὔτε ὁ Θησεὺς οὔτε οἱ ἐταῖροι πάρεσιν. τρέχει οὖν πρὸς τὸν αἰγιαλὸν καὶ βλέπει πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν· τὴν δὲ ναῦν οὐχ ὁρᾷ. μάλα οὖν φοβεῖται καὶ βοᾷ· “ὦ Θησεῦ, ποῦ εἶ; ἄρά με καταλείπεις; ἐπάνελθε καὶ σῶζέ με.” 10

[ἀνεγείρεται, *wakes up* τὸν αἰγιαλὸν, *the shore* τὴν θάλατταν, *the sea* ἐπά-  
νελθε, *come back!*]

5. What does Ariadne see when she wakes up?
6. What does she shout?

### Exercise 60

*Translate into Greek:*

1. While (ἐν ᾧ) Ariadne is calling, the god (ὁ θεός) Dionysus (ὁ Διόνυσος) looks from heaven (use ὁ οὐρανός) toward earth; then he sees Ariadne and loves her.
2. So he flies (πέτεται) from heaven to earth. And when he arrives at the island, he approaches her and says, "Ariadne, don't be afraid. For I, Dionysus, am here. I love you and want to save you. Come with me to heaven."
3. So Ariadne rejoices and goes to him.
4. Then Dionysus carries her up (ἀναφέρει) to heaven; and Ariadne becomes a goddess (θεά) and stays forever (εἰσαεί) in heaven.



Dionysus rescues Ariadne.

## Classical Greek

### Marriage

The following lines in praise of marriage are attributed to Hipponax (fragment 182), a sixth century B.C. writer of iambic verse, but are probably from a writer of New Comedy:

γάμος κράτιστός ἐστιν ἀνδρὶ σώφρονι  
 τρόπον γυναικὸς χρηστὸν ἔδνον λαμβάνειν·  
 αὕτη γὰρ ἢ προῖξ οἰκίαν σφάζει μόνη. . . .  
 συνεργὸν οὗτος ἀντὶ δεσποίνης ἔχει  
 εὖνουν, βεβαίαν εἰς ἅπαντα τὸν βίον.

[γάμος, *marriage* κράτιστος, *best* (translate, *The best marriage . . . is to take . . .*)  
 ἀνδρὶ σώφρονι, *for the prudent man* τρόπον γυναικὸς χρηστὸν, *the good character of a woman* ἔδνον, *(as) a wedding gift* αὕτη . . . ἢ προῖξ, *this dowry*  
 μόνη, *alone* συνεργὸν, *helpmate* οὗτος, *this man* ἀντὶ δεσποίνης, *instead of a tyrant* εὖνουν, *well-disposed* βεβαίαν, *reliable* εἰς ἅπαντα τὸν βίον, *for all his life*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 13.10-16

We begin with an English translation of the first verses of the passage:

Jesus was teaching in a synagogue on the sabbath and cured a woman who had been bowed by an infirmity for eighteen years. He laid his hands on her and said, "Woman, you are freed from your infirmity," and immediately she stood up straight. But the ruler of the synagogue, objecting because Jesus had cured her on the sabbath day, said to the crowd:

"Ἐξ ἡμέραι εἰσὶν ἐν αἷς δεῖ ἐργάζεσθαι· ἐν αὐταῖς οὖν ἐρχόμενοι θεραπεύεσθε καὶ μὴ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ τοῦ σαββάτου." ἀπεκρίθη δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ κύριος καὶ εἶπεν, "ὑποκρίται, ἕκαστος ὑμῶν τῷ σαββάτῳ οὐ λύει τὸν βοῦν αὐτοῦ ἢ τὸν ὄνον ἀπὸ τῆς φάτνης καὶ ἀπαγαγὼν ποτίζει·"

[Ἐξ, *six* ἐν αἷς, *in which* δεῖ ἐργάζεσθαι, *(we) should work* ἐρχόμενοι, *going* θεραπεύεσθε, *work your cures* ἀπεκρίθη, *answered* ὁ κύριος, *the Lord* εἶπεν, *said* ὑποκρίται, *hypocrites* ἕκαστος, *each* ἢ, *or* τὸν ὄνον, *his ass* τῆς φάτνης, *the stall* ἀπαγαγὼν, *having led (it) away* ποτίζει, *give (it) water*]

Jesus concludes: "And this woman, a daughter of Abraham, whom Satan bound for eighteen years, should she not have been freed from this bond on the sabbath day?"

## Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (α)



ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς τὸν μοχλὸν ἐλαύνει εἰς τὸν ἵνα ὀφθαλμὸν τοῦ Κύκλωπος.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

αἶρέω, *I take*

Cf. αἶρω, *I lift*

ἐπαίρω [= ἐπι- + αἶρω], *I lift, raise*

ἐπαίρω ἑμαυτόν, *I get up*

εὕρισκω, *I find*

ἵέναι, *to go*

κελεύω + acc. and infin., *I order, tell (someone to do something)*

παρασκευάζω, *I prepare*

## Nouns

ὁ ὄρ ἡ αἴξ (τῶν αἰγῶν, τὰς αἴγας), *goat*

ἡ θάλαττα, *sea*

Declined like ἡ μέλιττα, *bee*  
(see Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 41)

τὸ ὄνομα, *name*

ἡ πόλις, *city*

## Interrogative Pronoun / Adjective

τίς, nom. pl., τίνες, interroga-

tive pronoun, *who?* interroga-

tive adjective, *which . . . ?*

*what . . . ?*

## Indefinite Pronoun / Adjective

τις, acc. sing., τίνά, enclitic pronoun, *someone; something; anyone; anything; enclitic adjective, a certain; some; a, an*

## Pronoun / Adjective

οὐδεὶς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, masc. acc. sing., οὐδένα, pronoun, *no one; nothing; adjective, no*

## Reflexive Pronoun

ἑμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ, *of myself, of yourself, of him-, her-, itself*

## Adjective

μέγιστος, -η, -ον, *very big, very large; very great; biggest, largest; greatest*

Cf. μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *big large; great*

## Prepositions

περί + gen., about, concerning;  
+ acc., around

## Proper Names

ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων (τοῦ

Ἀγαμέμνονος), Agamemnon

οἱ Ἀχαιοί, Achaeans; Greeks

ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς (τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως,

τῷ Ὀδυσσεϊ), Odysseus

ἡ Τροίη, Troy

ἐπεὶ δὲ περαίνει τὸν μῦθον ἡ Μυρρίνη, ἡ Μέλιττα, “ὥς καλὸς ἐστὶν ὁ μῦθος,” φησὶν. “λέγε ἡμῖν ἄλλον τινὰ μῦθον, ὦ μήτερ.” ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “οὐδαμῶς,” φησὶν· “νῦν γὰρ ἐν νῷ ἔχω τὸ δεῖπνον παρασκευάζειν.” ἡ μὲν οὖν Μέλιττα δακρύει, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “μὴ δάκρυε, ὦ Μέλιττα,” φησὶν· “ἐγὼ γὰρ ἐθέλω σοι μῦθον καλὸν λέγειν 6  
περὶ ἀνδρὸς πολυτρόπου, ὀνόματι Ὀδυσσέως.

[περαίνει, finishes δακρύει, cries πολυτρόπου, much-traveled]

“ὁ γὰρ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐπὶ τὴν Τροίαν πλεῖ μετὰ τοῦ τ’ Ἀγαμέμνονος καὶ τῶν Ἀχαιῶν. δέκα μὲν οὖν ἔτη περὶ Τροίαν μάχονται, τέλος δὲ τὴν πόλιν αἰροῦσιν. ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς τοὺς ἐταίρους κελεύει εἰς τὰς ναῦς εἰσβαίνειν, καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Τροίης οἴκαδε ἀποπλέουσιν. ἐν δὲ τῇ 10  
ὁδῷ πολλὰ καὶ δεινὰ πάσχουσιν. πολλάκις μὲν γὰρ χειμῶνας ὑπέχουσιν, πολλάκις δὲ εἰς ἄλλους κινδύνους μεγίστους ἐμπίπτουσιν.

[δέκα . . . ἔτη, for ten years τέλος, adv., finally χειμῶνας, storms ὑπέχουσιν, they undergo κινδύνους, dangers ἐμπίπτουσιν (ἐν- + πίπτουσιν), fall into]

“πλέονσὶ ποτε εἰς νῆσόν τινα μίτρᾱν, ἐκβαίνουσι δὲ ἐκ τῶν νεῶν καὶ δεῖπνον ποιοῦσιν ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ. ἔστι δὲ ἐγγὺς ἄλλῃ νήσῳ· καπνὸν ὀρώσι καὶ φθόγγον ἀκούουσι προβάτων τε καὶ αἰγῶν. τῇ οὖν 15  
ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς τοὺς ἐταίρους κελεύει εἰς τὴν ναὺν εἰσβαίνειν· βούλεται γὰρ εἰς τὴν νῆσον πλεῖν καὶ γινώσκειν τίνες ἐκεῖ οἰκοῦσιν.

[ποτε, at one time τῶν νεῶν, the ships τῷ αἰγιαλῷ, the beach ἐγγὺς, nearby καπνὸν, smoke φθόγγον, the sound τῇ . . . ὑστεραίᾳ, on the next day]

“δι’ ὀλίγου οὖν ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν νῆσον. ἐγγὺς τῆς θαλάττης ἄντρον μέγα ὀρώσι καὶ πολλὰ τε πρόβατα καὶ πολλὰς αἰγας. ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς τοῖς ἐταίροις, ‘ὁμεῖς μὲν,’ φησὶν, ‘πρὸς τῇ νηὶ μένετε. ἐγὼ δὲ 20  
ἐν νῷ ἔχω εἰς τὸ ἄντρον εἰσιέναι.’ δώδεκα οὖν τῶν ἐταίρων κελεύει ἑαυτῷ ἕκαστοι. οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι πρὸς τῇ νηὶ μένουσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὸ

ἄντρον ἀφικνούνται, οὐδένα ἄνθρωπον εὐρίσκουσιν ἔνδον. οἱ οὖν  
 ἑταῖροι, ὧς Ὀδυσσεύ, φᾶσιν, 'οὐδεὶς ἄνθρωπός ἐστιν ἔνδον. ἔλαυνε  
 οὖν τά τε πρόβατα καὶ τὰς αἴγας πρὸς τὴν ναῦν καὶ ἀπόπλει ὥς 25  
 τάχιστα.'

[ἄντρον, *cave* δώδεκα, *twelve* ἑαυτῷ ἔπεσθαι, *to follow him* ἔνδον, *inside*  
 ὥς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*]

“ὁ δ’ Ὀδυσσεὺς οὐκ ἐθέλει τοῦτο ποιεῖν· βούλεται γὰρ γινώσκειν  
 τίς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ. οἱ δὲ ἑταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται· ὅμως δὲ τῷ  
 Ὀδυσσεὶ πείθονται καὶ μένουσιν ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ.”

[τοῦτο, *this* ὅμως, *nevertheless*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

- |                                 |  |
|---------------------------------|--|
| 1. myth                         | 5. monotheist (what does <i>μόνος</i> mean?) |
| 2. mythology                    | 6. atheist (what does <i>ἀ-</i> mean?)       |
| 3. polytheist                   | 7. theology                                  |
| (what does <i>ὁ θεός</i> mean?) |  |
| 4. pantheist                    |  |
| (what does <i>πᾶν</i> mean?)    |  |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Substantive Use of Adjectives

Adjectives, especially in the plural, are often used as substantives, thus functioning as nouns, and can be translated by supplying words such as “men,” “women,” or “things,” depending on the gender of the adjective, e.g.:

ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πολλοὺς ὁρῶμεν.  
*We see many (men) on the road.*

πρὸς τὴν κρήνην πολλαὶ ὑδρίαις φέρουσιν.  
*Many (women) are carrying water jars to the spring.*

ἐν δὲ τῇ ὁδῷ πολλὰ καὶ δεινὰ πάσχουσιν.  
*On the journey they suffer many terrible (things).*

Note also that Greek uses the conjunction καὶ here, while English does not use a connective.

## 2. Nouns: Declensions

As you have seen, Greek nouns are divided into three large groups or *declensions*. You have already studied nouns of the 1st or *alpha declension* (e.g., ἡ κρήνη, ἡ ὑδρία, ἡ μέλιττα, ἡ μάχαιρα, ὁ δεσπότης, ὁ Ξανθιάς, and ὁ νεανίας) and of the 2nd or *omicron declension* (e.g., ὁ ἀγρός and τὸ δένδρον). Nouns of the 1st declension are feminine, except for those whose nominatives end in -ης or -ας, such as ὁ δεσπότης, ὁ Ξανθιάς, and ὁ νεανίας; most nouns of the 2nd declension are masculine (e.g., ὁ ἀγρός), a few are feminine (e.g., ἡ ὁδός, ἡ νῆσος, and ἡ παρθένος), and some are neuter (e.g., τὸ δένδρον).

The 3rd declension has many nouns of all three genders, and it is not easy to predict the gender from the ending of the nominative singular, as it is with 1st and 2nd declension nouns. Some 3rd declension nouns can be either masculine or feminine, such as ὁ or ἡ παῖς, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child*.

The stems of 3rd declension nouns end in a consonant or in vowels or diphthongs. Nouns of the 3rd declension can be recognized by the ending -ος or -ως in the genitive singular, e.g., παῖς, genitive, παιδός and πόλις, genitive, πόλεως. By removing the genitive singular ending, you find the stem, e.g., παιδ-.

To help you identify the declension to which a noun belongs and to help you determine the stem of 3rd declension nouns, we will henceforth list nouns in the vocabulary lists with their nominative and genitive forms, as follows:

<b>1st Declension:</b> (stems in -ᾱ or -α)	ἡ κρήνη, τῆς κρήνης, <i>spring</i> ἡ ὑδρία, τῆς ὑδρίας, <i>water jar</i> ἡ μέλιττα, τῆς μελίττης, <i>bee</i> ἡ μάχαιρα, τῆς μαχαίρας, <i>knife</i> ὁ δεσπότης, τοῦ δεσπότη, <i>master</i> ὁ νεανίας, τοῦ νεανίου, <i>young man</i>
<b>2nd Declension:</b> (stems in -ο)	ὁ ἀγρός, τοῦ ἀγροῦ, <i>field</i> ἡ ὁδός, τῆς ὁδοῦ, <i>road; way; journey</i> τὸ δένδρον, τοῦ δένδρου, <i>tree</i>
<b>3rd Declension:</b>	ὁ or ἡ παῖς, τοῦ or τῆς παιδός, <i>boy; girl; son;</i> <i>daughter; child</i> ἡ πόλις, τῆς πόλεως, <i>city</i>

## 3. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Velar and Dental Stems

The stems of many 3rd declension nouns end in consonants. You find the stem by dropping the -ος ending from the genitive singular. The 3rd declension endings shown in the chart of forms below are then added to the stem.

**a. Stems ending in a velar (γ, κ, χ)**ὁ φύλαξ, τοῦ φύλακ-ος, *guard*Cf. φυλάττω, *I guard***Stem:** φυλακ-, *guard*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ φύλακ-ς > φύλαξ	οἱ φύλακ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ φύλακ-ος	τῶν φυλάκ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ φύλακ-ι	τοῖς φύλακ-σι(ν) > φύλαξι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν φύλακ-α	τοὺς φύλακ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ φύλακ-ς > φύλαξ	ὦ φύλακ-ες

Note that the vocatives are the same as the nominatives. Note that in the nominative and vocative singular and the dative plural the κ of the stem and the ς/σ of the ending produce the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ (see page xv). And note that, as is the case with most nouns, the accent is persistent; in the genitive plural the accent cannot stand on the third syllable from the end because the final syllable is long (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32).

ὁ or ἡ αἴξ, τοῦ or τῆς αἰγ-ός, *goat***Stem:** αἰγ-, *goat*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ αἴγ-ς > αἴξ	οἱ αἴγ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ αἰγ-ός	τῶν αἰγ-ῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ αἰγ-ί	τοῖς αἰγ-σί(ν) > αἰξι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν αἴγ-α	τοὺς αἴγ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ αἴγ-ς > αἴξ	ὦ αἴγ-ες

Note that monosyllabic nouns of the 3rd declension usually have an accent on the final syllable of the genitive and dative cases, singular and plural. Note that the vocatives are the same as the nominatives. Note that in the nominative and vocative singular and the dative plural the γ and ς/σ produce the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ. And note the circumflex accent over the diphthong of the stem when it is accented and followed by a short syllable (see Chapter 3, Grammar 3, page 32).

**PRACTICE:** Write the complete set of the forms of ὁ ὄνυξ, τοῦ ὄνυχος, *claw; nail* (note that χ and ς/σ produce the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ).



b. *Stems ending in a dental (δ, θ, ν)*ὁ or ἡ παῖς, τοῦ or τῆς παιδ-ός, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child***Stem:** παιδ-, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ παῖδ-ς > παῖς	οἱ παῖδ-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ παιδ-ός	τῶν παιδ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ παιδ-ί	τοῖς παιδ-σί(ν) > παῖσί(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν παιδ-α	τούς παιδ-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ παιδ > παῖ	ὦ παιδ-ες

Remember that all dental stops are lost before σ (see page xv); thus in the nominative singular and the dative plural of παῖς the δ is lost before the σ of the endings. The vocative singular is the stem without the -δ (all stop consonants are lost in word-final position; the only consonants with which Greek words can end are ν, ρ, ζ, or one of the double consonants ξ and ψ). Note that while monosyllabic nouns of the 3rd declension usually have an accent on the final syllable of the genitive and dative cases, singular and plural (see ὁ αἴξ on the opposite page), in this word the accent of the genitive plural is persistent and remains on the first syllable.

**PRACTICE:** Write the complete set of the forms of ἡ ἐλπίς, τῆς ἐλπίδος, *hope*.

The following is an example of a *neuter* dental-stem noun of the 3rd declension. Note the ways in which it is similar to and different from the masculine/feminine nouns above:

τὸ ὄνομα, τοῦ ὀνόματ-ος, *name***Stem:** ὀνοματ-, *name*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	τὸ ὀνοματ > ὄνομα	τὰ ὀνόματ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ ὀνόματ-ος	τῶν ὀνομάτ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ ὀνόματ-ι	τοῖς ὀνόματ-σι(ν) > ὀνόμασι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸ ὀνοματ > ὄνομα	τὰ ὀνόματ-α
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ ὀνοματ > ὄνομα	ὦ ὀνόματ-α

Remember that in neuter nouns the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular forms are identical, as are the corresponding plural forms, which end in ᾱ as do 2nd declension neuters. Third declension neuter nouns do not add ζ to the stem in the nominative singular as do masculine and feminine velar and dental stem nouns. Instead, the τ of the stem is lost (see above), as it also is before the σ of the dative plural ending. The vocative singular is the stem without the -τ (cf. ὦ παῖ).

**Exercise 7α**

Locate the following 3rd declension nouns in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter. Identify the case and number of each, and explain why that particular case is being used:

- |                |             |
|----------------|-------------|
| 1. ἀνδρός      | 4. χειμῶνας |
| 2. ὀνόματι     | 5. αἰγῶν    |
| 3. Ἀγαμέμνωνος | 6. αἶγας    |

**Exercise 7β**

The following 3rd declension nouns have been given in the vocabulary lists in Chapters 2–7, in the following order. Declensions of the nouns marked with asterisks have been given above; declensions of other types of 3rd declension nouns will be given in subsequent grammar sections. Give the meaning of each of the following:

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| ὁ βοῦς, τοῦ βοός                | ὁ βασιλεύς, τοῦ βασιλέως     |
| ὁ or ἡ παῖς, τοῦ or τῆς παιδός* | ἡ ναῦς, τῆς νεώς             |
| ὁ πατήρ, τοῦ πατρός             | ἡ νύξ, τῆς νυκτός            |
| ὁ ἀνὴρ, τοῦ ἀνδρός              | ὁ Αἰγεύς, τοῦ Αἰγέως         |
| ἡ γυνή, τῆς γυναικός            | ὁ Θησεύς, τοῦ Θησέως         |
| ἡ θυγάτηρ, τῆς θυγατρός         | τὸ ὄνομα, τοῦ ὀνόματος*      |
| ἡ μήτηρ, τῆς μητρός             | ἡ πόλις, τῆς πόλεως          |
| ὁ or ἡ κύων, τοῦ or τῆς κυνός   | ὁ Ἀγαμέμνων, τοῦ Ἀγαμέμνωνος |
| τὸ ὄρος, τοῦ ὄρους (< ὄρε-ος)   | ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς, τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως     |

Using the information supplied in the charts and lists above, give the definite article to accompany each of the following 3rd declension nouns:

- |                  |                       |
|------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. κυνί (2 ways) | 11. νύκτα             |
| 2. πατράσι(v)    | 12. θυγατρί           |
| 3. ἄνδρα         | 13. πόλεσι(v)         |
| 4. Ὀδυσσεῖ       | 14. ἄνδρας            |
| 5. ὀνόματα       | 15. βόες              |
| 6. μητέρες       | 16. ναυσί(v)          |
| 7. θυγατράσι(v)  | 17. Ἀγαμέμνονι        |
| 8. γυναικας      | 18. κύνα (2 ways)     |
| 9. ἀνδρῶν        | 19. γυναιξί(v)        |
| 10. νυκτί        | 20. παισι(ί) (2 ways) |

**4. Reflexive Pronouns**

In Chapter 4 Myrrhine says to Dicaeopolis ἐπαίρει σεαυτόν, ὦ ἄνερ = *Lift yourself, husband! or Get up, husband!* Later ὁ Δικαιοπόλις μόλις ἐπαίρει ἐαυτόν, Dicaeopolis reluctantly lifts himself (= gets up). The

pronouns σεαυτόν, *yourself*, and ἐαυτόν, *himself*, are called *reflexive* since they are used to refer to or reflect the subject of the verb. Usually in English we use a word ending in *-self* to translate reflexive pronouns, but note the following example in lines 21–22 of the first story in this chapter: δώδεκα οὖν τῶν ἐταίρων κελεύει ἐαυτῷ ἔπεσθαι, *and so he orders twelve of his companions to follow him*.

Reflexive pronouns combine elements of the personal pronouns (see Chapter 5, Grammar 6, page 65) with the intensive adjective αὐτός (see Chapter 5, Grammar 9, page 68), thus σε, *you* + αὐτόν, *self* > σεαυτόν, *yourself*.

In the 1st and 2nd persons, the reflexive pronouns have masculine and feminine forms only; in the 3rd person there are neuter forms as well. There are no nominatives.

1st Person		2nd Person	
Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
G. ἐμῆυτοῦ	ἐμαυτῆς	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
D. ἐμαυτῷ	ἐμαυτῇ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
A. ἐμαυτόν	ἐμαυτήν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
G. ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
D. ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς	ἡμῖν αὐταῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
A. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς	ἡμᾶς αὐτάς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς
3rd Person			
Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	
G. ἐαυτοῦ	ἐαυτῆς	ἐαυτοῦ	
D. ἐαυτῷ	ἐαυτῇ	ἐαυτῷ	
A. ἐαυτόν	ἐαυτήν	ἐαυτό	
G. ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν	
D. ἐαυτοῖς	ἐαυταῖς	ἐαυτοῖς	
A. ἐαυτούς	ἐαυτάς	ἐαυτά	

Translate each of the forms above, e.g., ἐμαυτοῦ, *of myself*, ἐμαυτῷ, *to/for myself*, ἐμαυτόν, *myself*.

### Exercise 7γ

Read aloud and translate the following sentences:

1. ἐγὼ ἐμαυτόν ἐπαίρω. τί σὺ σεαυτόν οὐκ ἐπαίρεις;
2. ἡ παῖς ἐαυτὴν ἐπαίρει.
3. ἐαυτόν ἐπαίρει.
4. ἡμᾶς αὐτούς ἐπαίρομεν.

5. σεαυτὴν ἐν τῷ κατόπτρῳ (*mirror*) ὁρᾷς.
6. ἄρα ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς ἐν τῷ κατόπτρῳ ὁρᾶτε;

### Exercise 76

Read aloud and translate (fill in appropriate reflexive pronouns where missing):

1. ὁ παῖς ἑαυτὸν ἐπαίρει καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν σπεύδει.
2. οἱ παῖδες \_\_\_\_\_ ἐπαίρουσι καὶ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν σπεύδουσιν.
3. ἔπαιρε σεαυτήν, ὦ γύναι, καὶ ἔλθε δεῦρο.
4. ἐπαίρετε \_\_\_\_\_, ὦ γυναῖκες, καὶ ἔλθετε δεῦρο.
5. οὐκ ἐθέλω ἐμαυτὴν ἐπαίρειν· μάλα γὰρ κάμνω (*I am tired*).
6. οὐκ ἐθέλομεν \_\_\_\_\_ ἐπαίρειν· μάλα γὰρ κάμνομεν.
7. τίνι (*to whom*) λέγει ἡ παρθένος τὸν μῦθον; ἄρ' ἑαυτῇ λέγει;
8. ὁ πατήρ τὴν θυγατέρα μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ καθίζει (*makes . . . sit down*).
9. οἱ πατέρες τὰς θυγατέρας μεθ' \_\_\_\_\_ καθίζουσιν.
10. ὁ παῖς τὸν τοῦ πατρὸς κύνα ὁρᾷ ἄλλ' οὐχ ὁρᾷ τὸν ἑαυτοῦ.
11. μὴ εἴσιτε εἰς τὸ ἄντρον, ὦ φίλοι· αὐτοὶ γὰρ ὑμᾶς αὐτοὺς εἰς μέγιστον κίνδυνον ἄγετε.
12. βοήθει ἡμῖν, ὦ Ὀδυσσεῦ· οὐ γὰρ δυνάμεθα (*we are able*) ἡμᾶς αὐτοὺς σφῆζειν.

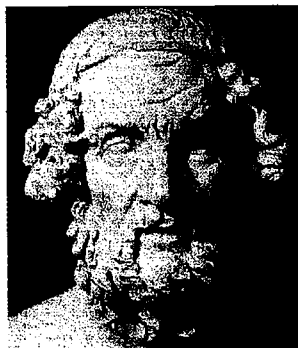
## Homer

The earliest poems in Western literature (and according to some, the greatest) are the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*. These are epics, that is to say, long narrative poems; each of the poems contains twenty-four books, the books varying in length from 450 to 900 lines. They tell stories about the age of the heroes, and both center upon the Trojan War.

The *Iliad* tells the story of the wrath of Achilles, the greatest of the Greek heroes who fought at Troy.

After besieging Troy for nine years, Achilles and Agamemnon, leader of the Greek host, quarrel at an assembly of the army. Agamemnon takes away Achilles' prize, a captive girl whom he loves. Thus insulted, Achilles refuses to fight any longer and stays by his ships, with disastrous consequences for both himself and the rest of the Greeks.

Without his help the Greeks suffer heavy losses and are driven back to their ships. Achilles still refuses to fight but is at last persuaded to allow his closest friend, Patroclus, to lead his men into battle. Only when Patroclus



Homer

has been killed by Hector, the greatest of the Trojan heroes, does Achilles turn his anger from Agamemnon and fight against the Trojans. To avenge the death of Patroclus, he leads his men into battle, causing terrible carnage. He sweeps the Trojans back into the city and kills Hector in single combat before the walls of Troy, even knowing that with Hector's death his own death is imminent. He then ties the corpse of Hector behind his chariot and drags it in front of the walls of Troy before the eyes of Hector's father, Priam, and his mother and wife.

Achilles' anger does not cease until the aged Priam, alone and at night, makes his way through the Greek camp to Achilles' tent and begs him to return the body of Hector for burial. Achilles, overcome by pity for the old man, consents and allows a truce for his burial.

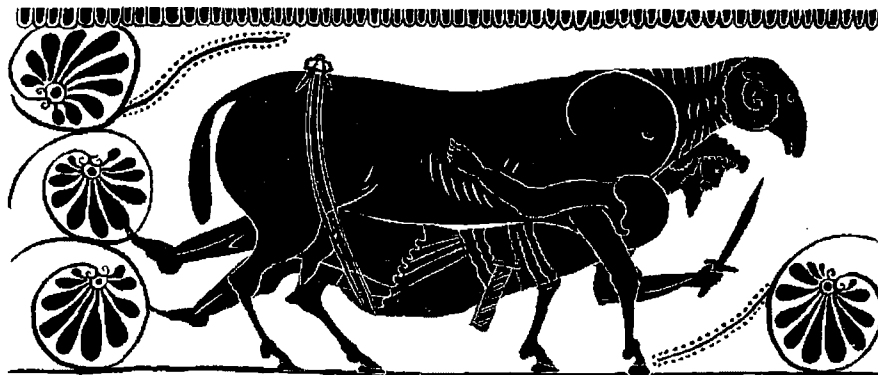
The *Odyssey* tells the story of the return of Odysseus from Troy to his home in Ithaca. The plot is more complex than that of the *Iliad*. It starts in Ithaca, where Penelope, Odysseus's wife, has been waiting for twenty years for her husband's return (Odysseus was fighting before Troy for ten years and spent another ten on the journey home). She is beset by suitors who are competing for her hand and the kingdom. Her son, Telemachus, sets out to look for his father, who, he believes, is still alive.

Odysseus, meanwhile, is held captive by a nymph, Calypso, on a far-off island. She is at last persuaded by the gods to let him go and helps him build a raft. He sails off, only to be wrecked on the island of Phaeacia. Here the king receives him kindly, and at a banquet given in his honor Odysseus recounts the adventures he has undergone since he left Troy. The Phaeacians load him with gifts and take him home to Ithaca, where they leave him sleeping on the shore. The second half of the *Odyssey* tells how he returned to his palace disguised as a beggar and with the help of Telemachus and a faithful servant slew the suitors and was reunited with Penelope.

The Greeks attributed both of these great poems to Homer. Scholars have shown that the poems are in fact the culmination of a long tradition of oral poetry, that is of poetry composed without the aid of writing. The tradition probably originated in the Bronze Age, and in every succeeding generation poets retold and embroidered the stories about the heroes. Finally, Homer composed these two great poems, which are on a far larger scale than oral poetry usually is, in an age when writing had just been reintroduced to Greece.

The internal evidence of the *Iliad* suggests that it was composed between 750 and 700 B.C. in Ionia. Modern scholars are not agreed on whether the *Odyssey* was composed by the same poet; there are considerable differences in style and tone between the two poems. Both poems show characteristics of oral poetry that make them very different from literary poetry. They were composed to be recited or sung aloud to the accompaniment of the lyre. The stories themselves, the recurrent themes, and a large proportion of the actual lines are traditional, but the structure of the poems, the clear and consistent characterization of the leading figures, and the atmosphere of each poem, tragic in the *Iliad*, romantic in the *Odyssey*, are the creation of a single poet.

# Ο ΚΥΚΛΩΨ (β)



ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου τοῦ Κύκλωπος ἐκφεύγει.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

- ἀποκρίνομαι, *I answer*  
 βάλλω, *I throw; I put; I pelt;*  
*I hit, strike*  
 μέλλω + infin., *I am about (to);*  
*I am destined (to); I intend (to)*  
 ὀρμάω, active, transitive, *I set X*  
*in motion; active, intransi-*  
*tive, I start; I rush; middle,*  
*intransitive, I set myself in*  
*motion; I start; I rush; I hasten*  
 παύω, active, transitive, *I stop*  
*X; middle, intransitive, I stop*  
*doing X; + gen., I cease from*  
*παύε, stop!*

### Nouns

- ὁ ξένος, τοῦ ξένου, *foreigner;*  
*stranger*  
 ὁ οἶνος, τοῦ οἴνου, *wine*  
 ὁ ὀφθαλμός, τοῦ ὀφθαλμοῦ, *eye*  
 τὸ πῦρ, τοῦ πυρός, *fire*  
 ὁ χειμῶν, τοῦ χειμῶνος, *storm;*  
*winter*

### Adjectives

- δύο, *two*  
 εἷς, μία, ἓν (acc. sing. masc.,  
 ἓνα), *one*  
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (nom. pl.  
 masc., πάντες; gen. pl.,  
 πάντων; acc. pl. masc.  
 πάντα; nom. and acc. pl.  
 neuter, πάντα), *all; every;*  
*whole*  
 σώφρων, σώφρον, *of sound*  
*mind; prudent; self-con-*  
*trolled*

### Adverbs

- ἐνθάδε, *here; hither; there;*  
*thither*  
 πόθεν; *from where? whence?*  
 πῶς; *how?*

### Proper Names

- ὁ Κύκλωψ, τοῦ Κύκλωπος, *Cy-*  
*clops (one-eyed monster)*

“δι’ ὀλίγου δὲ ψόφον μέγιστον ἀκούουσιν, καὶ εἰσέρχεται γίγας φοβερός· εἷς γὰρ ὀφθαλμὸς ἐν μέσῳ τῷ μετώπῳ ἔνεστιν. ὃ τ’ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι μάλα φοβοῦνται καὶ εἰς τὸν τοῦ ἄντρου

μυχὸν φεύγουσιν. ὁ δὲ γίγᾱς πρῶτον μὲν τὰ πρόβατα καὶ τὰς αἶγας εἰς  
τὸ ἄντρον εἰσελαύνει, ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα ἔνδον ἐστίν, λίθον μέγιστον αἶρει  
καὶ εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἄντρου εἴσοδον βάλλει. ἔνταῦθα δὴ πρῶτον μὲν τὰς  
αἶγας ἀμέλγει, ἔπειτα δὲ πῦρ κᾶει. οὕτω δὴ τὸν τ' Ὀδυσσεῆα καὶ τοὺς  
ἐταίρους ὁρᾷ καί, 'ὦ ξένοι,' βοᾷ, 'τίνες ἐστέ καὶ πόθεν πλεῖτε;'

[ψόφον, noise γίγᾱς φοβερός, a terrifying giant μέσφ τῷ μετώπῳ, the middle of  
his forehead τὸν τοῦ ἄντρου μυχὸν, the far corner of the cave τὴν . . . εἴσο-  
δον, the entrance ἀμέλγει, milks κᾶει, lights]

“ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεύς, ἡμεῖς Ἀχαιοὶ ἐσμεν,” φησὶν, “καὶ ἀπὸ τῆς Τροίᾱς  
οἴκαδε πλέομεν. χειμῶν, δὲ ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε ἐλαύνει.”

“ὁ δὲ Κύκλωψ οὐδὲν ἀποκρίνεται ἀλλὰ ὁρμᾶται ἐπὶ τοὺς  
Ἀχαιοὺς· τῶν ἐταίρων δὲ δύο ἀρπάζει καὶ κόπτει πρὸς τὴν γῆν· ὁ δὲ  
ἐγκέφαλος ἐκρεῖ καὶ δεύει τὴν γῆν.”

[ἀρπάζει, he seizes κόπτει, he strikes, bashes πρὸς τὴν γῆν, onto the ground ὁ  
. . . ἐγκέφαλος ἐκρεῖ, their brains flow out δεύει, wet]

ἡ δὲ Μελίττα, “παῦε, ὦ Φίλιππε,” φησὶν, “παῦε· δεινὸς γὰρ ἐστὶν ὁ  
μῦθος. ἀλλ' εἰπέ μοι, πῶς ἐκφεύγει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς; ἄρα πάντας τοὺς  
ἐταίρους ἀποκτείνει ὁ Κύκλωψ;”

[εἰπέ, tell]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “οὐδαμῶς” φησὶν· “οὐ πάντας ἀποκτείνει ὁ  
Κύκλωψ. ὁ γὰρ Ὀδυσσεύς ἐστὶν ἀνὴρ πολύμητις. πρῶτον μὲν οὖν  
πολὺν οἶνον τῷ Κύκλωπι παρέχει, ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου μάλα μεθύει. ἐπεὶ  
δὲ καθεύδει ὁ Κύκλωψ, μοχλὸν μέγιστον ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς εὕρσκει καὶ  
τοὺς ἐταίρους κελεύει θερμαίνειν αὐτὸ ἐν τῷ πυρί. ἐπεὶ δὲ μέλλει  
ἄψεσθαι ὁ μοχλός, ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς αἶρει αὐτὸν ἐκ τοῦ πυρὸς καὶ  
ἐλαύνει εἰς τὸν ἕνα ὀφθαλμὸν τοῦ Κύκλωπος. σίζει δὲ ὁ ὀφθαλμὸς  
αὐτοῦ.

[πολύμητις, cunning μεθύει, is drunk μοχλὸν, stake θερμαίνειν, to heat  
ἄψεσθαι, to catch fire σίζει, hisses]

“ὁ δ' ἀναπηδᾷ καὶ δεινῶς κλάζει. ὁ δ' Ὀδυσσεύς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι εἰς  
τὸν τοῦ ἄντρου μυχὸν φεύγουσιν. ὁ δὲ Κύκλωψ οὐ δύναται αὐτοὺς  
ὁρᾶν. τυφλὸς γάρ ἐστιν.”

[ἀναπηδᾷ, *leaps up* κλάζει, *shrieeks* οὐ δύναται, *is not able, cannot* τυφλός, *blind*]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ὡς σοφός ἐστιν ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς. ἀλλὰ πῶς ἐκφεύγουσιν ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου;”

[σοφός, *clever*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἀνατέλλει ὁ ἥλιος, ὁ 30  
Κύκλωψ τὸν λίθον ἐξαίρει ἐκ τῆς τοῦ ἄντρου εἰσόδου καὶ πάντα τά  
τε πρόβατα καὶ τὰς αἴγας ἐκπέμπει. ὁ οὖν Ὀδυσσεὺς τοὺς μὲν  
ἐταίρους κρύπτει ὑπὸ τῶν προβάτων, ἑαυτὸν δὲ ὑπὸ κριτοῦ μεγάλου.  
οὕτω δὴ ὁ Κύκλωψ ἐκπέμπει τοὺς Ἀχαιοὺς μετὰ τῶν προβάτων καὶ  
τοῦ κριτοῦ, οἱ δὲ πάντα τὰ πρόβατα πρὸς τὴν ναῦν ἐλαύνουσι καὶ 35  
ἀποπλέουσιν.”

[τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, *on the next day* ἀνατέλλει, *rises* ἐξαίρει, *lifts out* κρύπτει, *hides* ὑπὸ + gen., *under* κριτοῦ, *ram*]

## WORD BUILDING

*From the meanings of the words in boldface, deduce the meaning of the other word in each pair:*

1. ἡ παρασκευή      **παρασκευάζω**
2. τὸ ὄνομα      **ὀνομάζω**
3. τὸ θαῦμα      **θαυμάζω**
4. τὸ ἔργον (*work*)      **ἐργάζομαι**

## GRAMMAR

### 5. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Nasal Stems

Review the formation of the nominative and vocative singular and the dative plural of 3rd declension velar and dental stem nouns as presented in Grammar 3, pages 97–99 above.



Note what happens when the stem ends in the nasal consonant *v*:

ὁ χειμών, τοῦ χειμῶν-ος, *storm; winter*:

**Stem:** χειμῶν-, *storm; winter*

	Singular		Plural	
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ	χειμών	οἱ	χειμῶν-ες
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ	χειμῶν-ος	τῶν	χειμῶν-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ	χειμῶν-ι	τοῖς	χειμῶν-σι(ν) > χειμῶσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν	χειμῶν-α	τούς	χειμῶν-ας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ	χειμών	ὦ	χειμῶνες

Sigma is not added to the stem in the nominative and vocative singular, and the *v* is lost before the dative plural ending.

**PRACTICE:** Write the complete set of the forms of ὁ κύων, τοῦ κυνός, *dog*. Remember what happens with the accent in the genitive and dative, singular and plural, when the stem is monosyllabic.

## 6. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Labial and Liquid Stems

Some 3rd declension nouns have stems ending in labials (β, π, and φ), e.g., ὁ κλώψ, τοῦ κλωπ-ός, dative plural, τοῖς κλωψί(ν), *thief*, and in liquids (λ and ρ), e.g., ὁ ῥήτωρ, τοῦ ῥήτορ-ος, dative plural, τοῖς ῥήτορσι(ν), *orator*. See Forms, pages 288 and 289.

## 7. A 3rd Declension Adjective: σῶφρων, σῶφρον, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled*

**Stem:** σῶφρον-, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled*

The stem ends in -ον-, and *ς* is not added in the masculine/feminine nominative singular. The *o* is lengthened to *ω* in the masculine/feminine nominative singular, but not in the neuter. As with χειμών, the *v* of the stem is lost before the *σ* of the dative plural ending.

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	σῶφρων	σῶφρον	σῶφρον-ες	σῶφρον-α
<b>Gen.</b>	σῶφρον-ος	σῶφρον-ος	σῶφρόν-ων	σῶφρόν-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	σῶφρον-ι	σῶφρον-ι	σῶφρον-σι(ν) > σῶφροσι(ν)	σῶφρον-σι(ν) > σῶφροσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	σῶφρον-α	σῶφρον	σῶφρον-ας	σῶφρον-α
<b>Voc.</b>	σῶφρον	σῶφρον	σῶφρον-ες	σῶφρον-α

Note that adjectives such as σῶφρων, σῶφρον, which have only 3rd declension forms, have one set of forms for masculine and feminine and

one for neuter, thus ὁ σώφρων ἄνθρωπος and ἡ σώφρων κόρη, but τὸ σῶφρον τέκνον (*child*).

### Exercise 7ε

*Translate into English (1–5) and into Greek (6–10):*

1. ἔλθε δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ, καὶ τὰς αἴγας πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἔλαυνε.
2. οἴκαδε σπεύδετε, ὦ δοῦλοι, καὶ σῖτον ταῖς αἰξὶ παρέχετε.
3. κέλευε τοὺς φύλακας τοῖς παισὶ βοηθεῖν.
4. ἄρ' οὐ τὸν χειμῶνα φοβεῖσθε, ὦ φίλοι;
5. ὁ αὐτουργὸς τοῖς κυσὶν ἡγεῖται πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν.
6. We are leading the goats up the road.
7. The boys are not willing to obey the guards.
8. The guards want to help the boys.
9. The prudent girls fear the storm.
10. We wish to tell the names of the girls to the boy.

## 8. The Interrogative Pronoun and Adjective

When the Cyclops asks Odysseus and his men *τίνες* ἐστέ καὶ πόθεν πλεῖτε; he uses a form of the interrogative pronoun *τίς; τί;* *who? what?* The same word may be used as an interrogative adjective, e.g.:

εἰς *τίνα* νῆσον πλέομεν;

*To what island are we sailing?*

This pronoun/adjective has 3rd declension endings, and its masculine and feminine forms are the same. It always receives an acute accent on the first syllable (the acute on *τίς* and *τί* does not change to grave when another word follows). Its forms are as follows (note in particular the dative plural):

**Stems:** τιν-/τι

	Singular		Plural	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	τίς	τί	τίν-ες	τίν-α
<b>Gen.</b>	τίν-ος	τίν-ος	τίν-ων	τίν-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	τίν-ι	τίν-ι	τίν-σι(ν) > τίσι(ν)	τίν-σι(ν) > τίσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τίν-α	τί	τίν-ας	τίν-α

Locate two occurrences of the interrogative pronoun in the reading passage 7α at the beginning of this chapter.

Remember that *τί* may mean either *what?* or *why?*

## 9. The Indefinite Pronoun and Adjective

In the sentence πλέουσί ποτε εἰς νῆσόν τινα μικράν, the word *τινα* is an indefinite adjective meaning *a certain, some, or simply a, an*. This word may also be used as an indefinite pronoun meaning *someone, something, anyone, anything*, e.g.:

ἄρ' ὁρᾷς τινα ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ;  
*Do you see anyone in the cave?*

In all of its forms this word is spelled the same as the interrogative pronoun *τίς* given above, but it is enclitic (see Enclitics and Proclitics, pages 285–286).

Locate two occurrences of the indefinite adjective in the first two paragraphs of the first reading passage in Chapter 6. Explain their agreement with the nouns they modify and explain the accents.

### Exercise 7ζ

*Read aloud and translate. Identify any interrogative pronouns or adjectives and any indefinite pronouns or adjectives.*

1. τί ποιοῦσιν οἱ ἄνδρες;
2. ὁ ἀνὴρ μῦθόν τινα τῇ παιδί λέγει.
3. παῖδες τινες τοὺς κύνας εἰς τοὺς ἀγροὺς εἰσάγουσιν.
4. βούλομαι γινώσκειν τίς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ.
5. τίνα μῦθον βούλεσθε ἀκούειν, ὦ παῖδες;
6. μῦθόν τινα βουλόμεθα ἀκούειν περὶ γίγαντός τινος.
7. τίσιν ἡγείσθε πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν, ὦ παῖδες;
8. ξένοις τισὶν ἡγούμεθα, ὦ πάτερ.
9. τίνος πρόβατα τοσοῦτον ψόφον ποιεῖ;
10. τίνι μέλλεις παρέχειν τὸ ἄροτρον;

### Exercise 7η

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. τίς ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ; γίγας τις φοβερός ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ οἰκεῖ.
2. τίνα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ὁρᾷς; γυναῖκά τινα ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ὁρᾷ.
3. τίσιν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγεῖ; δούλοις τισὶν εἰς τὴν πόλιν ἡγοῦμαι.
4. τίνος ἄροτρον πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν φέρεις; τὸ φίλου τινὸς ἄροτρον φέρω.
5. τίνι ἐστὶν οὗτος (*this*) ὁ κύων; ἔστι τῷ ἐμῷ πατρί.

## Ο ΤΟΥ ΘΗΣΕΩΣ ΠΑΤΗΡ ΑΠΟΘΝΗΣΚΕΙ

*Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:*

The story of Theseus, concluded. This part of the story begins with a flashback to the time when Theseus left Athens to sail to Crete with the victims to be fed to the Minotaur.

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Θησεὺς πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην μέλλει ἀποπλεῖν, ὁ πατὴρ αὐτῷ λέγει· “ἐγὼ μάλα φοβοῦμαι ὑπὲρ σοῦ, ὦ παῖ· ὅμως δὲ ἴθι εἰς τὴν Κρήτην καὶ τὸν τε Μινώταυρον ἀπόκτεινε καὶ σῶζε τοὺς ἐταίρους· ἔπειτα δὲ οἴκαδε σπεῦδε. ἐγὼ δέ, ἕως ἄν ἀπῆς, καθ’ ἡμέραν ἀναβήσομαι ἐπὶ ἄκρᾱν τὴν ἀκτὴν, βουλόμενος ὁρᾶν τὴν σὴν ναῦν. ἀλλ’ ἄκουέ μου· ἡ γὰρ ναὺς ἔχει τὰ ἱστία μέλανα· σὺ δέ, ἐὰν τὸν τε Μινώταυρον ἀποκτείνῃς καὶ τοὺς ἐταίρους σώσῃς, οἴκαδε σπεῦδε, καὶ ἐπειδὴν ταῖς Ἀθήναις προσχωρῇς, στέλλε μὲν τὰ μέλανα ἱστία, αἶρε δὲ τὰ ἱστία λευκά. οὕτω γὰρ γνώσομαι ὅτι σῶοί ἐστε.”

[ὑπὲρ, *on behalf of, for* ὅμως, *nevertheless* ἕως ἄν ἀπῆς, *as long as you are away* καθ’ ἡμέραν, *every day* ἀναβήσομαι, *I will go up* ἐπὶ + acc., *onto* ἄκρᾱν τὴν ἀκτὴν, *the top of the promontory* βουλόμενος, *wishing* τὰ ἱστία μέλανα, *sails (that are) black* ἐὰν, *if* ἀποκτείνῃς, *you kill* σώσῃς, *you save* ἐπειδὴν... προσχωρῇς, *when you are approaching* στέλλε, *take down* λευκά, *white* γνώσομαι, *I will learn* σῶοί, *safe*]

1. Where does Aegeus say he will go every day while Theseus is away?
2. What will he watch for?
3. What does Aegeus tell Theseus to do with the sails of his ship on the return voyage?

ὁ οὖν Θησεὺς λέγει ὅτι τῷ πατρὶ μέλλει πείθεσθαι καὶ πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην ἀποπλεῖ. ὁ δ’ Αἰγεὺς καθ’ ἡμέραν ἐπὶ ἄκρᾱν τὴν ἀκτὴν ἀναβαίνει καὶ πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν βλέπει.

4. What does Theseus promise Aegeus?
5. What does Aegeus do in Theseus’ absence?

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Θησεὺς τὴν Ἀριάδην ἐν τῇ Νάξῳ λείπει καὶ οἴκαδε σπεύδει, ἐπιλανθάνεται τῶν τοῦ πατρὸς λόγων, καὶ οὐ στέλλει τὰ μέλανα ἱστία. ὁ οὖν Αἰγεὺς τὴν μὲν ναῦν γινώσκει, ὁρᾷ δὲ ὅτι ἔχει τὰ μέλανα ἱστία. μάλιστα οὖν φοβεῖται ὑπὲρ τοῦ Θησεῖος. μέγα μὲν βοᾷ, ῥίπτει δὲ ἑαυτὸν ἀπὸ τῆς ἀκτῆς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν καὶ οὕτως ἀποθνήσκει. διὰ τοῦτο οὖν τῇ θαλάττῃ τὸ ὄνομά ἐστιν Αἰγαῖος πόντος.

[τῇ Νάξῳ, *Naxos* (an island in the middle of the Aegean Sea, north of Crete) ἐπιλανθάνεται τῶν... λόγων, *he forgets the words* μέγα, *loudly* ῥίπτει, *he throws* ἀποθνήσκει, *he dies* διὰ τοῦτο, *for this reason* πόντος, *sea*]

6. What does Theseus forget to do after abandoning Ariadne?
7. What does Aegeus see when he spots Theseus' ship?
8. What is his emotional reaction?
9. What three things does he do?
10. How did the Aegean Sea get its name?

### Exercise 7θ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. When Theseus arrives at Athens, he learns that his father is dead (τέθνηκεν).
2. His mother says to the young man (use ὁ νεανίας), "You are to blame; for you always forget (use ἐπιλανθάνομαι + gen.) your father's words."
3. Theseus is very sad (use λυπέομαι) and says, "I myself am to blame; and so I intend to flee from home."
4. But his mother tells (orders) him not (μή) to go away (ἀπιέναι).
5. Soon he becomes king, and all the Athenians love and honor him.

## Classical Greek

Sophocles

King Oedipus, old, blind, and in exile, addresses Theseus, son of Aegeus and king of Athens, who has offered him protection (Sophocles, *Oedipus at Colonus*, 607–609):

ὦ φίλτατ' Αἰγέως παῖ, μόνοις οὐ γίνεται  
θεοῖσι γῆρας οὐδὲ κατθανεῖν ποτε,  
τὰ δ' ἄλλα συγχεῖ πάνθ' ὁ παγκρατὴς χρόνος.

[φίλτατ(ε), *dearest* μόνοις, *alone* θεοῖσι = θεοῖς γῆρας, *old age* οὐδέ . . .  
ποτε, *and never* κατθανεῖν, *to die* συγχεῖ, *destroys* (lit., *pours together, confounds*)  
πάνθ' = πάντα, *all things* (take with ἄλλα) παγκρατὴς, *all-powerful*]

## Greek Wisdom

γνώθι σεαυτόν.

Θαλῆς (of Miletus)

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (α)



αἱ γυναῖκες διαλεγόμεναι ἀλλήλαις πέπλον ὑφαίνουσιν.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

διαλέγομαι + dat., *I talk to, converse with*

ἔπομαι + dat., *I follow*

Cf. ἡγέομαι + dat., *I lead*

ἐργάζομαι, *I work; I accomplish*

θεάομαι, *I see, watch, look at*

### Nouns

τὸ ἄστυ, τοῦ ἄστεως, *city*

τὸ ἔργον, τοῦ ἔργου, *work; deed*

ἡ ἐσπέρα, τῆς ἐσπέρας, *evening*

ὁ θεός, τοῦ θεοῦ, *god*

ἡ θύρα, τῆς θύρας, *door*

ὁ ποιητής, τοῦ ποιητοῦ, *poet*

### Adverbs

ἐκεῖσε, *to that place, thither*

εὖ, *well*

οἴκοι, *note the accent, at home*

ὥσπερ, *note the accent, just as*

### Conjunctions

ὅμως, *nevertheless*

### Expressions

εὖ γε, *good! well done!*

ἐν ᾧ, *while*

### Proper Name

ὁ Διόνυσος, τοῦ Διονύσου, *Dionysus*

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὃ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ δοῦλος οὐ παύονται ἐργαζόμενοι. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐσπέρα γίγνεται, ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις τοὺς βοῦς λύει καὶ οἴκαδε ἐλαύνει, ὁ δὲ δοῦλος τῷ δεσπότῃ ἐπόμενος τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει. ἐπεὶ δὲ τῇ οἰκίᾳ προσχωροῦσιν, τὸν πάππον ὀρώσιν

ἐν τῷ κήπῳ ἐργαζόμενον. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καλεῖ αὐτὸν καί, 6  
 “ἐσπέρα ἤδη γίνεταί, ὦ πάππα,” φησίν. “παύε οὖν ἐργαζόμενος καὶ  
 ἡσύχαζε.” ὁ δέ, “εὖ λέγεις, ὦ παῖ,” φησίν. “μάλα γὰρ κάμνω.”  
 παύεται οὖν ἐργαζόμενος καὶ πρὸς τὴν οἰκίαν σπεύδει.

[ἐν . . . τούτῳ, *meanwhile* τῷ κήπῳ, *the garden* ἡσύχαζε, *rest!* κάμνω, *I am tired*]

οἵκοι δὲ ἢ τε Μυρρίνη καὶ ἡ θυγάτηρ πέπλον ὑφαίνουσιν· ἐν ᾧ δὲ 10  
 ὑφαίνουσιν, διαλέγονται ἀλλήλαις. δι’ ὀλίγου δὲ ἡ μήτηρ τὸν τε  
 ἄνδρα καὶ τὸν δοῦλον καὶ τὸν πάππον ὁρᾷ εἰς τὴν αὐλὴν  
 ἀφικνουμένους. παύεται οὖν ἐργαζομένη καὶ σπεύδει πρὸς τὴν  
 θύραν καί, “χαῖρε, ὦ ἄνερ,” φησίν, “καὶ ἄκουε. ὅ τε γὰρ Φίλιππος καὶ  
 ὁ Ἄργος λύκον ἀπεκτόνῃσιν.” ὁ δέ, “ἄρα τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγεις; εἰπέ μοι 15  
 τί ἐγένετο.” ἡ μὲν οὖν Μυρρίνη πάντα ἐξηγεῖται, ὁ δὲ θαυμάζει καὶ  
 λέγει· “εὖ γε· ἀνδρεῖός ἐστιν ὁ παῖς καὶ ἰσχυρός. ἀλλ’ εἰπέ μοι, ποῦ  
 ἐστίν; βουλόμενος γὰρ τιμᾶν τὸν λυκοκτόνον μέλλω ζητεῖν αὐτόν.”  
 καὶ ἐν νῷ ἔχει ζητεῖν τὸν παῖδα. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “ἀλλὰ μένε, ὦ φίλε,”  
 φησίν, “καὶ αὐθις ἄκουε. ἄγγελος γὰρ ἦκει ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄστεως· λέγει δὲ  
 ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὰ Διονύσια ποιοῦνται. ἄρα ἐθέλεις ἐμέ τε καὶ τοὺς 20  
 παῖδας πρὸς τὴν ἑορτὴν ἄγειν;” ὁ δέ, “ἀλλ’ οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν, ὦ  
 γύναι· ἀνάγκη γάρ ἐστιν ἐργάζεσθαι. ὁ γὰρ λιμὸς τῷ ἄργῳ ἀνδρὶ  
 ἔπεται, ὥσπερ λέγει ὁ ποιητής· ἐξ ἔργων ἄνδρες πολύμηλοί τ’ ἀφνειοί  
 τε γίνονται.”

[πέπλον, *cloth, robe* ὑφαίνουσιν, *are weaving* ἀλλήλαις, *with one another*  
 τὴν αὐλὴν, *the courtyard* ἀπεκτόνῃσιν, *have killed* τὰ ἀληθῆ, *the true things,*  
*the truth* εἰπέ, *tell* ἐγένετο, *happened* ἐξηγεῖται, *relates* τὸν λυκοκτόνον,  
*the wolf-slayer* ἀνάγκη . . . ἐστίν, *it is necessary* ὁ . . . λιμὸς, *hunger*  
 πολύμηλοί τ’ ἀφνειοί τε, *rich in flocks and wealthy* (Hesiod, *Works and Days* 308)]

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη ἀποκρίναμένη, “ἀλλ’ ὅμως,” φησίν, “ἡμᾶς ἐκέισε 25  
 ἄγε, ὦ φίλε ἄνερ. σπανίως γὰρ πορευόμεθα πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ· καὶ πάντες  
 δὴ ἔρχονται.” ὁ δέ, “ἀλλ’ ἀδύνατον· ἄργος γὰρ ἐστίν ὁ δοῦλος· ὅταν  
 γὰρ ἀπῶ, παύεται ἐργαζόμενος.”

[ἀποκρίναμένη, *replying* σπανίως, *rarely* ἀδύνατον, *(it's) impossible*  
 ὅταν . . . ἀπῶ, *whenever I'm away*]

ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ἀλλὰ μὴ χαλεπὸς ἴσθι, ὦ πάτερ, ἀλλὰ πείθου ἡμῖν. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλεις καὶ σὺ τὴν ἑορτὴν θεᾶσθαι καὶ τὸν θεὸν τιμᾶν; ὁ γὰρ Διόνῦσος σφῶζει ἡμῖν τὰς ἀμπέλους. καὶ τὸν Φίλιππον—ἄρ’ οὐ βούλει τιμᾶν τὸν παῖδα, διότι τὸν λύκον ἀπέκτονεν; βούλεται γὰρ τοὺς τε ἀγῶνας θεᾶσθαι καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς καὶ τὰ δράματα. ἄγε οὖν ἡμᾶς πάντας πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.”

[τὰς ἀμπέλους, *the vines*    διότι, *because*    τοὺς . . . ἀγῶνας, *the contests*    τὰ δράματα, *the plays*]

ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἔστω οὖν, ἐπεὶ οὕτω βούλεσθε. ἀλλὰ λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι ὁ λιμὸς ἔπεσθαι ἡμῖν μέλλει—ἀλλ’ οὐκ αἴτιος ἔγωγε.”

[ἔστω, *let it be! very well!*    ἐπεὶ, *here, since*    ἔγωγε, *an emphatic ἐγώ*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. politics
2. politburo
3. metropolis (*metr-* is not from μέτρον)
4. necropolis (ὁ νεκρός = *corpse*)
5. cosmopolitan

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Middle Voice

In addition to the indicative mood, the imperative, and the infinitive, which you have studied so far in this course, verbs have adjectival forms known as *participles* (verbal adjectives). These may be used in several ways:

- a. Participles may describe some circumstance that accompanies the main action of the sentence, e.g.:

ὁ δοῦλος τῷ δεσπότη ἐπόμενος τὸ ἄροτρον φέρει.

*The slave, following his master, carries the plow.*

τὸν πάππον ὁρῶσιν ἐν τῷ κήπῳ ἐργαζόμενον.

*They see the grandfather as/while he is working in the garden.*

This use is called *circumstantial*; the participle is in the predicate position (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7b, page 66), and it agrees with the noun it modifies in gender, number, and case.



- b. Participles in the attributive position (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7a, page 66) may simply modify nouns or pronouns like any other adjective, agreeing in gender, number, and case. When so used, they are called *attributive*, e.g.:

οἱ αὐτουργοὶ οἱ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἐργαζόμενοι μάλα κάμνουσιν.  
*The farmers **working** in the field are very tired.*

- c. Participles may be used to complete the meaning of a verb, e.g.:

ὁ δοῦλος οὐ παύεται ἐργαζόμενος.  
*The slave does not stop **working**.*

This use is called *supplementary*, since the participle fills out or completes the meaning of the verb. The participle agrees with the stated or implied subject of the verb in gender, number, and case.

Present participles do not refer to time as such but describe the action as in process, ongoing, or progressive.

The sentences above contain participles of deponent verbs, which have their forms in the middle voice. The following charts give the full sets of forms of *present/progressive middle participles*. Each form has a stem, a thematic vowel (ο), the suffix -μεν-, and an ending. The endings, which indicate gender, number, and case, are the same as those of 1st and 2nd declension adjectives such as καλός, -ή, -όν (see page 48).

λῶ-ό-μεν-ος

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Nom.</b>	λῶμενος	λῶμένη	λῶμενον
<b>Gen.</b>	λῶμένου	λῶμένης	λῶμένου
<b>Dat.</b>	λῶμένῳ	λῶμένῃ	λῶμένῳ
<b>Acc.</b>	λῶμενον	λῶμένην	λῶμενον
<b>Voc.</b>	λῶμενε	λῶμένη	λῶμενον
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λῶμενοι	λῶμεναι	λῶμενα
<b>Gen.</b>	λῶμένων	λῶμένων	λῶμένων
<b>Dat.</b>	λῶμένοις	λῶμέναις	λῶμένοις
<b>Acc.</b>	λῶμένους	λῶμένᾱς	λῶμενα

Recite all the forms of the present participle of ἔκομαι.

φιλε-ό-μεν-ος > φιλούμενος

<b>Nom.</b>	φιλούμενος	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλουμένου	φιλουμένης	φιλουμένου
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλουμένῳ	φιλουμένῃ	φιλουμένῳ
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλούμενον	φιλουμένην	φιλούμενον
<b>Voc.</b>	φιλούμενε	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	φιλούμενοι	φιλούμεναι	φιλούμενα
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλουμένοις	φιλουμέναις	φιλουμένοις
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλουμένους	φιλουμένᾱς	φιλούμενα

τιμα-ό-μεν-ος > τιμώμενος

<b>Nom.</b>	τιμώμενος etc.	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
-------------	-------------------	----------	-----------

When the accent is on the second of two vowels that contract, the diphthong that results from contraction receives an acute accent, thus φιλε-ό-μενος > φιλούμενος (see Chapter 6, Grammar 3, page 78).

Recite all the forms of the present participle of ἡγέομαι and all the forms of τιμώμενος.

### Exercise 8α

Fill in the present participles on the three Verb Charts on which you entered forms for Exercise 6β. Keep these charts for reference.

### Exercise 8β

Read aloud and translate the following sentences. Identify and explain the gender, number, and case of each participle:

- αἱ γυναῖκες παύονται ἐργαζόμεναι.
- ὁ Φίλιππος τὸν πατέρα ὁρᾷ εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν ἀφικνούμενον.
- βουλόμενοι τὴν ἑορτὴν θεᾶσθαι, πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ σπεύδοντες.
- ἄρ' ὁρᾶτε τοὺς παῖδας ταῖς καλαῖς παρθένοις ἐπομένους;
- αἱ παρθένοι μάλα φοβούμεναι ὡς τάχιστα (*as quickly as possible*) οἴκαδε τρέχουσιν.
- ἄρ' ἀκούεις τῶν γυναικῶν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ ἀλλήλαις διαλεγόμενων;
- οἱ παῖδες τῷ πατρὶ ἔπονται πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ πορευομένων.
- ἡ κύων τὸν λύκον φοβουμένη ἀποφεύγει.
- ἡ κύων ἐπὶ τὸν λύκον ὁρμωμένη ἀγρίως ὕλακτεῖ (*barks*).
- ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὰ πρόβατα εὕρισκε ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι πλανώμενα (*wandering*).

### Exercise 8γ

Translate into Greek:

- Do you see the boys fighting in the road?
- Dicaeopolis stops working and drives the oxen home.
- Stop following me and go away (*ἄπελθε*)!
- Obeying Myrrhine, Melissa stays at home.
- Bravely leading his comrades, Theseus escapes out of the labyrinth.
- The men rejoice, journeying to the island.

## Athens: A Historical Outline

### 1. The Bronze Age

Athens grew around the Acropolis, the rocky hill that rises precipitously in the middle of the later city. Archaeologists have shown that in the Bronze Age the Acropolis was fortified and was crowned by a palace, which was no doubt the administrative center of the surrounding district, like the palaces at Mycenae and Pylos. Tradition says that Theseus united Attica in the generation before the Trojan War, but in the *Iliad* there is scant mention of Athenian heroes, and this suggests that Athens was not an important center in the Bronze Age.

### 2. The Dark Age

Bronze Age civilization collapsed soon after the end of the Trojan War, about 1200 B.C. In the troubles that ensued, the so-called Dorian invasions, Athens, according to tradition, was the only city not sacked. Certainly, in this period Athens grew in size, and we are told that the emigration (ca. 1050 B.C.) that peopled the islands and coast of Asia Minor with Greeks was from Athens, which later claimed to be the mother city of all Ionian settlements.

### 3. The Renaissance of Greece (ca. 850 B.C.)

As Greece slowly recovered from the Dark Age, population increased, and other states sent out colonies that peopled much of the Mediterranean coast from southern France to the Black Sea (750–500 B.C.). Athens played no part in this movement and seems not to have experienced those problems that led to emigration from other parts of Greece.



The Acropolis of Athens

#### **4. The Reforms of Solon**

Monarchy had been succeeded by the rule of the nobles, who oppressed the farmers until revolution threatened. In this crisis the Athenians chose an arbitrator named Solon (chief archon in 594/593 B.C., but his reforms may date to twenty years later), who worked out a compromise between the conflicting interests of the nobles and farmers. Solon was not only a statesman but a poet, and in a surviving fragment (5) of his poetry he defends his settlement:

To the people I gave as much power as was sufficient,  
Neither taking from their honor nor giving them excess;  
As for those who held power and were envied for their wealth,  
I saw that they too should have nothing improper.  
I stood there casting my sturdy shield over both sides  
And allowed neither to conquer unjustly.

His settlement included important economic reforms, which gave the farmer a new start, and constitutional reforms, which paved the way for the later democracy. It was he who divided the citizens into four classes according to property qualifications and gave appropriate rights and functions to each; in this way, wealth, not birth, became the criterion for political privilege, and the aristocratic monopoly of power was weakened.

#### **5. Tyranny—Pisistratus**

Solon's settlement pleased neither side, and within half a generation, a tyrant, Pisistratus, seized power and ruled off and on for 33 years (561–528 B.C.). Under his rule Athens flourished; the economy improved, the city was adorned with public buildings, and Athens became a greater power in the Greek world. His son, Hippias, succeeded him but was driven out in 510 B.C.

#### **6. Cleisthenes and Democracy**

Three years later Cleisthenes put through reforms that made Athens a democracy, in which the Assembly of all male citizens was sovereign. The infant democracy immediately faced a crisis. Hippias had taken refuge with the King of Persia, whose empire now reached the shores of the Aegean and included the Greek cities of Ionia. In 499 the Ionians revolted and asked the mainland cities for help. Athens sent a force, which was highly successful for a short time, but the revolt was finally crushed in 494 B.C.

#### **7. The Persian Wars**

In 490 B.C. the Persian king Darius sent an expedition by sea to conquer and punish Athens. It landed on the east coast of Attica at Marathon. After an anxious debate, the Athenians sent their army to meet the Persians and won a spectacular victory, driving the Persians back to their ships. Athens alone defeated this Persian expedition; it was a day the Athenians never forgot, and it filled the new democracy with confidence. (See map, page 230.)

Ten years later Darius's son, Xerxes, assembled a vast fleet and army with the intention of conquering all Greece and adding it to his empire. The Greeks mounted a holding operation at Thermopylae (August, 480 B.C.), before abandoning all Greece north of the Peloponnesus, including Attica. Athens was evacuated and sacked by the Persians, but in September the combined Greek fleet, inspired by the Athenian general Themistocles, defeated the Persian fleet off the island of Salamis. Xerxes, unable to supply his army without the fleet, led a retreat to Asia, but he left a force of 100,000 men in the north of Greece under the command of Mardonius with orders to subdue Greece the following year. In spring, 479 B.C., the Greek army marched north and met and defeated the Persians at Plataea; on the same day, according to tradition, the Greek fleet attacked and destroyed the remains of the Persian navy at Mycale in Asia Minor.



Persian soldiers

## 8. The Delian League and the Athenian Empire

These victories at the time seemed to the Greeks to offer no more than a respite in their struggle against the might of the Persian Empire. Many outlying Greek cities, including the islands and the coasts of the Aegean, were still held by the Persians. In 478 B.C. a league was formed at the island of Delos of cities that pledged themselves to continue the fight against Persia under Athenian leadership.

The Delian League under the Athenian general Cimon won a series of victories and only ceased fighting when the Persians accepted humiliating peace terms in 449 B.C. Meanwhile what had started as a league of free and independent states had gradually developed into an Athenian empire in which the allies had become subjects. Sparta was alarmed by the growing power of Athens, and these fears led to an intermittent war in which Sparta and her allies (the Peloponnesian League) fought Athens in a series of indecisive actions. This first Peloponnesian war ended in 446 B.C., when Athens and Sparta made a thirty years' peace.

## 9. Pericles and Radical Democracy

In this period Pericles dominated Athens; from 443 until he died in 429 he was elected general every year. At home he was responsible for the measures that made Athens a radical democracy. In foreign policy he was an avowed imperialist, who reckoned that the Athenian Empire brought positive benefits to its subjects that outweighed their loss of independence.

After the Thirty Years' Peace, Athens embarked on no more imperial ventures. She controlled the seas, kept a tight hand on her empire, and expanded her economic influence westwards. Sparta and its allies had good reason to fear Athenian ambitions, and Corinth, whose prosperity and very existence depended on her trade, was especially alarmed by Athenian expansion into the western Mediterranean. There were dangerous incidents, as when Corfu, a colony of Corinth, made a defensive alliance with Athens and an Athenian naval squadron routed a Corinthian fleet (434 B.C.). In the autumn of 432 B.C. (when our story of Dicaeopolis and his family begins) there was frantic diplomatic activity, as both sides prepared for war.



Pericles



A reconstruction of two semi-detached houses in Athens

## Classical Greek

### Archilochus

Archilochus (fl., 650 B.C.), the earliest lyric poet of whom anything survives, proudly claims to be both a warrior and a poet (poem no. 1):

εἰμὶ δ' ἐγὼ θεράπων μὲν Ἐνυαλίῳ ἄνακτος

καὶ Μουσέων ἐρατὸν δῶρον ἐπιστάμενος.

[θεράπων, *servant* Ἐνυαλίῳ ἄνακτος, *of lord Enyalios (the god of war)*  
ἐρατὸν δῶρον, *the lovely gift* ἐπιστάμενος, *knowing, skilled in*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 5.20–21

When Jesus was teaching, some men wanted to carry a paralyzed man to him to be cured; when they could not get near, they let him down through the roof. Jesus is the subject of the clause with which our quotation begins.

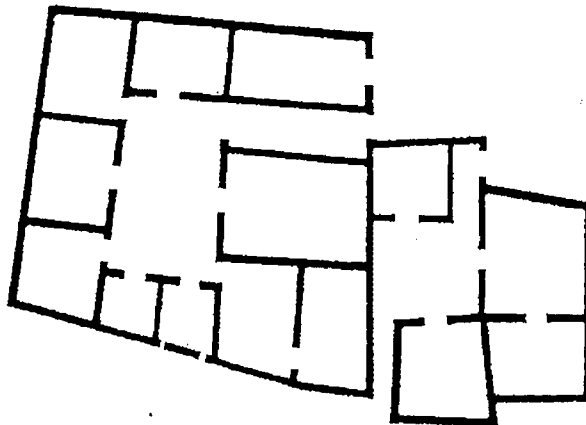
καὶ ἰδὼν τὴν πίστιν αὐτῶν εἶπεν, “ἄνθρωπε, ἀφέωνταί σοι αἱ ἁμαρτίαι σου.”

[ἰδὼν, *seeing* τὴν πίστιν, *the faith* εἶπεν, *said* ἀφέωνταί σοι αἱ ἁμαρτίαι σου, *your sins have been (= are) forgiven you*]

The scribes and Pharisees began to debate, saying:

“τίς ἐστὶν οὗτος ὃς λαλεῖ βλασφημίας; τίς δύναται ἁμαρτίας ἀφεῖναι εἰ μὴ ὁ μόνος ὁ θεός;”

[οὗτος ὃς, *this (man) who* λαλεῖ, *speaks* δύναται, *is able, can* ἀφεῖναι, *to forgive* εἰ μὴ, *unless, except* μόνος, *only, alone*]



Floor plan of houses on the opposite page

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟ ΑΣΤΥ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις σπονδὴν ποιούμενος  
τὸν Δία εὐχεται σῶζειν πάντας.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀναβαίνω, *I go up, get up*; + ἐπί  
+ acc., *I climb, go up onto*  
ἐγείρω, active, transitive,  
*I wake X up*; middle, intransi-  
tive, *I wake up*  
εὐχομαι, *I pray*; + dat., *I pray to*;  
+ acc. and infin., *I pray (that)*  
καθίζω, active, transitive,  
*I make X sit down*; *I set*;  
*I place*; active, intransitive,  
*I sit*; middle, intransitive,  
*I seat myself, sit down*

### Nouns

ἡ ἀγορά, τῆς ἀγορᾶς, *agora*,  
*city center, market place*  
ὁ βωμός, τοῦ βωμοῦ, *altar*  
ὁ νεανίας, τοῦ νεανίου, *young*  
*man*

ὁ πολίτης, τοῦ πολίτου, *citizen*  
ἡ χεὶρ, τῆς χειρός, *hand*

### Preposition

ὑπέρ + gen., *on behalf of, for*

### Adverb

τέλος, *in the end, finally*

### Expressions

ἐν . . . τούτῳ, *meanwhile*  
τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, *on the next day*

### Proper Names

ἡ Ἀκρόπολις, τῆς  
Ἀκροπόλεως, *the Acropolis*  
(the citadel of Athens)

ὁ Ζεὺς, τοῦ Διός, τῷ Δίῃ, τὸν Δία,  
ὁ Ζεῦ, *Zeus* (king of the gods)

ὁ Παρθενών, τοῦ Παρθενῶνος,  
*the Parthenon* (the temple of  
Athena on the Acropolis in  
Athens)

τῇ οὖν ὑστεραίᾳ, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾳ γίνεται, ἐγείρεται τε ἡ  
Μυρρίνη καὶ τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγείρει καί, “ἔπαυσε σεαυτὸν, ὦ ἄνερ,” φησὶν·  
“οὐ γὰρ δυνατόν ἐστὶν ἔτι καθεύδειν· καιρὸς γάρ ἐστι πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ  
πορεύεσθαι.” ὁ οὖν ἀνὴρ ἐπαύει σεαυτὸν· καὶ πρῶτον τὸν Ξανθίαν  
καλεῖ καὶ κελεύει αὐτὸν μὴ ἄργον εἶναι μηδὲ παύεσθαι ἐργαζόμενον. 5



ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ἡ Μυρρίνη τὸν τε σῖτον φέρει καὶ τὸν τε πάππον ἐγείρει  
καὶ τοὺς παῖδας. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις εἰς τὴν αὐλὴν εἰσέρχεται  
καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἡγείται πρὸς τὸν βωμόν· σπονδὴν δὲ ποιούμενος τὸν  
Δία εὐχεται σφῆζειν πάντας πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ πορευομένους. τέλος δὲ τὸν  
ἡμίονον ἐξάγει, ὁ δὲ πάππος ἀναβαίνει ἐπ' αὐτόν. οὕτως οὖν 10  
πορεύονται πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.

[μηδὲ, *and not* τὴν αὐλὴν, *the courtyard* σπονδὴν, *a libation (drink offering)*  
τὸν ἡμίονον, *the mule* ἐπ(ι), *onto*]

μακρὰ δ' ἐστὶν ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ χαλεπή. δι' ὀλίγου δὲ κάμνει ἡ  
Μυρρίνη καὶ βούλεται καθίζεσθαι· κάμνει δὲ καὶ ὁ ἡμίονος καὶ οὐκ  
ἐθέλει προχωρεῖν. καθιζόμενοι οὖν πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἀναπαύονται. δι'  
ὀλίγου δ' ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “καιρὸς ἐστὶ πορεύεσθαι,” φησὶν· “θάρρει, ὦ 15  
γύναι· μακρὰ γὰρ ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ χαλεπή τὸ πρῶτον, ‘ἐπὴν δ' εἰς ἄκρον  
ἵκηαι,’ ὥσπερ λέγει ὁ ποιητής, ῥαδίᾳ δὴ ἔπειτα γίγνεται.”

[κάμνει, *is tired* ἀναπαύονται, *they rest* θάρρει, *cheer up!* μακρὰ . . . γίγνεται  
(Dicaeopolis is again alluding to Hesiod, *Works and Days* 290–292.) ἐπὴν . . . ἵκηαι,  
*when(ever) you arrive / get*]

προχωροῦσιν οὖν ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος καὶ, ἐπεὶ εἰς ἄκρον ἀφικνοῦνται,  
τὰς Ἀθήνας ὁρῶσι κάτω κειμένᾳς. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος τὴν πόλιν θεώμενος,  
“ἰδοῦ,” φησὶν, “ὥς καλὴ ἐστὶν ἡ πόλις. ἄρ' ὁρᾶτε τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν;” ἡ 20  
δὲ Μέλιττα, “ὁρῶ δὴ. ἄρ' ὁρᾶτε καὶ τὸν Παρθενῶνα; ὥς καλὸς ἐστὶ  
καὶ μέγας.” ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἀλλὰ σπεῦδε, ὦ πάππα· καταβαίνομεν  
γὰρ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν.”

[κάτω κειμένᾳς, *lying below*]

ταχέως οὖν καταβαίνουσι καὶ εἰς τὰς πύλᾱς ἀφικόμενοι τὸν  
ἡμίονον προσάπτουσι δένδρῳ τινὶ καὶ εἰσέρχονται. ἐν δὲ τῷ ἄστει 25  
πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὁρῶσιν ἐν ταῖς ὁδοῖς βαδίζοντας· ἄνδρες γάρ,  
γυναῖκες, νεᾷνῖαι, παῖδες, πολῖταί τε καὶ ξένοι, σπεύδουσι πρὸς τὴν  
ἀγοράν. ἡ οὖν Μυρρίνη φοβουμένη ὑπὲρ τῶν παίδων, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ  
Φίλιππε,” φησὶν, “καὶ λαμβάνου τῆς χειρός. σὺ δέ—Μέλιτταν λέγω—  
μὴ λειπέ με ἀλλ' ἔπου ἅμα ἐμοί· τοσοῦτοι γὰρ εἰσιν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ὥστε 30  
φοβοῦμαι ὑπὲρ σοῦ.”

[ἀφικόμενοι, *having arrived*    προσάπτουσι, *they tie X (acc.) to Y (dat.)*    βαδίζοντας, *walking*    ἅμα ἐμοί, *with me*]

## WORD BUILDING

The following sets contain words expressing ideas of place where, place to which, and place from which. You already know the meanings of the words in boldface; deduce the meanings of the others. Copy the chart carefully onto a sheet of paper and write the meanings of the words in the appropriate slots (note that sometimes the same word can express ideas of place where and place to which, depending on the context):

Place Where		Place to Which		Place from Which	
1. ποῦ	_____	ποῖ οὐ πόσε	_____	πόθεν	_____
2.	_____	δεῦρο	_____		_____
3. ἐνθα	_____	ἐνθα	_____		_____
4. ἐνθάδε	_____	ἐνθάδε	_____		_____
	_____		_____		_____
5. ἐνταῦθα	_____	ἐνταῦθα	_____		_____
	_____		_____		_____
6. ἐκεῖ	_____	ἐκεῖσε	_____	ἐκεῖθεν	_____
7. οἴκοι	_____	οἴκαδε	_____	οἴκοθεν	_____
8. ἄλλοθι	_____	ἄλλοσε	_____	ἄλλοθεν	_____
9. πανταχοῦ	_____	πανταχόσε	_____	πανταχόθεν	_____
10. Ἀθήνησι(ν)	_____	Ἀθήναζε	_____	Ἀθήνηθεν	_____

## GRAMMAR

### 2. 3rd Declension Consonant Stem Nouns: Stems in - ρ-

The endings of these nouns are the same as those you learned for 3rd declension nouns in Chapter 7, but each of these nouns has four stems, as follows:

πατηρ-	μητηρ-	θυγατηρ-	άνηρ-
πατερ-	μητερ-	θυγατερ-	άνερ-
πατρ-	μητρ-	θυγατρ-	άνδρ-
πατρα-	μητρα-	θυγατρα-	άνδρα-

In the following chart, locate the forms with each of these stems:

ὁ	πατήρ	ἡ	μήτηρ	ἡ	θυγάτηρ	ὁ	άνήρ
τοῦ	πατρ-ός	τῆς	μητρ-ός	τῆς	θυγατρ-ός	τοῦ	άνδρ-ός
τῷ	πατρ-ί	τῇ	μητρ-ί	τῇ	θυγατρ-ί	τῷ	άνδρ-ί
τὸν	πατέρ-α	τὴν	μητέρ-α	τὴν	θυγατέρ-α	τὸν	άνδρ-α
ὦ	πάτερ	ὦ	μήτερ	ὦ	θύγατερ	ὦ	άνερ
οἱ	πατέρ-ες	αἱ	μητέρ-ες	αἱ	θυγατέρ-ες	οἱ	άνδρ-ες
τῶν	πατέρ-ων	τῶν	μητέρ-ων	τῶν	θυγατέρ-ων	τῶν	άνδρ-ων
τοῖς	πατρά-σι(ν)	ταῖς	μητρά-σι(ν)	ταῖς	θυγατρά-σι(ν)	τοῖς	άνδρά-σι(ν)
τοὺς	πατέρ-ας	τᾶς	μητέρ-ας	τᾶς	θυγατέρ-ας	τοὺς	άνδρ-ας
ὦ	πατέρ-ες	ὦ	μητέρ-ες	ὦ	θυγατέρ-ες	ὦ	άνδρ-ες

Note that these nouns do not add *ς* in the nominative singular. Note also the accents on the final syllables in the genitive and dative singulars (regular with monosyllabic stems) and the recessive accent in the vocative singulars. The nominative and vocative plurals all have accents on the next to the last syllable.

### 3. Two Important Irregular Nouns: ἡ γυνή, τῆς γυναικός, *woman*; *wife*, and ἡ χεῖρ, τῆς χειρός, *hand*

For ἡ γυνή, note that the nominative is not formed from the stem plus *-ς*, as is usual with velar stem nouns such as φύλακ-ς > φύλαξ; the accent in the genitive and dative, singular and plural, falls on the final syllable; and the vocative singular consists of the stem minus the final *κ*, since all stop consonants are lost in word-final position. For ἡ χεῖρ, note the shortened stem in the dative plural.

#### Singular:

**Stem:** γυναικ-, *woman*; *wife*

**Nom.** ἡ γυνή

**Gen.** τῆς γυναικ-ός

**Dat.** τῇ γυναικ-ί

**Acc.** τὴν γυναικ-α

**Voc.** ὦ γύναικ > γύναι

**Stem:** χεῖρ-, *hand*

ἡ χεῖρ

τῆς χειρ-ός

τῇ χειρ-ί

τὴν χεῖρ-α

ὦ χεῖρ

#### Plural:

**Nom.** αἱ γυναῖκ-ες

**Gen.** τῶν γυναικ-ων

**Dat.** ταῖς γυναικ-σί(ν) > γυναιξί(ν)

**Acc.** τὰς γυναῖκ-ας

**Voc.** ὦ γυναῖκ-ες

αἱ χεῖρ-ες

τῶν χειρ-ων

ταῖς χερ-σί(ν)

τὰς χεῖρ-ας

ὦ χεῖρες

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of forms of ὁ δεινὸς άνήρ, *the terrible man*; ἡ φίλη μήτηρ, *the dear mother*; and ἡ σώφρων γυνή, *the prudent woman*.

#### 4. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective *πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, all; every; whole*

You have met a number of forms of this adjective in the readings. Here are all of its forms. Note that in the masculine and neuter it has 3rd declension endings and that in the feminine it has endings like those of the 1st declension noun *μέλιττα* (including the circumflex on the final syllable of the genitive plural; see Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 41).

**Stems:** *παντ-* for masculine and neuter; *πᾶσ-* for feminine

**Singular:**

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	πάντ-ς > πᾶς	πᾶσ-α	πάντ > πᾶν
<b>Gen.</b>	παντ-ός	πᾶσ-ης	παντ-ός
<b>Dat.</b>	παντ-ί	πᾶσ-ῃ	παντ-ί
<b>Acc.</b>	πάντ-α	πᾶσ-αν	πάντ > πᾶν
<b>Voc.</b>	πάντ-ς > πᾶς	πᾶσ-α	πάντ > πᾶν

**Plural:**

	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	πάντ-ες	πᾶσ-αι	πάντ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	πάντ-ων	πᾶσ-ῶν	πάντ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	πάντ-σι(v) > πᾶσι(v)	πᾶσ-αις	πάντ-σι(v) > πᾶσι(v)
<b>Acc.</b>	πάντ-ας	πᾶσ-ᾶς	πάντ-α
<b>Voc.</b>	πάντ-ες	πᾶσ-αι	πάντ-α

For the nominative and vocative masculine singular forms, the *-ντ* at the end of the stem is lost because of the *ς*, and the stem vowel lengthens. Remember that all stop consonants in word-final position are lost; thus the stem *παντ-* gives *πᾶν* in the neuter nominative, accusative, and vocative singulars with loss of the *τ*; the stem vowel was probably lengthened because of the masculine *πᾶς* and the feminine *πᾶσα*. In the dative plural the *-ντ* is lost before the *σ* of the ending *-σι(v)*, and the stem vowel lengthens. Note the following uses of this adjective:

- Predicate position: *πάντες οἱ θεοί* or *οἱ θεοὶ πάντες* = *all the gods*  
*πᾶσα ἡ ναῦς* or *ἡ ναῦς πᾶσα* = *the whole ship*, i.e., all of its parts
- Attributive position (rare): *ἡ πᾶσα πόλις* = *the whole city* (regarded collectively as the sum total of its parts)
- Without definite article: *πᾶς ἀνὴρ* = *every man*
- Used as a substantive: \* *πάντες* = *all people, everyone*  
*πάντα* (n. pl.) = *all things, everything*

\*See Chapter 7, Grammar 1, page 96.

Locate occurrences of this adjective in the stories in Chapters 7β, 8α, and 8β.

### Exercise 8δ

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. πᾶσαι αἱ γυναῖκες πρὸς τὴν κρήνην σπεύδουσιν.
2. αἱ γὰρ μητέρες τὰς θυγατέρας ζητοῦσιν.
3. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν κρήνην ἀφικνοῦνται, οὐκ ἐκεῖ πάρεισιν αἱ θυγατέρες.
4. οἴκαδε οὖν τρέχουσιν αἱ γυναῖκες καὶ τοῖς ἀνδράσι πάντα λέγουσιν.
5. οἱ οὖν ἄνδρες πρὸς τοὺς ἀγροὺς ὁρμῶνται· μέλλουσι γὰρ τὰς θυγατέρας ζητεῖν.
6. ἀφικόμενοι (*having arrived*) δὲ εἰς τοὺς ἀγρούς, οἱ πατέρες τὰς θυγατέρας ὁρῶσι νεανίαις τισὶ διαλεγομένᾱς.
7. τὰς οὖν θυγατέρας καλοῦσι καί, “ἔλθετε δεῦρο, ὦ θυγατέρες,” φασίν· “μὴ διαλέγεσθε νεανίαις.”
8. αἱ οὖν θυγατέρες τοῖς πατράσι πειθόμεναι οἴκαδε αὐτοῖς ἔπονται.
9. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἴκαδε ἀφικνοῦνται, οἱ ἄνδρες πάντα ταῖς γυναιξὶ λέγουσιν.
10. αἱ δὲ μητέρες ταῖς θυγατράσι μάλα ὀργίζονται (*grow angry at + dat.*).

### Exercise 8ε

*Translate into Greek:*

1. The mother tells (orders) her daughter to hurry to the spring.
2. But the daughter walks to the field and looks for her father.
3. And she finds her father working in the field with other men.
4. And she says to her father, “Father, mother tells me to bring water (ὕδωρ) from the spring.
5. “But all the other girls are playing (*use παίζω*).”
6. And her father says, “Obey your mother, daughter. Fetch (*use φέρω*) the water.”
7. And at the spring the daughter sees many women; they are all carrying water jars.
8. So she says to the women, “Greetings, friends,” and she fills (πληροῖ) her water jar.
9. And when she arrives home, she tells her mother everything.
10. And her mother says, “Well done (εὖ γε); go now and play with the other girls.”

## Greek Wisdom

μελέτη τὸ πᾶν.

Περὶ ὁρίωνδρος (of Corinth)

## 5. Numbers

The cardinal adjectives in Greek from one to ten are:

1	εἷς, μία, ἓν	4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	7	ἐπτά	10	δέκα
2	δύο	5	πέντε	8	ὀκτώ		
3	τρεις, τρία	6	ἕξ	9	ἐννέα		

The numbers from five to ten are indeclinable adjectives; that is, they appear only in the forms given above no matter what gender, case, or number the noun is that they modify. For the number *one*, there is a full set of forms in the singular, given at the left below, with the masculine and neuter showing 3rd declension endings, and the feminine showing 1st declension endings similar to those of μάχαιρα (see Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 42). Compare the declension of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν above. The word οὐδείς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν or μηδείς, μηδεμία, μηδέν means *no one*; *nothing* as a pronoun and *no* as an adjective.

**Stems:** ἐν- for masculine and neuter; μι- for feminine

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	ἐν-ς > εἷς	μί-α	ἓν	οὐδείς	οὐδεμία	οὐδέν
<b>Gen.</b>	ἐν-ός	μι-ᾶς	ἐν-ός	οὐδενός	οὐδεμιάς	οὐδενός
<b>Dat.</b>	ἐν-ί	μι-ᾷ	ἐν-ί	οὐδενί	οὐδεμιᾷ	οὐδενί
<b>Acc.</b>	ἐν-α	μί-αν	ἓν	οὐδένα	οὐδεμίαν	οὐδέν

Note the accents of the genitives and datives.

The declensions of δύο, τρεῖς, and τέτταρες are as follows:

M. F. N.	M. F. N.	M. F. N.
δύο	τρεις	τρία
δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν
δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)
δύο	τρεις	τρία
		τέτταρες
		τεττάρων
		τέτταρσι(ν)
		τέτταρας
		τέτταρα

The ordinal adjectives (*first, second, third, etc.*) are as follows:

πρῶτος, -η, -ον	ἕκτος, -η, -ον
δεύτερος, -ᾱ, -ον	ἑβδομος, -η, -ον
τρίτος, -η, -ον	ὄγδοος, -η, -ον
τέταρτος, -η, -ον	ἕνατος, -η, -ον
πέμπτος, -η, -ον	δέκατος, -η, -ον

## 6. Expressions of Time When, Duration of Time, and Time within Which

Ordinal adjectives are used in expressions of *time when* with the dative case (see Chapter 6, Grammar 6e, page 88), and cardinal adjectives are used in expressions of *duration of time* with the accusative case, e.g.:

Time when: τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ = *on the first day*

Duration of time: δύο ἡμέρας = *for two days*

Cardinal adjectives are also used in phrases expressing *time within which* with the genitive case, e.g.:

Time within which: πέντε ἡμερῶν = *within five days*.

Compare the genitives ἡμέρας, *by day*, and νυκτός, *at/by night*.

### Exercise 8ζ

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. αὐτουργῶ τινί εἰσι τρεῖς παῖδες, δύο μὲν υἱεῖς (*sons*), μία δὲ θυγάτηρ.
2. οἱ μὲν παῖδες πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ πονουῦσιν, ἡ δὲ θυγάτηρ οἴκοι μένει καὶ τῇ μητρὶ συλλαμβάνει. νυκτὸς δὲ πάντες ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ καθεύδουσιν.
3. τῇ δ' ὑστεραία ἡ μήτηρ τῇ θυγατρὶ, "οὐ πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐστὶν ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ· δυοῖν ἡμερῶν οὐδὲν ὕδωρ ἔξομεν (*we will have*). ἴθι οὖν καὶ φέρε μοι ὕδωρ."
4. ἀφικομένη (*having arrived*) δ' εἰς τὴν κρήνην, ἡ παῖς τέτταρας γυναικας ὄρᾳ τὰς ὑδρίας πληρούσας (*filling*).
5. ἡ πρώτη γυνή, "χαῖρε, ὦ φίλη," φησὶν· "ἐλθὲ δεῦρο καὶ τὴν ὑδρίαν πλήρου (*fill!*)."
6. ἡ δὲ δευτέρα, "τί σὺ ἤκεις εἰς τὴν κρήνην; τί ποιεῖ ἡ σὴ μήτηρ;"
7. ἡ δὲ παῖς ἀποκρίναμένη· "ἡ μήτηρ," φησὶν, "περίεργός (*busy*) ἐστὶν· πέντε γὰρ πέπλους ὑφαίνει (*is weaving*)."
8. ἡ δὲ τρίτη γυνή, "σπεῦδε, ὦ ἄργε παῖ," φησὶν· "ἡ γὰρ μήτηρ σε μένει."
9. ἡ δὲ τετάρτη γυνή, "μὴ οὕτω χαλεπὴ ἴσθι," φησὶν· "ἡ γὰρ παῖς ἤδη σπεύδει."
10. ἡ οὖν παῖς τὴν πᾶσαν ὑδρίαν ταχέως πληροῖ (*fills*) καὶ οἴκαδε σπεύδει.

### Exercise 8η

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. αἱ θυγατέρες τῇ μητρὶ πειθόμεναι τὸν πατέρα ἐγείρουσι καὶ πείθουσιν αὐτὸν Ἀθήναζε πορεύεσθαι.
2. ὁ πατήρ τοὺς μὲν παῖδας οἴκοι λείπει, ταῖς δὲ θυγατράσιν Ἀθήναζε ἡγεῖται.
3. μακρὰ ἡ ὁδὸς καὶ χαλεπή· τῇ δὲ δευτέρᾳ ἡμέρᾳ ἐκεῖσε ἀφικνοῦνται.
4. πολλοὺς ἀνθρώπους ὀρώσιν διὰ (*through*) τῶν ὁδῶν πανταχόσε σπεύδοντας (*hurrying*).
5. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν ἀφικνοῦνται, πολὺν χρόνον μένουσι πάντα θεώμενοι.
6. δύο μὲν ἡμέρας τὰ (*the things*) ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ θεῶνται, τῇ δὲ τρίτῃ ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβαίνουσιν.
7. ἐννέα μὲν ἡμέρας Ἀθήνησι μένουσιν, τῇ δὲ δεκάτῃ οἴκαδε ὁρμῶνται.

8. τέτταρας μὲν ἡμέρας ὁδὸν ποιοῦνται, βραδέως πορευόμενοι, τῇ δὲ πέμπτῃ οὔκαδε ἀφικνοῦνται.

## Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Ο ΑΙΟΛΟΣ

*Read the following passage and answer the comprehension questions:*

Odysseus tells how he sailed on to the island of Aeolus, king of the winds, and almost reached home:

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου τοῦ Κύκλωπος ἐκφεύγομεν, ἐπανερχόμεθα ταχέως πρὸς τοὺς ἐταίρους. οἱ δέ, ἐπεὶ ἡμᾶς ὁρῶσιν, χαίρουσιν. τῇ δ' ὕστεραίᾳ κελεύω αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν ναῦν αὐθις εἰσβαίνειν. οὕτως οὖν ἀποπλέομεν.

[τοῦ ἄντρου, *the cave* ἐπανερχόμεθα, *we return*]

1. What do Odysseus and his men do when they escape from the cave of the Cyclops?
2. What does Odysseus order his men to do the next day?

δι' ὀλίγου δὲ εἰς νῆσον Αἰολίαν ἀφικνούμεθα. ἐκεῖ δὲ οἰκεῖ ὁ Αἴολος, βασιλεὺς τῶν ἀνέμων. ἡμᾶς δὲ εὐμενῶς δεχόμενος πολὺν χρόνον ξενίζει. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγὼ κελεύω αὐτὸν ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμπειν, παρέχει μοι ἄσκόν τινα, εἰς ὃν πάντας τοὺς ἀνέμους καταδεῖ πλὴν ἑνός, Ζεφύρου πρᾶου.

[Αἰολίαν, *of Aeolus* (king of the winds) τῶν ἀνέμων, *of the winds* εὐμενῶς, *kindly* ξενίζει, *entertains* ἄσκόν, *bag* ὃν, *which* καταδεῖ, *he ties up* πλὴν + gen., *except* Ζεφύρου, *Zephyr* (the west wind) πρᾶου, *gentle*]

3. Where do Odysseus and his men arrive next?
4. How long do Odysseus and his men stay with Aeolus?
5. What does Aeolus give Odysseus at his departure?
6. What wind was not in the bag?

ἐννέα μὲν οὖν ἡμέρας πλέομεν, τῇ δὲ δεκάτῃ ὁρῶμεν τὴν πατρίδα γῆν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐγὼ καθεύδω· οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι, ἐπεὶ ὁρῶσί με καθεύδοντα, οὕτω λέγουσιν· “τί ἐν τῷ ἄσκῳ ἔνεστιν; πολὺς δῆπου χρῦσός ἐνεστιν, πολὺ τε ἀργύριον, δῶρα τοῦ Αἰόλου. ἄγετε δὴ, λύετε τὸν ἄσκόν καὶ τὸν χρῦσὸν αἰρεῖτε.”

[τὴν πατρίδα γῆν, *our fatherland* καθεύδοντα, *sleeping* δῆπου, *surely* χρῦσός, *gold* ἀργύριον, *silver* δῶρα, *gifts* ἄγετε δὴ, *come on!*]

7. How long do Odysseus and his men sail?
8. When they come within sight of their fatherland, what does Odysseus do?
9. What do his comrades think is in the bag?

ἐπεὶ δὲ λύουσι τὸν ἄσκόν, εὐθὺς ἐκπέτονται πάντες οἱ ἄνεμοι καὶ χειμῶνα δεινὸν ποιοῦσι καὶ τὴν ναῦν ἀπὸ τῆς πατρίδος γῆς ἀπελαύνουσιν. ἐγὼ δὲ ἐγείρομαι καὶ γινώσκω τί γίνεται. ἀθῦμῳ οὖν καὶ βούλομαι ρίπτειν ἑμαυτὸν εἰς τὴν



θάλατταν· οἱ δὲ ἐταῖροι σφάζουσί με. οὕτως οὖν οἱ ἄνεμοι ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν τοῦ Αἰόλου νῆσον πάλιν φέρουσιν. 15

[εὐθύς, at once ἐκπέτονται, fly out ἀθυμῶ, I despair ῥίπτειν, to throw πάλιν, again]

10. What happens when the men open the bag?
11. How does Odysseus react when he wakes up?
12. Where do the winds carry the ship?

### Exercise 80

*Translate into Greek:*

1. When we arrive at the island, I go to the house of Aeolus.
2. And he, when he sees me, is very amazed and says: "What is the matter (= what are you suffering)? Why are you here again?"
3. And I answer: "My comrades are to blame. For they loosed (ἔλυσαν) the winds. But come to our aid, friend."
4. But Aeolus says: "Go away (ἄπιτε) from the island quickly. It is not possible to come to your aid. For the gods surely (δήπου) hate (use μισέω) you."

## Classical Greek

### Sappho: The Deserted Lover: A Girl's Lament

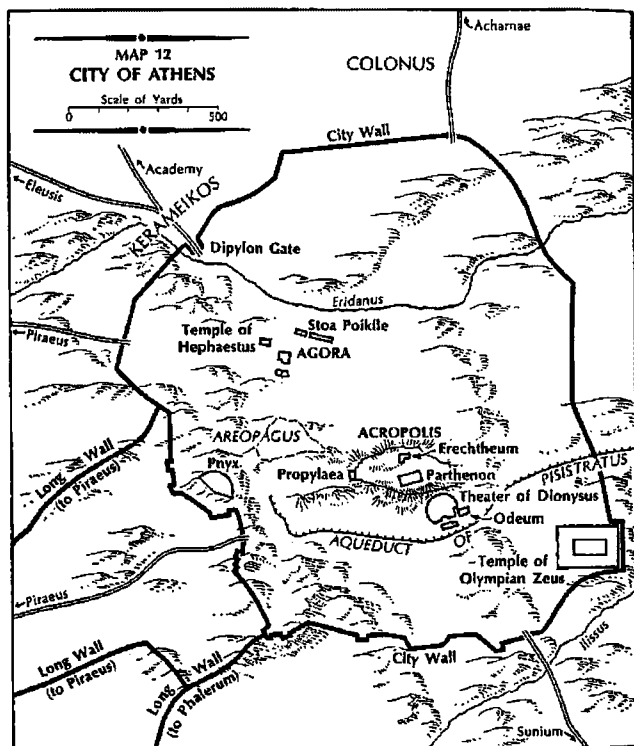
These lines are quoted by a writer on Greek meter (Hephaestion, 2nd century A.D.) without giving the author. Some scholars ascribe them to Sappho of Lesbos (seventh century B.C.), the greatest female poet of Greek literature. The passage (D. A. Campbell, *Greek Lyric Poetry*, page 52) is given at the left as it is quoted by Hephaestion in the Attic dialect and then at the right with Sappho's Aeolic forms restored.

δέδυκε μὲν ἡ σελήνη  
καὶ Πληϊάδες, μέσαι δὲ  
νύκτες, παρὰ δ' ἔρχεθ' ὥρᾱ,  
ἐγὼ δὲ μόνη καθεύδω.

δέδυκε μὲν ᾗ σελάννᾱ  
καὶ Πληϊάδες, μέσαι δὲ  
νύκτες, παρὰ δ' ἔρχετ' ὥρᾱ,  
ἐγὼ δὲ μόνᾱ κατεύδω.

[δέδυκε, has set ἡ σελήνη, the moon  
Πληϊάδες, the Pleiades (seven mythical daughters  
of Atlas and Pleione, changed into a cluster of stars)  
μέσαι, middle μέσαι δὲ νύκτες: supply a form  
of the verb to be in your translation  
παρὰ . . . ἔρχεθ' = παρέρχεται, passes ὥρᾱ,  
time μόνη, alone]

# Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (α)



αἱ Ἀθῆναι



ὁρῶσι τὴν εἰκόνα τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς,  
ἐνοπλίου οὐσης καὶ Νίκην τῇ δεξιᾷ φερούσης.

## VOCABULARY

## Verbs

ἄγε; pl., ἄγετε, *come on!*  
 ἐπανέρχομαι [= ἐπι- + ἀνα-  
 + ἔρχομαι], infinitive, ἐπανι-  
 ἔναι, *I come back, return*; + εἰς  
 or πρὸς + acc., *I return to*  
 ἐσθίω, *I eat*  
 κάμνω, *I am sick; I am tired*  
 πίνω, *I drink*

## Nouns

ἡ ἀριστερά, τῆς ἀριστερᾶς, *left hand*  
 ἡ δεξιᾶ, τῆς δεξιᾶς, *right hand*  
 ἡ θεός, τῆς θεοῦ, *goddess*  
 τὸ ἱερόν, τοῦ ἱεροῦ, *temple*  
 ὁ κίνδυνος, τοῦ κινδύνου, *danger*

## Adjective

κάλλιστος, -η, -ον, *most beautiful; very beautiful*

## Preposition

διὰ + gen., *through*  
 ἐπὶ + dat., *upon, on*; + acc., *at; against; onto, upon*

## Proper Names

ἡ Ἀθηνᾶ, τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς, τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ, τὴν Ἀθηνᾶν, ᾧ Ἀθηνᾶ, *Athena* (daughter of Zeus)  
 ἡ Νίκη, τῆς Νίκης, *Nike* (the goddess of victory)  
 ἡ Παρθένος, τῆς Παρθένου, *the Maiden* (= the goddess Athena)  
 ὁ Φειδίας, τοῦ Φειδίου, *Pheidias* (the great Athenian sculptor)

οὕτως οὖν πορευόμενοι ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὴν ἀγορᾶν. ἐκεῖ δὲ τοσοῦτός ἐστιν ὁ ὄμιλος ὥστε μόλις προχωροῦσι πρὸς τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν. τέλος δὲ τῷ Δικαιοπόλιδι ἐπόμενοι εἰς στοᾶν τινα ἀφικνοῦνται, καὶ καθιζόμενοι θεῶνται τοὺς ἀνθρώπους σπεύδοντας καὶ βοῶντας καὶ θόρυβον ποιοῦντας.

5

[ὁ ὄμιλος, *the crowd* στοᾶν, *portico, colonnade* θόρυβον, *an uproar*]

ἤδη δὲ μάλα πεινώσιν οἱ παῖδες. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος ἀλλᾶντοπώλην ὁρᾷ διὰ τοῦ ὀμίλου ὠθιζόμενον καὶ τὰ ὦνια βοῶντα. τὸν οὖν πατέρα καλεῖ καί, “ὦ πάππα φίλε,” φησὶν, “ἰδού, ἀλλᾶντοπώλης προσχωρεῖ. ἄρ’ οὐκ ἐθέλεις σῖτον ὠνεῖσθαι; μάλα γὰρ πεινώμεν.” ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τὸν ἀλλᾶντοπώλην καλεῖ καὶ σῖτον ὠνεῖται. οὕτως οὖν ἐν τῇ στοᾷ καθίζονται ἀλλᾶντας ἐσθίοντες καὶ οἶνον πίνοντες.

10

[πεινώσιν, *are hungry* ἀλλᾶντοπώλην, *a sausage-seller* ὠθιζόμενον, *pushing* τὰ ὦνια, *his wares* ὠνεῖσθαι, *to buy* ἀλλᾶντας, *sausages*]

μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἄγετε,” φησὶν, “ἄρ’ οὐ βούλεσθε ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβαίνειν καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ θεᾶσθαι;” ὁ μὲν πάππος μάλα κάμνει καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλει ἀναβαίνειν, οἱ δ’ ἄλλοι

λείπουσιν αὐτὸν ἐν τῇ στοᾷ καθιζόμενον καὶ διὰ τοῦ ὁμίλου ὠθι- 16  
ζόμενοι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀναβαίνουνσιν.

ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἄκρᾱν τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἀφικνοῦνται καὶ τὰ προπύλαια  
διαπερῶσιν, τὸ τῆς Παρθένου ἱερὸν ὁρῶσιν ἐναντίον καὶ τὴν τῆς  
Ἀθηνᾶς εἰκόνα, μεγίστην οὖσαν, ἐνόπλιον καὶ δόρυ δεξιᾷ φέρουσαν.  
πολὺν οὖν χρόνον ἡσυχάζουσιν οἱ παῖδες τὴν θεὸν θεώμενοι, τέλος 20  
δὲ ὁ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἄγετε,” φησὶν, “ἄρ’ οὐ βούλεσθε τὸ ἱερὸν  
θεᾶσθαι;” καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς πόρρῳ.

[τὰ προπύλαια, *the gateway, the Propylaea* διαπερῶσιν, *they pass through*  
ἐναντίον, *opposite* τὴν . . . εἰκόνα, *the statue* οὖσαν, *being* ἐνόπλιον, *fully*  
ἀρῶν, *spear* ἡσυχάζουσιν, *stay quiet* πόρρῳ, *forward*]

μεγίστον ἐστὶ τὸ ἱερὸν καὶ κάλλιστον. πολὺν χρόνον τὰ  
ἀγάλματα θεῶνται, ἃ τὸ πᾶν ἱερὸν κοσμεῖ. ἀνεφγμέναι εἰσὶν αἱ  
πύλαι· ἀναβαίνουνσιν οὖν οἱ παῖδες καὶ εἰσέρχονται. πάντα τὰ εἶσω 25  
σκοτεινά ἐστίν, ἀλλ’ ἐναντίᾱν μόλις ὁρῶσι τὴν τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς εἰκόνα,  
τὸ κάλλιστον ἔργον τοῦ Φειδίου. ἡ θεὸς λάμπεται χρῦσῳ, τῇ μὲν  
δεξιᾷ Νίκην φέρουσα τῇ δὲ ἀριστερᾷ τὴν ἀσπίδα. ἅμα τ’ οὖν  
φοβοῦνται οἱ παῖδες θεώμενοι καὶ χαίρουσιν. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος  
προχωρεῖ καὶ τὰς χεῖρας ἀνέχων τῇ θεῷ εὐχεται· “ὦ Ἀθηνᾶ Παρθένε, 30  
παῖ Διός, πολιούχε, ἴλεως ἴσθι καὶ ἄκουέ μου εὐχομένου· σῶζε τὴν  
πόλιν καὶ σῶζε ἡμᾶς ἐκ πάντων κινδύνων.” ἐνταῦθα δὴ πρὸς τὴν  
Μέλιτταν ἐπανέρχεται καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτῇ ἐκ τοῦ ἱεροῦ.

[τὰ ἀγάλματα, *the carvings* ἃ, *which* κοσμεῖ, *decorate* ἀνεφγμέναι, *open*  
τὰ εἶσω, *the things inside, the inside* σκοτεινά, *dark* λάμπεται, *gleams* χρῦσῳ,  
*with gold* τὴν ἀσπίδα, *her shield* ἅμα, *at the same time* ἀνέχων, *holding up*  
πολιούχε, *holder / protectress of our city* ἴλεως, *gracious*]

πολὺν τινα χρόνον τοὺς τεκόντας ζητοῦσιν, τέλος δὲ εὐρίσκουσιν  
αὐτοὺς ὀπισθεν τοῦ ἱεροῦ καθορῶντας τὸ τοῦ Διονύσου τέμενος. ὁ 35  
δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἰδοὺ, ὦ παῖδες,” φησὶν, “ἤδη συλλέγονται οἱ  
ἄνθρωποι εἰς τὸ τέμενος. καιρὸς ἐστὶ καταβαίνειν καὶ ζητεῖν τὸν  
πάππον.”

[τοὺς τεκόντας, *their parents* ὀπισθεν + *gen., behind* καθορῶντας, *looking*  
*down on* τὸ . . . τέμενος, *the sanctuary* συλλέγονται, *are gathering*]

καταβαίνουνσιν οὖν καὶ σπεύδουσι πρὸς τὴν στοᾶν· ἐκεῖ δὲ εὐρίσκουσι τὸν πάππον ὀργίλως ἔχοντα· “ὦ τέκνον,” φησὶν, “τί ποιεῖς; 40 τί με λείπεις τοσοῦτον χρόνον; τί τὴν πομπὴν οὐ θεώμεθα;” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “θάρρει, ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν· “νῦν γὰρ πρὸς τὸ τοῦ Διονύσου τέμενος πορευόμεθα· δι’ ὀλίγου γὰρ γίνεται ἡ πομπή· ἄγε δὴ.” οὕτω λέγει καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς πρὸς τὸ τέμενος.

[ὀργίλως ἔχοντα, *being angry, in a bad temper*    τέκνον, *child*    τὴν πομπήν, *the procession*    θάρρει, *cheer up!*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words (ὁ δῆμος = the people):

- |  |             |
|--|-------------|
| 1. democracy (what does τὸ κράτος mean?) | 4. endemic  |
| 2. demagogue                             | 5. epidemic |
| 3. demography                            | 6. pandemic |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Participles: Present or Progressive: Active Voice

In the last chapter you learned the forms of the present, progressive participle in the middle voice, e.g., λυόμενος, λυομένη, λυόμενον, which has the same endings for case, number, and gender as the adjective καλός, καλή, καλόν.

In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter you have met many forms of the *present active participle*, e.g., σπεύδοντας, *hurrying*, βοῶντας, *shouting*, and ποιοῦντας, *making*. Present active participles, like present middle participles, do not refer to time as such but describe the action as in process, ongoing, or progressive.

Present active participles, like the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (Chapter 8, Grammar 4, page 126) have 3rd declension endings in the masculine and neuter and 1st declension endings in the feminine. They have the suffix -οντ- in the masculine and neuter and the suffix -ουσ- in the feminine. There is no -ς in the nominative masculine singular. The τ is lost in the masculine and neuter nominative and vocative singulars, since all stop consonants are lost in word-final position, and in the masculine the ο is lengthened to ω; thus for the verb εἶμι the masculine participle (stem, ὄντ-) is ὦν and the neuter is ὄν. In the masculine and neuter dative plurals, the ντ is lost before the σ, with a resulting spelling of οῦσι(ν). Present active participles are declined as follows:

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
The verb εἰμί:			
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	ὄντ > ὄν	οὖσ-α	ὄντ > ὄν
<b>Gen.</b>	ὄντ-ος	οὖσ-ης	ὄντ-ος
<b>Dat.</b>	ὄντ-ι	οὖσ-ῃ	ὄντ-ι
<b>Acc.</b>	ὄντ-α	οὖσ-αν	ὄντ > ὄν
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	ὄντ-ες	οὖσ-αι	ὄντ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	ὄντ-ων	οὖσ-ῶν	ὄντ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	ὄντ-σι(ν) > οὖσι(ν)	οὖσ-αῖς	ὄντ-σι(ν) > οὖσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	ὄντ-ας	οὖσ-ᾶς	ὄντ-α

The verb λύω:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λύ-ων	λύ-ουσα	λύ-ον
<b>Gen.</b>	λύ-οντος	λύ-ούσης	λύ-οντος
<b>Dat.</b>	λύ-οντι	λύ-ούσῃ	λύ-οντι
<b>Acc.</b>	λύ-οντα	λύ-ουσαν	λύ-ον
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λύ-οντες	λύ-ουσai	λύ-οντα
<b>Gen.</b>	λύ-όντων	λύ-ουσῶν	λύ-όντων
<b>Dat.</b>	λύ-ουσι(ν)	λύ-ούσαις	λύ-ουσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	λύ-οντας	λύ-ούσᾶς	λύ-οντα

For the participles of contract verbs, we show how the contractions work in the nominative singular but then give only contracted forms:

The verb φιλέω:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	φιλέ-ων > φιλῶν	φιλέ-ουσα > φιλοῦσα	φιλέ-ον > φιλοῦν
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
<b>Gen.</b>	φιλούντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλούντων
<b>Dat.</b>	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
<b>Acc.</b>	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσᾶς	φιλοῦντα

The verb τιμάω:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	τιμά-ων > τιμῶν	τιμά-ουσα > τιμῶσα	τιμά-ον > τιμῶν
<b>Gen.</b>	τιμῶντος	τιμώσης	τιμῶντος
<b>Dat.</b>	τιμῶντι	τιμώσῃ	τιμῶντι
<b>Acc.</b>	τιμῶντα	τιμῶσαν	τιμῶν

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	τιμῶντες	τιμῶσαι	τιμῶντα
<b>Gen.</b>	τιμῶντων	τιμωσῶν	τιμώντων
<b>Dat.</b>	τιμῶσι(ν)	τιμώσαις	τιμῶσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τιμῶντας	τιμώσας	τιμῶντα

**Exercise 9α**

1. *Locate twelve present active participles in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, identify the gender, case, and number of each, and locate the noun, pronoun, or subject of a verb that each participle modifies.*
2. *Fill in the present participles on the four Verb Charts on which you entered forms for Exercises 4α and 5α.*

**Exercise 9β**

*Write the correct form of the present participle of the verb given in parentheses to agree with the following article-noun groups:*

- |                          |                              |
|--------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. οἱ παῖδες (τρέχω)     | 6. τὰς γυναῖκας (λέγω)       |
| 2. τῷ ἀνδρὶ (βαδίζω)     | 7. τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν (εὐχομαι) |
| 3. τοὺς νεανίᾱς (τιμάω)  | 8. τοῦ δούλου (πονέω)        |
| 4. τοῖς παισὶ(ν) (εἰμί)  | 9. αἱ παρθένοι (ἀκούω)       |
| 5. τῶν νεανιῶν (μάχομαι) | 10. τοῦ ἀγγέλου (βοάω)       |

**Exercise 9γ**

*Complete each of the following sentences by adding the correct form of a participle to translate the verb in parentheses, and then translate the sentence:*

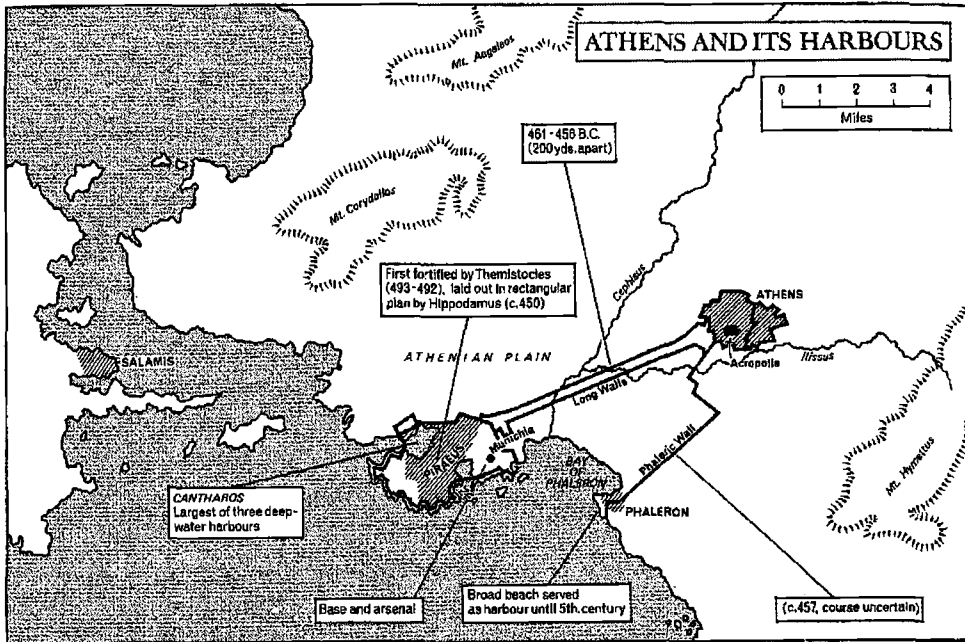
1. οἱ δοῦλοι ἤκουσι τοὺς βοῦς (leading).
2. ὁ πολίτης ξένον τινὰ ὁρᾷ πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ (waiting).
3. αἱ γυναῖκες ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καθίζονται τοὺς παῖδας (watching).
4. οἱ παῖδες οὐ παύονται λίθους (throwing).
5. οἱ ἄνδρες θεῶνται τὴν παρθένον πρὸς τὴν πόλιν (running).

**Exercise 9δ**

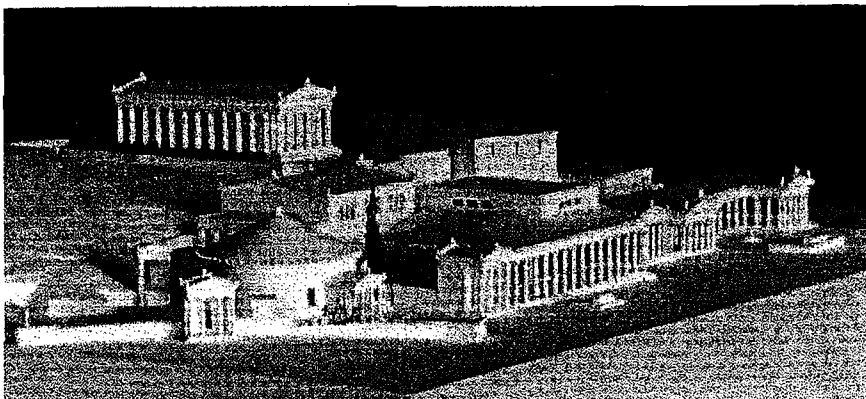
*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

1. οἱ παῖδες ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ καθίζονται οἶνον πίνοντες.  
The slaves hurry home, driving the oxen.
2. ἄρ' ὁρᾷς τὴν παρθένον εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν σπεύδουσαν;  
The foreigner sees the boys running into the agora.
3. πάντες ἀκούουσι τοῦ ἀλλαντοπώλου τὰ ὦνια βοῶντος.  
No one hears the girl calling her mother.

4. οἱ ἄνδρες τὰς γυναῖκας λείπουσιν ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ τὸ δεῖπνον παρασκευαζούσας.  
The boy finds his father waiting in the agora.
5. ὁ νεανίας τὴν παρθένον φιλεῖ μάλα καλὴν οὖσαν.  
The father honors the boy who is (= *being*) very brave.



The Piraeus and Athens in the time of Pericles



Reconstruction of the agora at Athens as seen from the southeast, about 400 B.C.



## The City of Athens

The city to which Dicaeopolis and his family journeyed was largely built after the battle of Salamis, since the earlier city and its temples were destroyed when the Persians occupied and sacked Athens. A visitor coming by sea would arrive at the Piraeus, the greatest port in Greece and perhaps its finest natural harbor. The fortification of the Piraeus was begun by Themistocles in 493–492 B.C. It was completed after the Greek victory at Plataea, when the city of Athens was rebuilt and connected to the Piraeus by the Long Walls, making Athens virtually impregnable as long as she controlled the seas.

Leaving the harbor quarter, visitors would have made their way through the marketplace and town of Piraeus to the road that led between the Long Walls, and then they would have walked the seven miles or ten kilometers to Athens through continuous traffic of mules and ox-carts carrying goods to and from the city. From a distance they would have seen the Parthenon dominating the Acropolis and perhaps the spear of the great statue of Athena in full armor, which stood outside the Parthenon.

Entering the city, they would see on their left close to the city wall the Pnyx, a large open slope where the Assembly met (see map, page 132). They would then pass between the Areopagus (Hill of Ares), a bare outcrop of rock of immemorial sanctity, and the Acropolis into the agora. This was the center of Athens. On the left stood the Strategeion or Generals' Headquarters (to the left of and not shown in the model on the facing page) and then (see model) the Tholos (the round magistrates' clubhouse), the Metroon (Archive), the temple of Apollo Patroos, and the stoa of Zeus; behind the Metroon stood the Bouleuterion (Council Chamber); on the right (not shown in the model) were the law courts. On the hill behind the Bouleuterion there still stands the temple of Hephaestus, the best preserved of all Greek temples. In the agora itself were great altars to Zeus and to the ten eponymous heroes of Athens, and there were also fine marble colonnades (stoas), where people could rest and talk in the shade.

The agora was not only the seat of government but also the market and mercantile center of Athens. Here you could buy anything, as a comic poet of this time wrote:

You will find everything sold together in the same place at Athens: figs, witnesses to summonses, bunches of grapes, turnips, pears, apples, givers of evidence, roses, medlars, porridge, honeycombs, chickpeas, lawsuits, puddings, myrtle, allotment-machines, irises, lambs, waterclocks, laws, indictments.

Pushing their way eastwards through the crowds of people conducting business or strolling in conversation, our visitors would reach the Panathenaic Way, which led to the Acropolis (see map, page 132, and illustrations, page 141). As they climbed to the top of the steep road, they would see on their right the little temple of Athena Nike, built to commemorate victory over the

Persians (see model, page 141, and photograph, page 280). They would then enter the great monumental gateway, the Propylaea, designed by Mnesicles to balance the Parthenon but never completed, since work was interrupted by the outbreak of war in 431 B.C. Even so, it was a beautiful and impressive building, which included a picture gallery.

On leaving the Propylaea, our visitors face the Parthenon and in front of it the great bronze statue of Athena Promachos. The temple takes the traditional form of a cella, in which stood the statue of the goddess, surrounded by a peristyle of Doric columns. The architect, Ictinus, incorporated many subtleties in the basically simple design, and these give the temple a unique grace and lightness, despite its great size. The sculptures that adorned the two pediments, the 92 metopes, and the frieze running around the cella were designed by Pericles' friend Pheidias. On the frieze was depicted the great Panathenaic procession, in which every fourth year representatives of the whole people of Athens brought the offering of a new robe to their patron goddess. Inside the cella was the great statue of Athena, standing in full armor, made of ivory and gold, so awe-inspiring that none could look on it without fear and admiration (see reconstruction, page 132).

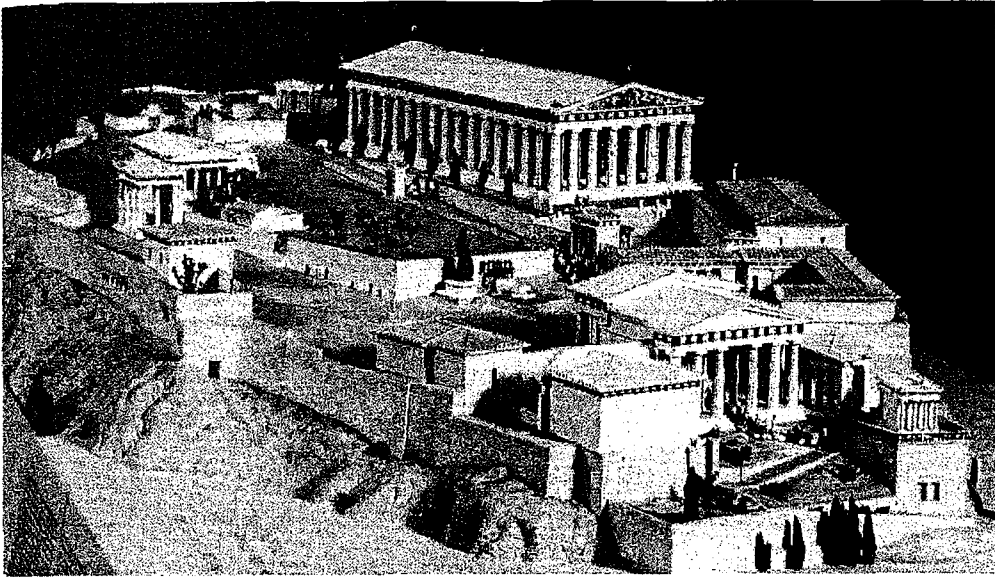
To the north of the Parthenon stood the Erechtheum, sacred to Erechtheus, the founder-king of Athens, and to Poseidon and Athena. The temple is irregular in plan, having three porticoes, each in a different style; it stood on the site of the most ancient shrine on the Acropolis. Here could be seen the sacred olive tree that Athena had given to the people of Athens and the sacred serpent, which embodied the spirit of Erechtheus.

Crossing to the southern edge of the Acropolis, behind the Parthenon, our visitors would look down on the precinct of Dionysus (see photograph, page 144). There was the theater (not built in stone until the following century) and the temple of Dionysus.

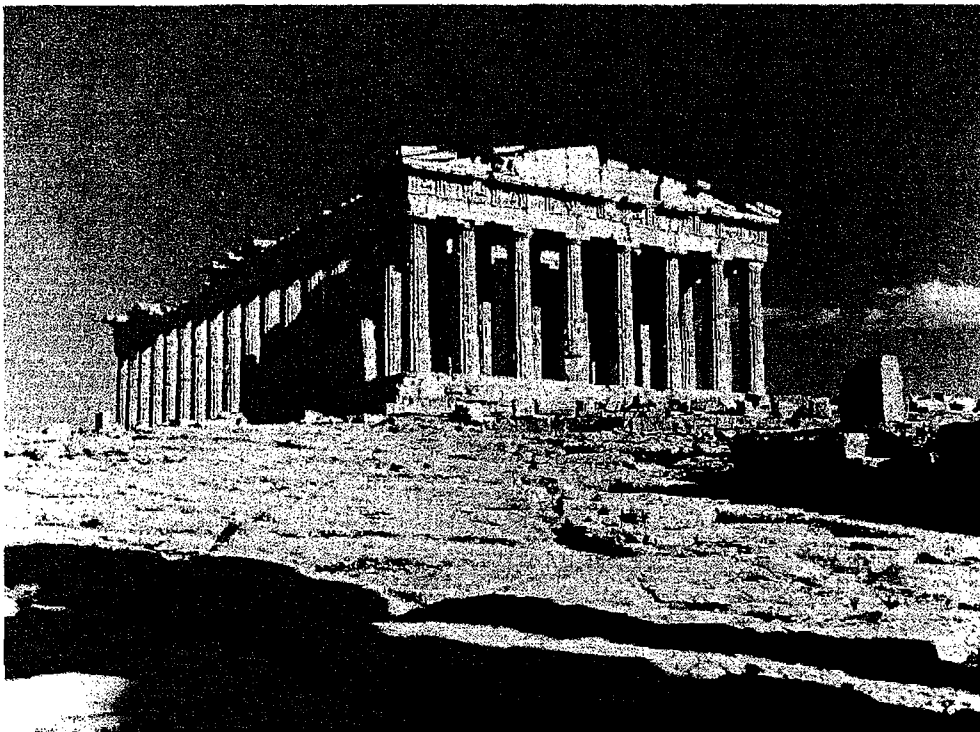
All these buildings, and others, were part of Pericles' master program. They were paid for by the tribute of the subject allies. His political opponents said, "The treasure contributed for the necessity of war was being squandered on the city, to gild her all over and adorn her like a harlot, with precious stones and statues and temples." Pericles answered that the people were not obliged to give any account of the money to the allies, provided that Athens maintained their defense and kept off the Persians. His program gave employment to an army of workmen and artists and made Athens a worthy center of her empire, "an education to Greece."



Maidens from the frieze of the Parthenon



Model of the Athenian Acropolis



The Parthenon seen from the Propylaea

# Η ΠΑΝΗΓΥΡΙΣ (β)



τῶν παρόντων πολλοὶ μεθύοντες κωμάζουσιν.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

αὐξάνω, *I increase*

καίω or κάω, κάεις, κάει, κάομεν,  
κάετε, κάουσι(v), *active, transi-*  
*tive, I kindle, burn; middle,*  
*intransitive, I burn, am on*  
*fire*

σιγάω, *I am silent*

τέρπομαι, *I enjoy myself;*  
+ dat., *I enjoy X; + participle,*  
*I enjoy doing X*

### Nouns

ὁ γέρων, τοῦ γέροντος, *old*  
*man*

ὁ δῆμος, τοῦ δήμου, *the people*

τὸ ἱερεῖον, τοῦ ἱερείου, *sacrifi-*  
*cial victim*

ὁ ἱερεὺς, τοῦ ἱερέως, *priest*

ὁ κήρυξ, τοῦ κήρυκος, *herald*

ὁ οὐρανός, τοῦ οὐρανοῦ, *sky,*  
*heaven*

ἡ πομπή, τῆς πομπῆς, *proces-*  
*sion*

### Adjectives

ἄριστος, -η, -ον, *best; very*  
*good; noble*

γέρων, γέροντος, *old*

ἔτοιμος, -η, -ον, *ready*

ἴλεως, acc., ἴλεων, *propitious*

μέσος, -η, -ον, *middle (of)*

### Proper Name

ὁ Βρόμιος, τοῦ Βρομίου, *the*  
*Thunderer (a name of Diony-*  
*sus)*

ἐσπέρᾳ ἤδη πάρεστιν. δι' ὀλίγου σιγῶσι πάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι· ὁ γὰρ κήρυξ προχωρεῖ καὶ βοῶν, “σιγάτε, ὦ πολῖται,” φησὶν· “ἡ γὰρ πομπή προσχωρεῖ. ἐκποδὼν γίνεσθε.” πάντες οὖν ἐκποδὼν γίνονται καὶ τὴν πομπὴν μένουσιν.

[ἐκποδὼν, *out of the way*]

ἐνταῦθα δὴ τὴν πομπὴν ὁρῶσι προσχωροῦσαν. ἡγοῦνται μὲν οἱ κήρυκες· ἔπειτα δὲ παρθένοι κάλλιστα βαδίζουσι κανᾶ φέρουσαι βοτρυῶν πλήρη. ἔπονται δὲ αὐταῖς πολλοί τε πολῖται ἀσκοὺς οἴνου φέροντες καὶ πολλοὶ μέτοικοι σκάφια φέροντες. ἔπειτα δὲ προχωρεῖ ὁ τοῦ Διονύσου ἱερεὺς καὶ ἅμ' αὐτῷ νεᾶνῖαι ἄριστοι τὴν τοῦ Διονύσου εἰκόνα φέροντες. τελευταῖοι δὲ οἱ ὑπηρέται ἔρχονται τὰ ἱερεῖα ἄγοντες.

[κανᾶ, *baskets* βοτρυῶν πλήρη, *full of grapes* ἀσκοὺς οἴνου, *skins (full) of wine* μέτοικοι, *metics* (resident aliens) σκάφια, *trays* (of offerings) ἅμ' αὐτῷ, *together with him* τελευταῖοι, *last in order* οἱ ὑπηρέται, *the attendants*]

πάντες οὖν χαίροντες τῇ πομπῇ ἔπονται πρὸς τὸ τοῦ θεοῦ τέμενος. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνοῦνται, ὁ μὲν ἱερεὺς καὶ οἱ νεᾶνῖαι τὴν τοῦ θεοῦ εἰκόνα εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν φέρουσιν, οἱ δὲ ὑπηρέται τὰ ἱερεῖα πρὸς τὸν βωμὸν ἄγουσιν. ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ κήρυξ τῷ δήμῳ κηρύττων, “εὐφημεῖτε, ὦ πολῖται,” φησὶν. σιγῇ οὖν ὁ πᾶς ὄμιλος καὶ ἥσυχος μένει.

[κηρύττων, *proclaiming* εὐφημεῖτε, *keep holy silence!* ἥσυχος, *quiet(ly)*]

ὁ δὲ ἱερεὺς τὰς χειράς πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν αἴρων, “ὦ ἄναξ Διόνῳσε,” φησὶν, “ἄκουέ μου εὐχομένου· Βρόμιε, τὴν τε θυσίαν δέχου καὶ ἴλεως ἴσθι τῷ δήμῳ· σὺ γὰρ ἴλεως ὢν τὰς τε ἀμπέλους σφάζεις καὶ αὐξάνεις τοὺς βότρυας ὥστε παρέχειν ἡμῖν τὸν οἶνον.”

[ἄναξ, *lord* τὴν ... θυσίαν, *the sacrifice* τὰς ... ἀμπέλους, *the vines*]

οἱ δὲ παρόντες πάντες βοῶσιν· “ἐλελεῦ, ἴου, ἴου, Βρόμιε, ἴλεως ὢν τοὺς τε βότρυας αὐξανε καὶ πάρεχε ἡμῖν τὸν οἶνον.” ἔπειτα δὲ ὁ ἱερεὺς σφάττει τὰ ἱερεῖα· οἱ δὲ ὑπηρέται ἔτοιμοι ὄντες λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὰ καὶ κατατέμνουσιν. καὶ τὰ μὲν τῷ θεῷ παρέχουσιν ἐν τῷ βωμῷ κᾶοντες, τὰ δὲ τοῖς παροῦσι διαιροῦσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔτοιμά ἐστι πάντα, ὁ ἱερεὺς οἶνον σπένδει καὶ τῷ θεῷ εὐχεται. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πάντες τὸν τ' οἶνον πίνουσι καὶ τὰ κρέα ἐσθίουσι τῷ δαιτὶ τερπόμενοι.

[ἐλελεῦ, ἴου, ἴου: *untranslatable ritual chants* σφάττει, *slaughters* κατατέμνουσιν, *cut up* τὰ μὲν ... τὰ δὲ, *some (parts) ... other (parts)* διαιροῦσιν, *they divide* σπένδει, *pours ... as a libation* τὰ κρέα, *the flesh* τῷ δαιτὶ, *the feast*]

μέση νύξ νῦν ἐστίν, τῶν δὲ παρόντων πολλοὶ μεθύοντες

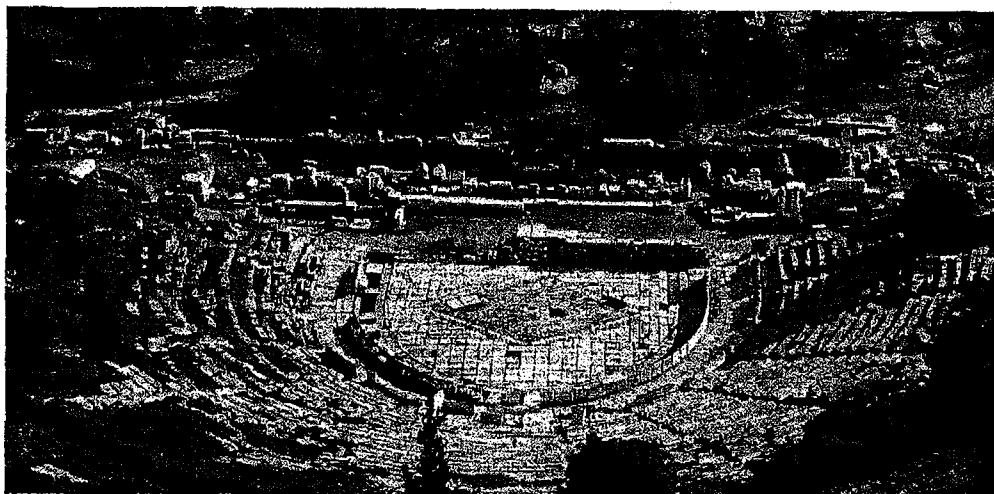
κωμάζουσιν. ἡ οὖν Μυρρίνη, φοβουμένη ὑπὲρ τῶν παίδων, “ἄγε δὴ, ὦ ἄνερ,” φησὶν, “ὁ πάππος μάλα κάμνει. καιρός ἐστὶν ἐπανιέναι πρὸς τὰς πύλας καὶ καθεύδειν.” ὁ δὲ πάππος, “τί λέγεις;” φησὶν, “οὐ κάμνω ἐγώ. βούλομαι κωμάζειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “γέρων εἴ, ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν· “οὐ προσήκει σοι κωμάζειν. ἐλθέ.” οὕτω λέγει καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς πρὸς τὰς πύλας. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφικνοῦνται, τὸν ἡμίονον εὐρίσκουσιν, καὶ πάντες χαμαὶ καθεύδουσιν.

[μεθύοντες, *being drunk* κωμάζουσιν, *are reveling* οὐ προσήκει σοι, *it is not suitable for you* τὸν ἡμίονον, *the mule* χαμαὶ *on the ground*]

## WORD BUILDING

*Describe the relationship between the words in the following sets. From your knowledge of the words at the left, deduce the meaning of those to the right:*

- |            |           |                    |
|------------|-----------|--------------------|
| 1. ἡ πόλις | ὁ πολίτης | πολιτικός, -ή, -όν |
| 2. ἡ ναῦς  | ὁ ναύτης  | ναυτικός, -ή, -όν  |
| 3. ποιέω   | ὁ ποιητής | ποιητικός, -ή, -όν |



The theater of Dionysus

## GRAMMAR

## 2. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in -ντ-

In Vocabulary 9β you had the noun ὁ γέρων, τοῦ γέροντος, *old man*; as adjective, *old*. Nouns and adjectives such as this with stems ending in -ντ- decline the same as present active participles such as λύων, λύοντος (see Grammar 1, pages 135–136). PRACTICE: Write all the forms of ὁ γέρων, τοῦ γέροντος.

## 3. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in a Vowel: ἡ πόλις and τὸ ἄστυ

Stems: πολι-/πολε-, *city*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	ἡ πόλι-ς	αἱ πόλε-ες > πόλεις
Gen.	τῆς πόλε-ως	τῶν πόλε-ων
Dat.	τῇ πόλε-ι	ταῖς πόλε-σι(ν)
Acc.	τὴν πόλι-ν	τὰς πόλεις
Voc.	ὦ πόλι	ὦ πόλε-ες > πόλεις

Stems: ἄστυ-/αστε-, *city*

	Singular	Plural
Nom.	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστε-α > ἄσται
Gen.	τοῦ ἄστε-ως	τῶν ἄστε-ων
Dat.	τῷ ἄστε-ι	τοῖς ἄστε-σι(ν)
Acc.	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστε-α > ἄσται
Voc.	ὦ ἄστυ	ὦ ἄστε-α > ἄσται

Note that the stems appear as πολι- and αστυ- in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singulars and as πολε- and αστε- in the other cases. Note the -ως ending instead of -ος in the genitive singular and ν instead of α in the accusative singular of πόλις. Contraction takes place in five of the forms.

Note that nouns of this type, as well as a few other words such as ἔλεως, *propitious*, accent the third syllable from the end in the genitive singular and plural even though the final syllable is long. Originally the genitive singular was πόληος, and this became πόλεως by *quantitative metathesis*, with the original accent retained. The genitive plural πόλεων accents its first syllable in imitation of the singular.

PRACTICE: Write the complete sets of the forms of ὁ μάντις, τοῦ μάντεως, *seer*, and of ὁ πήχυς, τοῦ πήχεως, *forearm*.

#### 4. 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems Ending in Diphthongs or Vowels: ὁ βασιλεύς and the Irregular Nouns ἡ ναῦς and ὁ βοῦς

**Stems:** βασιλευ-/βασιλε-, *king*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ βασιλεύς	οἱ βασιλεῖς
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ βασιλέως	τῶν βασιλέων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ βασιλεί > βασιλεῖ	τοῖς βασιλεῦσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν βασιλέα	τούς βασιλέας
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ βασιλεῦ	ὦ βασιλεῖς

The stem βασιλευ- is used before consonants, and the stem βασιλε-, before vowels. The words ὁ Θησεύς and ὁ ἱερεύς are declined the same as ὁ βασιλεύς.

The stems of ναῦς and βοῦς were originally ναϝ- and βοϝ-. The letter ϝ (digamma) represented a *w* sound (compare Latin *navis* and *bovis*). This sound and letter were lost in the development of the Greek language.

**Stems:** ναυ-/νε-/νη-, *ship*

**Stems:** βου-/βο-, *ox*

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ ναῦς	αἱ νῆες		ὁ βοῦς	οἱ βόες
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς νεώς	τῶν νεών		τοῦ βοός	τῶν βοών
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ νηΐ	ταῖς ναυσί(ν)		τῷ βοΐ	τοῖς βουσί(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν ναῦν	τὰς ναῦς		τὸν βοῦν	τούς βοῦς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ ναῦ	ὦ νῆες		ὦ βοῦ	ὦ βόες

**PRACTICE:** Write complete sets of ὁ μέγας βασιλεύς, *the great king*, ἡ καλὴ ναῦς, *the beautiful ship*, and ὁ ἰσχυρὸς βοῦς, *the strong ox*.

#### Exercise 9ε

*In each of the following phrases put the noun and adjective into the correct forms to agree with the article:*

- αἱ (μακρός) (ναῦς)
- τοῦ (καλός) (ἄστρ)
- τῶν (μέγας) (βασιλεύς)
- τῷ (μέγας) (βοῦς)
- τῆς (μέγας) (πόλις)
- τοῖς (μέγας) (ἄστρ)
- (πᾶς) τῶν (ναῦς)
- τὴν (πᾶς) (πόλις)
- τοῖς (ἰσχυρός) (βοῦς)
- τῇ (μικρός) (πόλις)
- τοῦ (μέγας) (βασιλεύς)
- τὰς (μέγιστος) (ναῦς)
- οἱ (μέγας) (βοῦς)
- τὸν (σοφός) (βασιλεύς)



## 5. Uses of the Genitive Case

- a. The genitive is frequently used to show *possession*, e.g., ὁ τοῦ παιδὸς κύων = *the boy's dog, the dog of the boy*. Note that the genitive is usually placed in the *attributive position* between the article and the noun (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7a, page 66) or after the repeated article: ὁ κύων ὁ τοῦ παιδός. Exception: the possessive genitives αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, and αὐτῶν, *of him / of it, of her, and of them* occupy the predicate position (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7b, page 66), e.g., ὁ κύων αὐτοῦ, *his dog*.
- b. The genitive is used to express the whole of which some part is mentioned; this is the *genitive of the whole* or the *partitive genitive*, e.g., τῶν παρόντων πολλοί = *many of those present*.
- c. The genitive case is used after certain prepositions, often (but by no means always) expressing ideas of *place from which*, e.g., ἀπό, *from*; διά, *through*; ἐκ, ἐξ, *out of*; μετά, *with*; and ὑπέρ, *on behalf of, for*.
- d. The genitive is used with certain verbs, e.g.:  

ἡ Ἀριάδνη, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ὀρᾷ τὸν Θησεῖα, ἐρᾷ αὐτοῦ.  
*Ariadne, when she first sees Theseus, loves him.*

ὁ Θησεὺς τῇ ἀριστερᾷ λαμβάνεται τῆς τοῦ θηρίου κεφαλῆς.  
*Theseus takes hold of the head of the beast with his left hand.*
- e. For the genitive of time within which, see Chapter 8, Grammar 6, page 129.

## Exercise 9ζ

Translate the following:

1. τί ἐστὶ τὸ τοῦ ξένου ὄνομα;
2. ὁ βασιλεὺς δέχεται τὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἄγγελον.
3. ἀφικνούμεθα εἰς τὸν τοῦ πατρὸς ἀγρόν.
4. ὁ παῖς κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν βαδίζων τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς χειρὸς ἔχεται.
5. οἱ πολῖται τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀκούουσι βουλόμενοι γινώσκειν τοὺς τοῦ βασιλέως λόγους (*words/proposals*).
6. We hear the messenger's words.
7. I am going to the house of the poet.
8. They are looking for the girl's father.
9. The mother hears the girl crying (*use δακρύω*) and hurries out of the house.
10. The citizens take hold of the messenger and lead him to the king.
11. Many of the women want to go to the city with their husbands.

## 6. Some Uses of the Article

- a. You have already met the following uses of the article (see Chapter 5, Grammar 3, page 58):

ὁ δέ = <i>and/but he</i>	ἡ δέ = <i>and/but she</i>
οἱ δέ = <i>and/but they</i>	αἱ δέ = <i>and/but they</i>
ὁ/ἡ/τὸ μὲν . . . ὁ/ἡ/τὸ δέ = <i>the one . . . the other</i>	
οἱ/αἱ/τὰ μὲν . . . οἱ/αἱ/τὰ δέ = <i>some . . . others</i>	

- b. The article + an adjective can form a noun phrase, e.g.:

### Adjectives:

ἀνδρείος, -ᾱ, -ον = *brave*  
 σώφρων, σώφρον = *prudent*  
 φίλος, -η, -ον = *dear*  
 πολέμιος, -ᾱ, -ον = *hostile*

### Noun Phrases:

οἱ ἀνδρεῖοι = *the brave men*  
 αἱ σώφρονες = *the prudent women*  
 οἱ φίλοι or αἱ φίλαι = *the friends*  
 οἱ πολέμιοι = *the enemy*

- c. The article + an adverb, prepositional phrase, or genitive can form a noun phrase, e.g.:

οἱ νῦν = *the now men = the men of today = the present generation*  
 οἱ πάλαι = *the men of old*  
 αἱ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ = *the women in the agora*  
 αἱ πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ = *the women at the spring*  
 ὁ βασιλέως = *the (son) of the king = the king's son*  
 τὰ εἴσω = *the things inside = the inside*  
 τὰ τῆς πόλεως = *the things (i.e., the affairs) of the city = politics*

- d. The neuter of an adjective + the article is often used as an abstract noun, e.g.:

τὸ καλόν = *beauty; virtue; honor*  
 τὸ αἰσχρόν = *dishonor; disgrace; vice*  
 τὸ ἀληθές or τὰ ἀληθῆ = *the truth*  
 τὸ δίκαιον = *justice*  
 τὸ ἓν = *the one = unity*

- e. The article + a participle forms a noun phrase that may be translated by a relative clause in English, e.g.:

οἱ παρόντες = *the ones being present = those who are present*  
 οἱ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἐργαζόμενοι = *the in the field working (men) = the men who are working in the field*  
 ὁ ἱερεὺς ὁ τὴν θυσίαν ποιούμενος = *the priest who is making the sacrifice*

These participles are said to be *attributive*, serving as simple adjectives; see Chapter 8, Grammar 1b, page 115.

**Exercise 9η***Read aloud and translate:*

1. ὁ πατήρ τὸν παῖδα κελεύει ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν· ὁ δὲ οὐ πείθεται αὐτῷ.
2. τῶν πολιτῶν οἱ μὲν οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχονται, οἱ δὲ μένουσι τὴν πομπὴν θεώμενοι.
3. τῶν παρθένων αἱ μὲν πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ μένουσιν, αἱ δὲ μετὰ τῶν μητέρων ἤδη οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχονται.
4. αἱ παρθένοι αἱ τὰ κανᾶ φέρουσαι κάλλισταί εἰσιν.
5. οἱ τοὺς χοροὺς θεώμενοι μάλα χαίρουσιν.
6. ἄρ' ὀρᾷς τοὺς ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ πονοῦντας;
7. οἱ σοὶ φίλοι βούλονται τὰ τῆς πόλεως γινώσκειν.
8. οἱ νεᾶνιαι οἱ πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν σπεύδοντες μέλλουσι τῷ πατρὶ συλλαμβάνειν.
9. μὴ ταῦτά (*this*) μοι λέγε· ἀγνοεῖς (*you do not know*) γὰρ τὰ τῆς πόλεως.
10. πάντες οἱ νῦν τιμῶσι τοὺς τὴν πόλιν φιλοῦντας.
11. οἱ σοὶ φίλοι βούλονται γινώσκειν τί ἐστὶ τὸ δίκαιον.
12. αἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ διαλέγονται ἀλλήλαις περὶ τοῦ καλοῦ.
13. σῶζε τοὺς ἐν τῇ νηϊ· ἐν μεγίστῳ γὰρ κινδύνῳ εἰσίν.

**Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΚΑΙ Η ΚΙΡΚΗ***Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:*

Odysseus comes to the island of Aeaea, where the witch Circe lives:

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμᾶς ἀποπέμπει ὁ Αἴολος, ἀποπλέομεν λυπούμενοι καὶ δι' ὀλίγου ἀφικνούμεθα εἰς τὴν νῆσον Αἰαίαν· ἐκεῖ δὲ οἰκεῖ ἡ Κίρκη, θεὸς οὖσα δεινὴ. ἐγὼ δὲ τοὺς ἐταίρους πρὸς τῇ νηϊ λείπων ἐπὶ ὄρος τι ἀναβαίνω, βουλόμενος γινώσκειν εἴ τις ἄνθρωπος ἐν τῇ νήσῳ οἰκεῖ. ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἀφικνοῦμαι, καπνὸν ὄρῳ πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν φερόμενον. πρὸς τὴν ναῦν οὖν ἐπανέρχομαι καὶ τῶν ἐταίρων τοὺς μὲν κελεύω πρὸς τῇ νηϊ μένειν, τοὺς δὲ κελεύω πρὸς μέσῃ τὴν νῆσον πορευομένους γινώσκειν τίς ἐκεῖ οἰκεῖ. ὁ δὲ Εὐρύλοχος αὐτοῖς ἡγεῖται.

[*λυπούμενοι, grieving* εἴ τις, *if any* καπνὸν, *smoke* φερόμενον, *rising* Εὐρύλοχος, *Eurylochus*]

1. With what feelings do Odysseus and his men set sail?
2. How is Circe described?
3. Why does Odysseus climb the hill?
4. What does he see from the top of the hill?
5. With what purpose in mind does Odysseus send some of his men to the middle of the island?
6. Who leads them?

οἱ δὲ τὴν τῆς Κίρκης οἰκίαν εὐρίσκουσιν ἐν μέσῃ ὕλῃ οὖσαν· ἐγγὺς δὲ τῆς οἰκίας πολλοὺς τε λύκους ὀρώσι καὶ πολλοὺς λέοντας. τούτους δὲ ὀρώντες μάλα φοβοῦνται καὶ πρὸς τῇ θύρᾳ μένουσιν. ἔπειτα δὲ τῆς Κίρκης ἀκούουσιν ἔνδον ᾄδούσης. καλοῦσιν οὖν αὐτήν· ἡ δὲ ἐκ τῆς θύρᾳ ἐκβαίνει καὶ εἰσκαλεῖ αὐτούς. οἱ δὲ πάντες ἔπονται αὐτῇ· μόνος δὲ ὁ Εὐρύλοχος ἔξω μένει, φοβούμενος κίνδυνόν τινα. ἡ δὲ Κίρκη τοὺς ἄλλους εἰσάγει καὶ καθίζεσθαι κελεύει καὶ σίτον τε αὐτοῖς παρέχει καὶ οἶνον· φάρμακα δὲ κακὰ τῷ σίτῳ κυκᾷ.

[ὕλη, *woods* ἐγγὺς + gen., *near* λέοντας, *lions* τούτους, *them* ἔνδον, *inside* ᾄδούσης, *singing* μόνος, *only* ἔξω, *outside* φάρμακα . . . κακὰ, *evil drugs* κυκᾷ, *she mixes*]

7. What do the men see around Circe's house?
8. What feeling prompts the men to wait at Circe's door rather than going in?
9. What do they hear?
10. Why does Circe come out of the door?
11. Who follow her in?
12. Why does Eurylochus not go in?
13. What three things does Circe hand over to the men to eat and drink?

ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ ἑταῖροι ἐσθίουσι τὸν σίτον, ἡ Κίρκη ῥάβδῳ αὐτοὺς πλήττει καὶ εἰς τοὺς συφεοὺς ἐλαύνει· οἱ δὲ εὐθὺς σῦες γίνονται. ἔπειτα δὲ ἡ Κίρκη βαλάνους αὐτοῖς βάλλει ἐσθίειν καὶ λείπει αὐτοὺς ἐν τοῖς συφεοῖς.

[ῥάβδῳ, *with her wand* πλήττει, *strikes* τοὺς συφεοὺς, *the pigsties* εὐθὺς, *immediately* σῦες, *pigs* βαλάνους, *acorns*]

14. How does Circe change the men into pigs?
15. What does she now hand over to them to eat and where does she leave them?

## Exercise 90

*Translate into Greek:*

1. When Eurylochus sees what is happening, he flees and runs to the ship.
2. But I, when I hear everything, go to Circe's house, wishing to save my comrades.
3. And Circe hands over to me food and wine; then, striking (*use* πλήττω) me with her wand (*use* ἡ ῥάβδος), she orders (me) to go to the pigsties (*use* οἱ συφεοί).
4. But I do not become a pig (ὁ σῦς); and she, being very afraid, is willing to free (λύειν) my comrades.

## Classical Greek

Simonides

The following is an epigram (no. LXXVI, Campbell) written by Simonides of Ceos (late sixth to early fifth century B.C.) on sailors lost at sea; they were taking spoils of war (ἀκροθίνια) from Sparta to Delphi as an offering to Apollo (ὁ Φοῖβος). Since the men were lost at sea and the hull of their ship was their tomb, the verb ἐκτέρισεν is used ironically.

τούσδε ποτ' ἐκ Σπάρτας ἀκροθίνια Φοῖβω ἄγοντας

ἐν πέλαγος, μία νύξ, ἐν σκάφος ἐκτέρισεν.

[τούσδε, *these men* ποτ(ε), *once* πέλαγος (τό), *sea* σκάφος, *hull of a ship* ἐκτέρισεν, *buried with due honors* (τὰ κτέρεια, *funeral gifts, honors*)]

## New Testament Greek

Luke 6.31–33

The Sermon on the Mount

“καὶ καθὼς θέλετε ἵνα ποιῶσιν ὑμῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι ποιεῖτε αὐτοῖς ὁμοίως. καὶ εἰ ἀγαπᾶτε τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας ὑμᾶς, ποῖα ὑμῖν χάρις ἐστίν; καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἁμαρτωλοὶ τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας αὐτοὺς ἀγαπῶσιν. καὶ ἐὰν ἀγαθοποιῇτε τοὺς ἀγαθοποιῶντας ὑμᾶς, ποῖα ὑμῖν χάρις ἐστίν; καὶ οἱ ἁμαρτωλοὶ τὸ αὐτὸ ποιοῦσιν.”

[καθὼς, *as* θέλετε = ἐθέλετε ἵνα ποιῶσιν ὑμῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, *that men should do to you* ὁμοίως, *likewise* εἰ, *if* ἀγαπᾶτε, *you love* τοὺς ἀγαπῶντας, *those who love (those loving)* ποῖα... χάρις, *what thanks?* ἁμαρτωλοὶ, *sinner* ἐὰν, *if*]

Concluded in Chapter 10α



Odysseus threatens Circe.

# REVIEW OF VERB FORMS

The following are full sets of the forms of λύω, φιλέω, τιμάω, and εἰμί that you have met so far in this course:

## λύω: Active Voice

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
λύω		λύειν	λύνων,
λύεις	λύε		λύουσα,
λύει			λύνον,
λύομεν			gen., λύνοντος, etc.
λύετε	λύετε		
λύουσι(ν)			

## λύω: Middle Voice

λύομαι		λύεσθαι	λυνόμενος, -η, -ον
λύει or λύῃ	λύου		
λύεται			
λυνόμεθα			
λύεσθε	λύεσθε		
λύνονται			

## φιλέω: Active Voice

φιλῶ		φιλεῖν	φιλῶν,
φιλεῖς	φίλει		φιλοῦσα,
φιλεῖ			φιλοῦν,
φιλοῦμεν			gen., φιλοῦντος, etc.
φιλεῖτε	φιλεῖτε		
φιλοῦσι(ν)			

## φιλέω: Middle Voice

φιλοῦμαι		φιλεῖσθαι	φιλούμενος, -η, -ον
φιλεῖ or φιλῇ	φιλοῦ		
φιλεῖται			
φιλούμεθα			
φιλεῖσθε	φιλεῖσθε		
φιλοῦνται			

**τιμάω: Active Voice**

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
τιμῶ		τιμᾶν	τιμῶν,
τιμᾶς	τίμα		τιμῶσα,
τιμᾷ			τιμῶν,
τιμῶμεν			gen., τιμῶντος, etc.
τιμᾶτε	τιμᾶτε		
τιμῶσι(ν)			

**τιμάω: Middle Voice**

τιμῶμαι		τιμᾶσθαι	τιμώμενος, -η, -ον
τιμᾷ	τιμῶ		
τιμᾶται			
τιμώμεθα			
τιμᾶσθε	τιμᾶσθε		
τιμῶνται			

**εἰμί: Active Voice Only**

εἰμί		εἶναι	ὄν,
εἶ	ἴσθι		οὐσα,
ἐστί(ν)			ὄν,
ἐσμέν			gen., ὄντος, etc.
ἐστέ	ἔστε		
εἰσί(ν)			



Odysseus threatens Circe  
(a grotesque representation in the Boeotian Cabiran style)

# PREVIEW OF NEW VERB FORMS

---

Most of the verbs in the stories up to now have been in the present tense. In the stories in the remainder of this course you will also meet verbs in the imperfect, future, aorist, perfect, and pluperfect tenses.

The following is a brief overview of the Greek verbal system. It will give you a framework within which you will be able to place the various new verb forms. Note that only active voice forms are shown in the lists below.

First we give sample forms of λύω, which is typical of many Greek verbs that have past tense formations called *sigmatic 1st aorists*:

Present: λύ-ω = *I loosen, am loosening, do loosen*

Imperfect or Past Progressive: ἔ-λυ-ον = *I was loosening*

Sigmatic Future: λύ-σ-ω = *I will loosen, will be loosening*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist: ἔ-λυ-σα = *I loosened, did loosen*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist Imperative: λῦ-σον = *loosen!*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist Infinitive: λῦ-σαι = *to loosen*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist Participle: λύ-σας = *having loosened, after loosening, sometimes, loosening*

-κα 1st Perfect: λέ-λυ-κα = *I have loosened*

-κη 1st Pluperfect: ἔ-λε-λύ-κη = *I had loosened*

Some verbs have past tense formations without a σ as in the aorists above but with a thematic vowel (ο or ε) between the stem and the endings. These are called *thematic 2nd aorists*; here are the present and aorist tenses of such a verb (note the different stem in the 2nd aorist; see Chapter 11, Grammar 1, page 176):

Present:λείπ-ω = *I leave, am leaving, do leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist: ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν = *I left, did leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist Imperative: λίπ-ε = *leave!*

Thematic 2nd Aorist Infinitive: λιπ-εῖν = *to leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist Participle: λιπ-ών = *having left, after leaving, sometimes, leaving*

Notes on the lists above:

1. The imperfect or past progressive (e.g., ἔ-λυ-ον) is formed from the present stem, which is augmented by adding the prefix ἔ- or by lengthening the initial vowel, e.g., ἄγ-ω > ἤγ-ο-ν. Augmenting in one of these two ways signals past time. (For the imperfect or past progressive tense, see Chapter 13.)
2. The future tense is usually formed by adding -σ- to the stem and adding the same endings as for the present: e.g., λύ-σ-ω. (See Chapter 10.)



3. The sigmatic 1st aorist (e.g., ἔ-λῦ-σα) is formed with the suffix -σα and with augment, which shows past time and appears only in the indicative mood. (See Chapter 12.) Augment is absent from the aorist imperative (λῦ-σον), which does not refer to past time, from the infinitive (λῦ-σαι), which usually does not refer to past time, and from the participle (λύ-σας), which usually describes an action that was completed prior to the action of the main verb but may describe an action without reference to time (further details in Chapters 11 and 12).
4. In thematic 2nd aorists (e.g., ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν) there is a change in the stem of the verb, a thematic vowel (ο or ε), and no -σα suffix. (See Chapter 11.)

## Aspect

Aspect or the way an action is looked upon is very important in Greek. There are three aspects: (1) *progressive*, of action in process or ongoing, e.g., "John runs/is running/was running"; (2) *aorist*, of simple action, sometimes in past time, e.g., "John ran," and sometimes not, e.g., "Run, John!"; and (3) *perfective*, with emphasis on the enduring result of a completed action, e.g., "John has won the race" = "John won the race and is *now* the winner."

## Voice

In Chapter 6 you learned that there are three voices in Greek, *active*, *middle*, and *passive*. In the present, imperfect, perfect, and pluperfect tenses, middle and passive forms are spelled the same and are distinguishable only by the context in which they are used (see Chapter 16). In the future and aorist there are different forms for the passive (see Chapter 17, Book II).

## Verb Stems and Principal Parts

In many verbs the stem of the present tense is different from the stem or stems from which the other tenses are formed, as in the verb φέρω, *I carry*:

Present tense, φέρ-ω: stem, φερ-

Future tense, οἰ-σ-ω: stem, οἰ-

Aorist, ἔνεγκ-ο-ν: stem, ἐνεγκ-

In order to make it easier for you to learn the *principal parts* of Greek verbs, i.e., the forms that you need to know in order to make the various tenses, we will give in subsequent vocabulary lists the stem or stems when they are different from what is seen in the present tense, e.g.:

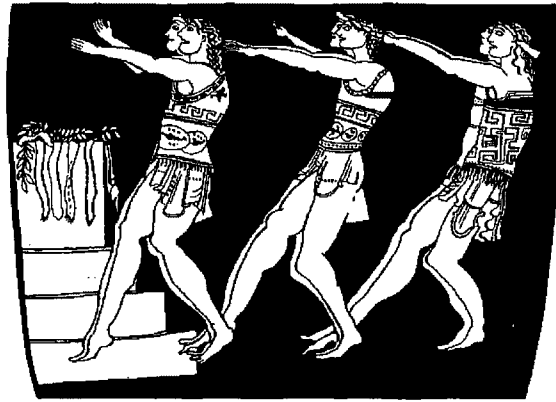
φέρω, [οἰ-] οἰσώ, [ἐνεγκ-] ἔνεγκον, *I carry*

We will not give stems when they are the same in the other tenses as they are in the present.

Greek verbs normally have six principal parts, but in the vocabulary lists in the remainder of Book I we will give only the first three, as above. They should be memorized carefully.

# 10

## Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (α)



ὁ πρῶτος χορὸς προχωρεῖ· τὰ τοῦ Διονύσου ἔργα ὑμνήσει.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verb

ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἰκνέομαι],  
[ἰκ-] ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, *I*  
*arrive*; + εἰς + acc., *I arrive at*  
γίγνομαι, [γενε-] γενήσομαι,  
[γεν-] ἐγενόμην, *I become*  
εὕρισκω, [εὔρε-] εὕρήσω, [εὕρ-]  
ἡδρον or εὔρον, *I find*  
θεάομαι, θεάσομαι (note that  
because of the ε the α lengthens

to ᾱ instead of η), ἐθεασάμην,  
*I see, watch, look at*  
νικάω, νικήσω, ἐνίκησα, *I de-*  
*feat; I win*

#### Adverb

καλῶς, *well*

#### Interjection

φεῦ, often used with gen. of  
cause, *alas!*

τῇ δ' ὕστεραία, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἀνατέλλει ὁ ἥλιος, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τήν  
τε γυναῖκα καὶ τοὺς παῖδας ἐγείρει· “ἐγείρεσθε,” φησὶν· “δι’ ὀλίγου γὰρ  
θεᾶσόμεθα τοὺς χορούς. σπεύδετε. εἰ γὰρ μὴ σπεύσετε, ὥσπερ  
ἀφικνόμεθα.” ὁ δὲ πάππος ἔτι καθεύδει. ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις, “ἐγείρου,  
ὦ πάππα,” φησὶν. “εἰ γὰρ μὴ σπεύσεις, ὥσπερ ἀφίξει. ἄγε, ἡγήσομαί σοι 5  
πρὸς τὸ θεᾶτρον.” ὁ μὲν οὖν πάππος ἐγείρεται, ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις πᾶσι  
πρὸς τὸ θεᾶτρον ἡγεῖται. ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφικνοῦνται, πλείστοι ἤδη ἄνθρωποι  
τὸ θεᾶτρον πληροῦσιν.

[ἀνατέλλει, *is rising* ὥσπερ, (*too*) *late* τὸ θεᾶτρον, *the theater* πλείστοι, *very*  
*many* πληροῦσιν, *are filling*]

ὁ οὖν πάππος στενάζει καί, “φεῦ, φεῦ,” φησίν, “μεστόν ἐστι τὸ πᾶν  
 θεᾶτρον τοὺς οὖν χοροὺς οὐ θεᾶσομαι. τί ποιήσομεν;” ὁ δὲ 10  
 Δικαιοπόλις, “θάρρει, ὦ πάππα,” φησίν. “ἔπου μοι. θρᾶνον  
 εὐρήσομεν.” καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτοῖς ἄνω καὶ θρᾶνον εὐρίσκει ἐν ἄκρῳ τῷ  
 θεάτρῳ. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “καθίζεσθε, ὦ παῖδες,” φησίν. “ἐντεῦθεν  
 πάντα εὖ θεᾶσόμεθα.”

[μεστόν, *full* θάρρει, *cheer up!* θρᾶνον, *bench, seat* ἄνω, *upwards* ἐντεῦθεν,  
*from here*]

ἐπεὶ πρῶτον καθίζονται, προχωρεῖ ὁ κήρυξ εἰς μέσσην τὴν 15  
 ὀρχήστρᾱν καί, “εὐφημεῖτε, ὦ πολῖται,” φησίν. “νῦν γὰρ γενήσονται οἱ  
 χοροί.” ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ πρῶτος χορὸς προχωρεῖ εἰς τὴν ὀρχήστρᾱν,  
 καὶ τὰ τοῦ Διονύσου ἔργα ὕμνεῖ. θαυμάζει οὖν ἡ Μελίττα θεωμένη  
 καὶ χαίρει ἀκούουσα. “ὥς καλῶς χορεύουσιν οἱ νεᾶνῖαι,” φησίν.  
 “νικήσουσι τοὺς ἄλλους καὶ δέξονται τοὺς στεφάνους.” 20

[τὴν ὀρχήστρᾱν, *the dancing circle* εὐφημεῖτε, *keep holy silence!* ὕμνεῖ, *praises*  
 χορεύουσιν, *dance* τοὺς στεφάνους, *the garlands*]

πέντε χοροὶ παίδων καὶ πέντε ἀνδρῶν ἐφεξῆς ἀγωνίζονται, καὶ  
 πάντες ἄριστα χορεύουσιν. ἐπεὶ δὲ παύεται ὁ δέκατος χορὸς, οἱ  
 νικῶντες τοὺς στεφάνους δέχονται, καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες  
 σπεύδουσιν ἐκ τοῦ θεάτρου.

[ἐφεξῆς, *in order* ἀγωνίζονται, *compete* ἄριστα, *very well*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the italicized words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. He found fulfillment in an *agonistic* way of life.
2. She is studying *macroeconomics*.
3. He suffers from *xenophobia*.
4. He is a dangerous *pyromaniac*. What does ἡ μανία mean?
5. She is an *ophthalmic* surgeon.

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Verbs with Sigmatic Futures

Most verbs form the future tense by adding the suffix *-σ-* and adding the same endings as in the present tense, e.g.:

#### Future Active

##### Indicative

λύ-σ-ω, *I will loosen*  
 λύ-σ-εις, *you will loosen*  
 λύ-σ-ει, *he/she will loosen*  
 λύ-σ-ομεν, *we will loosen*  
 λύ-σ-ετε, *you will loosen*  
 λύ-σ-ουσι(ν), *they will loosen*

##### Infinitive

λύ-σ-ειν, *to be  
 about to loosen*

##### Participle

λύ-σ-ων,  
 λύ-σ-ουσα,  
 λύ-σ-ον,  
 gen., λύ-σ-οντ-ος, etc.,  
*being about to loosen*

#### Future Middle

λύ-σ-ο-μαι, *I will ransom*  
 λύ-σ-ει or λύ-σ-ῃ, *you will ransom*  
 λύ-σ-ε-ται, *he/she will ransom*  
 λύ-σ-ό-μεθα, *we will ransom*  
 λύ-σ-ε-σθε, *you will ransom*  
 λύ-σ-ο-νται, *they will ransom*

λύ-σ-ε-σθαι,    λύ-σ-ό-μεν-ος, -ῃ, -ον,  
*to be about to    being about to*  
*ransom                      ransom*

There is no future imperative.

The diphthong *αι* in the endings is counted as short for purposes of accentuation.

In the following, note what happens when the stem of the verb ends in a consonant instead of a vowel, as does λύ-ω above:

- a. If the stem ends in a *labial* (β, π, φ), the labial + the future suffix *-σ-* produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ψ, e.g.:

βλέπ-ω, *I look; I see*, βλέψομαι  
 πέμπ-ω, *I send*, πέμψω  
 γράφ-ω, *I write*, γράψω

- b. If the stem ends in a *velar* (γ, κ, χ), the velar + the future suffix *-σ-* produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ, e.g.:

λέγ-ω, *I say; I tell; I speak*, λέξω  
 διώκ-ω, *I pursue*, διώξω  
 φυλάττω, *I guard*, [φυλακ-] φυλάξω  
 δέχ-ομαι, *I receive*, δέξομαι

Note: ἔχ-ω, *I have; I hold*, has two future forms: ἔξω (irregular), *I will have*, and [σχε-] σχήσω, *I will get*.

- c. If the stem ends in a *dental* (δ, θ, τ) or ζ (= σ + δ), the dental or ζ is lost before the -σ- of the future, e.g.:

σπεύδ-ω, *I hurry*, σπεύσω  
 πείθ-ω, *I persuade*, πείσω  
 πάττω, *I sprinkle*, [πατ-] πάσω  
 παρασκευάζ-ω, *I prepare*, παρασκευάσω

## 2. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs in -ίζω

If the present tense form of a verb ends in -ίζω, its future stem ends in -ιε-, e.g., κομίζω, future stem, κομιε-. The future suffix -σ- is lost between the vowel at the end of the stem and the vowels of the personal endings. The vowels then contract as in the present tense of -ε- contract verbs such as φιλέω. We call futures formed this way *asigmatic contract futures*, e.g.:

κομίζ-ω, *I bring; I take*, κομιέ-(σ)-ω > κομιῶ, κομιεῖς, κομιεῖ, etc.  
 κομίζ-ο-μαι, *I get for myself, acquire*, κομιέ-(σ)-ο-μαι > κομιοῦμαι, κομιεῖ/κομιῇ, κομιέται, etc.

## 3. Verb Forms: The Sigmatic Future of Contract Verbs

Contract verbs lengthen the final stem vowel and then add -σ-, e.g.:

φιλέ-ω, *I love*, φιλήσω, φιλήσεις, φιλήσει, etc.

Exception: καλέ-ω, *I call*, καλῶ, καλεῖς, καλεῖ, etc. (an asigmatic contract future with no difference in spelling between the present and the future)

ἡγέ-ο-μαι, *I lead*, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγήσει/ἡγήσῃ, ἡγήσεται, etc.

τιμά-ω, *I honor*, τιμήσω, τιμήσεις, τιμήσει, etc.

Note: θεάομαι, *I see, watch, look at*, θεάσομαι (note that because of the ε the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η)

A few verbs lengthen the ε of one form of their stem and add -σ-, e.g.:

γίγνομαι, *I become*, [γενε-] γενήσομαι, γενήσει/η, γενήσεται, etc.

ἐθέλω, *I am willing; I wish*, [ἐθελε-] ἐθελήσω, ἐθελήσεις, ἐθελήσει, etc.

## 4. Verb Forms: Verbs with Deponent Futures

Some verbs, active in the present tense, have futures that are middle in form but active in meaning (i.e., deponent), often with a different stem, e.g.:

ἀκούω, *I hear*, ἀκούσομαι

βαδίζω, *I walk; I go*, [βαδιε-] βαδιοῦμαι

βαίνω, *I step; I walk; I go*, [βη-] βήσομαι

βλέπω, *I look; I see*, βλέψομαι

βοάω, *I shout*, βοήσομαι

γιννώσκω, *I come to know; I perceive; I learn*, [γνω-] γνώσομαι

διώκω, *I pursue, chase*, διώξομαι

θαυμάζω, *intransitive, I am amazed; transitive, I wonder at, admire*,  
θαυμάσομαι

δράω, *I see*, [ὁπ-] ὄψομαι

πάσχω, *I suffer; I experience*, [πενθ-] πείσομαι

Note: πενθ-σ- > πενσ- > πεισ-

πίνω, *I drink*, [πι-] πίομαι (note absence of -σ-)

πίπτω, *I fall*, πεσοῦμαι (irregular)

πλέω, *I sail*, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι

τρέχω, *I run*, [δραμε-] δραμοῦμαι

φεύγω, *I flee; I escape*, φεύξομαι

The future of εἰμί, *I am*, is deponent:

**Stem:** ἔσ-

#### Indicative

ἔσομαι

ἔσει or ἔσῃ

ἔσται (no thematic vowel)

ἐσόμεθα

ἔσεσθε

ἔσονται

#### Infinitive

ἔσεσθαι

#### Participle

ἐσόμενος, -η, -ον

Remember these compounds of εἰμί:

ἄπειμι, *I am away*, ἀπέσομαι

πάρειμι, *I am present; I am here; I am there*, παρέσομαι

### Exercise 10α

1. Make four photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the forms of βλέπω, φυλάττω, σπεύδω, and κομίζω that you have learned to date.
2. Make seven copies of the Verb Chart on page 283 and fill in the future indicatives, infinitives, and participles of the verbs for which you entered forms for Exercises 4α, 5α, and 6β. Keep all charts for reference.

**Exercise 10β**

*Give the 1st person singular of the future of the following verbs:*

- |                |            |            |
|----------------|------------|------------|
| 1. νικάω       | 5. πέμπω   | 9. δέχομαι |
| 2. τέρπομαι    | 6. ἡγέομαι | 10. πάσχω  |
| 3. παύω        | 7. βοάω    |            |
| 4. παρασκευάζω | 8. πείθω   |            |

**Exercise 10γ**

*Give the corresponding future form of the following:*

- |                 |               |
|-----------------|---------------|
| 1. πέμπει       | 6. ζητεῖν     |
| 2. λύομενοι     | 7. βλέπουσα   |
| 3. τιμῶμεν      | 8. φυλάττομεν |
| 4. φιλεῖτε      | 9. βαδίζει    |
| 5. σπεύδουσι(ν) | 10. ἐσμέν     |

**Exercise 10δ**

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. ἡγήσομαί σοι πρὸς τὸ θεᾶτρον.
2. τὸν πάππον πείσομεν οἴκαδε σπεύδειν.
3. ὁ βασιλεὺς ἄγγελον πέμψει πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ.
4. τοὺς νεανίᾳς φυλάξομεν ἐν τῷ δεσμοτηρίῳ (*prison*).
5. ἡ Ἀριάδνη τῷ Θησεῖ βοηθήσει.
6. δι' ὀλίγου ἐσπέρᾳ γενήσεται, ἀλλ' οὐ παυσόμεθα ἐργαζόμενοι.
7. πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ σπεύσομεν καὶ τοὺς χοροὺς θεᾶσόμεθα.
8. τίς ἡμῖν βοηθήσει; δι' ὀλίγου γὰρ ἐν κινδύνῳ ἐσόμεθα.
9. τὸν πατέρα οὐ πείσεις ἡμῖν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἡγεῖσθαι.
10. αἱ παρθένοι τέρψονται τοὺς χοροὺς θεώμεναι.

**Exercise 10ε**

*Translate into Greek:*

1. We will send a messenger to the king.
2. The king will hear the messenger and will come to our aid.
3. What will you do, boys? You will soon be in danger.
4. We will obey father and hurry home.
5. The young men will lead us, and we will follow them.

## Festivals

In the course of his praise of the democracy, Pericles says in his funeral oration: "We provide more recreations for the mind from toil than any other state, with competitions and sacrifices throughout the year." There were in fact over sixty days in the year that were holidays in Athens, when festivals were held in honor of the gods. These involved all members of the population, citizens and metics, men and women, children and slaves. Many festivals entailed processions, and most culminated in public sacrifice, followed by a feast in which all present joined.

The greatest of all the processions is represented on the Parthenon frieze. Here we see all classes of Athenians playing a part. The knights are shown, at first preparing for parade, then moving off, and later entering the procession at a canter. Stewards are portrayed, marshaling the procession. Next comes a group of elders, led by lyre players and flutists. Ahead of them are young men bearing jugs of holy water and others with trays of offerings. Girls carry wine jars, bowls for pouring libations, and incense burners. The victims are led toward the central scene on the east side, where in the middle stand the priestess and a magistrate with the robe that has been offered to Athena. On either side of them are seated larger figures, looking outward toward the procession; these are the twelve Olympian gods, watching and enjoying the procession.

Sacrifice was performed at the altar, which stood outside every shrine, in accordance with a set ritual. Priest and victims wore garlands. There was a call for holy silence. The altar and participants were sprinkled with water. Then the priest scattered sacred grain over the victim's head and cut a lock of hair from it, which he burnt in the altar fire. The victim was lifted up by attendants and stunned with a blow from a club. Then, while music played, the priest cut the victim's throat and caught the blood in a dish; this was poured as an offering over the altar. Next the victim was skinned and cut up. The inedible parts (the thigh bones wrapped in fat) were burned on the altar for the gods, and the rest was cooked and divided among the people to eat. Thus, gods and men shared the sacrificial banquet.



Knights in the Panathenaic procession on the Parthenon frieze



Every festival had its own ritual. Many, perhaps all, were celebrated with music and dancing. At some there were athletic competitions, notably at the Panathenaea. At the most important festival of Dionysus, the Greater Dionysia, the ten tribes into which the Athenian people were divided each put on a chorus, five of men and five of boys, which sang and danced in competition. Later in the festival, which lasted six days in all, there were three days of drama. On each of these days, three tragedies were performed in the morning, followed in the afternoon by a satyr play (an old form of drama in which the chorus consisted of satyrs, half-man, half-goat) and a comedy. The theater held between 17,000 and 20,000 people, so that a large proportion of the citizens could be present.

## Classical Greek

### Theognis

Theognis (fl., 550 B.C.) was a noble of Megara; he was exiled when there was a democratic revolution. Several of Theognis's poems, such as the following (lines 567–570) lament the transience of youth and the imminence of death. Indeed, such thoughts are characteristic of much Greek literature.

ἤβῃ τερόμενος παίζω· δηρὸν γὰρ ἔνερθεν  
γῆς ὀλέσας ψυχὴν κείσομαι ὥστε λίθος  
ἄφθογος, λείψω δ' ἐρατὸν φάος ἡελίοιο·  
ἔμπης δ' ἐσθλὸς ἐὼν ὄψομαι οὐδὲν ἔτι.

[ἤβῃ, in youth παίζω, I play δηρὸν, for long ἔνερθεν γῆς, beneath the earth  
ὀλέσας ψυχὴν, after losing my life κείσομαι, I will lie ὥστε, as ἄφθογος,  
mute, dumb ἐρατὸν φάος ἡελίοιο (= ἡλίου), the lovely light of the sun ἔμπης .  
.. ἐσθλὸς ἐὼν (= ὦν), although being noble ὄψομαι, I will see ἔτι, any more]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 6.35–36

#### The Sermon on the Mount

“πλὴν ἀγαπᾶτε τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ὑμῶν καὶ ἀγαθοποιεῖτε καὶ δανίζετε μηδὲν ἀπελπίζοντες· καὶ ἔσται ὁ μισθὸς ὑμῶν πολὺς, καὶ ἔσεσθε υἱοὶ ὑψίστου, ὅτι αὐτὸς χρηστός ἐστιν ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀχαρίστους καὶ πονηροὺς. γίνεσθε οἰκτίρμονες καθὼς ὁ πατὴρ ὑμῶν οἰκτίρμων ἐστίν.”

[πλὴν, but ἀγαπᾶτε, love τοὺς ἐχθροὺς, the enemies δανίζετε, lend μηδὲν  
ἀπελπίζοντες, expecting nothing in return μισθός, reward υἱοὶ, sons ὑψίστου,  
(the) Highest (i.e., God) ὅτι, because χρηστός, good, kind ἐπὶ, toward  
ἀχαρίστους, unthankful πονηροὺς, evil γίνεσθε = γίγνεσθε οἰκτίρμονες,  
merciful καθὼς, just as]

# Η ΣΥΜΦΟΡΑ (β)



ὁ Φίλιππος νεανίας τινὰς ὄρᾳ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μαχομένους.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

αἴρω, [ἀρε-] ἄρῶ, [ἀρ-] ἦρα,  
I lift; with reflexive pronoun,  
I get up

ἀποκτείνω, [κτενε-] ἀποκ-  
τενῶ, [κτειν-] ἀπέκτεινα,  
I kill

ἀποφεύγω, ἀποφεύξομαι,  
[φυγ-] ἀπέφυγον, I flee away,  
escape

δεῖ, impersonal + acc. and in-  
fin., it is necessary

δεῖ ἡμᾶς παρεῖναι, we  
must be there

ἔξεστι(ν), impersonal + dat.  
and infin., it is allowed/  
possible

ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν μένειν, we  
are allowed to stay, we  
may stay; we can stay

καταλείπω, καταλείψω,  
[λιπ-] κατέλιπον, I leave be-  
hind, desert

μένω, [μενε-] μενῶ, [μειν-]  
ἔμεινα, intransitive, I stay

(in one place); wait; transi-  
tive, I wait for

τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, active,  
transitive, I turn X; middle,  
intransitive, I turn myself,  
turn

τύπτω, [τυπτε-] τυπτήσω, no  
other principal parts of this  
verb in Attic, I strike, hit

### Nouns

ἡ βοή, τῆς βοῆς, shout

Cf. βοάω, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα,  
I shout

ἡ κεφαλή, τῆς κεφαλῆς, head  
οἱ τεκόντες, τῶν τεκόντων,  
pl., parents

τὸ ὕδωρ, τοῦ ὕδατος, water

### Preposition

πρό + gen., of time or place, be-  
fore

### Adverbs

εὐθύς, straightway, immedi-  
ately, at once

ποτέ, enclitic, at some time, at  
one time, once, ever

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη τοῖς παισὶν ἐκ τοῦ θεάτρου ἡγουμένη τῷ ἀνδρί, “τί νῦν ποιήσομεν;” φησὶν. “ἄρ’ ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν; αὐριον γὰρ γενήσονται αἱ τραγωδίαί. τὴν οὖν νύκτα ἐν τῷ ἄστει μενοῦμεν. ἀλλὰ ποῦ καθευδήσομεν; ἄρα δέξεται ἡμᾶς ὁ σὸς ἀδελφός;” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἀλλ’ οὐ μενοῦμεν ἐν τῷ ἄστει ἀλλ’ εὐθὺς οἴκαδε 5 πορευσόμεθα. πολὺν γὰρ χρόνον ἀπὸ τοῦ κλήρου ἄπεσμεν. ὁ δὲ Ξανθιάς, ἄργος ὢν, οὐδὲν ποιήσει. οἱ οὖν βόες πεινήσουσιν, τὰ δὲ πρόβατα ἀποφεύξεται, ὁ δὲ οἶκος κατ’ εἰκὸς ἤδη κᾶεται. σπεύσομεν οὖν πρὸς τὰς πύλας καὶ οἴκαδε πορευσόμεθα. δεῖ γὰρ ἡμᾶς πρὸ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκεῖσε παρεῖναι.” 10

[αὐριον, *tomorrow* αἱ τραγωδίαί, *the tragedies* ἀδελφός, *brother* τοῦ κλήρου, *the farm* πεινήσουσιν (from *πεινάω*), *will be hungry* κατ(ὰ) εἰκός, *probably*]

οἱ μὲν οὖν παῖδες τῷ πατρὶ πειθόμενοι πρὸς τὰς πύλας σπεύδουσιν. ὁ δὲ πάππος, “φεῦ, φεῦ,” φησὶν, “βούλομαι τὰς τραγωδίᾱς θεᾶσθαι. ὑμεῖς μὲν οὖν οἴκαδε σπεύδετε, ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν τῷ ἄστει μενῶ ὡς τὰς τραγωδίᾱς θεᾶσόμενος.” ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, “μὴ φλυ- 15 ἄρει,” φησὶν. “οὐ γὰρ καταλείβομέν σε ἐν τῷ ἄστει. ἐλθέ μεθ’ ἡμῶν.” καὶ ἡγεῖται αὐτῷ δεινολογουμένῳ πρὸς τὰς πύλας.

[ὡς... θεᾶσόμενος, *to see* φλυᾶρει, *talk nonsense* δεινολογουμένῳ, *complaining loudly*]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ σπεύδουσι διὰ τῶν ὁδῶν, ὁ Φίλιππος νεᾷνιάς τινὰς ὁρᾷ ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ μαχομένους· πολὺν γὰρ οἶνον πεπώκᾱσι καὶ μεθύουσιν. μένει οὖν ὁ Φίλιππος τὴν μάχην θεώμενος· τέλος δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι νεᾷνῖαι ἓνα τινὰ καταβάλλουσι καὶ οὐ παύονται τύπτοντες αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ 20 Φίλιππος φοβούμενος ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ προστρέχει καί, “τί ποιήσετε, ὦ ἄνθρωποι;” φησὶν. “παύετε τύπτοντες αὐτόν. ἀποκτενεῖτε γὰρ τὸν τλήμονα.” τῶν δὲ νεᾷνιῶν τις ἀγρίως βοῶν πρὸς τὸν Φίλιππον τρέπεται καί, “τίς ὦν σύ,” φησὶν, “οὕτω πολυπρᾶγμονεῖς;” καὶ τύπτει αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ πρὸς τὴν γῆν καταπίπτει καὶ ἀκίνητος μένει. 25

[πεπώκᾱσι (from *πίνω*), *they have drunk* μεθύουσιν, *they are drunk* τὴν μάχην, *the fight* τὸν τλήμονα, *the poor man* πολυπρᾶγμονεῖς, *do you interfere?* ἀκίνητος, *motionless*]

οἱ δὲ τεκόντες τὰς βοᾶς ἀκούοντες τρέχουσι πρὸς τὸν παῖδα καὶ ὀρῶσιν αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενον. αἴρουσιν οὖν αὐτόν, ὁ δὲ ἔτι ἀκίνητος μένει. ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” φησὶν, “τί ποτε πάσχει ὁ τλήμων;” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “φέρετε αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν κρήνην.” φέρουσιν οὖν αὐτὸν πρὸς τὴν κρήνην καὶ ὕδωρ καταχέουσι τῆς κεφαλῆς. δι’ ὀλίγου οὖν κινεῖται καὶ ἀναπνεῖ. ἐπαίρει οὖν ἑαυτὸν καὶ τῆς μητρὸς ἀκούει λεγούσης. βλέπων δὲ πρὸς αὐτήν, “ποῦ εἶ σύ, ὦ μήτηρ;” φησὶν. “τί σκότος ἐστίν;” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ, “ἄλλ’ οὐ σκότος ἐστίν, ὦ παῖ· βλέπε δεῦρο.” ἄλλ’ οὐδὲν ὀρᾷ ὁ παῖς· τυφλὸς γὰρ γέγονεν.

[κείμενον, *lying* καταχέουσι, *they pour* X (acc.) *over* Y (gen.) κινεῖται, *he moves* ἀναπνεῖ, *he breathes again, recovers* σκότος, *darkness* τυφλός, *blind* γέγονεν, *he has become, he is*]

## WORD BUILDING

*Study the relationships between the words in the following sets, and give definitions of each word:*

- |                    |          |                        |           |
|--------------------|----------|------------------------|-----------|
| 1. μάχομαι         | ἡ μάχη   | ἡ νόσος                | νοσέω     |
| εὐχομαι            | ἡ εὐχή   | ( <i>sickness</i> )    |           |
| βούλομαι           | ἡ βουλή  | ὁ φόβος                | φοβέομαι  |
| λέγω               | ὁ λόγος  | 4. ὁ βασιλεύς          | βασιλεύω  |
| πέμπω              | ἡ πομπή  | ὁ πολίτης              | πολιτεύω  |
| σπεύδω             | ἡ σπουδή | ὁ κίνδυνος             | κινδυνεύω |
| 2. ἡ θεᾶ           | θεάομαι  | ὁ παῖς                 | παιδεύω   |
| ἡ βοή              | βοάω     | ( <i>παιδ-</i> )       |           |
| ἡ νίκη             | νικάω    | 5. ὁ χρόνος            | χρονίζω   |
| ἡ σιγή             | σιγάω    | ὁ λόγος                | λογίζομαι |
| 3. σώφρων          | σωφρονέω | ( <i>calculation</i> ) |           |
| ( <i>σωφρον-</i> ) |          | ἡ ὀργή                 | ὀργίζομαι |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic Contract Future of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems

If the stem ends in a *liquid* (λ, ρ) or a *nasal* (μ, ν), an ε is added to the stem, the future suffix -σ- is lost between this vowel and the vowel of the endings, and contraction takes place, e.g., μὲν-έ-(σ)-ω > μὲνῶ. This is an asigmatic contract future like the future of verbs in -ίζω (page 159).

Here are the present and the future active forms of μένω.

### Present Active

**Stem:** μεν-, *stay; wait; wait for*

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
μένω μένεις μένει μένομεν μένετε μένουσι(ν)	μένε    μένετε	μένειν	μένων, μένουσα, μένον, gen., μένοντος, etc.

### Future Active

**Stem:** μενε-

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
μενέ-(σ)-ω > μενῶ μενέ-(σ)-εις > μενεῖς μενέ-(σ)-ει > μενεῖ μενέ-(σ)-ομεν > μενοῦμεν μενέ-(σ)-ετε > μενεῖτε μενέ-(σ)-ουσι(ν) > μενοῦσι(ν)	μενέ-(σ)-ειν > μενεῖν	μενῶν, μενοῦσα, μενοῦν, gen., μενοῦντος, etc.

The present and future of liquid and nasal verbs are thus distinguished only by the circumflex accent in the future, except in the 1st and 2nd persons plural and most forms of the participle, where contraction produces a different spelling as well. The future middle forms of liquid and nasal verbs are also contract forms; see κάμνω below.

In most liquid and nasal verbs, however, the stem not only has an ε but is spelled differently in the future, e.g.:

αἵρω, *I lift*, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ

ἀποκρίνομαι, *I answer*, [κρινε-] ἀποκρινοῦμαι

ἀποκτείνω, *I kill*, [κτενε-] ἀποκτενῶ

βάλλω, *I throw*, [βαλε-] βαλῶ

ἐγείρω, *I wake X up; middle, I wake up*, [έγερε-] ἐγερῶ

κάμνω, *I am sick; I am tired*, [καμε-] καμοῦμαι

The verb μάχομαι, although not a liquid or nasal stem verb, also has an asigmatic contract future: μάχομαι, *I fight*, [μαχε-] μαχοῦμαι, μαχεῖ/ῃ, μαχεῖται, etc.

The verb ἐλαύνω, *I drive*, is a nasal stem verb but is irregular in the future: ἐλῶ, ἐλῶς, ἐλᾶ, etc. Compare the present of -α- contract verbs.

**Exercise 10ζ**

Make two photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the forms of ἀποκτείνω and of ἀποκρίνομαι that you have learned to date.

**Exercise 10η**

Read aloud and translate:

1. ἄρα μενοῦμεν ἐν τῷ ἅστει ἢ (or) οἴκαδε πορευσόμεθα;
2. οἱ παῖδες τὸν πάππον ἐγεροῦσιν· δι' ὀλίγου γὰρ ὀρμησόμεθα.
3. ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὸν λύκον λίθοις βαλεῖ.
4. ἐσπερᾶ δι' ὀλίγου γενήσεται· ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὸ ἄροτρον ἄρει καὶ οἴκαδε οἴσει (future of φέρω).
5. οἱ δοῦλοι τοὺς βοῦς λύσουσι καὶ οἴκαδε ἄξουσιν.
6. ὁ Θησεύς, ἀνδρείος ὢν, τὸν Μίνώταυρον ἀποκτενεῖ.
7. οἱ μὲν παῖδες οἴκοι μενοῦσιν, ἐγὼ δὲ πρὸς τὸ ἅστει σπεύσω.
8. ἄρ' οὐκ ἐγερεῖς τὸν πάππον; ὥπὲρ γὰρ εἰς τὸ θέατρον ἀφιξόμεθα.

**6. The Irregular Verb εἶμι**

The verb εἶμι in the *indicative* refers to future time and means *I will go*. In Attic Greek it is used as the future of ἔρχομαι. Thus: ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*; future, εἶμι, *I will come; I will go*

Here are the forms of εἶμι. Note that the verb has a long-vowel stem εἶ- (compare Latin *īre*) and a short-vowel stem *i*-:

**Stems:** εἶ-/ῑ-, *come; go*

Compare the verb *to be*:

εἶμι, *I will come; I will go*

εἰμί, *I am*

εἶ

εἶ

εἶσι(v)

ἐστί(v)

ἕμεν

ἐσμέν

ἵτε

ἐστέ

ἵασι(v)

εἰσί(v)



Sacrifice to Apollo

Here is the verb εἶμι in the indicative, imperative, infinitive, and participle:

**Stems:** εἰ-/ι-, *come; go*

Future	Present	Usually Present	Usually Present
Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
εἶμι		ιέναι	ιών,
εἶ	ἴθι		ιοῦσα,
εἶσι(ν)			ιόν,
ἵμεν			gen., ιόντος, etc.
ἴτε	ἴτε		
ἰᾶσι(ν)			

As noted above, the indicative forms of εἶμι refer to future time. The imperative, infinitive, and participle, however, are used in Attic Greek in place of the corresponding present forms of ἔρχομαι; the infinitive and participle usually refer to present time, the imperative always. The imperative, infinitive, and participle of ἔρχομαι are not used in Attic Greek.

Here are six common compounds of the verb ἔρχομαι:

ἀπέρχομαι, *I go away*, ἀπείμι

εἰσέρχομαι + εἰς + acc., *I come in(to); I go in(to)*, εἴσειμι

ἐξέρχομαι + ἐκ + gen., *I come out of; I go out of*, ἐξείμι

ἐπανέρχομαι, *I come back, return*; + εἰς or πρὸς + acc., *I return to*,

ἐπάνειμι

προσέρχομαι + dat. or πρὸς + acc., *I approach*, πρόσσειμι

### Exercise 100

- ἴθι δὴ, ὦ παῖ, καὶ τῇ μητρὶ εἶπε ὅτι πρὸς τῇ θύρᾳ μενῶ.
- πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἵμεν καὶ τὸν κύνα ζητήσομεν.
- τὸν κύνα ὀρώμεν πρὸς τὰ πρόβατα προσιόντα.
- ὁ πατήρ ἡμᾶς κελεύει οἴκαδε ἐπανιέναι.
- αἱ παρθένοι εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἴασιν.
- ἴτε, ὦ παρθένοι· ὁ πατήρ ὑμῖν εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἡγήσεται.
- ἡ μήτηρ πρὸς τὴν κρήνην εἰσιν· τὰς δὲ παρθένους κελεύει ἐαυτῇ συλλαμβάνειν.
- αἱ παρθένοι πρὸς τὴν κρήνην ἰοῦσαι μεγάλᾳς ὑδρίδας φέρουσιν.
- αἱ γυναῖκες αἱ πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ ὀρώσιν αὐτὰς προσιούσας.
- “χαίρετε, ὦ παρθένοι,” φασίν. “πότε (*when*) πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἴτε;”

## 7. Future Participle to Express Purpose

The future participle may be used to express purpose, often preceded by *ὥς*. In English we use a simple infinitive, e.g.:

ἐν τῷ ἄστει μὲν ὥς τὰς τραγωδίας θεᾷσόμενος.

lit., *I will remain in the city as being about to watch the tragedies.*

*I will remain in the city to watch the tragedies.*

### Exercise 10ι

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. ἄγγελον πέμψομεν ὥς τοῖς πολίταις πάντα λέξοντα.
2. οἱ πολῖται πρὸς τὴν ἀγορὰν σπεύδουσιν ὥς τοῦ ἀγγέλου ἀκουσόμενοι.
3. εἰς τὸ ἄστυ πορεύονται ὥς τῇ ἑορτῇ παρεσόμενοι.
4. παρασκευάζονται ὥς μαχούμενοι.
5. ὁ Θησεὺς πρὸς τὴν Κρήτην πλεῖ ὥς σώσων τοὺς ἐταίρους.

## 8. Impersonal Verbs

Greek has a number of verbs that are used in the 3rd person singular with an impersonal subject, often an infinitive or infinitive phrase. They are often translated into English with *it* as subject. You have met the following in the reading passage above:

Impersonal verb with infinitive phrase as subject:

ἄρ' ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν;

*Is to stay in the city allowed/possible for us?*

*Is it allowed/possible for us to stay in the city?*

*May/Can we stay in the city?*

Impersonal verb with accusative and infinitive phrase as subject:

δεῖ ἡμᾶς πρὸ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐκεῖσε παρῆναι.

*Us to be there before night is necessary.*

*It is necessary for us to be there before night.*

*We must be there before night.*

### Exercise 10κ

*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

1. καιρὸς ἐστὶν ἐπανιέναι· δεῖ ἡμᾶς εὐθὺς ὀρμᾶσθαι.  
Don't wait; we must hurry.
2. ἄρ' οὐκ ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν τὰς τραγωδίας θεᾶσθαι;  
Can't I stay in the city?
3. οὐ δεῖ σε τύπειν τὸν νεανίαν.  
We must carry the boy to the spring.



4. δεῖ τὸν Φίλιππον τῷ πατρὶ πείθεσθαι.  
Melissa must stay at home.
5. ἄρ' ἔξεστί μοι γινώσκειν τί πάσχει ὁ παῖς;  
We are allowed to/We may go to the city; we must start immediately.

## 9. Review of Questions

ἄρα; introduces a question	πῶς; how?
ποῖ; where to? whither?	τί; why?
πόθεν; where from? whence?	τί; what?
πότε; when?	τίς; who?
ποῦ; where?	

## Exercise 10λ

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. τί βούλεται ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς εἰς τὴν νῆσον πλεῖν;
2. βούλεται γινώσκειν τίνες ἐν τῇ νήσῳ οἰκοῦσιν.
3. ὁ Κύκλωψ τὸν Ὀδυσσέα ἔρωτᾷ (*asks*) πόθεν ἦκει.
4. πῶς ἐκφεύγουσιν ὃ τε Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι;
5. ἄρα πάντας τοὺς ἐταίρους σφάζει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς;
6. ἐπεὶ ἐκφεύγει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς, ποῖ πλεῖ;
7. ὁ Αἴολος τὸν Ὀδυσσέα ἔρωτᾷ τίς ἐστι καὶ πόθεν ἦκει.
8. ὁ Αἴολος τὸν Ὀδυσσέα ἔρωτᾷ πότε ἐν νῷ ἔχει ἀποπλεῖν.

# Ο ΟΔΥΣΣΕΥΣ ΤΟΥΣ ΕΤΑΙΡΟΥΣ ΑΠΟΛΛΥΣΙΝ

*Read the following passages and answer the comprehension questions:*

ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεὺς πολλὰ ἔτι καὶ δεινὰ πάσχει σπεύδων εἰς τὴν πατρίδα γῆν νοστεῖν. τὰς γὰρ Σειρήνας μόλις φεύγει, καὶ παρὰ τὴν Σικελίαν πλέων εἰς τὸν μέγιστον κίνδυνον ἐμπίπτει. ἔνθεν μὲν γάρ ἐστιν ἡ Σκύλλη, τέρας δεινόν, ἕξ κεφαλᾶς ἔχουσα, ἥ ἐξ ἄντρου τινὸς ὁρμωμένη τοὺς παραπλέοντας ἀρπάζει καὶ ἐσθίει· ἔνθεν δ' ἐστὶν ἡ Χάρυβδις, δίνη μάλα φοβερά, ἥ πάντα καταπίνει. ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεὺς τὴν Χάρυβδιν φεύγων παρὰ τὴν Σκύλλην παραπλεῖ· ἥ δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ἄντρου ὁρμωμένη ἕξ τῶν ἐταίρων ἀρπάζει· τοὺς δ' ἄλλους σφάζει ὁ Ὀδυσσεύς.

[τὴν πατρίδα γῆν, *his fatherland* νοστεῖν, *to return home* τὰς . . . Σειρήνας, *the Sirens* παρὰ τὴν Σικελίαν, *along/past Sicily* ἐμπίπτει = ἐν + πίπτει ἔνθεν . . . ἔνθεν, *on one side . . . on the other side* ἡ Σκύλλη, *Scylla* (a monster formed of a woman and six dogs) τέρας, *a monster* ἥ, *which* ἄντρου, *cave* ἀρπάζει, *snatches* ἡ Χάρυβδις, *Charybdis* δίνη, *a whirlpool* φοβερά, *frightening* ἥ, *which* καταπίνει, *drinks/gulps down*]

1. What does Odysseus continue to experience as he hastens to return home?
2. Where does he fall into the greatest danger?
3. How is Scylla described?
4. How is Charybdis described?
5. What does Scylla do as Odysseus sails by?
6. Why did Odysseus have to sail so close to Scylla?

δι' ὀλίγου εἰς ἄλλην τινὰ νῆσον ἀφικνοῦνται· ἐκεῖ δὲ πολλοὺς βοῦς εὐρίσκουσιν. οἱ οὖν ἑταῖροι, “τί,” φασίν, “οὐκ ἀποκτενοῦμεν τοὺς βοῦς; πεινώμεν γάρ.” ὁ δὲ Ὀδυσσεύς, “μὴ βλάπτετε τοὺς βοῦς· τῷ γὰρ Ἥλιφ εἰσὶν. εἰ δὲ βλάψετε αὐτούς, ὁ Ἥλιος ὑμᾶς τιμωρήσει.” οἱ δὲ οὐ πείθονται αὐτῷ ἀλλ' ἀποκτείνουσι τοὺς βοῦς. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἥλιος τῷ πατρὶ Διὶ εὐχόμενος, “ὦ Ζεῦ πάτερ,” φησίν, “οἱ τοῦ Ὀδυσσέως ἑταῖροι τοὺς ἐμοὺς βοῦς ἀποκτείνουσιν. τιμῶρει οὖν αὐτούς. εἰ δὲ μὴ τιμωρήσεις αὐτούς, οὐδέποτε αὖθις ἐν τοῖς ἀνθρώποις λάμψω.”

[πεινώμεν, *we are hungry* βλάπτετε, *harm* τῷ . . . Ἥλιφ, *Helios* (the god of the sun) τιμωρήσει, *will punish* εἰ . . . μὴ, *if . . . not* οὐδέποτε, *never* λάμψω, *I will shine*]

7. What do Odysseus' comrades find on the island, and what do they want to do?
8. Why does Odysseus tell them not to do this?
9. Do they obey?
10. What does the Sun God ask Zeus to do?
11. What threat does the Sun God make?

ὁ δὲ Ζεὺς ἀκούει αὐτοῦ εὐχομένου· ἐπεὶ γὰρ ὁ τε Ὀδυσσεὺς καὶ οἱ ἑταῖροι ἀποπλέοντες τὴν νῆσον λείκουσιν, χειμῶνα δεινὸν πέμπει καὶ τὴν ναῦν κεραυνῷ βάλλει. πάντες οὖν οἱ ἑταῖροι ἐκ τῆς νεῶς ἐκπίπτουσι καὶ ἀποθνήσκουσιν· μόνος δὲ ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς ἐκφεύγει, τοῦ ἱστοῦ λαμβανόμενος.

[κεραυνῷ, *with a thunderbolt* ἀποθνήσκουσιν, *die* μόνος, *only* τοῦ ἱστοῦ, *the mast*]

12. What three things does Zeus do?
13. What happens to Odysseus' comrades? How does Odysseus escape?

### Exercise 10μ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. For nine days the wind (ὁ ἄνεμος) carries Odysseus (τὸν Ὀδυσσεά) through the sea, but on the tenth he arrives at another island.
2. The nymph (ἡ νύμφη) Calypso (ἡ Καλυψώ) lives there; she receives him kindly (εὖμενῶς).
3. Loving him, she says: “Stay with me always on the island.” But

- Odysseus wants to return home and to see his wife and child.
4. Finally Zeus sends a messenger and orders the nymph to release (*use* *λύω*) Odysseus.
  5. Calypso tells him to make a raft (*use* *σχεδιά*) and helps him.
  6. When the raft is ready, Odysseus sails away rejoicing.

## Classical Greek

Menander

From *The Shield* (417–418)

ἐν μιᾷ γὰρ ἡμέρᾳ  
τὸν εὐτυχῇ τίθησι δυστυχῇ θεός.  
[τὸν εὐτυχῇ, *the fortunate man*    τίθησι, *makes*    δυστυχῇ, *unfortunate*]

Archilochus

For Archilochus, see page 121. In the following poem he says that his whole life depends on his spear (poem no. 2):

ἐν δορὶ μὲν μοι μᾶζα μεμαγμένη, ἐν δορὶ δ' οἶνος  
Ἰσμαρικός, πίνω δ' ἐν δορὶ κεκλιμένος.

[ἐν δορὶ: supply *ἐστί, is*, and translate it, *depends*    μοι: take as possessive with *δορὶ*  
*μᾶζα μεμαγμένη, my kneaded bread*    Ἰσμαρικός, *Ismaric* (from Ismarus, in Thrace)    *κεκλιμένος, leaning*]

## New Testament Greek

Luke 5.30–32

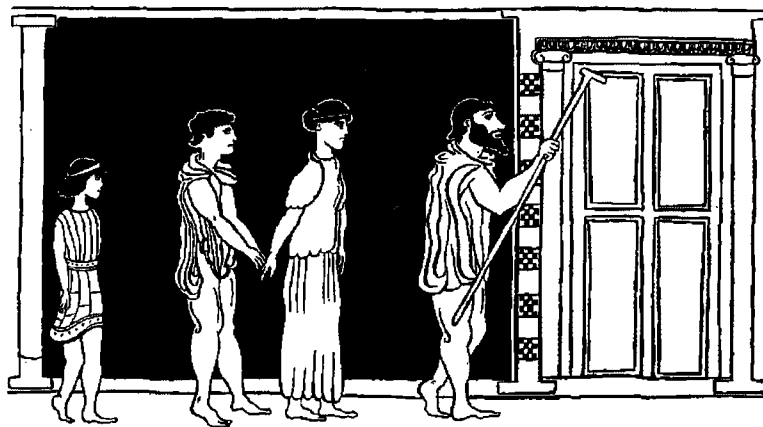
Jesus had called Levi, a tax collector (*τελώνης*), to follow him, and Levi had entertained Jesus, his disciples, many tax collectors, and others in his house. The scribes and Pharisees then murmured against Jesus' disciples.

καὶ ἐγόγγυζον οἱ Φαρισαῖοι καὶ οἱ γραμματεῖς αὐτῶν πρὸς τοὺς μαθητὰς αὐτοῦ λέγοντες, “διὰ τί μετὰ τῶν τελωνῶν καὶ ἁμαρτωλῶν ἐσθίετε καὶ πίνετε;” καὶ ἀποκριθεὶς ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτούς, “οὐ χρειᾶν ἔχουσιν οἱ ὑγιαίνοντες ἰατροῦ ἀλλὰ οἱ κακῶς ἔχοντες· οὐκ ἐλήλυθα καλέσαι δικαίους ἀλλὰ ἁμαρτωλοὺς εἰς μετάνοιαν.”

[ἐγόγγυζον, *were murmuring*    οἱ γραμματεῖς, *the scribes*    τοὺς μαθητὰς, *the disciples*    διὰ τί, *why*    ἁμαρτωλῶν, *sinners*    ἀποκριθεὶς, *answering*    εἶπεν, *he said*    χρειᾶν, *need*    οἱ ὑγιαίνοντες, *the healthy*    ἰατροῦ, *of/for a doctor*    οἱ κακῶς ἔχοντες, *those who are sick*    ἐλήλυθα, *I have come*    καλέσαι, *to call*    δικαίους, *righteous (people)*    ἁμαρτωλοὺς, *sinners*    μετάνοιαν, *repentance*]

# 11

## Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (α)



ἐπεὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἔκοψε τὴν θύραν.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

αἰτέω, αἰτήσω, ἤτησα, *I ask;*

*I ask for*

ἀποθνήσκω, [θανε-] ἀποθ-  
ανοῦμαι, [θαν-] ἀπέθανον,

*I die*

δακρύνω, δακρύνω, ἐδάκρυνσα,

*I cry, weep*

δοκεῖ, impersonal, [δοκ-] δόξει,

ἔδοξε(ν), impersonal, *it*

*seems (good); + dat., e.g.,*

δοκεῖ μοι, *it seems good to me;*

*I think it best*

εἰσάγω, εἰσάξω, [ἀγαγ-] εἰσ-

ήγαγον, *I lead in; I take in*

ἔφη, *he/she said*

κομίζω, [κομιε-] κομιῶ, [κομι-]

ἐκόμισα, *I bring; I take*

κόπτω, [κοπ-] κόψω, ἔκοψα,

*I strike; I knock on (a door)*

λαμβάνω, [ληβ-] λήψομαι,

[λαβ-] ἔλαβον, *I take; middle*

+ gen., *I seize, take hold of*

λείπω, λείψω, [λιπ-] ἔλιπον,

*I leave*

μανθάνω, [μαθε-] μαθήσομαι,

[μαθ-] ἔμαθον, *I learn; I un-  
derstand*

πάσχω, [πενθ-] πείσομαι,

[παθ-] ἔπαθον, *I suffer; I ex-  
perience*

σκοπέω, [σκεπ-] σκέψομαι,

ἐσκεψάμην, *I look at, exam-  
ine; I consider*

#### Nouns

ὁ ἀδελφός, τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ,

ὁ ἄδελφε, *brother*

ὁ ἰατρός, τοῦ ἰατροῦ, *doctor*

ὁ λόγος, τοῦ λόγου, *word; story*

#### Adjective

σοφός, -ή, -όν, *skilled; wise;*

*clever*

τυφλός, -ή, -όν, *blind*

#### Preposition

παρά + acc., of persons only, *to*

#### Adverb

αὔριον, *tomorrow*

*Conjunction*

εἰ, if; in indirect questions,  
whether

*Expressions*

καλῶς ἔχω, I am well  
πῶς ἔχεις; How are you?

ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη, ἐπεὶ ἔμαθεν ὅτι τυφλὸς ἐστὶν ὁ παῖς, δακρῦσάσα τῷ ἀνδρί, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” ἔφη, “τί δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιεῖν; ὦ ἄνερ, τοῖς θεοῖς εὐχου βοηθεῖν ἡμῖν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἀλλὰ δεῖ ἡμᾶς τὸν παῖδα φέρειν παρὰ ἱατρὸν τινα,” ἔφη. “ἀλλὰ νῦν δι’ ὀλίγου γενήσεται. νῦν οὖν δεῖ πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν σπεύδειν καὶ αἰτεῖν αὐτὸν ἡμᾶς 5 δέχεσθαι. αὔριον δὲ ζητήσομεν ἱατρὸν.”

[δακρύσασα, *bursting into tears*]

βραδέως οὖν τῷ παιδί ἡγούμενοι βαδίζουσι πρὸς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν. ἐπεὶ δ’ ἀφίκοντο, ὁ μὲν Δικαιοπόλις ἔκοψε τὴν θύραν. ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς πρὸς τὴν θύραν ἐλθὼν καὶ τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν καὶ τὸν πατέρα ἰδὼν “χαίρετε, ὦ πάππα καὶ ἄδελφε,” ἔφη. “πῶς ἔχετε; σὺ δέ, ὦ 10 Μυρρίνη, χαῖρε καὶ σύ. ὑμεῖς δὲ, ὦ Φίλιππε καὶ Μέλιττα, χαίρετε καὶ ὑμεῖς. ἀλλ’ εἵπετέ μοι, τί πάσχετε; τί οὐκ ἐπανέρχεσθε εἰς τοὺς ἀγροὺς ἀλλ’ ἔτι μένετε ἐν τῷ ἅστει; ἐσπέρᾳ γὰρ ἤδη γίνγεται.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἐγὼ μὲν καλῶς ἔχω, ὁ δὲ παῖς, ἰδοῦ, τυφλὸς γὰρ γέγονεν οὐδὲν ὁρᾷ. πάρεσμεν οὖν αἰτοῦντές σε ἡμᾶς δέχεσθαι.” ὁ δὲ 15 ἀδελφὸς ἰδὼν τὸν παῖδα τυφλὸν ὄντα, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” ἔφη, “τί ποτε ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς; εἰσέλθετε καὶ εἵπετέ μοι τί ἐγένετο.”

[ἐλθὼν, *having come, after coming, coming* ἰδὼν, *having seen, after seeing, seeing*  
εἵπετέ, *tell* γέγονεν, *has become, is*]

οὕτως εἰπὼν εἰσήγαγεν αὐτοὺς εἰς τὴν οἰκίαν. οἱ δὲ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα εἶπον αὐτῷ. ὁ δὲ τὴν γυναῖκα καλέσας, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ γύναι,” ἔφη. “πάρεισι γὰρ ὅ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ἡ Μυρρίνη. ὁ δὲ 20 Φίλιππος δεινὸν ἔπαθεν. τυφλὸς γὰρ γέγονεν. κόμιζε οὖν αὐτόν τε καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας εἰς τὸν γυναικῶνα. ἡσυχάσουσι γὰρ ἐκεῖ. σὺ δέ, ὦ πάππα καὶ ἄδελφε, ἔλθετε δεῦρο.” ὅ τε οὖν Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς καὶ ὁ πατήρ εἰς τὸν ἀνδρῶνα εἰσελθόντες πολλὰ διαλέγονται σκοποῦντες τί δεῖ ποιεῖν. τέλος δὲ ὁ ἀδελφός, “ἄλις 25

λόγων," ἔφη· "ἐγὼ σοφὸν ἱατρὸν ἔγνωκα καὶ αὔριον, εἴ σοι δοκεῖ, κομιῶ ὑμᾶς παρὰ αὐτόν. νῦν δέ—ὅψ' ἔστιν—δεῖ ἡμᾶς καθεύδειν."

[εἰπὼν, *having said, after saying, saying* τὰ γενόμενα, *the things that (had) happened* εἶπον, *told* καλέσας, *calling* τὸν γυναικῶνα, *the women's quarters* ἡσυχάσουσι (from ἡσυχάζω), *they will rest* τὸν ἀνδρῶνα, *the men's quarters* εἰσελθόντες, *entering, having entered* ἄλλ' + gen., *enough* ἔγνωκα, *I know* ὅψ', *late*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. logic    2. dialogue    3. monologue    4. prologue    5. eulogy

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Aorist

Both English and Greek have several different past tenses, e.g., "I was coming," "I came," "I have come," "I had come." The term *aorist* (= ἄ-, *without* + ὁ ὅρος, *boundary*) means *without boundaries, without limits* and is used to describe forms of verbs that express *simple action*, in contrast, for example, with the present tense, which expresses *progressive, ongoing action*. In the indicative mood, aorist forms usually express simple action in *past time*, e.g., ἦλθον, *I came* or *I went* = the simple past tense in English.

There are two ways of forming the aorist in Greek, corresponding to two ways of forming the simple past tense in English:

1. A suffix is added to the verb stem, e.g.:

Present: λύ-ω, *I loosen*

Sigmatic 1st Aorist: ἔ-λυ-σα, *I loosened*

2. The verb stem is changed, e.g.:

Present: λείπ-ω, *I leave*

Thematic 2nd Aorist: ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, *I left*

Most Greek verbs have sigmatic 1st aorists, some have thematic 2nd aorists, and a few have both.

In the aorist indicative an ε is placed before the stem of verbs that begin with consonants. This is called an *augment*, and it indicates past time. If the stem of the verb begins with a vowel, the stem is augmented by lengthening the vowel, e.g., the aorist stem of ἄγω, namely ἄγαγ-, is augmented to ἤγαγ- (see Grammar 8, pages 190–191). Note in the lists of forms below that the augment is not present in the forms of the imperative, infinitive, and participle.

## 2. Verb Forms: The Thematic 2nd Aorist

Thematic 2nd aorists have thematic vowels (ο or ε) between the stem and the ending in the indicative. The personal endings for the thematic 2nd aorist indicative active are slightly different from those for the present indicative. The present endings are called *primary*, and the thematic 2nd aorist endings are called *secondary*. The latter should be memorized as follows:

Secondary: -ν, -ς, —, -μεν, -τε, -ν

The endings for the active and middle thematic 2nd aorist imperative, infinitive, and participle are similar to those you have learned for the present tense.

The aorist middle indicative has secondary endings, four of which are different from the primary ones you have learned for the present middle indicative. Memorize both the primary and the secondary middle endings as follows:

Primary: -μαι, -σαι, -ται, -μεθα, -σθε, -νται

Secondary: -μην, -σο, -το, -μεθα, -σθε, -ντο

### Thematic 2nd Aorist Active

**Present:** λείπω, *I leave*; **Aorist Stem:** λιπ-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, <i>I left</i>		λιπ-εῖν,	λιπ-ών,
ἔ-λιπ-ε-ς	λίπ-ε,	to leave	λιπ-ούσα,
ἔ-λιπ-ε(ν)	leave!		λιπ-όν,
έ-λίπ-ο-μεν			gen., λιπ-όντι-ος, etc.
έ-λίπ-ε-τε	λίπ-ετε,		having left,
ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν	leave!		after leaving,
			sometimes, leaving

### Thematic 2nd Aorist Middle

**Present:** γίγνομαι, *I become*; **Aorist Stem:** γεν-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
έ-γεν-ό-μην, <i>I became</i>		γεν-έ-σθαι,	γεν-ό-μεν-ος,
έ-γέν-ε-σο > έγένου	γενοῦ,	to become	γεν-ο-μέν-η,
έ-γέν-ε-το	become!		γεν-ό-μεν-ον,
έ-γεν-ό-μεθα			having become,
έ-γέν-ε-σθε	γέν-ε-σθε,		after becoming,
έ-γέν-ο-ντο	become!		sometimes, becoming

**Note:**

1. Thematic vowels come between the stems and the endings in many of these forms, just as in the present middle forms (see Chapter 6, Grammar 3, pages 76–77).
2. Note the accents of the active infinitive and participles. Compare the accents of the present active infinitive and participles (see page 152).
3. The accent of the singular aorist middle imperative is irregular: γενοῦ.
4. Note that thematic 2nd aorist middle infinitives are always accented on the next to the last syllable, e.g., γενέσθαι. Compare the present and future middle infinitives, λύεσθαι and λύσεσθαι.

**Exercise 11α**

*In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, locate two examples of an aorist of the verb πᾶσχω and two aorist forms of the verb γίγνομαι.*

**Exercise 11β**

1. *Make photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and copy the aorist active forms of λείπω given above on the second chart. Then fill in the present active and future active forms of this verb that you have learned to date.*
2. *On the chart that you filled out with the future forms of γίγνομαι (Exercise 10α.2), fill in the aorist indicative, imperative, infinitive, and participle of this verb. Be sure to keep all of your charts for reference.*

**Exercise 11γ**

1. *Make two photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the present, future, and aorist active forms of πᾶσχω (aorist ἔπαθ-o-v) that you have learned to date on one set of charts.*
2. *On your second set of charts fill in the present and aorist middle forms of λαμβάνομαι, I take hold of, aorist, ἐλαβ-ό-μην, that you have learned to date. Keep these charts for reference.*

**3. Aspect****a. Indicatives**

Notice that the indicatives in the charts on the previous page are translated *I left, you left*, etc. In the indicative mood the aorist usually designates *simple action in past time*.

Occasionally the aorist indicative is used to express general truths and is translated with a present tense. This is called the *gnomic aorist* (cf. αἱ γνώμαι, *maxims, aphorisms*), e.g.:



παθὼν νήπιος ἔμαθεν. *A fool learns by experience.*

### b. Imperatives

Notice, however, that with the imperatives, which have no augment, the translations are the same as those for the present tense. This is because the aorist imperative differs from the present not in *time* but in *aspect*, that is, in the way in which the action of the verb is conceived in the mind. The present tense is *progressive* and is used of an *ongoing process*; the aorist is used of *simple action*, e.g.:

Present, progressive imperative:

ἄκουε τὸν μῦθον. *Listen to the story!*

(The listening is conceived of as a process that will take place over a period of time.)

Aorist imperative:

λαβοῦ τῆς ἐμῆς χειρός. *Take my hand!*

(The reference is to the simple action itself.)

### c. Infinitives

Present infinitives express *progressive, ongoing action*, e.g.:

νῦν δέ—ὄψε γάρ ἐστιν—δεῖ ἡμᾶς καθεύδειν.

*But now—for it is late—it is necessary for us to be sleeping.*

Aorist infinitives usually express *simple action* without reference to time, e.g.:

ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὸν πάππον ἔπεισεν οἴκαδε ἐπανελθεῖν.

*Dicaeopolis persuaded grandfather to return home.*

### d. Participles

Present participles express *progressive, ongoing action*, e.g.:

ἡ Μέλιττα φέρουσα τὴν ὑδρίαν ἔπαισε καὶ αὐτὴν κατέβαλεν.

*Melissa, carrying her water jar, stumbled and dropped it.*

Usually the aorist participle describes a simple action that preceded or was finished before the action of the main verb, e.g.:

οἱ δὲ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα αὐτῷ εἶπον.

*They told him all the things that had happened.*

Aorist participles sometimes designate *simple action* without reference to time (the following example uses an asigmatic 1st aorist participle, to be introduced in the next chapter):

ἀποκρινάμενος εἶπεν. Not *Having answered*, he said, but *Answering*, he said or *He said in reply*.

Here are further examples of aorist participles:

ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς πρὸς τὴν θύρᾱν ἔλθων καὶ τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν ἰδὼν, “χαῖρε, ὦ ἀδελφε,” ἔφη.

*And his brother, having come/after coming/coming to the door and having seen/after seeing/seeing Dicaeopolis, said, “Greetings, brother.”*

Here the actions described by the aorist participles clearly took place before the brother greeted Dicaeopolis, and so we may translate them *having come/after coming* and *having seen/after seeing*. But they are simple actions and so may also be translated simply *coming* and *seeing*. Present, progressive participles would be inappropriate here because the actions are not continuous or ongoing.

#### 4. Thematic 2nd Aorist Active and Middle Participles

The thematic 2nd aorist active participle has the same endings as the present active participle (see Chapter 9, Grammar 1, page 136, but it differs in accent:

<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λιπ-ὼν	λιπ-οῦσα	λιπ-ὼν
<b>Gen.</b>	λιπ-όντος	λιπ-ούσης	λιπ-όντος
<b>Dat.</b>	λιπ-όντι	λιπ-ούσῃ	λιπ-όντι
<b>Acc.</b>	λιπ-όντα	λιπ-οῦσαν	λιπ-όν
<b>Nom., Voc.</b>	λιπ-όντες	λιπ-οῦσαι	λιπ-όντα
<b>Gen.</b>	λιπ-όντων	λιπ-ουσῶν	λιπ-όντων
<b>Dat.</b>	λιπ-οῦσι(ν)	λιπ-ούσαις	λιπ-οῦσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	λιπ-όντας	λιπ-ούσας	λιπ-όντα

The thematic 2nd aorist middle participle has the same endings as the present middle participle (see Chapter 8, Grammar 1, page 115):

<b>Nom.</b>	γεν-ό-μεν-ος	γεν-ο-μέν-η	γεν-ό-μεν-ον
-------------	--------------	-------------	--------------

*etc.*

#### 5. Verb Forms: Common Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists

Learn the following verbs, paying particular attention to the difference between the verb stems in the present tense and those in the future and aorist. Remember that some verbs that have active forms in the present tense are deponent in the future (see Chapter 10, Grammar 4, pages 159–160). We give the aorist participles here and in the vocabulary lists in the remainder of Book I in order to remind you that the augment occurs only in the indicative forms. Remember that stems beginning with vowels or diphthongs augment in the aorist indicative by lengthening the initial vowel (see Grammar 8, pages 190–191).

ἄγ-ω, *I lead, take*, ἄξω, [ἀγαγ-] ἤγαγ-ο-ν, ἀγαγ-ών  
 ἀπο-θνῆσκ-ω, *I die*, [θανε-] ἀποθανοῦμαι, [θαν-] ἀπ-έ-θαν-ο-ν,  
 ἀπο-θαν-ών  
 ἀφ-ικνέ-ο-μαι, *I arrive*, [ἰκ-] ἀφίξομαι, [ἰκ-] ἀφ-ἰκ-ό-μην, ἀφ-ικ-ό-  
 μενος  
 βάλλ-ω, *I throw*, [βαλε-] βαλῶ, [βαλ-] ἔ-βαλ-ο-ν, βαλ-ών  
 γί-γν-ο-μαι, *I become*, [γενε-] γενήσομαι, [γεν-] ἔ-γεν-ό-μην, γεν-  
 ό-μενος  
 εὐρίσκ-ω, *I find*, [εὔρε-] εὐρήσω, [εὔρ-] εὔρ-ο-ν or εὔρ-ο-ν, εὐρ-ών  
 ἔχ-ω, *I have; I hold*, ἔξω (irregular) (*I will have*) and [σχε-] σχήσω, (*I*  
*will get*), [σχ-] ἔ-σχ-ο-ν, σχ-ών  
 λαμβάν-ω, *I take*, [ληβ-] λήψομαι, [λαβ-] ἔ-λαβ-ο-ν, λαβ-ών  
 λείπ-ω, *I leave*, λείψω, [λιπ-] ἔ-λιπ-ο-ν, λιπ-ών  
 μανθάν-ω, *I learn*, [μαθε-] μαθήσομαι, [μαθ-] ἔ-μαθ-ο-ν, μαθ-ών  
 πάσχ-ω, *I suffer*, [πενθ-] πείσομαι, [παθ-] ἔ-παθ-ο-ν, παθ-ών  
 πίνω, *I drink*, [πῖ-] πίομαι (note absence of -σ-), [πι-] ἔπιον, πι-ών  
 πί-πτ-ω, *I fall*, πεσοῦμαι (irregular), ἔ-πεσ-ο-ν (irregular), πεσ-ών  
 φεύγ-ω, *I flee*, φεύξομαι, [φυγ-] ἔ-φυγ-ον, φυγ-ών

Give the forms of the future indicatives, aorist indicative, and aorist participle of the compound verb παρέχω. Note that the aorist imperative singular of ἔχω [aorist stem σχ-] is σχέε and that the aorist imperative of παρέχω is παράσχες.

### Exercise 11δ

Give the 2nd person singular and the 2nd person plural of the future and the aorist of the following verbs:

- |               |               |
|---------------|---------------|
| 1. πίπτω      | 8. εὐρίσκω    |
| 2. βάλλω      | 9. ἔχω        |
| 3. λείπω      | 10. γίγνομαι  |
| 4. ἀφικνέομαι | 11. πάσχω     |
| 5. λαμβάνω    | 12. φεύγω     |
| 6. μανθάνω    | 13. ἀποθνῆσκω |
| 7. ἄγω        | 14. παρέχω    |

**Exercise 11ε**

*Give the corresponding future and aorist forms of the following:*

- |                           |                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. ἀποθνήσκων             | 8. ἄγειν                  |
| 2. εὐρίσκομεν             | 9. γίγνομαι               |
| 3. πίπτειν                | 10. ἔχομεν                |
| 4. μανθάνουσι(ν) (2 ways) | 11. πάσχω                 |
| 5. βάλλειν                | 12. λαμβάνω               |
| 6. φεύγει                 | 13. παρέχουσι(ν) (2 ways) |
| 7. ἀφικνούμενος           | 14. λείπειν               |

**Exercise 11ζ**

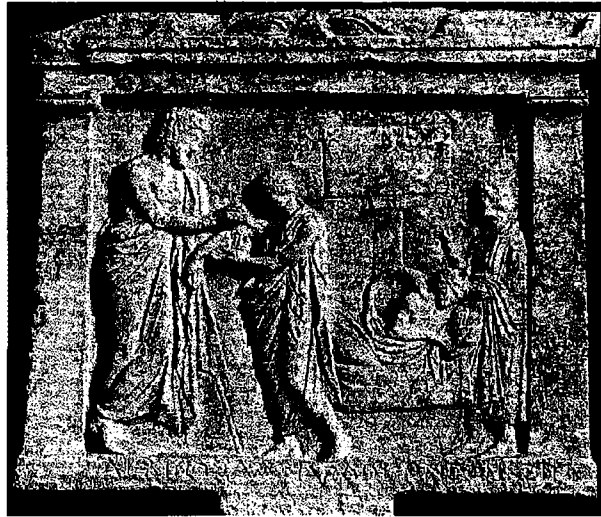
*Read aloud and translate. Identify all aorist indicatives, aorist participles, and present participles. For each participle, explain why the aorist or the present is being used in the sentence.*

1. ἡ γυνή, μαθοῦσα ὅτι τυφλὸς ἐγένετο ὁ παῖς, τῷ ἀνδρί, “ὦ Ζεῦ,” ἔφη, “τί δεῖ ἡμᾶς ποιεῖν;”
2. ἀφικόμενοι εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἀδελφοῦ οἰκίαν εἶπον αὐτῷ τί ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς.
3. οἱ ἄνδρες τὰς γυναῖκας ἐν τῷ οἴκῳ λιπόντες τὸν παῖδα πρὸς τὸν ἰατρὸν ἤγαγον.
4. ὁ αὐτουργὸς τὸν κύνα πρὸς τὸ ὄρος ἀγαγὼν τὸν λύκον ἤδρε τοῖς προβάτοις ἐμπεσοῦμενον (ἐν + πίπτω).
5. ἡ μήτηρ τὸν σίτον τῷ παιδί παρασχούσα κελεύει αὐτὸν σπεύδειν πρὸς τὸν ἀγρόν.
6. εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν ἀφικόμενος τῷ πατρὶ τὸ δεῖπνον παρέσχεν.
7. ὁ πατήρ τὸ ἄροτρον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ λιπὼν τὸ δεῖπνον ἔλαβεν.
8. ὁ μὲν παῖς τὸν λύκον ἔβαλεν, ὁ δὲ φοβούμενος ἔφυγεν.
9. οἱ νεᾶνιαι ἀπέθανον ὑπὲρ τῆς πόλεως μαχόμενοι.
10. δεινὰ παθόντες οὐκ ἔφυγον ἀλλὰ ἔπεσον ἀνδρείως μαχόμενοι.

**Exercise 11η**

*Translate into Greek:*

1. We left grandfather sitting in the agora.
2. The boys pelted the wolf with stones.
3. Did you learn what happened?
4. The doctor soon arrived at the city.
5. Having left the plow in the field, the farmer led the oxen home.
6. The women, having learned what had happened, fled.
7. The boy fell from the tree and suffered terribly (= terrible things).



Healing: divine and secular

The inscription at the bottom of this relief says that it was dedicated by Aeschinus to the hero healer Amphiaraus. On the right, the patient sleeps in the sanctuary and is visited by Amphiaraus and his divine serpent, which licks his wound. On the left a doctor (or the god himself?) operates on the wound.

## Greek Science and Medicine

The beginnings of Greek science are to be found in the speculations of the philosophers who lived in the Ionian city of Miletus in the sixth century B.C. The first of these thinkers was Thales, one of the seven wise men or sages of archaic Greece, whose floruit can be dated confidently, since he predicted an eclipse of the sun that took place on 25 May 585 B.C. He and his successors were primarily interested in questions of physics. They all sought for a unifying principle underlying the multifarious appearances of the physical world; in simple terms, they asked, "What is the ultimate constituent of matter?" Thales answered that this was water. He conceived of the earth as a flat disc floating on water (the ocean), with water above (rain falling from the sky). Water, when rarefied, becomes steam or mist. He speculated that air, when rarefied, becomes fire. Water condensed takes on a solid form, ice or mud; further condensed it becomes earth and stone. The interest in Thales' theory lies not in its truth or falsehood but in the boldness with which he sought for an answer in terms of natural causation to questions that had been traditionally answered in terms of myth.

The speculations of the Ionian philosophers had no practical end in view, and here they differed from Greek medicine, which had developed from early time as an art; the doctor (ἰατρός = *healer*) was a craftsman. There were already famous doctors before we hear of any theory of medicine. The best known is Democedes, whose story as told by the historian Herodotus is given at the end of this chapter.

The man whom the Greeks looked upon as the founder of medical science belonged to the next century. This was Hippocrates (fl. 430 B.C.), who founded a famous medical school on the little island of Cos (see map, page 272). To him is ascribed a large collection of writings that cover all aspects of medicine including anatomy, physiology, prognostics, dietetics, surgery, and pharmacology. They include a book of precepts on how doctors should behave toward their patients and the famous Hippocratic oath, which was taken by all students of medicine:

I will pay the same respect to my master in the science as to my parents and share my life with him and pay all my debts to him. I will regard his sons as my brothers and teach them the science, if they desire to learn it, without fee or contract. . . . I will give treatment to help the sick to the best of my ability and judgment. . . . I will not give lethal drugs to anyone if I am asked . . . nor will I give a woman means to procure an abortion. . . . Whatever I see or hear that should not be spoken to any person outside, I will never divulge. . . .

The oath both gives an insight into how the medical schools were organized (a system of apprenticeship) and also shows the ethical principles to which ancient Greek doctors subscribed.

None of the writings can be confidently ascribed to Hippocrates himself, but many, perhaps most, were written in the fifth century and contain some strikingly enlightened features. The case histories recorded in the Hippocratic writings are particularly interesting, showing the close observation and careful recording on which all sound diagnosis must depend. For instance:

At Thasos, Pythion had a violent rigor and high fever as the result of strain, exhaustion, and insufficient attention to his diet. Tongue parched, he was thirsty and bilious and did not sleep. Urine rather dark, containing suspended matter, which did not settle. Second day: about midday, chilling of the extremities. . . . (*Epidemics* 3.2, case 3)

The patient's condition and symptoms continued to be recorded until the tenth day, when he died.

Greek doctors did not claim to be able to effect cures in many cases. Their remedies were simple. Drugs, usually purgatives, were used sparingly. Surgery made steady advances, although anatomy was held back by reluctance to perform dissection of the human body. Bloodletting was a common remedy, and great importance was attached to diet and exercise. Despite its limitations, Greek medicine was rational in all aspects and rejected the belief that sickness was caused by evil spirits, still current in the Palestine of New Testament times. If a Greek doctor could not cure a patient, the only recourse for the patient was to visit one of the healing sanctuaries, where a combination of medical care and faith healing resulted in some remarkable cures, if the tablets put up by patients are to be believed.

## Classical Greek

### Theognis

Theognis (see page 163) traveled to Sicily, Euboea, and Sparta during his exile but always longed for his native Megara. The following are lines 783–788:

ἦλθον μὲν γὰρ ἔγωγε καὶ εἰς Σικελίην ποτε γαίαν,  
 ἦλθον δ' Εὐβοίης ἀμπελόεν πεδίον,  
 Σπάρτην τ' Εὐρώτᾳ δονακοτρόφου ἀγλαὸν ἄστν,  
 καὶ μ' ἐφίλειν προφρόνως πάντες ἐπερχόμενον·  
 ἀλλ' οὔτις μοι τέρψις ἐπὶ φρένας ἦλθεν ἐκείνων·  
 οὔτως οὐδὲν ἄρ' ἦν φίλτερον ἄλλο πάτρης.

[ἦλθον, *I went* ἔγωγε (a strengthened form of ἐγώ), *I indeed* Σικελίην . . . γαίαν, *the land of Sicily* ἀμπελόεν πεδίον, *the vine-clad plain* Εὐρώτᾳ δονακοτρόφου, *of the Eurotas (Sparta's river), which nourishes reeds* ἀγλαὸν, *glorious* ἐφίλειν = ἐφίλουν (imperfect of φιλέω), *here, were welcoming* προφρόνως, *graciously* ἐπερχόμενον, *(when) coming to (them)* οὔτις . . . τέρψις, *no joy* φρένας, *my heart* ἐκείνων, *from those things* οὔτως . . . ἄρ(α), *so true is it that* οὐδὲν . . . ἦν . . . ἄλλο, *translate, no other thing is (was)* φίλτερον . . . πάτρης, *dearer (to a man) than his fatherland*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 6.20–21

#### The Beatitudes

The following comes from the beginning of the Sermon on the Mount:

καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπάρᾳς τοὺς ὀφθαλμοὺς αὐτοῦ εἰς τοὺς μαθητὰς αὐτοῦ ἔλεγεν,  
 “μακάριοι οἱ πτωχοί,  
 ὅτι ὑμετέρᾳ ἐστὶν ἡ βασιλεία τοῦ θεοῦ.  
 μακάριοι οἱ πεινῶντες νῦν,  
 ὅτι χορτασθήσεσθε.  
 μακάριοι οἱ κλαίοντες νῦν,  
 ὅτι γελάσετε.”

[αὐτὸς: i.e., Jesus ἐπάρᾳς, *lifting up* τοὺς μαθητὰς, *the disciples* ἔλεγεν, *he was saying* μακάριοι, *blessed* οἱ πτωχοί, *the beggars* ὅτι, *because, for* ἡ βασιλεία, *the kingdom* οἱ πεινῶντες, *those who are hungry* χορτασθήσεσθε, *you will be filled* οἱ κλαίοντες, *those who weep* γελάσετε, *you will laugh*]

# Ο ΙΑΤΡΟΣ (β)



ὁ ἰατρός, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ,” ἔφη. “τί ἔπαθες; πῶς τυφλὸς ἐγένου;”

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

Participles of thematic 2nd aorist verbs are given to remind you that the augment regularly occurs only in the indicative.

αἰρέω, αἰρήσω, [ἐλ-] εἶλον (irregular augment), ἐλών, *I take*

δοκεῖ, impersonal, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), δόξαν, *it seems (good); + dat., e.g., δοκεῖ μοι, it seems good to me; I think it best; + dat. and infin., e.g., δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς σπεύδειν, it seems good to them to hurry, they decide to hurry*

ἔρχομαι, [εἰ-/ἰ-] εἶμι (irregular), [ἐλθ-] ἦλθον, ἐλθών, *I come; I go*

προσέρχομαι + dat. or πρὸς + acc., *I approach*

λέγω, λέξω or [ἔρε-] ἔρῳ, ἔλεξα or [ἐπ-] εἶπον (irregular augment), εἰπών (augment retained), *I say; I tell; I speak*

νοσέω, νοσήσω, ἐνόσησα, *I am sick, ill*

ὁράω, [ὁπ-] ὄψομαι, [ἰδ-] εἶδον (irregular augment), ἰδών, *I see*

ὠφελέω, ὠφελήσω, ὠφέλησα, *I help; I benefit*

### Nouns

τὸ ἀργύριον, τοῦ ἀργυρίου, *silver; money*

ἡ δραχμή, τῆς δραχμῆς, *drachma* (a silver coin worth six obols)

ὁ μισθός, τοῦ μισθοῦ, *reward; pay*

ὁ ὀβολός, τοῦ ὀβολου, *obol* (a silver coin of slight worth)

### Preposition

πρὸς + dat., *at, near, by; + acc., to, toward; against*

### Interjection

οἶμοι, *note the accent, alas!*

### Expression

κατὰ θάλατταν, *by sea*

### Proper Names

ὁ Ἀσκληπιός, τοῦ Ἀσκληπιοῦ, *Asclepius* (the god of healing)

ἡ Ἐπίδauρος, τῆς Ἐπιδauρου, *Epidaurus*

ὁ Πειραιεύς, τοῦ Πειραιῶς, τῷ Πειραιεῖ, τὸν Πειραιᾶ, *the Piraeus* (the port of Athens)



τῇ οὖν ὑστεραίᾳ, ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο, τὰς γυναῖκας ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ λιπόντες ὃ τε Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τὸν Φίλιππον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν ἤγαγον. ὁ δὲ τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς χειρὸς ἐλάβετο ἄλλ' ὅμως πρὸς τοὺς λίθους πταίων πρὸς τὴν γῆν κατέπεσεν. ὁ οὖν πατὴρ αἶρει αὐτὸν καὶ φέρει. οὕτως οὖν πορευόμενοι δι' ὀλίγου ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὴν τοῦ ἱατροῦ οἰκίαν. ὁ δ' ἀδελφός, “ἰδοῦ,” ἔφη· “εἰς τοῦ ἱατροῦ ἤκομεν. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο καὶ κόψον τὴν θύραν.” τοῦτο εἰπὼν ὁ ἀδελφὸς οἴκαδε ἐπανῆλθεν.

[πταίων, *stumbling* εἰς τοῦ ἱατροῦ, *to (the house) of the doctor* κόψον, *knock on* τοῦτο, *this* ἐπανῆλθεν, *returned*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις προσελθὼν ἔκοψε τὴν θύραν, ἄλλ' οὐδεὶς ἦλθεν. ἐπεὶ δ' αὖθις ἔκοπεν, δοῦλός τις ἐξελθὼν, “βάλλ' ἐς κόρακας,” ἔφη. “τίς ὢν σὺ κόπτεις τὴν θύραν;” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις· “ἄλλ', ὦ δαιμόνιε, ἐγὼ εἰμι Δικαιοπόλις· τὸν δὲ παῖδα κομίζω παρὰ τὸν σὸν δεσπότην· τυφλὸς γὰρ γέγονεν.” ὁ δὲ δοῦλος· “ἄλλ' οὐ σχολὴ αὐτῷ.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις· “ἄλλ' ὅμως κάλει αὐτόν. δεινὰ γὰρ ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς· ἀλλὰ μένε, ὦ φίλε.” καὶ οὕτως εἰπὼν δύο ὀβολοὺς τῷ δούλῳ παρέσχεν. ὁ δέ· “μένετε οὖν ἐνταῦθα. ἐγὼ γὰρ τὸν δεσπότην καλῶ, εἴ πως ἐθελήσει ὑμᾶς δέχεσθαι.”

[βάλλ' ἐς κόρακας, *go to the crows!* (= *go to hell!*) ὦ δαιμόνιε, *my dear fellow* οὐ σχολὴ αὐτῷ, *he doesn't have leisure* (= *he's busy*) εἴ πως, *if somehow, if perhaps*]

ὃ τε οὖν πατὴρ καὶ ὁ παῖς ὀλίγον τινὰ χρόνον μένουσιν ἐπὶ τῇ θύρᾳ. ἔπειτα δ' ὁ δοῦλος ἐξελθὼν, “εἰσέλθετε,” ἔφη· “ὁ γὰρ δεσπότης ὑμᾶς δέξεται.” ὁ οὖν πατὴρ τῷ παιδὶ εἰσηγούμενος τὸν ἱατρὸν εἶδεν ἐν τῇ αὐλῇ καθιζόμενον. προσελθὼν οὖν, “χαῖρε,” ἔφη· “ἐγὼ μὲν εἰμι Δικαιοπόλις Χολλείδης, κομίζω δὲ παρὰ σὲ τὸν ἐμὸν παῖδα· δεινὰ γὰρ ἔπαθεν· τυφλὸς γέγονεν.” ὁ δὲ ἱατρός, “δεῦρο ἐλθέ, ὦ παῖ. τί ἔπαθες; πῶς τυφλὸς ἐγένου;” ὁ μὲν οὖν Δικαιοπόλις πάντα τῷ ἱατρῷ εἶπεν, ὁ δὲ τοὺς τοῦ παιδὸς ὀφθαλμοὺς πολὺν χρόνον σκοπεῖ. τέλος δέ· “ἐγὼ μὲν οὐ δυνήσομαι αὐτὸν ὠφελεῖν. οὐδὲν γὰρ νοσοῦσιν οἱ ὀφθαλμοί. οὐκ οὖν δυνήσονται ὠφελεῖν οἱ ἄνθρωποι, ἀλλὰ τοῖς γε

θεοῖς πάντα δυνατά. δεῖ οὖν σε κομίζειν τὸν παῖδα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον καὶ τῷ Ἀσκληπιῷ εὐχεσθαι, εἴ πως ἐθελήσει αὐτὸν ἰᾶσθαι.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “οἴμοι, πῶς γὰρ ἔξεσταί μοι πένητι ὄντι πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον ἰέναι;” ὁ δὲ ἰατρός, “σὸν ἔργον, ὦ ἄνθρωπε,” ἔφη· “χαίρετε.”

[ὀλίγον, *small, short* τῇ αὐλῇ, *the courtyard* Χολλείδης, *from Cholleidae* (Dicaeopolis's home village or deme) δυνήσομαι, *will be able* ἰᾶσθαι, *to heal* πένητι, *a poor man* σὸν ἔργον, *(that's) your business*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις μάλα λυπούμενος βαδίζει πρὸς τὴν θύραν καὶ τῷ παιδὶ οἴκαδε ἡγεῖται. ἀφικόμενος δὲ πάντα τὰ γενόμενα τῷ ἀδελφῷ εἶπεν. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη πάντα μαθοῦσα, “ἔστω· οὐ δυνάμεθα τῇ ἀνάγκῃ μάχεσθαι. δεῖ σε οὖν τὸν παῖδα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον κομίζειν.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἀλλὰ πῶς ἔξεσταί μοι, ὦ γύναι,” ἔφη, “τὸν παῖδα ἐκεῖσε ἄγειν; δεῖ γὰρ κατὰ θάλατταν ἰέναι· οὐ γὰρ δυνήσεται πεζῇ ἰέναι ὁ παῖς τυφλὸς ὢν. πῶς οὖν ἔξεσταί τὸν μισθὸν παρασχεῖν τῷ ναυκλήρῳ; οὐ γὰρ ἐστὶ μοι τὸ ἀργύριον.”

[λυπούμενος, *grieving* ἔστω, *all right!* τῇ ἀνάγκῃ, *necessity* πεζῇ, *on foot* τῷ ναυκλήρῳ, *to the ship's captain*]

ὁ δὲ ἀδελφός, “μὴ φρόντιζε, ὦ φίλε,” ἔφη. καὶ πρὸς κυψέλην τινὰ ἐλθὼν πέντε δραχμὰς ἐξεῖλε καὶ τῷ Δικαιοπόλιδι παρέσχεν. ὁ δὲ τὸ ἀργύριον δέχεται καὶ μεγάλην χάριν ἔχων, “ὦ φίλτατ' ἀνδρῶν,” ἔφη, “τοὺς θεοὺς εὐχομαι πάντα ἀγαθὰ σοι παρέχειν οὕτως εὐφροني ὄντι.” οὕτως οὖν δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ σπεύδειν καὶ ναῦν τινὰ ζητεῖν πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδauρον πλευσομένην.

[μὴ φρόντιζε, *don't worry!* κυψέλην, *chest* χάριν ἔχων, *giving* (lit., *having*) *thanks* φίλτατ(ε), *dearest* εὐφροني, *kind*]

## WORD BUILDING

Three types of nouns are commonly formed from verb stems:

1. First declension masculine nouns ending in -της express the doer of the action, e.g., ποιε-, *make* > ὁ ποιη-τής, *the maker; the poet*.
2. Third declension feminine nouns ending in -σις express the action of the verb, e.g., ἡ ποίη-σις, *the making; the creation; the composition*.

3. Third declension neuter nouns ending in -μα express the result of the action, e.g., τὸ ποιη-μα, *the thing made; the work; the poem*.

*Give the meanings of the following:*

- |                   |           |           |           |
|-------------------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. οἰκέω          | ὁ οἰκητής | ἡ οἴκησις | τὸ οἶκημα |
| 2. μανθάνω (μαθ-) | ὁ μαθητής | ἡ μάθησις | τὸ μάθημα |

## GRAMMAR

### 6. Verbs with Thematic 2nd Aorists from Unrelated Stems

The thematic 2nd aorists you have studied so far use stems that are related etymologically to the stem seen in the present tense, e.g. λαμβάνω and ἔλαβον, like English *take* and *took*. A few Greek verbs form their aorists from a completely different root, etymologically unrelated to that seen in the stem used for the present tense, as does English with, for example, *I go* (present) and *I went* (past). The following are the most common such verbs in Greek, and you have already seen some of their aorist imperatives and participles in the readings:

- αἰρέω, *I take*, αἰρήσω, [έλ-] εἶλον (irregular augment), ἐλών  
 ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*, [εἰ-/ι-] εἶμι (irregular), [έλθ-] ἦλθον, ἐλθών  
 λέγω, *I say; I tell; I speak*, λέξω, [ἐπ-] εἶπον (irregular augment), εἰπών (augment retained)  
 ὁράω, *I see*, [ὀπ-] ὄψομαι, [ιδ-] εἶδον (irregular augment), ἰδών  
 τρέχω, *I run*, [δραμε-] δραμοῦμαι, [δραμ-] ἔδραμον, δραμών  
 φέρω, *I carry; of roads, lead*, [οἰ-] οἶσω, [ἐνεγκ-] ἤνεγκον, ἐνεγκών

Note that the accent of compound verbs never recedes beyond the augment; thus the aorist of ἐπανερχομαι is ἐπανῆλθον.

#### Exercise 11θ

1. Make photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and fill in the forms of ἔρχομαι, future, εἶμι, and aorist, ἦλθον, that you have learned to date.
2. On your charts with the future of ἔχω and ὁράω (Exercise 10α.2), fill in the aorist forms that you have learned to date.

### 7. Accents on Thematic 2nd Aorist Active Imperatives

The aorist imperatives of most verbs with thematic 2nd aorists have regular recessive accents, e.g., λίπε, λίπετε (see Grammar 2, page 177). The accents of the aorist imperatives of ἔρχομαι, λέγω, ὁράω, εὐρίσκω, and λαμβάνω, however, are irregular in the singular in that they are not recessive. In the plural the accents of all five of these words are recessive:

Singular:	έλθέ	εἰπέ	ιδέ	εὐρέ	λαβέ
Plural:	ἔλθετε	εἵπετε	ἴδετε	εὗρετε	λάβετε

Note that in the singular the accent of the *compound* forms of these imperatives is recessive, e.g., ἐπánελθε (from ἐπανάρχομαι).

### Exercise 11i

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ ἄδελφε, καὶ μοι σύλλαβε.
2. “χθὲς (*yesterday*) λύκον εἶδον πρὸς τὸ αὖλιον (*sheepfold*) προσιόντα.
3. “ἴσως (*perhaps*) αὐτὸν ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν ὀψόμεθα καὶ αἰρήσομεν.”
4. οἱ οὖν παῖδες εἰς τὸ αὖλιον ἀφικόμενοι λύκον εἶδον ἐκ τῶν ὁρῶν κατιόντα.
5. τὸν λύκον ἰδόντες λίθους αἶρουσι καὶ διώκουσιν αὐτόν.
6. ὁ δὲ πάππος τοὺς παῖδας ἰδὼν τὴν βακτηρίαν (*his stick*) εἶλε καὶ ἦλθεν ὡς συλληψόμενος.
7. οἱ παῖδες τὸν πάππον εἶδον προσιόντα καὶ εἶπον· “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ πάππε· ἡμεῖς σε μενοῦμεν.
8. “σπεῦδε. πρὸς τὰ ὄρη ἵμεν καὶ τὸν λύκον αἰρήσομεν.”
9. ὁ δὲ πάππος εἶπεν· “ἐπανέλθετε, ὦ παῖδες· μὴ ἴτε πρὸς τὰ ὄρη· τὸν γὰρ λύκον οὐχ εὐρήσετε.”
10. οὕτως εἰπὼν τοὺς παῖδας οἴκαδε ἤγαγεν.

## 8. Augment

To indicate past time in the aorist indicative, as we saw in Grammar 1 above, Greek puts an ε before the stem of verbs beginning with consonants. This is called a *syllabic augment*. If the stem begins with a vowel or diphthong, the initial vowel is lengthened in spelling or sound. This is called *temporal augment*, because long vowels are held for a longer *time*. The following list compares present and aorist indicatives and shows how the stems of verbs beginning with vowels and diphthongs are augmented. A number of these verbs are sigmatic or asigmatic 1st aorists (to be introduced in the next chapter) and are cited merely as examples of temporal augment.

Present	Aorist	
Single vowels:		
ἀκούω	ἤκουσα	(α lengthens to η)
ἐγείρω	ἤγειρα	(ε also lengthens to η)
ἡγέομαι	ἡγησάμην	(no change)
ἰκνέομαι	ἰκόμην	(ι lengthens to ῑ)
ὁρμάω	ὤρμησα	(ο lengthens to ω)

ὕβριζω	ὔβρισα	(ὕ lengthens to ὕ)
ὠφελέω	ᾠφέλησα	(no change)
Diphthongs:		
αἰτέω	ἤτησα	(α lengthens to η, and ι goes subscript)
αὐξάνω	ᾠύξησα	(αυ lengthens to ηυ)
εὐχομαι	ᾠεύξάμην	(ευ lengthens to ηυ)
οἰκέω	ᾠκησα	(ο lengthens to ω, and ι goes subscript)

Remember that the thematic 2nd aorist stems of αἰρέω, λέγω, and ὁράω, namely, ἐλ-, ἐπ-, and ἰδ- augment irregularly to εἰ, giving εἶλον, εἶπον, and εἶδον and that εἶπον retains its augment in its imperative, εἰπέ/εἴπετε, infinitive, εἰπεῖν, and participle, εἰπών (see Grammar 6, page 189). Some other verbs may also augment ε to εἰ, e.g., ἐργάζομαι, *I work*, aorist, ἔργασάμην or εἰργασάμην.

### Exercise 11κ

*Augment the following stems:*

- |           |            |          |             |
|-----------|------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. κελευ- | 4. ἰᾱτρευ- | 7. ἡγε-  | 10. ὀνομαζ- |
| 2. ἐθελ-  | 5. ἀρχ-    | 8. ἀμυν- | 11. ἐλθ-    |
| 3. ὀτρυν- | 6. λαβ-    | 9. εὐχ-  | 12. μαθ-    |

### Exercise 11λ

*Turn the following forms into corresponding forms of the aorist and translate both forms:*

- |                         |                      |                         |
|-------------------------|----------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. λαμβάνομεν           | 7. λέγε              | 13. λέγειν              |
| 2. μανθάνει             | 8. ἔχω               | 14. ἔρχομαι             |
| 3. πάσχουσι(ν) (2 ways) | 9. ἀφικνεῖσθαι       | 15. ὁρᾶν                |
| 4. λείπω                | 10. λείπειν          | 16. λέγομεν             |
| 5. πίπτων               | 11. λαμβάνουσα       | 17. ὁρᾷ                 |
| 6. γιγνόμεθα            | 12. λείπετε (2 ways) | 18. αἰροῦσι(ν) (2 ways) |

### Exercise 11μ

*Read aloud and translate:*

- ὁ αὐτουργὸς εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσελθὼν τὴν θυγατέρα εἶδεν ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ καθιζομένην.
- προσῆλθεν οὖν καὶ εἶπεν· “τί καθίζει ὑπὸ τῷ δένδρῳ δακρύουσα, ὦ θυγατερ;”

3. ἡ δὲ εἶπεν· “τὸ δεῖπνόν σοι φέρουσα, ὦ πάτερ, ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ κατέπεσον καὶ τὸν πόδα (*foot*) ἔβλαψα (*I hurt*).”
4. ὁ δέ, “ἐλθε δεῦρο,” φησίν, “δεῖ με τὸν σὸν πόδα σκοπεῖν.”
5. τὸν οὖν πόδα αὐτῆς σκοπεῖ καὶ ἰδὼν ὅτι οὐδὲν νοσεῖ, “θάρρει (*cheer up*), ὦ θύγατερ,” ἔφη· “οὐδὲν κακὸν (*bad*) ἔπαθες. παράσχες οὖν μοι τὸ δεῖπνον καὶ οἴκαδε ἐπάνελθε.”
6. ἡ οὖν παρθένος τὸ δεῖπνον τῷ πατρὶ παρασχούσα οἴκαδε βραδέως ἀπῆλθεν.

### Exercise 11v

*Translate into Greek:*

1. How did you become blind, boy? Tell me what happened.
2. Where did you see the oxen? Did you leave them in the field?
3. After suffering much (= many things: *use neuter plural adjective*) by sea, they finally arrived at the land.
4. After seeing the dances, the boys went home and told their father (*dative case*) what happened.
5. Falling (*use aorist participle*) into the sea, the girls suffered terribly (= terrible things).

## Ο ΔΗΜΟΚΛΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΒΑΣΙΛΕΑ ΙΑΤΡΕΥΕΙ

*Read the following passage (based on Herodotus 3.129–130) and answer the comprehension questions:*

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀπέθανεν ὁ Πολυκράτης, οἱ Πέρσαι τούς τε ἄλλους θεράποντας τοῦ Πολυκράτους λαβόντες καὶ τὸν Δημοκλῆν εἰς τὰ Σοῦσα ἐκόμισαν. δι' ὀλίγον δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς κακὸν τι ἔπαθεν· ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου γὰρ πεσὼν τὸν πόδα ἔβλαψεν. οἱ δὲ ἰατροὶ οὐκ ἐδύναντο αὐτὸν ὠφελεῖν. μαθὼν δὲ ὅτι ἰατρός τις Ἑλληνικὸς πάρεστιν ἐν τοῖς δούλοις, τοὺς θεράποντας ἐκέλευσε τὸν Δημοκλῆν παρ' ἑαυτὸν ἀγαγεῖν. ὁ οὖν Δημοκλῆς εἰς μέσον ἦλθεν, πέδᾱς τε ἔλκων καὶ ῥάκεσιν ἐσθημένους. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἐθαύμασε καὶ ἤρετο εἰ δύναται τὸν πόδα ἰατρεύειν. ὁ δὲ Δημοκλῆς φοβούμενος εἶπεν ὅτι οὐκ ἔστιν ἰατρός σοφὸς ἀλλ' ἐθέλει πειρᾶσθαι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ Ἑλληνικῇ ἰατρείᾳ χρώμενος τὸν πόδα ταχέως ἰάτρευσεν. οὕτως οὖν φίλος ἐγένετο τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὁ δὲ πολὺ ἀργύριον αὐτῷ παρέσχε καὶ μέγα ἐτίμα. 8

[ὁ Πολυκράτης, τοῦ Πολυκράτους, *Polycrates* (tyrant of Samos, sixth century B.C.; he was captured and put to death by the Persians) οἱ Πέρσαι, *the Persians* θεράποντας, *servants* ὁ Δημοκλῆς, τὸν Δημοκλῆν, *Democedes* τὰ Σοῦσα, neuter acc. pl., *Susa* ἐκόμισαν, *brought* κακὸν τι, *something bad* τοῦ ἵππου, *his horse* τὸν πόδα, *his foot* ἔβλαψεν, *he hurt* ἐδύναντο, *were able* Ἑλληνικὸς, *Greek* ἐκέλευσε, *he ordered* πέδᾱς . . . ἔλκων, *dragging his shackles* ῥάκεσιν 10

ἐσθημένος, *clothed in rags* ἐθαύμασε, *was amazed* ἤρετο, *asked* ἰατρεύειν, *to heal* πειρᾶσθαι, *to try* ἰατρεία, *healing, medicine* χρώμενος + dat., *using* ἐτίμα, *was honoring*!

1. What happened to the Persian king? Of what help were his doctors?
2. What did the king learn? What did he order his servants to do?
3. In what two ways could Democedes be recognized as a slave?
4. How does the Persian king react to the sight of Democedes?
5. What did Democedes say to the king? How did he heal the king's foot?
6. In what three ways did Democedes benefit?

### Exercise 11ξ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. The king, falling (*use aorist participle*) from his horse, suffered something bad, but the doctors said that they could not (οὐ δύνανται; *use this present tense form*) help him.
2. Having learned that there was (*use present tense*) another doctor among the slaves, the servants said: "It is necessary to bring this doctor (τοῦτον τὸν ἰατρόν) to you."
3. And when the doctor arrived, the king said, "Is it possible to heal my foot?"
4. The doctor said that he was willing (*use present tense*) to try (πειρᾶσθαι).
5. And when the doctor cured (ἰάτρευσε) his foot, the king became very friendly to him.

## New Testament Greek

Luke 6.27–29

The Sermon on the Mount

Jesus is speaking:

“ἀλλὰ ὑμῖν λέγω τοῖς ἀκούουσιν, ἀγαπάτε τοὺς ἐχθροὺς ὑμῶν, καλῶς ποιεῖτε τοῖς μισοῦσιν ὑμᾶς, εὐλογεῖτε τοὺς καταρωμένους ὑμᾶς, προσεύχεσθε περὶ τῶν ἐπηρεαζόντων ὑμᾶς. τῷ τύποντί σε ἐπὶ τὴν σιαγόνα πάρεχε καὶ τὴν ἄλλην.”

[ἀγαπάτε, *love!* τοὺς ἐχθροὺς, *the enemies* τοῖς μισοῦσιν, *those hating* εὐλογεῖτε, *bless!* τοὺς καταρωμένους, *those cursing* περὶ τῶν ἐπηρεαζόντων, *for those mistreating/insulting* ἐπὶ τὴν σιαγόνα, *on the cheek*]

# 12

## ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (α)

---



προσεχώρησεν ἀνὴρ τις ἄμαξαν ἐλαύνων.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

All aorist participles are now given.

ἀπορέω, ἀπορήσω, ἠπόρησα,  
ἀπορήσας, *I am at a loss*  
φροντίζω, [φροντιέ-] φροντιῶ,  
[φροντι-] ἐφρόντισα, φροντίσας,  
*I worry; I care*

#### Nouns

ὁ ἡμίονος, τοῦ ἡμιόνου, *mule*  
ὁ λιμήν, τοῦ λιμένος, *harbor*  
ὁ ὄμιλος, τοῦ ὁμίλου, *crowd*  
τὸ τεῖχος, τοῦ τείχους, *wall*

#### Adjectives

γεραιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *old*

κακός, -ή, -όν, *bad; evil*  
ὀρθός, -ή, -όν, *straight; right,*  
*correct*

#### Adverbs

τάχιστα, *most quickly; most*  
*swiftly*  
ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as*  
*possible*

#### Conjunction

ἢ, *or*  
ἢ . . . ἢ, *either . . . or*  
καίπερ + participle, *although*

#### Expression

χαίρειν κελεύω + acc., *I bid X*  
*farewell, I bid farewell to X*

τῇ δ' ὕστεραίᾳ ἐπεὶ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾳ ἐγένετο, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις πάντας ἐκέλευσε παρασκευάζεσθαι. οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι εὐθὺς παρεσκευάσαντο βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι καὶ δι' ὀλίγου ἔτοιμοι ἦσαν. ὁ δὲ πάππος οὐκ ἠθέλησε πορεύεσθαι· οὕτω γὰρ γεραιὸς ἦν ὥστε οὐκ ἐδύνατο μακρὰν βαδίζειν· ἡ δὲ Μέλιττα οὕτω 5



μακρὰν τῇ προτεραίᾳ βαδίσασα ὑπέρκοπος ἦν· ἔδοξεν οὖν τῇ μητρὶ καταλιπεῖν αὐτὴν οἴκοι μετὰ τοῦ πάππου. ἐπεὶ δὲ παρῆσαν οἱ ἄλλοι, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ἡγησάμενος αὐτοῖς εἰς τὴν αὐλὴν τῷ βωμῷ προσεχώρησε καὶ σπονδὴν ποιησάμενος τὸν Δία ἠϋξάτο σῶζειν πάντας τ<sup>ς</sup> αὐτὴν ὁδὸν ποιουμένους.

10

[ἐκέλευσε, *ordered* παρεσκευάσαντο, *prepared themselves* ἦσαν (imperfect), *they were* ἠθέλησε, *wished* ἦν (imperfect), *he was* ἐδύνατο (imperfect), *he was able* μακρὰν, *a long (way)* τῇ προτεραίᾳ, *the day before* βαδίσασα, *having walked* ὑπέρκοπος, *exhausted* ἡγησάμενος, *having led* τὴν αὐλὴν, *the courtyard* προσεχώρησε, *he approached* σπονδὴν, *a libation* ποιησάμενος, *after making* ἠϋξάτο (from εὐχομαι), *he prayed*]

τόν τ' οὖν πάππον καὶ τὴν Μέλιτταν χαίρειν κελεύσαντες ὤρμησαν, καὶ δι' ὀλίγου, εἰς τὰς τῆς πόλεως πύλας ἀφικόμενοι, τὴν πρὸς τὸν λιμένα ὁδὸν εἴλοντο. ὀρθὴ δ' ἦν ἡ ὁδός, διὰ τῶν μακρῶν τειχῶν φέρουσα· πολλοὶ δὲ ἄνθρωποι ἐνήσαν, πολλαὶ δὲ ἄμαξαι, πολλοὶ δὲ καὶ ἡμίονοι φορτία φέροντες ἢ πρὸς τὴν πόλιν ἢ ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως πρὸς τὸν λιμένα. ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις σπεύδει διὰ τοῦ ὁμίλου βουλόμενος ὥς τάχιστα ἀφικέσθαι. ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος καίπερ τῆς τοῦ πατρὸς χειρὸς ἐχόμενος ἔπταισε καὶ πρὸς τὴν γῆν κατέπεσεν. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ βοήσασα, “ὦ τλῆμον παῖ,” ἔφη, “τί ἔπαθες;” καὶ προσδραμοῦσα ἦρεν αὐτόν. ὁ δὲ αὐδὲν κακὸν παθὼν, “μὴ φρόντιζε, ὦ μήτηρ,” ἔφη· “καίπερ γὰρ πεσὼν ἐγὼ καλῶς ἔχω.” ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἔτι φροντίζει καὶ τὸν παῖδα σκοπεῖ.

15

20

[ὤρμησαν, *they set out* εἴλοντο, *they chose* ἄμαξαι, *wagons* τὰ φορτία, *burdens, cargoes* ἐχόμενος + gen., *holding* ἔπταισε, *stumbled* βοήσασα, *shouting, i.e., in a loud voice* τλῆμον, *wretched, poor* προσδραμοῦσα, *having run toward (him)*]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ πάντες περιμένουσιν ἀποροῦντες τί δεῖ ποιεῖν, προσεχώρησεν ἀνὴρ τις ἄμαξαν ἐλαύνων. ἰδὼν δ' αὐτοὺς ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ περιμένοντας καὶ ἀποροῦντας, τὸν ἡμίονον ἔστησε καί, “εἵπετέ μοι, τί πάσχετε, ὦ φίλοι;” ἔφη, “τί οὕτω περιμένετε; ἄρα κακόν τι ἔπαθεν ὁ παῖς;” οἱ μὲν οὖν πάντα ἐξηγήσαντο, ὁ δὲ, “ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ,” ἔφη, “καὶ ἀνάβηθι ἐπὶ τὴν ἄμαξαν. καὶ σύ, ὦ γύναι, εἰ τῷ ἀνδρὶ δοκεῖ, ἀνάβηθι. καὶ ἐγὼ γὰρ πρὸς τὸν λιμένα πορεύομαι.” οἱ δὲ ἐδέξαντο

25

τὸν λόγον καὶ οὕτω πορευόμενοι δι' ὀλίγου ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν λιμένα.

30

[περιμένουσιν, *are waiting around* ἔστησε, *he stopped* ἐξηγήσαντο, *related*  
ἀνάβηθι, *get up* ἐδέξαντο, *received, accepted*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. mathematics
2. polymath
3. orthodoxy (what must ἡ δόξα mean?)
4. orthodontist (what must ὁ ὀδούς, τοῦ ὀδόντος mean?)
5. orthopedics or orthopaedics

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: Past Tense: The Sigmatic 1st Aorist

Most Greek verbs have *sigmatic 1st aorists*, rather than the thematic 2nd aorist formations studied in the last chapter. Sigmatic 1st aorists are formed by adding the suffix -σα to the verb stem, e.g., ἔ-λῶ-σα. (In certain types of verbs the σ is lost and one finds only -α and not -σα; these *asigmatic 1st aorist* formations will be studied in the second half of this chapter.) As with the thematic 2nd aorists, the verb stem is augmented only in the indicative. Compare the forms below with those of the thematic 2nd aorist (see Chapter 11, Grammar 2, page 177).

#### Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active

**Present:** λύω, *I loosen*; **Aorist Stem:** λῶ-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔ-λῶ-σα, <i>I loosened</i>		λῶ-σαι,	λῶ-σᾶς,
ἔ-λῶ-σα-ς	λῶ-σον,	<i>to loosen</i>	λῶ-σᾶσα,
ἔ-λῶ-σ-ε(ν)	<i>loosen!</i>		λῶ-σαν,
ἔ-λῶ-σα-μεν			gen., λῶ-σαντ-ος, etc.
ἔ-λῶ-σα-τε	λῶ-σα-τε,		<i>having loosened,</i>
ἔ-λῶ-σα-ν	<i>loosen!</i>		<i>after loosening,</i>
			<i>sometimes, loosening</i>

**Sigmatic 1st Aorist Middle**

<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Imperative</b>	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Participle</b>
ἐ-λῷ-σά-μην, <i>I ransomed</i>		λῷ-σα-σθαι,	λῷ-σά-μεν-ος,
ἐ-λῷ-σα-σο > ἐλύσω	λῷ-σαι,	<i>to ransom</i>	λῷ-σα-μέν-η,
ἐ-λῷ-σα-το	<i>ransom!</i>		λῷ-σά-μεν-ον,
ἐ-λῷ-σά-μεθα			<i>having ransomed,</i>
ἐ-λῷ-σα-σθε	λῷ-σα-σθε		<i>after ransoming,</i>
ἐ-λῷ-σα-ντο	<i>ransom!</i>		sometimes, <i>ransoming</i>

**Note:**

1. The letter α is characteristic of sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorists, and it occurs in all forms except the 3rd person singular of the active indicative (ἐλύσε(ν)) and the singular imperative (λύσον).
2. Sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorist active infinitives are always accented on the next to the last syllable, e.g., λῷσαι and κελεύσαι (the diphthong -αι is short here for purposes of accentuation).
3. The -αι of sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorist middle infinitives is also counted as short, and the accent may thus stand on the third syllable from the end, e.g., λῷσασθαι (compare γενέσθαι, Chapter 11, Grammar 2, page 177, λῷσεσθαι, Review of Verbs, page 152, and λῷσεσθαι, Chapter 10, Grammar 1, page 158).

When the stem ends in a consonant, the same rules apply as in the formation of the sigmatic future (see Chapter 10, Grammar 1, pages 158–159). Here are the present, future, and aorist of the same verbs given as examples of the future in Chapter 10, Grammar 1, pages 158–159:

- a. If the stem ends in a *labial* (β, π, φ), the labial + -σ- produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ψ in the future and aorist, e.g.:

βλέπω, *I look; I see*, βλέψομαι, ἔβλεψα

πέμπω, *I send*, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα

γράφω, *I write*, γράψω, ἔγραψα

- b. If the stem ends in a *velar* (γ, κ, χ), the velar + -σ- produces the combination of sounds represented by the letter ξ in the future and aorist, e.g.:

λέγω, *I say; I tell; I speak*, λέξω, ἔλεξα

διώκω, *I pursue*, διώξω, ἐδίωξα

φυλάττω, *I guard*, [φυλακ-] φυλάξω, ἐφύλαξα

δέχομαι, *I receive*, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην

- c. If the stem ends in a *dental* (δ, θ, τ) or ζ, the dental or ζ is lost before the -σ- of the future and aorist, e.g.:

σπεύδω, *I hurry*, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα

πείθ-ω, *I persuade*, πείσω, ἔπεισα

πάττω, *I sprinkle*, [πατ-] πάσω, ἔπασα

παρασκευάζ-ω, *I prepare*, παρασκευάσω, παρεσκεύασα

Note: κομίζ-ω, *I bring; I take*, [κομιε-] κομιῶ, [κομι-] ἐκόμισα

Contract verbs lengthen the final stem vowel and then add σ for the future and the aorist, e.g.:

φιλέ-ω, *I love*, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα

Exception: καλέ-ω, *I call*, καλῶ (no difference in spelling between the present and the future tense for this verb), ἐκάλεσα (the ε of the stem does not lengthen in the aorist).

ἡγέ-ο-μαι, *I lead*, ἡγήσομαι, ἡγησάμην

τιμά-ω, *I honor*, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα

Note: θεά-ο-μαι, *I see, watch, look at*, θεάσομαι, ἐθεασάμην (note that because of the ε the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η)

Here are the verbs listed in Chapter 10, Grammar 4, pages 159–160, with deponent futures that have sigmatic 1st aorists:

ἀκούω, *I hear*, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκούσᾱς

βαδίζω, *I walk; I go*, [βαδιε-] βαδιοῦμαι, [βαδι-] ἐβάδισα, βαδίσᾱς

βλέπω, *I look; I see*, βλέπομαι, ἔβλεψα, βλέψᾱς

βοάω, *I shout*, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα, βοήσᾱς

διώκω, *I pursue, chase*, διώζομαι, ἐδίωξα, διώξᾱς

θαυμάζω, intransitive, *I am amazed*; transitive, *I wonder at, admire*, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, θαυμάσᾱς

πλέω, *I sail*, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι, [πλευ-] ἔπλευσα, πλεύσᾱς

Remember that the following verb may have an irregular augment: ἐργάζομαι, *I work; I accomplish*, aorist, ἡργασάμην or εἰργασάμην (see Chapter 11, Grammar 8, page 191).

### Exercise 12α

*In the second and third paragraphs of the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, locate eight sigmatic 1st aorist verb forms. Identify each form (mood, person, and number for finite verbs; gender, case, and number for participles).*

### Exercise 12β

1. *On the second pages of the sets of Verb Charts that you filled out for Exercise 10a.1, fill in the aorist forms that you have learned to date of the four verbs, βλέπω, φυλάττω, σπεύδω, and κομίζω.*

2. On your charts for θεωρέω, βοάω, ἀφικνέομαι, and ὀρμάομαι, fill in the aorist forms that you have learned to date.

### Exercise 12γ

Give the future indicative and the aorist indicative, 1st person singular, of the following verbs:

- |            |             |             |
|------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. δακρύω  | 6. διώκω    | 11. βοηθέω  |
| 2. βλέπω   | 7. νικάω    | 12. ἐθέλω   |
| 3. θαυμάζω | 8. σπεύδω   | 13. παύω    |
| 4. ἀκούω   | 9. κομίζω   | 14. φυλάττω |
| 5. δέχομαι | 10. ἡγέομαι | 15. πέμπω   |

## 2. Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active and Middle Participles

The sigmatic 1st aorist active participle is declined like the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (see Chapter 8, Grammar 4, page 126), except for the accent:

**Stems:** λῦσαντ- for masculine and neuter; λῦσᾶσ- for feminine

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
<b>Singular:</b>			
<b>Nom.</b>	λύσαντ-ς > λύσᾶς	λύσᾶσα	λύσαντ- > λῦσαν
<b>Gen.</b>	λύσαντ-ος	λῦσᾶσης	λύσαντ-ος
<b>Dat.</b>	λύσαντ-ι	λῦσᾶσῃ	λύσαντ-ι
<b>Acc.</b>	λύσαντ-α	λῦσᾶσαν	λύσαντ- > λῦσαν

### Plural:

<b>Nom.</b>	λύσαντ-ες	λῦσᾶσαι	λύσαντ-α
<b>Gen.</b>	λῦσάντ-ων	λῦσᾶσῶν	λῦσάντ-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	λύσαντ-σι(ν) > λῦσᾶσι(ν)	λῦσᾶσαις	λύσαντ-σι(ν) > λῦσᾶσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	λύσαντ-ας	λῦσᾶσᾶς	λύσαντ-α

The sigmatic 1st aorist middle participle has the same endings as the present middle participle (see Chapter 8, Grammar 1, page 115):

<b>Nom.</b>	λῦ-σά-μεν-ος	λῦ-σα-μέν-η	λῦ-σά-μεν-ον
<i>etc.</i>			

### Exercise 12δ

Write the forms of the aorist active participles of βλέπω and ποιέω.

**Exercise 12ε**

*Change the following present forms into corresponding forms of the aorist:*

- |                         |               |                             |
|-------------------------|---------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. κελεύομεν            | 6. οἰκοῦμεν   | 11. βοηθεῖν                 |
| 2. πέμπουσι(ν) (2 ways) | 7. τιμᾶ       | 12. νικῶμεν                 |
| 3. ἀκούετε              | 8. δακρύων    | 13. ἡγούμενος               |
| 4. λύεται               | 9. κομίζω     | 14. δέχου                   |
| 5. εὐχόμενοι            | 10. βαδίζομεν | 15. προσχωροῦσι(ν) (2 ways) |

**Exercise 12ζ**

*Translate into English. Identify present and aorist participles and explain why the present or the aorist is used in each case.*

1. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις οὐκ ἠθέλησε τῇ γυναικὶ πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἡγήσασθαι.
2. ὁ ξένος εἰσελθὼν εὐθὺς οἶνον ἤτησεν.
3. ὁ ἱερεὺς σπονδὴν ποιησάμενος τοῖς θεοῖς ἠϋΐξατο.
4. αἱ γυναῖκες, καίπερ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἰδοῦσαι, οὐκ ἐπαύσαντο βοῶσαι.
5. εἴσελθε, ὦ παῖ, καὶ τὸν πατέρα κἄλεσον.
6. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ παῖ, καὶ εἰπέ μοι τί ἐποίησας.
7. ἡ παρθένος τοὺς χοροὺς θεᾷσαμένη οἴκαδε ἔσπευσεν.
8. ὁ μὲν δεσπότης τοὺς δούλους ἐκέλευσε σιγῆσαι, οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐπαύσαντο διαλεγόμενοι.
9. οἱ ναῦται, τὴν ναῦν λῦσαντες, ἔπλευσαν ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος.
10. ὁ κῆρυξ τοὺς πολίτας ἐκέλευσε σιγήσαντας ἀκοῦσαι.

**Exercise 12η**

*Translate into Greek (note that to render the correct aspect of the actions, all verb forms in this exercise—indicatives, imperatives, infinitives, and participles—should be in the aorist):*

1. After making a libation (use ἡ σπονδή) and praying to the gods, we walked to the city.
2. The father told the boy to send the dog home.
3. I came to your aid, but you led (use ἡγέομαι) me into danger.
4. Call your mother, boy, and ask her to receive us.
5. The young man, after winning, received a crown (use ὁ στέφανος).
6. Having arrived at the city, we saw many men in the roads.

## Trade and Travel

In the late Bronze Age the Achaeans traded extensively throughout the eastern Mediterranean. The Dark Age that followed (ca. 1100–800) was generally a period of isolation, in which there was little overseas trade and dur-

ing which contacts with the East were broken. Early in the eighth century B.C., two Greek settlements were being made specifically for trade, the first in the East at Al Mina at the mouth of the Orontes River in Syria, the second in the West on the island of Ischia outside the Bay of Naples about 775 B.C. Both were probably made for trade in metals, essential for manufacturing arms (copper and tin from the East; copper, tin, and iron from Etruria in the West).

Al Mina was strategically placed to tap trade both inland up the Orontes to Mesopotamia and down the coast to Phoenician cities and Egypt. Its foundation was followed by a flood of Eastern imports into Greece, not only metals and artefacts, but also craftsmen and ideas, notably the alphabet, adapted by Greeks from Phoenician script about 750 B.C. The period was one of rapid change and development in Greece, a kind of renaissance. The *polis* (city-state) developed from unions of villages. Aristocracy replaced monarchy in most states. There was a revolution in warfare: hoplites (heavy armed infantry fighting in close line) replaced cavalry as the main fighting force. Growth in population led to emigrations; cities sent out colonies that peopled the coasts of the Mediterranean wherever there was no strong power to keep them out. These colonies, though founded primarily to provide land for surplus population, soon grew into prosperous, independent cities (e.g., Syracuse, founded in 733 B.C. by Corinth) and further stimulated trade, especially in grain, to supply the increasing population of the mainland. Italy from the Bay of Naples south and almost the entire coast of Sicily were studded with Greek colonies, and the area became known as Greater Greece. The leading states in this movement were Chalcis and Eretria in Euboea, Aegina, and Corinth. Miletus and other East Greek states were active in the north of the Aegean and the Black Sea.

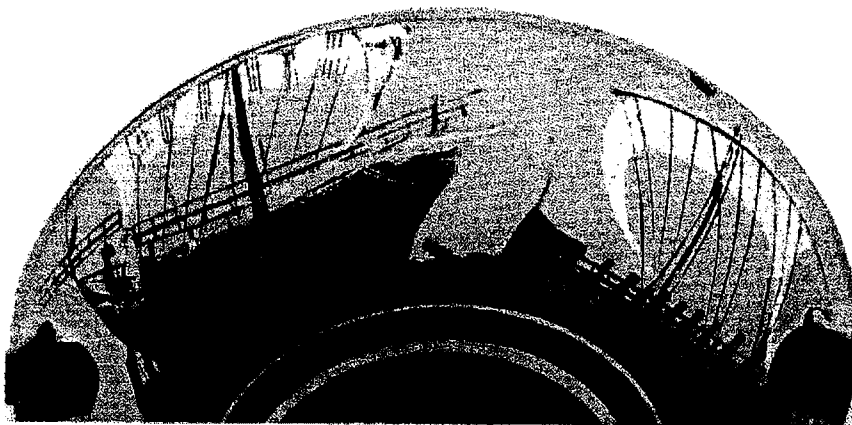
The story of Colaeus of Samos, who voyaged out through the Straits of Gibraltar and landed at Tartessus in the Bay of Cadiz, was told by Herodotus and is given at the end of this chapter; it shows the enterprise of these traders. The new market in the West opened up by Colaeus was developed by another Ionian state, Phocaea, located on the western coast of Asia Minor (see map, page 272). Phocaeans founded Massilia (Marseilles) about 600 B.C. and soon after entered into profitable trade with the king of Tartessus. This western expansion of Greek trade was curtailed by the Carthaginians, who succeeded in pushing back the Greeks and monopolizing the route through the Straits of Gibraltar to Spain, Brittany, and Britain.

Trade with Egypt developed in the seventh century, encouraged by a friendly pharaoh, Psammetichus I (664–610 B.C.). From Egypt the Greeks imported grain; their exports were olive oil, wine, perhaps silver, and certainly mercenary soldiers. Psammetichus employed a regular force of Greek hoplites, and two reigns later his grandson, Psammetichus II still used Greek mercenaries. A Greek settlement was made at the mouth of the Nile and was named Naucratis. It was given a charter by the pharaoh Amasis (570–526 B.C.). Naucratis developed into the largest port in Egypt, a flourishing center of trade and tourism. Egypt, with a culture of immemorial antiquity, fascinated the Greeks, and many visited it out of curiosity as well as for

trade. When the family members of the poet Sappho were exiled from their native Lesbos, she went to Sicily, but her brother went to Egypt, where he fell in love with the most famous courtesan of the day and spent his fortune on her. Sappho's contemporary, the poet Alcaeus, also went to Egypt during his exile, but his brother Antimenidas served as a mercenary in the army of Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, and took part in the campaign that culminated in the capture of Jerusalem (587 B.C.) and the exile of the Jews. Antimenidas became the army's champion and slew the enemy's Goliath.

At the time of our story, the Piraeus was the greatest port in Greece and, indeed, in the whole Mediterranean. In Chapter 14 we will explain how Athens came to take the lead from Corinth as a naval and mercantile power. The harbor must have been always crowded with ships both Athenian and foreign, both Greek and barbarian. The most important single item of import was grain, which came from the great grain producing areas of the ancient world: Egypt, Sicily, and the steppes of south Russia (Scythia). Athens had treaties with the princes of Scythia that gave her a monopoly of this trade. Shipbuilding timber was imported in large quantities both for building merchantmen and for the great Athenian navy (300 triremes). Attica did not produce any metals except for silver from the mines at Laurium. She exported olive oil, silver, and fine pottery (her black and red figure vases had driven out all competitors by 550 B.C.).

Although commerce and far-flung trade thrived, we should not forget that only a minority of the people were involved in it. The farmers stuck to their farms, and the attitude of Dicaeopolis to seafaring may have been not unlike that of Hesiod three centuries before. The only voyage he ever made was to cross the straits between Boeotia and Euboea to take part in a poetry competition. You can only sail safely, he says, in the fifty days following the summer solstice (21 June). You might also, he says, risk a voyage in spring:



The perils of seafaring  
A pirate ship bears down on an unsuspecting merchant ship;  
it is about to ram the merchant ship with its bronze beak.



I don't recommend it. It has no attraction for me—it must be snatched, and you are unlikely to avoid trouble. But men will do it in the foolishness of their hearts; for money is life to unhappy mortals. But it is a terrible thing to die in the waves. (Hesiod, *Works and Days* 682–687)

## Classical Greek

### Scolion

#### The Four Best Things in Life

The following is an example of a type of Greek poetry called *scolia*, songs sung during the drinking after dinner parties. The author is unknown. The lines (Campbell, no. 890) incorporate traditional Greek sentiments.

ὕγιαίνειν μὲν ἄριστον ἀνδρὶ θνητῷ,  
δεύτερον δὲ καλὸν φυᾶν γενέσθαι,  
τὸ τρίτον δὲ πλουτεῖν ἀδόλως,  
καὶ τὸ τέταρτον ἡβᾶν μετὰ τῶν φίλων.

[ὕγιαίνειν, *to be healthy*: this and the infinitive in the second line are the subjects of their clauses; supply ἐστὶ in each clause θνητῷ, *mortal* φυᾶν, accusative of respect, *in physique* τὸ τρίτον, *the third (best) thing*; subject, supply ἐστὶ πλουτεῖν, *to be rich* ἀδόλως, *without tricks, without treachery, honestly* ἡβᾶν, *to be young*]

## New Testament Greek

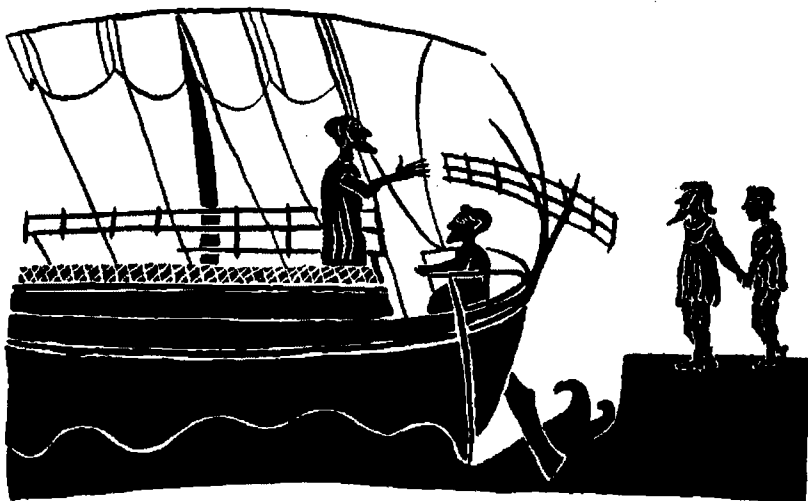
### Luke 15.3–7

#### The Parable of the Lost Sheep

εἶπεν δὲ πρὸς αὐτοὺς τὴν παραβολὴν ταύτην λέγων, “τίς ἄνθρωπος ἐξ ὑμῶν ἔχων ἑκατὸν πρόβατα καὶ ἀπολέσας ἐξ αὐτῶν ἓν οὐ καταλείπει τὰ ἐνενήκοντα ἐννέα ἐν τῇ ἐρήμῳ καὶ πορεύεται ἐπὶ τὸ ἀπολωλὸς ἕως εὕρῃ αὐτό; καὶ εὕρων ἐπιτίθῃσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς ὤμους αὐτοῦ χαίρων καὶ ἐλθὼν εἰς τὸν οἶκον συγκαλεῖ τοὺς φίλους καὶ τοὺς γείτονας λέγων αὐτοῖς, ‘συγχάρητέ μοι, ὅτι εὑρον τὸ πρόβατόν μου τὸ ἀπολωλός.’ λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι οὕτως χαρὰ ἐν τῷ οὐρανῷ ἔσται ἐπὶ ἐνὶ ἁμαρτωλῷ μετανοοῦντι ἢ ἐπὶ ἐνενήκοντα ἐννέα δικαίοις οἵτινες οὐ χρειᾶν ἔχουσιν μετανοῖας.”

[εἶπεν: Jesus is the subject πρὸς αὐτοὺς, i.e., to the Pharisees and scribes who complained that Jesus was associating with tax collectors and sinners ταύτην, *this* ἑκατὸν, *a hundred* ἀπολέσας (from ἀπόλλυμι), *having lost* ἐνενήκοντα ἐννέα, *ninety-nine* τῇ ἐρήμῳ, *the desert* ἐπὶ + acc., *after* τὸ ἀπολωλός, *the lost (one)* ἕως, *until* εὕρῃ, subjunctive, *he finds* ἐπιτίθῃσιν, *he puts (it) on* τοὺς ὤμους, *shoulders* αὐτοῦ = αὐτοῦ τοὺς γείτονας, *his neighbors* συγχάρητέ (from συγχαίρω) + dat., *rejoice with* ὅτι, *because* χαρὰ, *joy* ἐπὶ, *over, at* ἁμαρτωλῷ, *sinner* μετανοοῦντι, *repenting* ἢ, *than, (more) than* δικαίοις, *just/righteous (men)* οἵτινες, *who* χρειᾶν, *need* μετανοῖας, *of/for repentance*]

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΠΕΙΡΑΙΑ (β)



ὁ Δικαιοπόλις τὴν γυναῖκα χαίρειν κελεύσας, τῷ Φιλίππῳ πρὸς τὴν ναὺν ἡγήσατο.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἐξηγέομαι [ἐκ- + ἡγέομαι].  
 ἐξηγήσομαι, ἐξηγησάμην,  
 ἐξηγησάμενος, *I relate*  
 ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἠρώτησα,  
 ἐρωτήσας or [ἐρ-] ἠρόμην,  
 ἐρόμενος, *I ask*  
 φαίνομαι, [φανε-] φανούμαι,  
 (aorist to be presented later),  
*I appear*

### Nouns

ὁ ἔμπορος, τοῦ ἐμπορίου, *mer-  
chant*  
 ὁ ναύκληρος, τοῦ ναυκλήρου,  
*ship's captain*

ὁ ναύτης, τοῦ ναύτου, *sailor*

### Adjectives

πλείων/πλέον, alternative  
 forms for either masculine or  
 feminine, πλέον, neuter,  
*more*  
 πλεῖστος, -η, -ον, *most; very  
great; pl., very many*

### Adverbs

Ἀθήναζε, *to Athens*  
 μέγα, *greatly; loudly*  
 τότε, *then*

### Expression

μάλιστά γε, *certainly, indeed*

ἐν δὲ τῷ λιμένι πλεῖστος μὲν ἦν ὄμιλος, πλεῖστος δὲ θόρυβος.  
 πανταχόσε γὰρ ἔσπευδον οἱ ἄνθρωποι· οἱ μὲν γὰρ ναύκληροι τοὺς  
 ναύτας ἐκάλουν, κελεύοντες αὐτοὺς τὰ φορτία ἐκ τῶν νεῶν ἐκφέρειν,  
 οἱ δὲ ἔμποροι μέγα ἐβόων τὰ φορτία δεχόμενοι καὶ εἰς ἀμάξας  
 εἰσφέροντες· ἄλλοι δὲ τὰ πρόβατα ἐξελάσαντες διὰ τῶν ὁδῶν ἦγον. ὁ  
 δὲ Δικαιοπόλις πάντα θεώμενος ἠπόρει τί δεῖ ποιῆσαι καὶ ποῦ δεῖ

ζητεῖν ναῦν τινα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαυρον πλευσομένην· πλείστᾱς γὰρ ναῦς εἶδε πρὸς τῷ χώματι ὁρμούσᾱς. τέλος δὲ πάντες ἐν οἴνοπωλίῳ τινὶ καθιστάμενοι οἶνον ἤτησαν.

[θόρυβος, *uproar* πανταχόσε, *in all directions* ἔσπευδον, *were hurrying* ἐκάλουν, *were calling* ἐβδών, *were shouting* ἐξελάσαντες, *having driven out* ἡγον, *were leading* ἠπόρει, *was at a loss* τῷ χώματι, *the pier* ὁρμούσᾱς, *lying at anchor* οἴνοπωλίῳ, *wine-shop, inn*]

ἐν ᾧ δὲ τὸν οἶνον ἔπινον, προσεχώρησε ναύτης τις γεραιὸς καί, 10  
 “τίνες ἐστέ, ὦ φίλοι,” ἔφη, “καὶ τί βουλόμενοι πάρεστε; ἄγροικοὶ γὰρ ὄντες φαίνεσθε ἀπορεῖν. εἵπετέ μοι τί πάσχετε.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις πάντα ἐξηγησάμενος, “ἄρ’ οἴσθα,” ἔφη, “εἴ τις ναῦς πάρεστι μέλλουσα πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαυρον πλεύσεσθαι;” ὁ δέ, “μάλιστά γε,” ἔφη· 15  
 “ἡ γὰρ ἐμὴ ναῦς μέλλει ἐκεῖσε πλεύσεσθαι. ἔπεσθέ μοι οὖν παρὰ τὸν ναύκληρον. ἀλλ’ ἰδοῦ, πάρεστιν αὐτὸς ὁ ναύκληρος εἰς καιρὸν προσχωρῶν.” καὶ οὕτως εἰπὼν ἡγήσατο αὐτοῖς παρὰ νεανίαν τινὰ ἐκ νεῶς τινος τότε ἐκβαίνοντα.

[ἔπινον, *they were drinking* ἄγροικοι, *countrymen, rustics* ἄρ’ οἴσθα, *do you know?* εἰς καιρὸν, *at just the right time*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις προσχωρήσᾱς ἤρετο αὐτὸν εἰ ἐθέλει κομίζειν αὐτοὺς πρὸς τὴν Ἐπίδαυρον. ὁ δέ, “μάλιστά γε,” ἔφη, “ἐθέλω ὑμᾶς 20  
 ἐκεῖσε κομίζειν. ἀλλὰ εἴσβητε ταχέως· εὐθὺς γὰρ πλεύσομεθα.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἐπὶ πόσῳ;” ὁ δὲ ναύκληρος, “ἐπὶ πέντε δραχμαῖς,” ἔφη. ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἀλλ’ ἄγᾱν αἰτεῖς. ἐγὼ δύο δραχμὰς ἐθέλω παρασχεῖν.” ὁ δέ, “οὐδαμῶς· τέτταρας αἰτῶ.” ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “ἰδοῦ, τρεῖς δραχμὰς· οὐ γὰρ δύνάμαι πλεον παρασχεῖν.” ὁ δέ, 25  
 “ἔστω· παράσχες μοὶ τὸ ἀργύριον· καὶ εἴσβητε ταχέως.”

[εἴσβητε, *get on board* ἐπὶ πόσῳ; *for how much?* ἄγᾱν, *too much* ἔστω, *all right!*]

ὁ οὖν Δικαιοπόλις τὸ ἀργύριον τῷ ναυκλήρῳ παρέσχε καὶ τὴν τε γυναῖκα καὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν χαίρειν ἐκέλευσεν. ἡ δὲ Μυρρίνη δακρύσᾱσα, “τὸν παῖδα,” ἔφη, “εὖ φύλαττε, ὦ φίλε ἄνερ, καὶ σπεῦδε 30  
 ὥς τάχιστα οἴκαδε ἐπανιέναι. σὺ δέ, ὦ φίλτατε παῖ, θάρρει καὶ σὺν θεῷ δι’ ὀλίγου νόστησον ὑγιεῖς ἔχων τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς.” οὕτως

εἰποῦσα ἀπετρέψατο· ὁ δὲ ἀδελφὸς αὐτῇ ἡγήσατο Ἀθήναζε  
δακρυόουση.

[δακρῦσᾱσα, *bursting into tears* φίλτατε, *dearest* θάρρει, *cheer up!* σὺν θεῷ,  
*with god's help* νόστησον, *return home* ὑγιεῖς, *sound, healthy* ἀπετρέψατο,  
*she turned herself away*]

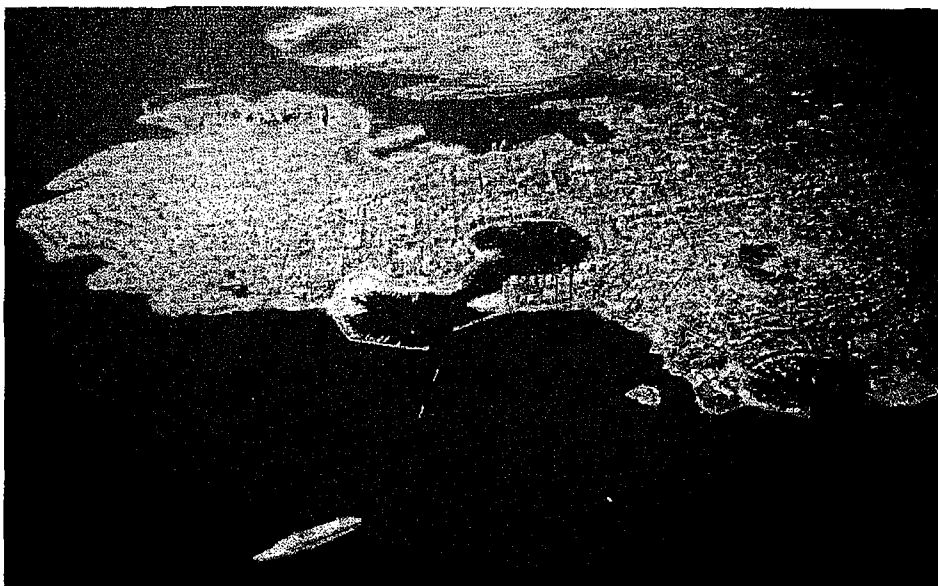
## WORD BUILDING

The prefix ἀ- (ἀ-privative) may be attached to the beginning of many verbs, nouns, and adjectives (ἀν- is prefixed to words beginning with vowels) to negate or reverse their meaning or to express a lack or absence, e.g., δυνατός, *possible*, ἀδύνατος, *impossible*. Compare *moral* and *amoral* ("without morals"; compare *immoral*) in English.

*From the words at the left, deduce the meaning of those to the right:*

- |  |               |
|--|---------------|
| 1. αἶτιος, -ᾱ, -ον                             | ἀναίτιος, -ον |
| 2. ἄξιος, -ᾱ, -ον ( <i>worthy</i> )            | ἀνάξιος, -ον  |
| 3. δίκαιος, -ᾱ, -ον ( <i>just</i> )            | ἄδικος, -ον   |
| 4. ἀνδρεῖος, -ᾱ, -ον (from ὁ ἀνὴρ, τοῦ ἀνδρός) | ἄνανδρος, -ον |

Note that adjectives compounded with ἀ-privative have no separate feminine forms; the masculine forms are used with either masculine or feminine nouns.



The Piraeus, from the southeast

The large landlocked harbor to the northwest was Cantharus, the main commercial port; the smaller harbors to the south, Zea (left) and Munychia (right), were for warships.

## GRAMMAR

## 3. Verb Forms: The Asigmatic 1st Aorist of Verbs with Liquid and Nasal Stems

You will recall that verbs with stems ending in a *liquid* (λ, ρ) or a *nasal* (μ, ν) have asigmatic contract futures with stems often different from the stem seen in the present tense (see Chapter 10, Grammar 6, pages 166–167). In the aorist of these verbs ε is not added to the stem as it is in the future, and the σ of the -σα aorist suffix is lost; this causes the stem vowel (seen in the future) to lengthen (if it is not long already). Because of the loss of the σ, we call these *asigmatic 1st aorists*.

αἴρω, *I lift*, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ, [ἄρ-] ἦρ-α (ᾱ of the stem does not change)  
 ἀποκρίνομαι, *I answer*, [κρίνε-] ἀποκρινούμαι, [κρίν-] ἀπεκρίν-ά-μην  
 (ῖ lengthens to ῑ)  
 ἀποκτείνω, *I kill*, [κτενε-] ἀποκτενῶ, [κτειν-] ἀπέκτειν-α  
 (ε lengthens to ει)  
 ἐγείρω, *I wake* (someone) *up*; middle, *I wake up*, [ἐγερε-] ἐγερῶ,  
 [ἐγειρ-] ἤγειρα (ε lengthens to ει)  
 μένω, *I stay*; *I wait*, [μενε-] μενῶ, [μειν-] ἔμειν-α (ε lengthens to ει)  
 φαίνομαι, *I appear*, [φανε-] φανούμαι, [φην-] ἐφην-ά-μην (α lengthens to η)

As an example, we give the verb αἴρω, *I lift*, which in the middle voice may mean *I carry off for myself*; *I win* (e.g., a prize).

## Asigmatic 1st Aorist Active

Present: αἴρω, *I lift*; Aorist Stem: ἄρ-

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἦρ-α, <i>I lifted</i>		ἄρ-αι, <i>to lift</i>	ἄρ-ᾱς, ἄρ-ᾱσα, ἄρ-αν, gen., ἄρ-αντ-ος, etc., <i>having lifted</i> , <i>after lifting</i> , sometimes, <i>lifting</i>
ἦρ-α-ς	ἄρ-ον, <i>lift!</i>		
ἦρ-ε(ν)			
ἦρ-α-μεν			
ἦρ-α-τε	ἄρ-α-τε, <i>lift!</i>		
ἦρ-α-ν			

## Asigmatic 1st Aorist Middle

ἦρ-ά-μην, <i>I carried off</i>		ἄρ-α-σθαι, <i>to carry off</i>	ἄρ-ά-μεν-ος, ἄρ-α-μέν-η, ἄρ-ά-μεν-ον, <i>having carried off</i> , <i>after carrying off</i> , sometimes, <i>carrying off</i>
ἦρ-α-σο > ἦρω	ἄρ-αι, <i>carry off!</i>		
ἦρ-α-το			
ἦρ-ά-μεθα			
ἦρ-α-σθε	ἄρ-α-σθε <i>carry off!</i>		
ἦρ-α-ντο			

**Exercise 120**

Fill in the aorist forms of the verbs ἀποκτείνω and ἀποκρίνομαι that you have learned to date on the Verb Charts on which you entered forms for Exercise 10ζ.

**Exercise 121**

Change the following present forms into corresponding forms of the aorist:

- |                |                |                     |
|----------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. αἶρειν      | 6. μένε        | 11. ἐγείρων         |
| 2. ἐγείρει     | 7. ἀποκτείνειν | 12. ἀποκρίνου       |
| 3. μένουςα     | 8. αἶρων       | 13. φαίνεται        |
| 4. ἀποκρίνεται | 9. μένειν      | 14. ἀποκρίνεσθαι    |
| 5. φαινόμενος  | 10. αἶρομεν    | 15. ἀποκτείνουσι(ν) |
|                |                | (2 ways)            |

**4. Irregular Sigmatic 1st Aorists**

Learn the future and aorist of the following verbs, which are irregular:

δοκεῖ, impersonal, *it seems (good)*, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), δόξαν  
 ἐθέλω, *I am willing; I wish*, [ἐθελε-], ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἐθελήσας  
 ἐλαύνω, *I drive*, [ἐλα-] ἐλῶ, ἐλῶς, ἐλᾶ, etc., ἥλασα, ἐλάσας  
 καίω or κάω, *I kindle, burn*; middle, intransitive, *I burn, am on fire*,  
 [καυ-] καύσω, ἔκαυσα, καύσας  
 καλέω, *I call*, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, καλέσας  
 μάχομαι, *I fight*, [μαχε-] μαχοῦμαι, ἐμαχεσάμην, μαχεσάμενος  
 πλέω, *I sail*, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι, [πλευ-]  
 ἔπλευσα, πλεύσας

**Exercise 12κ**

Read aloud and translate. Identify liquid, nasal, and irregular aorists:

- ὁ πάππος ἐπὶ τῇ γῇ κείμενος (*lying*) ἠθέλησε καθεύδειν.
- ἀλλ' ὁ Φίλιππος προσδραμὼν ἤγειρεν αὐτόν.
- ὁ δέ, "τί με ἤγειρας, ὦ παῖ," ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος ἔφη· "λύκος τις ἐπὶ τὰ πρόβατα ὀρμάται."
- ὁ δὲ πάππος, "κάλεσον τὸν Ἄργον," ἔφη, "καὶ ἄμυνον τὸν λύκον τοῖς προβάτοις." ἀμύνω, [ἀμυνε-], ἀμυνῶ, ἤμυνα, *I ward off X (acc.) from Y (dat.)*
- ὁ οὖν Φίλιππος τὸν Ἄργον καλέσας ἀνὰ τὸ ὄρος ἔσπευσεν.

6. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ἄργος ἀγρίως ὑλακτῶν (*barking*) τὸν λύκον ἐδίωξεν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος λίθους ἄρτις αὐτὸν ἔβαλεν.
7. δι' ὀλίγου δὲ ὁ Ἄργος τὸν λύκον ὁδᾶξ (*with his teeth*) ἔσχεν, ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος τῇ μαχαίρᾳ αὐτὸν ἀπέκτεινεν.
8. ὁ δὲ πάππος εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος ἀφικόμενος, “εὖ γε,” ἔφη, “τοῖς προβάτοις τὸν λύκον ἀνδρείως ἡμύνετε.
9. “νῦν δὲ σὺ μὲν ἐνθάδε μείνον, ἐγὼ δὲ οἴκαδε ἐπάνειμι· βούλομαι γὰρ τῇ μητρὶ ἀγγεῖλαι τί ἐγένετο.” ἀγγέλλω, [ἀγγελε-] ἀγγελῶ, [ἄγγειλ-] ἡγγεῖλα, *I announce; I tell*
10. τῷ οὖν Φιλίππῳ ἔδοξε τὰ πρόβατα εἰς τὸ αὖλιον (*sheepfold*) εἰσελάσαι.

## 5. Verb Forms: Augment of Compound Verbs

Verbs with prepositional prefixes attach the syllabic augment to the stem of the simple verb. Observe βάλλω (aorist ἔβαλον) with the following prefixes, and note the changes in the spelling of some of the prefixes in the combined forms:

εἰς- <i>into</i>	εἰσβάλλω, εἰσέβαλον
ἐκ- <i>out</i>	ἐκβάλλω, ἐξέβαλον
προς- <i>to, toward</i>	προσβάλλω, προσέβαλον
ἀπο- <i>away</i>	ἀποβάλλω, ἀπέβαλον
κατα- <i>down</i>	καταβάλλω, κατέβαλον
συν- <i>together</i>	συνβάλλω, συνέβαλον

### Exercise 12λ

Give the aorist indicative, 1st person singular, of the following verbs:

- |              |                |                      |
|--------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. προσχωρέω | 4. ἀποκρίνομαι | 7. εἰσκομίζω         |
| 2. ἐκπέμπω   | 5. εἰσπέμπω    | 8. συνέρχομαι*       |
| 3. ἀποφεύγω  | 6. ἀποκτείνω   | 9. συλλαμβάνω (συν-) |

\*N.B. The accent of compound verbs never recedes beyond the augment.

### Exercise 12μ

Read aloud and translate:

1. οἱ δοῦλοι τοὺς λίθους ἄρταντες ἐξέβαλον ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ.
2. ὁ δεσπότης τοὺς βοῦς εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσελάσας τοὺς δούλους ἐκάλεσεν.
3. ὁ δεσπότης τοὺς μὲν δούλους ἀπέπεμψεν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἔμεινεν.
4. οἱ δοῦλοι τὸ ἄροτρον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ καταλιπόντες ταχέως οἴκαδε ἐπανήλθον.
5. ἡ παρθένος τὸν πατέρα ἰδοῦσα ταχέως προσεχώρησε καὶ ἤρετο τί οὐκ οἴκαδε ἐπανέρχεται.
6. ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι δεῖ τὸν ἀγρὸν ἀροῦν (*to plow*).

7. οἱ νεανῖαι οὐκ ἀπέφυγον ἀλλὰ ἀνδρείως ἐμαχέσαντο.
8. ὁ ἄγγελος ἡγγεilen ὅτι πολλοὶ ἐν τῇ μάχῃ (*battle*) ἀπέθανον.
9. οἱ ναῦται τὴν ναῦν παρασκευασάμενοι ἐκ τοῦ λιμένος ἐξέπλευσαν.
10. τῷ ναυκλήρῳ τὸν χειμῶνα φοβουμένῳ ἔδοξε πρὸς τὸν λιμένα ἐπανελθεῖν.

## Ο ΚΩΛΑΙΟΣ ΤΟΝ ΤΑΡΤΗΣΣΟΝ ΕΥΡΙΣΚΕΙ

*Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 1.163 and 4.152) and answer the comprehension questions:*

πρῶτοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τὸν Τάρτησσον ἀφίκοντο οἱ Σάμιοι. ἔμπορος γάρ τις, Κωλαῖος ὀνόματι, ἀπὸ τῆς Σάμου ὁρμώμενος πρὸς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἔπλει, ἀλλὰ χειμῶν μέγιστος ἐγένετο, καὶ πολλὰς ἡμέρας οὐκ ἐπαύσατο ὁ ἄνεμος αἰεὶ φέρων τὴν ναῦν πρὸς τὴν ἐσπέραν. τέλος δὲ ὁ Κωλαῖος καὶ οἱ ἐταῖροι Ἡρακλείδης στήλᾳς διεκπεράσαντες εἰς Ὀκεανὸν εἰσέπλευσαν καὶ οὕτως εἰς τὸν Τάρτησσον ἀφίκοντο.

[τῶν Ἑλλήνων, *of the Greeks* Τάρτησσον, *Tartessus* οἱ Σάμιοι, *the Samians* Κωλαῖος, *Colaeus* τῆς Σάμου, *Samos* τὴν Αἴγυπτον, *Egypt* ἔπλει, *was sailing* ὁ ἄνεμος, *the wind* τὴν ἐσπέραν, *the evening, the west* Ἡρακλείδης στήλᾳς, *the Pillars of Hercules* διεκπεράσαντες, *having passed through* Ὀκεανὸν, *the Ocean*]

1. Who were the first Greeks to arrive at Tartessus?
2. To what country did Colaeus set out to sail?
3. What happened that made him sail westward?
4. What did he sail through before arriving at Tartessus?

οἱ δὲ ἐπιχώριοι λαβόντες αὐτοὺς ἐκόμισαν παρὰ τὸν βασιλεῖα, γέροντά τινα, Ἀργαθώνιον ὀνόματι. ὁ δὲ ἤρετο αὐτοὺς τίνας εἰσὶ καὶ πόθεν ἤκουσιν. ὁ δὲ Κωλαῖος ἀπεκρίντατο· “Ἑλληνές ἐσμεν, καὶ πρὸς τὴν Αἴγυπτον πλέοντας χειμῶν ἡμᾶς εἰς τὴν σὴν γῆν ἤλασεν.” ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς πάντα ἀκούσας ἐθαύμασεν, εὐμενῶς δὲ δεξάμενος αὐτοὺς πλείστον τε ἀργύριον καὶ πλείστον καττίτερον αὐτοῖς παρέσχεν. οἱ δὲ πολὺν τινα χρόνον ἐν τῷ Ταρτήσσῳ μένοντες ἐμπορίαν ἐποιοῦντο. τέλος δὲ τὸν Ἀργαθώνιον χαίρειν κελεύσαντες ἀπέπλευσαν καὶ εἰς τὴν Σάμον ἐπανήλθον οὐδὲν κακὸν παθόντες.

[οἱ . . . ἐπιχώριοι, *the natives* Ἀργαθώνιον, *Argathonius* εὐμενῶς, *kindly* καττίτερον, *tin* ἐμπορίαν ἐποιοῦντο, *were carrying on trade*]

5. Where did the natives take Colaeus?
6. What did Argathonius ask Colaeus and his men?
7. What did Colaeus answer?
8. How did Argathonius receive Colaeus and his men and what did he give them?



9. What did Colaeus and his men do in Tartessus?
10. Did Colaeus and his men arrive home safely?

### Exercise 12v

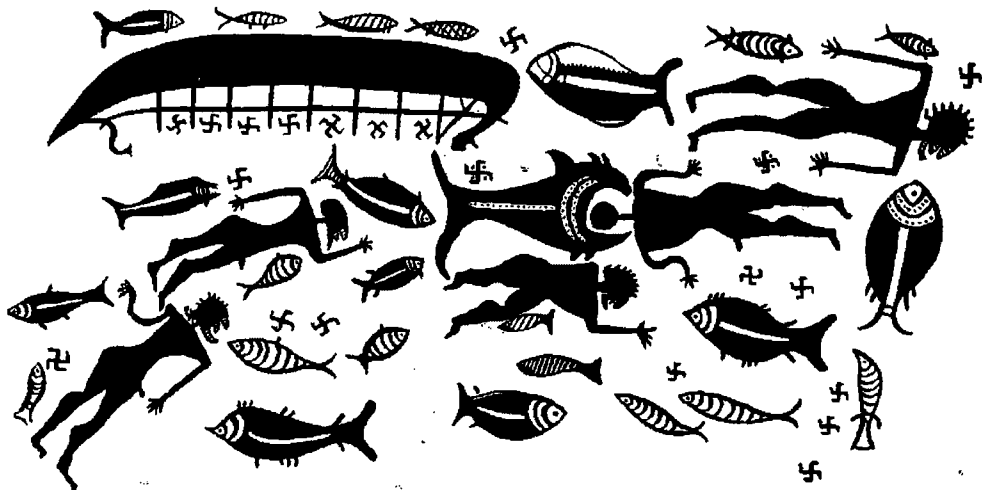
*Translate into Greek:*

1. When Colaeus returned home, he told the Greeks (τοῖς Ἑλλησι(ν)) what happened.
2. All were amazed, and many, having heard that Argathonius was (*use present tense*) very wealthy (ὀλβιος), wanted (ἐβούλοντο) to sail to Tartessus.
3. They decided to set out immediately; and having prepared four ships they sailed away.
4. After suffering many terrible things, they finally arrived at Tartessus.
5. The king received them kindly and handed over to them much silver and tin (*use ὁ καττίτερος*).
6. Then the Greeks for a long time were carrying on trade with (πρός) the citizens of Tartessus.

### Greek Wisdom

οἱ πλείστοι κακοί.

Βίας (of Priene)

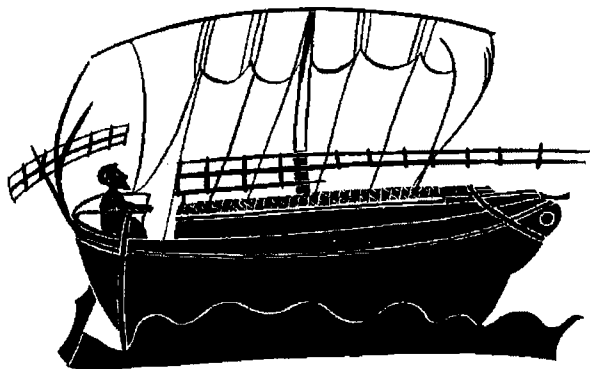


An ancient shipwreck; an overturned ship and men in the sea, one being eaten by a fish

# 13

## ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (α)

---



στρογγύλη ἦν ἡ ναῦς, ἥ σίτον τε καὶ οἶνον ἔφερε πρὸς τὰς νήσους.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἐρέσσω, no future, [ἔρετ-]

ἤρεσα, ἐρέσας, *I row*

ἡσυχάζω, ἡσυχάσω, ἡσύχασα,

ἡσυχάσας, *I keep quiet; I rest*

#### Nouns

ὁ ἄνεμος, τοῦ ἀνέμου, *wind*

τὰ ἱστία, τῶν ἱστιῶν, *sails*

#### Pronoun

ἀλλήλων, *of one another*

#### Adjectives

βέβαιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *firm, steady*

λαμπρός, -ᾱ, -όν, *bright; brilliant*

ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ, *quick, swift*

#### Proper Name

ἡ Σαλαμίς, τῆς Σαλαμῖνος,  
*Salamis*

ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ ναύτης ὁ γεραιὸς τὸν τε Δικαιοπόλιν καὶ τὸν παῖδα εἰς τὴν ναῦν ἀγαγὼν ἐκέλευσε καθίζεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ καταστρώματι. ἐνταῦθα δὴ ὁ μὲν ναύκληρος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς ναύτας λῦσαι τὰ πείσματα, οἱ δὲ ναῦται τὰ πείσματα λύσαντες τὴν ναῦν βραδέως ἤρεσσον πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν. ἔπειτα δὲ τὴν γῆν καταλιπόντες τὰ ἱστία ἐπέτασαν.

[τῷ καταστρώματι, *the deck*    τὰ πείσματα, *the cables*    ἤρεσσον, *were rowing*  
ἐπέτασαν (from πετάννυμι), *they spread*]

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡ μὲν ναῦς βεβαίως ἔπλει, οἱ δὲ ναῦται τῶν ἔργων παυσάμενοι ἡσύχαζον, ὁ Δικαιοπόλις πᾶσαν τὴν ναῦν ἐσκόπει.

στρογγύλη ἦν ἡ ναῦς, οὐ μεγάλη οὐδὲ ταχεῖα ἀλλὰ βεβαίᾳ, ἡ φορτία  
 ἔφερε πρὸς τὰς νήσους· σῖτός τε γὰρ ἐνῆν καὶ οἶνος καὶ ὕλη καὶ 10  
 πρόβατα. πολλοὶ δ' ἐνήσαν ἄνθρωποι, ἄγροικοι ὄντες, οἱ τὰ φορτία  
 ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις πωλήσαντες οἴκαδε ἐπανῆσαν· ἄλλοι δὲ παρὰ τοὺς  
 οἰκείους ἐπορεύοντο, οἱ ἐν ταῖς νήσοις ὄκουν, πάντες δὲ ἐτέρποντο  
 πλέοντες—οὕριος γὰρ ἦν ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ λαμπρὸς ὁ ἥλιος—καὶ ἡ 15  
 διελέγοντο ἀλλήλοις ἡ μέλη ᾗδον.

[ἐσκόπει, began to examine στρογγύλη, round ἦν, was ἡ, which φορτία,  
 cargo ἐνῆν, was in (it) ὕλη, timber ἐνήσαν, were in (it) ἄγροικοι, rustic οἱ,  
 who πωλήσαντες, having sold ἐπανῆσαν, were going back, returning τοὺς  
 οἰκείους, their relatives οὕριος, favorable μέλη, songs ᾗδον (from ᾄδω), they  
 were singing]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words. Give the meanings of the Greek words in parentheses:

1. nautical
2. cosmonaut (ὁ κόσμος, τοῦ κόσμου)
3. aeronaut (ὁ or ἡ αἴρ, τοῦ or τῆς αἲρος)
4. astronaut (τὸ ἄστρον, τοῦ ἄστρου)
5. cosmology
6. astrology

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Verb Forms: The Imperfect or Past Progressive Tense

#### a. Regular and Contract Verbs:

For regular and contract verbs, the *imperfect* or *past progressive* tense is formed by augmenting the verb stem as found in the present tense and adding the thematic vowels and the secondary personal endings. Compare the formation and endings of the thematic 2nd aorist, which is similar except that it is based on a different stem. The imperfect tense has forms only in the indicative; there are no imperfect imperatives, infinitives, or participles.

## Regular Verbs

## Imperfect Active

ἔ-λῶ-ο-ν	<i>I was loosening, I used to loosen</i>
ἔ-λῶ-ε-ς	<i>you were loosening, you used to loosen</i>
ἔ-λῶ-ε(ν)	<i>he/she was loosening, he/she used to loosen</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ο-μεν	<i>we were loosening, we used to loosen</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ε-τε	<i>you were loosening, you used to loosen</i>
ἔ-λῶ-ο-ν	<i>they were loosening, they used to loosen</i>

## Imperfect Middle

ἐ-λῶ-ό-μην	<i>I was ransoming, I used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ε-σο > ἐλῶου	<i>you were ransoming, you used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ε-το	<i>he/she was ransoming, he/she used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ό-μεθα	<i>we were ransoming, we used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ε-σθε	<i>you were ransoming, you used to ransom</i>
ἐ-λῶ-ο-ντο	<i>they were ransoming, they used to ransom</i>

## Contract Verbs

Contract verbs follow the rules given above for the formation of the imperfect tense and the rules for contraction given on pages 39 and 56:

## Active

ἐ-φίλε-ο-ν >	ἐφίλουν	ἐ-τίμα-ο-ν >	ἐτίμων
ἐ-φίλε-ε-ς >	ἐφίλεις	ἐ-τίμα-ε-ς >	ἐτίμας
ἐ-φίλε-ε >	ἐφίλει	ἐ-τίμα-ε >	ἐτίμα
ἐ-φιλέ-ο-μεν >	ἐφιλοῦμεν	ἐ-τιμά-ο-μεν >	ἐτιμῶμεν
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-τε >	ἐφιλεῖτε	ἐ-τιμά-ε-τε >	ἐτιμάτε
ἐ-φίλε-ο-ν >	ἐφίλουν	ἐ-τίμα-ο-ν >	ἐτίμων

## Middle

ἐ-φιλε-ό-μην >	ἐφιλούμην	ἐ-τιμα-ό-μην >	ἐτιμώμην
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-σο >	ἐφιλοῦ	ἐ-τιμά-ε-σο >	ἐτιμῶ
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-το >	ἐφιλεῖτο	ἐ-τιμά-ε-το >	ἐτιμάτο
ἐ-φιλε-ό-μεθα >	ἐφιλούμεθα	ἐ-τιμα-ό-μεθα >	ἐτιμώμεθα
ἐ-φιλέ-ε-σθε >	ἐφιλεῖσθε	ἐ-τιμά-ε-σθε >	ἐτιμάσθε
ἐ-φιλέ-ο-ντο >	ἐφιλοῦντο	ἐ-τιμά-ο-ντο >	ἐτιμῶντο

Here is the imperfect active of πλέω (for the present, see Chapter 6, Grammar 1, page 74): ἔπλεον, ἔπλεις, ἔπλει, ἐπλέομεν, ἐπλεῖτε, ἔπλεον. Only the forms of this verb with ε + ε are contracted in Attic Greek.

**b. Irregular Verbs:**

Imperfect of εἰμί, *I am*:

ἦ or ἦν	<i>I was</i>
ἦσθα	<i>you were</i>
ἦν	<i>he/she/it was</i>
ἦμεν	<i>we were</i>
ἦτε	<i>you were</i>
ἦσαν	<i>they were</i>

Imperfect of εἶμι [εἰ-/ι-], which serves as the future of ἔρχομαι in Attic Greek (see Chapter 10, Grammar 6, pages 168–169) and means *I will go*:

ἦα or ἦειν	<i>I was going</i>
ἦισθα or ἦεις	<i>you were going</i>
ἦειν or ἦει	<i>he/she/it was going</i>
ἦμεν	<i>we were going</i>
ἦτε	<i>you were going</i>
ἦσαν or ἦεσαν	<i>they were going</i>

Note that in the imperfect the ε of the long vowel stem (εἰ-) is augmented to η and that the ι becomes subscript. Note that the iota subscript occurs in all the forms of the imperfect of εἶμι but in none of the forms of the imperfect of εἰμί.

Note:

Present, ἔρχομαι, *I come; I go*

Imperfect, ἦα or ἦειν, *I was coming; I was going*

Future: εἶμι, *I will come; I will go*

Aorist: ἦλθον, *I came; I went*

For the compounds of ἔρχομαι, see Chapter 10, Grammar 6, page 169.

**c. Irregular Augment:**

ἔλκω, *I drag*, becomes εἶλκον in the imperfect.

ἔπομαι, *I follow*, becomes εἰπόμεν in the imperfect.

ἐργάζομαι, *I work; I accomplish*, becomes ἡργαζόμεν or εἰργαζόμεν in the imperfect.

ἔχω, *I have; I hold*, becomes εἶχον in the imperfect.

ὁράω, *I see*, becomes ἑώραν in the imperfect, with double augment.

**Exercise 13a**

*In the first two paragraphs of the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter locate:*

1. Seven imperfects of regular verbs
2. Three imperfects of contract verbs
3. Four imperfects of εἰμί (including compound verbs)
4. One imperfect of εἶμι (compound)

### Exercise 13β

*Fill in the imperfect forms on all of the Verb Charts on which you have entered forms to date. Keep these charts for reference.*

## 2. Aspect

The imperfect or past progressive indicative usually looks on the action of the verb as an ongoing process in past time, just as the present tense looks on the action as an ongoing process in present time; note that these two tenses use the same stem. The aorist indicative, on the other hand, usually looks on the action as a simple action or event in past time. Note the following uses of the imperfect or past progressive:

- a. The imperfect tense usually indicates *continuous or incomplete action in past time*. When so used it can be translated by the English imperfect, e.g.:

ἐπεὶ προσεχωροῦμεν, οἱ φύλακες τὰς πύλας ἔκλειον.

*When we were approaching, the guards were shutting the gates.*

Compare the aorist:

ἐπεὶ εἰσῆλθομεν, οἱ φύλακες τὰς πύλας ἔκλεισαν.

*When we went in, the guards shut the gates.*

The imperfect can also be translated with phrases such as *used to . . .*, *was/were accustomed to . . .* of repeated or habitual action, e.g.:

οἱ βόες ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ.

*The oxen used to stay/were accustomed to staying in the field.*

- b. The imperfect may also be used to indicate *the beginning of an action in past time*, e.g.:

εἰς τὸν ἀγρὸν εἰσελθόντες ἐπόνουν.

*Entering the field, they began to work.*

This is called the *inchoative imperfect*, from the Latin verb *incohō*, "I begin."

The aorist may also be used with certain verbs to indicate the entrance into a state or the beginning of an action, e.g., ἡ Μυρρίνη ἐδάκρυσσε, *Myrrhine burst into tears*. This is called the *ingressive aorist*, from the Latin verb *ingredior*, "I begin."

- c. The imperfect may also be used to indicate *an attempt to do something in past time*, e.g.:

τὸν πατέρα ἐπείθομεν οὔκαδε ἐπανελθεῖν· ὁ δὲ οὐκ ἠθέλησεν.

*We tried to persuade father to return home, but he did not want to.*

This use is called the *conative imperfect* from the Latin verb *cōnor*, "I try, attempt."

Contrast the aorist:

τὸν πατέρα ἐπείσαμεν.

*We persuaded father.*

### Exercise 13γ

Identify the tense and form (indicative, participle, infinitive, imperative) of the underlined verbs, translate the verb, and explain why each tense is used (use the information given in the discussions of aspect in Chapter 11, Grammar 3, pages 178–180, and in Grammar 2 above. Then translate the sentences.

1. ὁ παῖς τοὺς βοῦς οἴκαδε ἤγεν, καταπεσὼν δὲ τὸν πόδα ἔβλαψεν (from βλάπτω, *I harm, hurt*).
2. πολὺν μὲν χρόνον ἐν τῷ ἄστει ἐμένομεν, τέλος δὲ οἴκαδε ῥηρησάμεθα.
3. αἱ παρθένοι πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ ἔμενον διαλεγόμεναι, τοὺς δὲ παῖδας ἰδοῦσαι προσχωροῦντας ἀπῆλθον.
4. ὁ ἀνὴρ πολὺν χρόνον τὴν γυναῖκα πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἔμενε, τέλος δὲ εἶδεν αὐτὴν προσχωροῦσαν.
5. αἱ γυναῖκες αἱ ἐν τῇ οἰκίᾳ μύθους ἔλεγον, τοὺς δὲ ἄνδρας ἰδοῦσαι ἐπαύσαντο λέγουσαι καὶ ἐκάλεσαν αὐτούς.
6. ὁ Φίλιππος τὸν κύνα καθ' ἡμέραν (*every day*) πρὸς τῷ αὐλίῳ (*the sheep-fold*) ἤγεν.
7. ἡ παρθένος τὸν πατέρα ἔπειθεν ἐαυτὴν πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ ἀγαγεῖν, ὁ δὲ οὐκ ᾔθελεν. ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ῥαδίως ἔπεισεν αὐτόν.
8. σῴησατε, ὦ παῖδες, καὶ ἀκούετε μου.
9. ἡ παρθένος τὴν ὑδρίαν καταβαλοῦσα δακρύσασα τὴν μητέρα ἐκάλεσεν.
10. ἡ μήτηρ τὴν παρθένον ἐκέλευσεν ἄλλην ὑδρίαν ἀπὸ τοῦ οἴκου κομίσαι· ἡ δὲ δακρύουσα οἴκαδε ἔσπευδεν.

### Exercise 13δ

Change the following forms first into the corresponding forms of the imperfect, then of the future, and then of the aorist. Watch out for verbs that have deponent futures and ones that have sigmatic 1st aorists or thematic 2nd aorists.

- |               |              |                |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. λύομεν     | 6. ἀκούετε   | 11. ἀφικνεῖται |
| 2. λύονται    | 7. ἡγεῖ      | 12. νικῶμεν    |
| 3. ποιοῦσι(ν) | 8. γιγνόμεθα | 13. βοᾷ        |
| 4. φιλεῖ      | 9. πέμπομεν  | 14. πίπτει     |
| 5. λαμβάνει   | 10. εὐχονται | 15. λείπω      |

**Exercise 13e***Translate into Greek:*

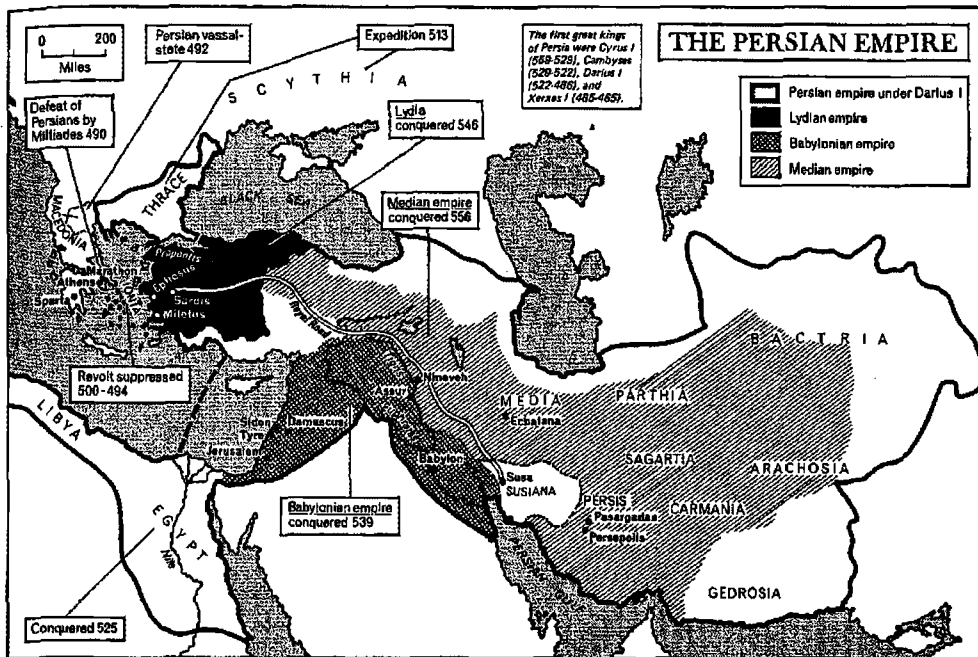
1. The young men were running very quickly to the agora.
2. When the boy returned home, the girl was waiting by the door.
3. He was already sailing through the straits (τὰ στενά) to the harbor.
4. I was staying at home, but you were journeying to the city.
5. When we arrived at the island, no one was willing to come to our aid (use βοηθέω + dat.).
6. What were you doing, boy, when I saw you in the harbor?
7. Were you watching the ship sailing out (use ἐκπλέω) to sea?
8. The captain was shouting loudly, but we were not afraid of him.

**The Rise of Persia**

The events that led to the sudden emergence of Persia as a world power are complex, involving the fall of three ancient empires in quick succession. Until the sixth century, the Persians were a wandering mountain tribe, the name of which occasionally crops up in contemporary records as the tribe gradually worked its way southeast from Russia down the mountains of western Iran. By 550 B.C. the Persians were settled east of the mouth of the Tigris as a vassal kingdom of Media. To understand their rapid rise to power it is necessary to go back to the middle of the seventh century, a turning point in the history of the ancient world.

By 650 B.C. the Assyrian Empire, which had ruled Mesopotamia, Egypt, and Syria, began to crumble. In Egypt Psammetichus led a national revival and threw off the Assyrian yoke with the help of Greek mercenaries (ca. 650 B.C.). The Medes, united under King Phraortes (675–653 B.C.), became a formidable power, extending their kingdom on all sides. In Lydia, Gyges (685–657 B.C.) founded a new dynasty and expanded westward to Ionia, where he defeated some of the Ionian Greeks, and eastward to the river Halys (the northeastern border of the Lydian Empire as marked on the map). Babylon, which a thousand years earlier had ruled all of Mesopotamia, revolted from Assyria about 625 B.C. and made an alliance with the Medes. In 612 B.C. the Babylonians and Medes took the Assyrian capital Nineveh and proceeded to divide up their empire. Babylon took the south; their king, Nebuchadnezzar, controlled all of Mesopotamia. He defeated the Egyptians at the great battle of Carchemish (605 B.C.) and drove them from Syria. When the Jews revolted, he took and destroyed Jerusalem (587 B.C.) and carried the tribes of Judah into captivity in Babylon. Assyria itself and the lands to the west up to the borders of Lydia fell to the Medes. On these borders the Medes fought several battles with Lydians, the last of which (28 May 585 B.C.) was broken off when the eclipse of the sun predicted by Thales occurred.





## The Persian Empire

The stage was now set for the rise of Persia. In 556 B.C. Cyrus, king of the Persians, defeated the Medes and became king of the Medes and Persians, founding the dynasty of the Achaemenids, who were to rule the greatest empire the world had ever seen, until they were overthrown by Alexander the Great two hundred years later.

Croesus, king of Lydia, alarmed by the growing power of Cyrus, decided to make a pre-emptive strike. He consulted the oracle of Apollo at Delphi, which answered that if he crossed the river Halys, he would destroy a great empire. Thus encouraged, he led his army over the river and was met by Cyrus near the city of Pteria, about 60 miles or 100 kilometers east of the Halys. A bloody but indecisive battle followed, after which Croesus led his troops back to Sardis, intending to invade again the following year with larger forces. Cyrus, however, pursued him hotfoot, defeated him, and took the city of Sardis (546 B.C.). Many of the Greek cities of Asia Minor submitted at once. Those that did not were reduced the following year by the general whom Cyrus left behind when he returned to Persia.

When Cyrus had consolidated his empire in Iran, he was ready to move against Babylon, which was suffering from discord. He came as a liberator, for example, of the Jews: "Comfort ye, comfort ye, my people, saith God. . . . Comfort Jerusalem, for her time of humiliation is ended"—so prophesied Isaiah (xl), welcoming the coming of Cyrus as the savior sent by God. Babylon fell in 539 B.C., and there followed a peaceful and orderly occupation. Cyrus was proclaimed king of Babylon the following year: "I am Cyrus, king of the

world, the Great King, the legitimate king, king of Babylon, king of Sumer and Akkad, king of the four corners of the earth" reads an inscription found on a cylinder at Babylon. One of his first decrees allowed the Jews to return to Jerusalem and rebuild the Temple. He died in 530 B.C., much lamented; he had been no mere conqueror but the father of his people.

His son Cambyses consolidated Persian power in the Levant and invaded and defeated Egypt (525 B.C.). In March of 522 B.C., shortly before he died, there was a rebellion led by a Persian who called himself Bardiya, son of Cyrus. By July most of the empire acknowledged him, but in September a conspiracy was formed by seven great Persian nobles, who maintained that Bardiya was a pretender. They murdered him and set on the throne one of their number: Darius. Darius had to put down revolts all over the empire before his position was secure. He consolidated the empire and extended it in the East from Afghanistan into India (the Punjab) and opened up a sea route from the mouth of the Indus to the Persian Gulf and Egypt.

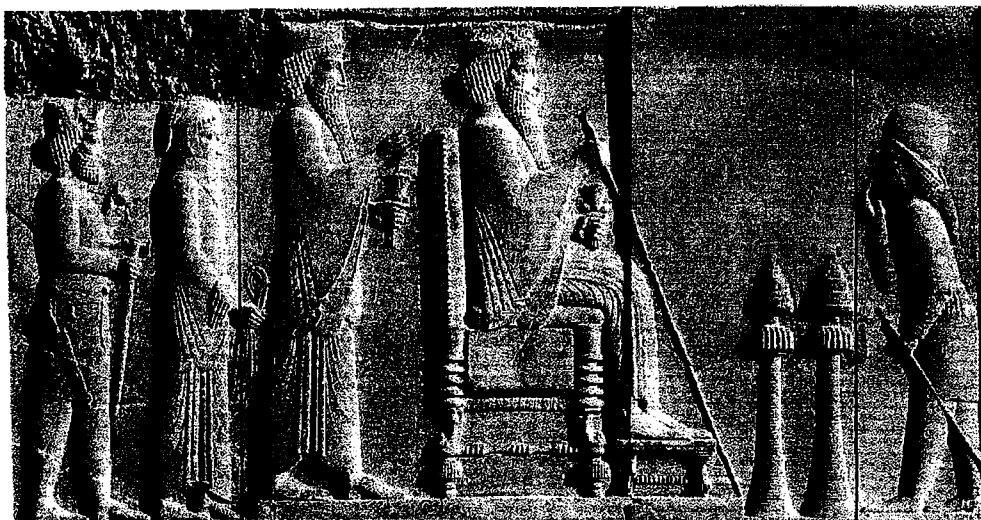
Darius then turned his attention northwest. In 513 B.C. he led his army into Europe across the Hellespont, subdued most of Thrace, and marched north to the mouth of the Danube. He crossed the river by a bridge of boats, built by his Greek engineers, and he disappeared into the steppes of Russia, to deal with the nomad Scythians, who were harassing the northern borders of his empire. He was gone for over sixty days, and the Greeks who were guarding the bridge discussed whether they should break up the bridge and leave him to his fate but decided it was wiser to remain at their post. Eventually he returned with the survivors of his army, having accomplished little against the hit-and-run tactics of the Scythians. He returned to Persia, leaving a general to complete the conquest of Thrace. This was accomplished in one campaign, which brought the Persians up to the borders of Macedonia. By now most of the islands of the Aegean Sea were held by the Persians. The threat to mainland Greece was uncomfortably close.

In 499 B.C. the Ionian Greeks revolted, expelling the tyrants whom the Persians had installed to control them. The revolt was led by Aristagoras, tyrant of Miletus, who was in trouble with the Persian authorities. Aristagoras visited the mainland to beg for support. At Sparta, King Cleomenes refused, but at Athens the assembly of the newly founded democracy was won over by his appeal and voted to send an expedition of twenty ships. These joined the Ionian forces at Ephesus, and the allies marched up country and took and destroyed Sardis, the capital of the satrapy. When a Persian relief force arrived, they retreated rapidly to the coast. The Athenian contingent, satisfied with their exploit, returned to Athens. The Ionians kept up the struggle for four more years with varying success until the Persians eventually crushed all resistance and took Miletus (494 B.C.).

Darius is said to have ordered one of his officials to say to him every day: "Remember the Athenians." Retribution was assured. In 492 B.C. a large force was dispatched by land and sea. Thrace and Macedonia submitted, but, when the fleet was wrecked off Mount Athos, the expedition against Greece was called off. Two years later a second expedition sailed straight across the

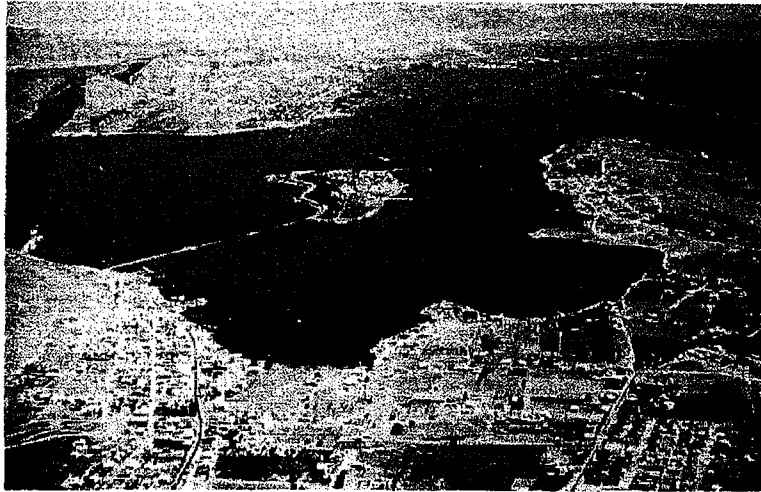
Aegean, landed near Eretria in Euboea (Eretria had sent five ships to help the Ionians), and took and destroyed the city. They then landed on the coast of Attica at Marathon. After heated debate, the Athenian Assembly at the urging of Miltiades decided to send their army out to meet the Persians at Marathon rather than to shut themselves up in the city. The Athenians, though greatly outnumbered, faced the Persians alone (apart from a small contingent sent by their ally Plataea). Sparta sent a force to help, but it arrived too late for the battle. By brilliant tactics, the Athenians routed the Persian force and pursued them to the sea, inflicting heavy casualties for small losses (490 B.C.). This day was never forgotten. To have fought at Marathon was an Athenian's proudest boast. Aeschylus, the great tragic poet, makes no mention of his poetry in his epitaph; he simply says: "Of his glorious courage the groves of Marathon could speak, and the long-haired Mede, who knew it well." The dead were buried beneath a great mound still to be seen on the site of the battle.

Darius' preparations to take revenge on the Greeks were thwarted first by a revolt in Egypt and then by his death. It was not until 483 B.C. that his successor, Xerxes, began to assemble the vast force that was intended finally to settle Persia's score with Greece.



Darius, the Persian king, holds an audience.  
His son and successor, Xerxes, stands behind his throne.

# ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΑ (β)



ιδού, τὰ στενὰ ἐν οἷς πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐμαχόμεθα.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀμύνω, [ἀμυνε-] ἀμυνῶ, [ἀμύν-]  
 ἤμυνα, ἀμύνῳς, active, transitive,  
*I ward off X (acc.) from Y (dat.); middle, transitive, I ward off X (acc.); I defend myself against X (acc.)*  
 ὀργίζομαι, [ὀργιε-] ὀργιοῦμαι,  
 no aorist middle, *I grow angry; I am angry; + dat., I grow angry at; I am angry at*

### Nouns

ἡ ἀρχή, τῆς ἀρχῆς, *beginning*  
 ὁ βάρβαρος, τοῦ βαρβάρου,  
*barbarian*  
 ἡ ἐλευθερίᾱ, τῆς ἐλευθερίᾱς,  
*freedom*  
 τὸ κῦμα, τοῦ κύματος, *wave*  
 ἡ μάχη, τῆς μάχης, *fight; battle*  
 τὸ ναυτικόν, τοῦ ναυτικοῦ,  
*fleet*  
 τὰ στενὰ, τῶν στενῶν, pl.,  
*narrows, straits; mountain pass*

ἡ τριήρης, τῆς τριήρους,  
*trireme (a warship)*

### Pronoun and Adjective

μηδεῖς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, used  
 instead of οὐδεῖς with imperatives  
 and infinitives, *no one, nothing; no*

### Relative Pronouns

ὅς, ἡ, ὅ, *who, whose, whom, which, that*

ὅσπερ, ἥπερ (note the accent),

ὅπερ, *emphatic forms, who, whose, whom, which, that*

### Adjectives

ἀληθής, ἀληθές, *true*  
 τὰ ἀληθῆ, τῶν ἀληθῶν, *the truth*  
 ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that; pl., those*

Note the predicate position:

ἐκείνη ἡ μάχη or ἡ μάχη  
 ἐκείνη, *that battle*

ψευδής, -ές, <i>false</i>	ὡς δοκεῖ, <i>as it seems</i>
τὰ ψευδῆ, τῶν ψευδῶν, <i>lies</i>	<i>Expression</i>
<i>Preposition</i>	τῷ ὄντι, <i>in truth</i>
ἐγγύς + gen., <i>near</i>	<i>Proper Names</i>
<i>Adverbs</i>	ἡ Ἑλλάς, τῆς Ἑλλάδος, <i>Hel-</i>
ἅμα, <i>together, at the same time</i>	<i>las, Greece</i>
ὅτε, <i>when</i>	ὁ Ποσειδῶν, τοῦ Ποσειδῶνος,
ὥς, <i>as</i>	<i>Poseidon</i>

ἐπεὶ δὲ ὀλίγον χρόνον ἔπλευσαν, δέκα νῆες μακραὶ ἐφαίνοντο, αἱ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ ἐπορεύοντο ἀπὸ τῶν νήσων ἐπανιοῦσαι. πάντες οὖν τὰς τριήρεις ἐθεῶντο, αἱ ταχέως διὰ τῶν κυμάτων ἔσπευδον. οἱ γὰρ ἐρέται τῷ κελευστῇ πειθόμενοι τὴν θάλατταν ἅμα ἔτυπον. ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐκέτι ἐφαίνοντο αἱ τριήρεις, μείζων μὲν ἐγίγνετο ὁ ἄνεμος, ἡ δὲ 5 θάλαττα ἐκύμαιεν. οἱ δ' ἄνθρωποι οὐκέτι ἐτέρποντο, ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἄνδρες ἐσίγων, αἱ δὲ γυναῖκες μέγα ἔκλαζον εὐχόμεναι τὸν Ποσειδῶνα σφῆξιν ἑαυτὰς εἰς τὸν λιμένα.

[ὀλίγον, *small, short* νῆες μακραὶ, *long ships = warships* οἱ . . . ἐρέται, *rowers* τῷ κελευστῇ, *boatswain* (he beat the time for the rowers) μείζων, *larger, greater* ἐκύμαιεν, *inchoative, was becoming rough* ἔκλαζον, *inchoative, began to shriek*]

ἄνθρωπός τις, ὃς ἐγγύς τοῦ Λικαιοπόλιδος ἐκαθίζετο, ἀνέστη καὶ βοήσας, “ὀργίζεται ἡμῖν, ἔφη, “ὁ Ποσειδῶν, ὡς δοκεῖ. κακὸν γὰρ 10 ἄνθρωπον ἐν τῇ νηὶ φέρομεν, ὃν δεῖ ρίπτειν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν.” καὶ τοὺς παρόντας ἐπιφθόνως ἐσκόπει. ὁ δὲ γέρων προσελθὼν, “σίγησον, ὦ ἄνθρωπε,” ἔφη. “οὐδὲν γὰρ λέγεις. ἤδη γὰρ πίπτει ὁ ἄνεμος καὶ οὐκέτι τοσοῦτο κύμαίνει ἡ θάλαττα. κάθιζε οὖν καὶ ἡσυχος ἔχε.” τρεψάμενος δὲ πρὸς τὸν Φίλιππον, “μηδὲν φοβοῦ, ὦ παῖ,” ἔφη. “δι’ 15 ὀλίγου γὰρ εἰς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα ἀφισόμεθα. ἤδη γὰρ πλέομεν διὰ τῶν στενῶν πρὸς τὸν λιμένα. ἰδοὺ, ὦ Δικαιοπόλι, τὰ στενὰ, ἐν οἷς τὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ναυτικὸν ἐμένομεν ὅτε τῇ Ἑλλάδι αὐτοὺς ἡμῦνομεν ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐλευθερίᾳς μαχόμενοι.”

[ἀνέστη, *stood up* ρίπτειν, *to throw* ἐπιφθόνως, *maliciously, malignantly* τοσοῦτο, *so* ἡσυχος ἔχε, *keep quiet!*]

ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις, “τί λέγεις, ὦ γέρον;” ἔφη. “ἄρα σὺ ἐκείνῃ τῇ 20 μάχῃ παρῆσθα;” ὁ δὲ γέρων, “μάλιστά γε,” ἔφη, “ἐγὼ παρῆν, νεανίᾳς

ὦν καὶ ἐρέτης ἐν τριήρει Ἀθηναίᾳ.” ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἄρα τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγεις; μάλα οὖν γεραίος εἶ, εἰ τῷ ὄντι ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ παρῆσθα. ἀλλ’ εἰπὲ ἡμῖν τί ἐγένετο.” ὁ δέ, “μακρὸς ἐστὶν ὁ λόγος,” ἔφη, “ἀλλ’ εἰ βούλεσθε τὰ γενόμενα μαθεῖν, πάντα ἐξ ἀρχῆς ἐξηγήσομαι. ἐγὼ δέ, 25 ὅς παρῆν, τέρπομαι ἐξηγούμενος. ἀκούετε οὖν.”

## WORD BUILDING

Give the meanings of the words in the following sets:

1. ἡ ναῦς                      ὁ ναύτης                      ναυτικός, -ή, -όν                      τὸ ναυτικόν
2. ναυμαχέω                      ἡ ναυμαχίᾱ                      ὁ ναύκληρος                      ὁ ναύαρχος

## GRAMMAR

### 3. Relative Clauses

You have now seen a number of relative clauses in the reading passages, e.g.:

- a. δέκα νῆες μακραὶ ἐφαίνοντο, αἱ πρὸς τὸν Πειραιᾶ ἐπορεύοντο.  
*Ten warships were visible, which were going to the Piraeus.*

- b. κακὸν ἄνθρωπον ἐν τῇ νηὶ φέρομεν, ὃν δεῖ ρίπτειν εἰς τὴν θάλατταν.  
*We are carrying an evil man in the ship, whom it is necessary to throw into the sea.*

Relative clauses are adjectival or descriptive clauses that are introduced by relative pronouns, of which English has the forms *who*, *whose*, *whom*, *which*, and *that*. In Greek the relative pronoun may appear in any of the following forms:

	Singular			Plural			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
<b>Nom.</b>	ὅς	ἥ	ὃ	οἷ	αἱ	ἃ	<i>who, which, that</i>
<b>Gen.</b>	οὗ	ἥς	οὔ	ῶν	ῶν	ῶν	<i>whose, of whom, of which</i>
<b>Dat.</b>	ᾧ	ᾗ	ᾧ	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς	<i>to/for whom/ which</i>
<b>Acc.</b>	ὃν	ἣν	ὃ	οὓς	ἃς	ἃ	<i>whom, which, that</i>

Be careful not to confuse relative pronouns with definite articles. You may wish to compare the forms and accents of relative pronouns with those of the definite article (Chapter 4, Grammar 8, page 50). Note that the relative pronoun never begins with the letter τ and that the masculine and

feminine nominative singular and plural definite articles do not have accents.

Note the following rule: the relative pronoun, which introduces the relative clause, agrees with the noun, noun phrase, or pronoun to which it refers in the main clause (i.e., its *antecedent*) in gender and number, but its case is determined by its function in the relative clause.

Thus, in sentence a above, the noun phrase δέκα νῆες μακραί (feminine plural) is the antecedent of the relative pronoun, which must accordingly be feminine and plural. The relative pronoun is the subject of the verb in its own clause (ἐπορεύοντο) and must accordingly be in the nominative case; the correct form is therefore αἱ (feminine, plural, nominative).

In sentence b above, the noun phrase κακὸν ἄνθρωπον is the antecedent of the relative pronoun, which must accordingly be masculine and singular. The relative pronoun is the object of ῥίπτειν in its own clause and must accordingly be accusative; the correct form is therefore ὃν (masculine, singular, accusative).

The suffix -περ may be added to the forms of the relative pronoun given above for emphasis.

### Exercise 13ζ

*In the first two paragraphs of reading passage β, locate five relative clauses. Identify the antecedent of each relative pronoun, and explain why the relative pronoun is in its gender, number, and case. Two of the five examples have already been analyzed above.*

### Exercise 13η

*Read aloud and translate into English. Explain the gender, number, and case of each relative pronoun:*

- οἱ ἔμποροι, οἳ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ νηϊ ἔπλεον, τὰ κύματα οὐκ ἐφοβοῦντο.
- ὁ ναύτης, ὃ τὸ ἀργύριον παρέσχε, ἡμῖν ἠγήσατο εἰς τὴν ναῦν.
- οἱ ἄνθρωποι, οὓς ἐν τῷ ὄρει εἶδετε, σῖτον Ἀθήναζε ἔφερον.
- ἐκεῖνοι οἱ δοῦλοι πάντα ἐποιοῦν ἅπερ ἐκέλευσεν ὁ δεσπότης.
- αἱ γυναῖκες, αἷς διελεγόμεθα, οὐκ ἔλεγον τὰ ἀληθῆ.
- πάντας ἐτίμων οἵπερ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἐμάχοντο.
- ἐκείνη ἡ ναῦς, ἣν ἐθεῶ ἀποπλέουσας, σῖτον ἔφερεν ἀπὸ τοῦ Πόντου (*the Black Sea*).
- ὁ ἄγγελος, οὗ ἐν τῇ ἀγορᾷ ἠκούετε, οὐκ ἔλεγε τὰ ψευδῆ.
- ἄρ' οὐκ ἐφοβεῖσθε τοὺς βαρβάρους οὓς ὁ Ξέρξης ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἦγεν;
- ἄρ' εἶδες ἐκείνην τὴν παρθένον, ἣ οὕτως ἀργίζετο ὁ γέρων;

**Exercise 130***Translate into Greek:*

1. Those young men were journeying to certain friends who live in the city.
2. The young men, whom you saw on the mountains, were looking for their sheep all day.
3. The captain received the money that I handed over to him.
4. He was sailing through the straits, in which the Greeks defeated the barbarians.
5. That priest, with whom we were conversing (*use διαλέγομαι + dat.*), was telling lies.
6. The ship, in which he was sailing, arrived at the harbor within four days.
7. I was listening to the women, who were working in the house at night.
8. On the next day the sailors did all that the captain ordered.
9. Weren't you afraid of that old man, who was shouting so loudly?
10. The foreigners, although hurrying, helped the old man, who was looking for the oxen.

**4. 3rd Declension Nouns and Adjectives with Stems in -εσ-**

Some 3rd declension nouns and adjectives have stems ending in -εσ-, from which the σ is lost before the endings, allowing the ε of the stem to contract with the vowels of the endings, e.g., τὸ τεῖχος (stem τεῖχεσ-). The usual contractions occur, as follows:

ε + ε > ει                      ε + α > η  
 ε + ο > ου                      ε + ω > ω

**Stem:** τεῖχεσ-, *wall*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχεσ-α > τεῖχη
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ τεῖχεσ-ος > τείχους	τῶν τειχέσ-ων > τειχῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ τεῖχεσ-ι > τείχει	τοῖς τείχεσ-σι(ν) > τείχεσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχεσ-α > τεῖχη
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ τεῖχος	ὦ τεῖχεσ-α > τεῖχη

Neuters with stems in -εσ- have -ος in the nominative, accusative, and vocative singular.

So also τὸ ὄρος, τοῦ ὄρους, *mountain; hill*



**Stem:** τριήρεσ-, *trireme*

<b>Nom.</b>	ἡ τριήρης	αἱ τριήρεσ-ες >	τριήρεις
<b>Gen.</b>	τῆς τριήρεσ-ος >	τριήρους τῶν τριηρέσ-ων >	τριήρων
<b>Dat.</b>	τῇ τριήρεσ-ι >	τριήρει ταῖς τριήρεσ-σι(ν) >	τριήρεσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	τὴν τριήρεσ-α >	τριήρη τὰς τριήρεις	
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ τριήρες	ὦ τριήρεσ-ες >	τριήρεις

The genitive plural borrows its accent from the other forms, and the accusative plural borrows its form from the nominative plural.

The adjective ἀληθής (stem ἀληθεσ-) has only two sets of forms, the first to go with masculine or feminine nouns and the second to go with neuter nouns. It also loses the σ of the stem before the endings and shows the same contractions as the noun above:

**Stem:** ἀληθεσ-, *true*

	M. & F.	N.
<b>Nom.</b>	ἀληθής	ἀληθές
<b>Gen.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ος > ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθέσ-ος > ἀληθοῦς
<b>Dat.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ι > ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθέσ-ι > ἀληθεῖ
<b>Acc.</b>	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ	ἀληθές
<b>Voc.</b>	ἀληθές	ἀληθές
<b>Nom.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ες > ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ
<b>Gen.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ων > ἀληθῶν	ἀληθέσ-ων > ἀληθῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	ἀληθέσ-σι(ν) > ἀληθέσι(ν)	ἀληθέσ-σι(ν) > ἀληθέσι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ
<b>Voc.</b>	ἀληθέσ-ες > ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθέσ-α > ἀληθῇ

So also ψευδής, ψευδές, *false*

**PRACTICE:** Write all the forms of τὸ μέγα ὄρος, *the big mountain*. Write the forms of ὁ Σωκράτης, *Socrates*, in the singular. Write all the forms of the following phrases: ὁ ψευδὴς λόγος, *the false story*; ἡ ἀληθὴς ἀρετή, *the true virtue*; and τὸ ψευδὲς ὄνομα, *the false name*.

## 5. 1st/3rd Declension Adjective with 3rd Declension Stems in -υ- and -ε-

As does the adjective πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν (Chapter 8, Grammar 4, page 126), the adjective ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ, *quick, swift*, has masculine and neuter forms that are 3rd declension, while the feminine is 1st declension (with α, because the stem ends in ι; compare the declension of μάχαιρα, Chapter 4, Grammar 3, page 42). For the 3rd declension forms, compare the declensions of πόλις and ἄστυ, Chapter 9, Grammar 3, page 145.

**Stems:** ταχυ-/ταχε- for masculine and neuter; ταχει- for feminine, *quick, swift*

	Singular			Plural		
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
<b>Nom.</b>	ταχύ-ς	ταχεῖα	ταχύ	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖαι	ταché-α
<b>Gen.</b>	ταché-ος	ταχεῖᾱς	ταché-ος	ταché-ων	ταχειῶν	ταché-ων
<b>Dat.</b>	ταχεῖ	ταχεῖᾱ	ταχεῖ	ταché-σι(ν)	ταχειαῖς	ταché-σι(ν)
<b>Acc.</b>	ταχύ-ν	ταχεῖαν	ταχύ	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖᾱς	ταché-α
<b>Voc.</b>	ταχύ	ταχεῖα	ταχύ	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖαι	ταché-α

So also βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ, *slow*.

**PRACTICE:** Write all the forms of ὁ ταχύς κύων, *the swift dog*; ἡ ταχεῖα τριήρης, *the swift trireme*; and τὸ ταχὺ ζῷον, *the swift animal*.

### Exercise 13i

*Read aloud and translate:*

- οἱ παῖδες ἐπὶ τὰ τεῖχη ἀναβαίνουνσιν.
- αἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων τριήρεις, ταχεῖαι οὔσαι, τὰς τῶν βαρβάρων ναῦς ῥαδίως ἔλαβον.
- ἀεὶ τὰ ἀληθῆ λέγε, ὦ παῖ.
- ὁ ἄγγελος ψευδῇ τοῖς πολίταις εἶπεν.
- μὴ τὰ πρόβατα ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη ἔλαυνε· πολλοὶ γὰρ λύκοι ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσιν εἰσιν.

## Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΤΟΝ ΕΛΛΗΣΠΟΝΤΟΝ ΔΙΑΒΑΙΝΕΙ

*Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 7.33–35 and 44) and answer the comprehension questions:*

ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης, τοὺς Ἕλληνας καταστρέψασθαι βουλόμενος, στρατὸν μέγιστον παρεσκεύασεν. ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα τὰ ἄλλα ἔτοιμα ἦν, τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ἐκέλευσε γέφυραν ποιῆσαι ἐπὶ τῷ Ἑλλησπόντῳ, τὸν στρατὸν ἐθέλων διαβιβάσαι εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην. οἱ μὲν οὖν στρατηγοὶ γέφυραν ἐποίησαν, χειμῶν δὲ μέγας γενόμενος πάντα διέφθειρε καὶ ἔλυσεν.

6

[ὁ... Ξέρξης, Xerxes τοὺς Ἕλληνας, *the Greeks* καταστρέψεσθαι, *to overthrow, subdue* στρατὸν, *army* τοὺς στρατηγοὺς, *the generals* γέφυραν, *bridge* τῷ Ἑλλησπόντῳ, *the Hellespont* διαβιβάσαι, *to take across, transport* τὴν Εὐρώπην, *Europe* διέφθειρε, *destroyed*]

1. What did Xerxes wish to do?
2. What did he prepare?
3. What did he order his generals to build? With what purpose in mind?
4. What happened?

ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔμαθεν ὁ Ξέρξης τὰ γενόμενα, μάλα ὀργιζόμενος ἐκέλευσε τοὺς δούλους μαστιγῶσαι τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον καὶ τοὺς τὴν θάλατταν μαστιγοῦντας ἐκέλευσε ταῦτα λέγειν· “ὦ πικρὸν ὕδωρ, ὁ δεσπότης σε οὕτω κολάζει· ἡδίκησας γὰρ αὐτὸν οὐδὲν κακὸν πρὸς αὐτοῦ παθόν. καὶ βασιλεὺς Ξέρξης διαβήσεται σε, εἴτε βούλει εἴτε μή.”

10

[μαστιγῶσαι, *to whip* ταῦτα, *these things* πικρὸν, *bitter, spiteful, mean* κολάζει, *punishes* ἡδίκησας, *you wronged* πρὸς αὐτοῦ, *from him* παθόν, *(although) having suffered*: note that this aorist participle is neuter to agree with ὕδωρ, the subject of ἡδίκησας διαβήσεται, *will cross* εἴτε . . . εἴτε, *whether . . . or*]

5. How did Xerxes react to what had happened?
6. What did he order his slaves to do?
7. To what do the slaves address their speech?
8. What justification is cited for the punishment of the Hellespont?
9. What will Xerxes do?

οὕτω μὲν οὖν ἐκόλασε τὴν θάλατταν, ἐκείνους δὲ οἱ τὴν γέφυραν ἐποίησαν ἀπέκτεινε, τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποταμών. ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσεν ἄλλην γέφυραν ποιῆσαι, μάλα ισχυράν. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐτοίμη ἦν ἡ γέφυρα, ὁ Ξέρξης πρὸς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον προσελθὼν, πρῶτον μὲν πάντα τὸν στρατὸν ἤθελεν θεᾶσθαι· ἐπὶ ὄχθον οὖν τινα ἀνέβη, ὅθεν πάντα τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν ἑθεᾶτο καὶ πάσας τὰς ναῦς. 15  
ἔπειτα δὲ τοὺς στρατηγούς ἐκέλευσε τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν διαβιβάσαι εἰς τὴν Εὐρώπην. οὕτως οὖν τῷ στρατῷ ἡγεῖτο ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα.

[ἀποταμών (*from ἀποτέμνω*), *cutting off* ὄχθον, *hill* ἀνέβη, *he went up, ascended* ὅθεν, *from where, whence* τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν, *the infantry*]

10. What did Xerxes do to those who had built the bridge?
11. What did he order his generals to do?
12. What did Xerxes want to do when he approached the Hellespont?
13. Where did he go and what did he see?
14. What did he order his generals to do?

### Exercise 13κ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. When Philip was sailing to Salamis, the old sailor said that he was present at the battle (*dat. without a preposition*).
2. And Philip, who was very amazed, said, “Unless (εἰ μὴ) you are



## Classical Greek

### Archilochus

For Archilochus, see pages 121 and 173. After seeing an eclipse of the sun (648 B.C.), he declares that nothing is impossible (fragment 122, Gerber).

χρημάτων ἄελπτον οὐδέν ἐστιν οὐδ' ἀπώμοτον  
οὐδὲ θαυμάσιον, ἐπειδὴ Ζεὺς πατήρ Ὀλυμπίων  
ἐκ μεσαμβρίας ἔθηκε νύκτ', ἀποκρύψας φάος  
ἡλίου λάμποντος, ὕγρὸν δ' ἦλθ' ἐπ' ἀνθρώπους δέος.

[χρημάτων . . . οὐδέν, *nothing of things = nothing at all* ἄελπτον, *unexpected*  
ἀπώμοτον, *to be sworn impossible* ἐπειδὴ, *since* μεσαμβρίας, *midday* ἔθηκε,  
*made* ἀποκρύψας, *hiding* (τὸ) φάος, *the light* λάμποντος, *shining* ὕγρὸν,  
*moist, clammy* (we print this emendation instead of the unmetrical λυγρὸν, *baneful*, of the  
transmitted text) δέος, *fear*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 21.1-4

#### The Widow's Mite

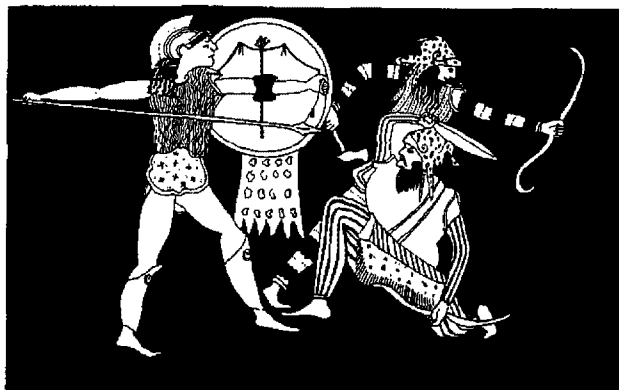
ἀναβλέψας δὲ εἶδεν τοὺς βάλλοντας εἰς τὸ γαζοφυλάκιον τὰ δῶρα αὐτῶν  
πλουσίους. εἶδεν δὲ τινα χήραν πενιχρὰν βάλλουσαν ἐκεῖ λεπτὰ δύο, καὶ εἶπεν,  
“ἀληθῶς λέγω ὑμῖν ὅτι ἡ χήρᾳ αὕτη ἡ πτωχὴ πλεῖον πάντων ἔβαλεν· πάντες γὰρ  
οὗτοι ἐκ τοῦ περισσεύοντος αὐτοῖς ἔβαλον εἰς τὰ δῶρα, αὕτη δὲ ἐκ τοῦ ὑστερήματος  
αὐτῆς πάντα τὸν βίον ὃν εἶχεν ἔβαλεν.”

[ἀναβλέψας: *Jesus is the subject* γαζοφυλάκιον, *treasury* τὰ δῶρα, *the gifts*  
πλουσίους, *wealthy* χήρᾳ, *widow* πενιχρὰν, *poor* λεπτὰ, *small coins* αὕτη  
(take with ἡ χήρᾳ), *this* ἡ πτωχὴ, *the poor (one)* πλεῖον πάντων, *more than all*  
οὗτοι, *these (men)* τοῦ περισσεύοντος αὐτοῖς, *the more than enough for them,*  
*their abundance* αὕτη, *this (woman)* ὑστερήματος, *need, poverty* τὸν βίον,  
*the livelihood*]

# 14

## Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ ΜΑΧΗ (α)

---



οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρείότατα μαχόμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἡμῶν.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἐλπίζω, [ἐλπιε-] ἐλπιῶ, [ἐλπι-]  
ἤλπισα, ἐλπίσας, *I hope; I expect; I suppose*

ἐπιπέμπω, ἐπιπέμψω,  
ἐπέπεμψα, ἐπιπέμψας, *I send against; I send in*

πράττω, [πρακ-] πράξω,  
ἔπραξα, πράξας, *intransitive, I fare; transitive, I do X*

προσβάλλω, [βαλε-] προσ-  
βαλῶ, [βαλ-] προσέβαλον,  
προσβαλὼν + dat., *I attack*

συμβάλλω [= συν- + βάλλω],  
[βαλε-] συμβαλῶ, [βαλ-]  
συνέβαλον, συμβαλὼν, *I join battle; + dat., I join battle with*

συνέρχομαι, [ει-/ι-] σύνειμι,  
[έλθ-] συνήλθον, συνελθὼν,  
*I come together*

χράσμαι (present and imperfect  
have η where α would be ex-  
pected: χρώμαι, χρῆ, χρῆται,

etc.), χρήσομαι (note that the α  
changes to η even after the ρ),  
ἐχρησάμην, χρησάμενος + dat.,  
*I use; I enjoy (14α)*

#### Nouns

ὁ ὀπλίτης, τοῦ ὀπλίτου, *hoplite*  
(heavily-armed foot soldier)

τὸ πλῆθος, τοῦ πλήθους, *num-  
ber; multitude*

ὁ στόλος, τοῦ στόλου, *expedi-  
tion; army; fleet*

ὁ στρατιώτης, τοῦ  
στρατιώτου, *soldier*

ὁ στρατός, τοῦ στρατοῦ, *army*

#### Adjectives

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *small; pl., few*  
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this; pl.,  
these*

Note the predicate position:  
τοῦτο τὸ ἐπίγραμμα or τὸ  
ἐπίγραμμα τοῦτο, *this  
inscription*

στενός, -ή, -όν, <i>narrow</i>	αἱ Θερμοπύλαι, τῶν Θερ-
Cf. τὰ στενά, <i>narrows;</i>	μοπυλῶν, <i>Thermopylae</i>
<i>straits; mountain pass</i>	ἡ Κόρινθος, τῆς Κορίνθου,
<i>Conjunction</i>	<i>Corinth</i>
ἢ, with comparatives, <i>than</i>	οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, τῶν
<i>Expressions</i>	Λακεδαιμονίων, <i>the</i>
ἐν μέσῳ + gen., <i>between</i>	<i>Lacedaemonians, Spartans</i>
κατὰ γῆν, <i>by land</i>	ὁ Λεωνίδης, τοῦ Λεωνίδου,
<i>Proper Names</i>	<i>Leonidas</i>
ὁ Ἕλλην, τοῦ Ἑλληνος,	ὁ Ξέρξης, τοῦ Ξέρξου, <i>Xerxes</i>
<i>Greek; pl., the Greeks</i>	οἱ Πέρσαι, τῶν Περσῶν, <i>the</i>
ἡ Εὐβοία, τῆς Εὐβοίας, <i>Euboea</i>	<i>Persians</i>

“ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξέρξης, βασιλεὺς ὢν τῶν Περσῶν, τὸν στόλον παρεσκεύαζεν, ἐν νῷ ἔχων πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα καταστρέψασθαι, οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων πρῶτοι συνήλθον εἰς τὴν Κόρινθον καὶ ἐσκόπουν τί δεῖ πράττειν. πολὺν δὲ χρόνον ἠπόρουν· μείζονα γὰρ στρατὸν εἶχεν ὁ Ξέρξης ἢ πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ πλέονας ναῦς. τέλος δὲ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς τοὺς βαρβάρους ἀμύνειν ἐν ταῖς Θερμοπύλαις· ἐκεῖ γὰρ κατὰ μὲν γῆν τὰ ὄρη οὕτω πρόσκειται τῇ θαλάττῃ ὥστε ὀλίγοι πρὸς πολλοὺς δύνανται μάχεσθαι, κατὰ δὲ θάλατταν πόροι εἰσὶ στενοὶ ἐν μέσῳ τῆς τε Εὐβοίας καὶ τῆς ἡπείρου. μαθόντες οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες ὅτι ὁ Ξέρξης ἤδη πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πορεύεται καὶ δι’ ὀλίγου εἰς τὰς Θερμοπύλας οἱ Πέρσαι ἀφίξονται, τὸν Λεωνίδην ἔπεμψαν, βασιλέα ὄντα τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, ἑπτακισχιλίους ἔχοντα ὁπλίτας. οὗτοι δὲ ἀφικόμενοι εἰς τὰς Θερμοπύλας παρεσκευάζοντο ἀμύνειν τοὺς βαρβάρους τῇ Ἑλλάδι.

[καταστρέφεσθαι, *to subdue* μείζονα, *bigger, larger* πρόσκειται + dat., note the neuter plural subject, *lie close to* δύνανται, *are able* πόροι, *straits* τῆς ἡπείρου, *the mainland* ἑπτακισχιλίους, *seven thousand*]

“ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὰ στενὰ στρατὸν ἔχων μέγιστον δὴ, τέτταρας μὲν ἡμέρας ἡσύχαζεν· ἠλπίζε γὰρ τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀποφεύξεσθαι ἰδόντας τὸ πλῆθος τοῦ στρατοῦ. τῇ δὲ πέμπτῃ ἡμέρᾳ—οἱ γὰρ Ἕλληνες ἔτι ἀκίνητοι ἔμενον—τὸν στρατὸν ἐκέλευσεν εὐθὺς προσβαλεῖν. οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρειότατα μαχόμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους ἡμῦνον. τέλος δὲ βασιλεὺς τοὺς Πέρσας ἐπέπεμψεν οὓς

‘ἄθανάτους’ ἐκάλει, ἀνδρειοτάτους ὄντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἐλπίζων τούτους γε ῥαδίως νικήσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οὗτοι συνέβαλον, οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἔπραττον ἢ οἱ ἄλλοι, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς μαχόμενοι καὶ οὐ δυνάμενοι τῷ πλήθει χρήσθαι. βασιλεὺς δὲ τὴν μάχην θεώμενος τρὶς ἀνέδραμεν, ὥς λέγουσιν, ἐκ τοῦ θρόνου, 25 φοβούμενος ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατοῦ.”

[ἐλπίζε... τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἀποφεύξεσθαι, *he was hoping that the Greeks would flee* ἀκίνητοι, *unmoved* ἄθανάτους, *Immortals* ἄμεινον, *better* τρὶς, *three times* ἀνέδραμεν (from ἀνατρέχω), *leaped to his feet* τοῦ θρόνου, *his throne*]

## WORD STUDY

Using your knowledge of Greek, explain the meaning of the following forenames:

- |           |                                       |             |
|-----------|---------------------------------------|-------------|
| 1. Philip | 3. Theodore (τὸ δῶρον = <i>gift</i> ) | 5. Dorothea |
| 2. George | 4. Sophie                             | 6. Ophelia  |

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Comparison of Adjectives

Adjectives have three *degrees*, e.g., “beautiful” (*positive*), “more beautiful” (*comparative*), and “most beautiful” (*superlative*) or “brave” (*positive*), “braver” (*comparative*), and “bravest” (*superlative*).

In Greek the comparative and superlative of adjectives are regularly formed by adding -τερος, -τέρῃ, -τερον and -τατος, -τάτῃ, -τατον to the stem of the positive:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ἀνδρείος, -ᾶ, -ον, <i>brave</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> ἀνδρειο-	ἀνδρειό-τερος, -ᾶ, -ον <i>braver</i>	ἀνδρειό-τατος, -η, -ον <i>bravest</i>
χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, <i>difficult</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> χαλεπο-	χαλεπώ-τερος, -ᾶ, -ον <i>more difficult</i>	χαλεπώ-τατος, -η, -ον <i>most difficult</i>

Note that in 1st and 2nd declension adjectives as in the examples above, the ο at the end of the stem of the positive is lengthened to ω if the syllable preceding it is regarded as short (e.g., contains a short vowel).



Positive	Comparative	Superlative
3rd Declension:		
ἀληθής, ἀληθές, <i>true</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> ἀληθεσ-	ἀληθέσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον <i>truer</i>	ἀληθέσ-τατος, -η, -ον <i>truest</i>

Note what happens when the stem ends in -ον-:

σώφρων, σῶφρον, <i>of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled</i>		
<b>Stem:</b> σωφρον-	σωφρον-έσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον <i>more prudent</i>	σωφρον-έσ-τατος, -η, -ον <i>most prudent</i>

The endings -έσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον and -έσ-τατος, -η, -ον are constructed by analogy with ἀληθέσ-τερος, -ᾱ, -ον and ἀληθέσ-τατος, -η, -ον.

## 2. Irregular Comparison of Adjectives

Some adjectives are irregular in their formation of comparatives and superlatives and show forms ending in -ίων or -ων (masculine and feminine) and -ιον or -ον (neuter) for the comparative and -ιστος, -ιστη, -ιστον for the superlative. The comparatives are declined like σώφρων, σῶφρον (see Chapter 7, Grammar 7, page 107), with some alternative forms that will be presented later.

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν <i>good</i>	ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον <i>better</i>	ἄριστος, -η, -ον <i>best</i>
κακός, -ή, -όν <i>bad</i>	κακίων, κάκιον <i>worse</i>	κάκιστος, -η, -ον <i>worst</i>
καλός, -ή, -όν <i>beautiful</i>	καλλίων, κάλλιον <i>more beautiful</i>	κάλλιστος, -η, -ον <i>most beautiful</i>
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα <i>big, large, great</i>	μείζων, μείζον <i>bigger, larger, greater</i>	μέγιστος, -η, -ον <i>biggest, largest, greatest</i>
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον <i>small; pl., few</i>	ἐλάττων, ἔλαττον <i>smaller; pl., fewer</i>	ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον <i>smallest (in number); pl., fewest</i>
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ <i>much; pl., many</i>	πλείων/πλέων, πλείον/πλέον <i>more</i>	πλείστος, -η, -ον <i>most; very great; pl., very many</i>

**PRACTICE:** Write the forms of ἡ ἀμείνων γυνή and of τὸ ἄμεινον τέκνον (*child*).

### 3. Comparison of Adverbs

As you learned in Chapter 4 (Grammar 7, page 50), the positive degree of an adverb is regularly the same in spelling and accent as the genitive plural of the corresponding adjective, but with *ς* instead of *ν* at the end, e.g., adjective, gen., pl., καλῶν > adverb, καλῶς. The comparative degree of the adverb is the neuter singular of the comparative adjective, and the superlative degree of the adverb is the neuter plural of the superlative adjective, e.g.:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
Regular:		
ἀνδρείως <i>bravely</i>	ἀνδρειότερον <i>more bravely</i>	ἀνδρειότατα <i>most bravely</i>
ἀληθῶς <i>truly</i>	ἀληθέστερον <i>more truly</i>	ἀληθέστατα <i>most truly</i>
Irregular:		
εὖ <i>well</i> = adverb corresponding to ἀγαθός	ἄμεινον <i>better</i>	ἄριστα <i>best</i>
κακῶς <i>badly</i>	κάκϊον <i>worse,</i>	κάκιστα <i>worst</i>
πολύ <i>much</i>	πλέον <i>more</i>	πλείστα <i>most</i>
μάλα <i>very</i>	μᾶλλον <i>more; rather</i>	μάλιστα <i>most, most of all; very much; especially</i>

Note the use of μᾶλλον ἢ, *rather than*:

ὁ πάππος ἐβούλετο ἐν τῷ ἄστει μένειν μᾶλλον ἢ οἴκαδε ἐπανελθεῖν.  
*Grandfather was wanting to stay in the city rather than to return home.*

### 4. Uses of Comparatives and Superlatives

#### a. Comparatives

μεῖζονα στρατὸν εἶχεν ὁ Ξέρξης ἢ πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες.  
*Xerxes had a bigger army than all the Greeks.*

Here the conjunction ἢ, *than*, is used; in this construction the two things being compared (underlined in the examples above and below)

are in the same case. Here is another example:

ὁ νεανίας τὸν Φίλιππον ἀγριώτερον ἔτυπεν ἢ τὸν ἄλλον νεανίαν.  
*The young man hit Philip more fiercely than (he hit) the other young man.*

The following examples show how the genitive case (*genitive of comparison*) may be used instead of the conjunction ἢ:

ὁ ἀνὴρ μείζων ἐστὶ τοῦ παιδός.  
*The man is **bigger than** the boy.*

οἱ ἀθάνατοι οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἔπραττον τῶν ἄλλων.  
*The Immortals were faring **no better than** the others.*

#### b. Superlatives

ὁ Λεωνίδης πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἄριστος ἦν.  
*Leonidas was **the best of all the soldiers**.*

The genitive used with superlatives, as above, is a *partitive genitive*.

#### c. Strengthened Comparisons

An adjective in the dative case may be used to enhance a comparison, e.g.:

πολλῷ/μακρῷ μείζονα στρατὸν εἶχεν ὁ Ξέρξης ἢ πάντες οἱ Ἕλληνες.  
*Xerxes had a **much/far** bigger army than all the Greeks.*

This is called the *dative of degree of difference*; lit., *bigger by much / by far*. An adverb may also be used, e.g.:

ὁ Λεωνίδης πάντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν πολὺ ἄριστος ἦν.  
*Leonidas was **by far** the best of all the soldiers.*

#### d. Superlatives with ὥς

Note the following:

ὥς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*  
 ὥς ἀνδρειότατα, *as bravely as possible*  
 ὥς πλείστοι, *as many as possible*

#### e. Special Meanings of Comparatives and Superlatives

Sometimes comparatives are used when no explicit comparison is being made; the comparative softens the statement, e.g.:

οἱ βάρβαροι ἀνδρειότεροί εἰσιν.  
*The barbarians are **rather/somewhat** brave.*

Sometimes superlatives are used to indicate a very high degree of a quality when no explicit comparison is being made, e.g.:

οἱ ἀθάνατοι ἀνδρειότατοί εἰσιν.  
*The Immortals are very brave.*

### Exercise 14α

*Locate six comparatives/superlatives in the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter and explain the constructions in which they occur.*

### Exercise 14β

*Translate into English:*

1. τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλείστοι ἔπесον ἄριστα μαχόμενοι.
2. οἱ ὀπλίται, καίπερ ἀνδρειότατα μαχόμενοι, οὐκ ἐδύναντο (*were able*) τοὺς πολεμίους (*the enemy*) πλέονας ὄντας ἀμύνειν.
3. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρειότεροι ἦσαν τῶν βαρβάρων καὶ ἄμεινον ἐμάχοντο.
4. τοῖς Ἕλλησι πολλῷ ἐλάττονες νῆες ἦσαν ἢ τοῖς βαρβάροις.
5. ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων πολλοὶ ἀπέθανον, τῶν δὲ πολεμίων πολλῷ πλέονες.
6. ἡ γυνή, πολλῷ σωφρονεστερὰ οὖσα τοῦ ἀνδρός, ἀληθέστερα εἶπεν.
7. οἱ Ἕλληνες, καίπερ ὀλίγιστοι ὄντες, τὰ ὅπλα (*their weapons*) παρεσκεύαζον, ἐν νῷ ἔχοντες ὡς ἀνδρειότατα ἀποθανεῖν.
8. οἱ βάρβαροι, καίπερ ἀγριώτατα προσβάλλοντες, οὐκ ἐδύναντο τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῆσαι.

### Exercise 14γ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. The Persians had (*use imperfect of ἔχω*) a bigger army than we, but we were fighting more bravely.
2. The best soldiers of Xerxes attacked most fiercely but were faring no better than the others.
3. Old men are not always wiser than young men.
4. The hoplites attacked the Persians even (καί) more fiercely.
5. We decided to return home rather than to stay in the city.
6. The messenger, whom we heard in the agora, spoke more truly than you.

## The Rise of Athens

Athens played no part in the colonizing movement of the eighth and seventh centuries; she controlled a larger area than any other Greek state except Sparta and so had less need to send out colonies. She was also at this time somewhat backward. An attempt was made to establish a tyranny at Athens by Cylon (632 B.C.), but he failed to win popular support.

Forty years later in the 590s, the discontent of the farmers threatened to lead to civil war in Attica, and Solon was appointed arbitrator to find a solution (see page 118). Although his legislation pleased neither farmers nor nobles, his reforms had a lasting and profound effect both constitutionally and economically. Athens enjoyed a new prosperity. She began to export both olive oil and fine pottery; Attic black figure pottery, which had begun to appear about 600 B.C., gradually drove out Corinthian ware, and achieved a monopoly throughout the Greek world and beyond.

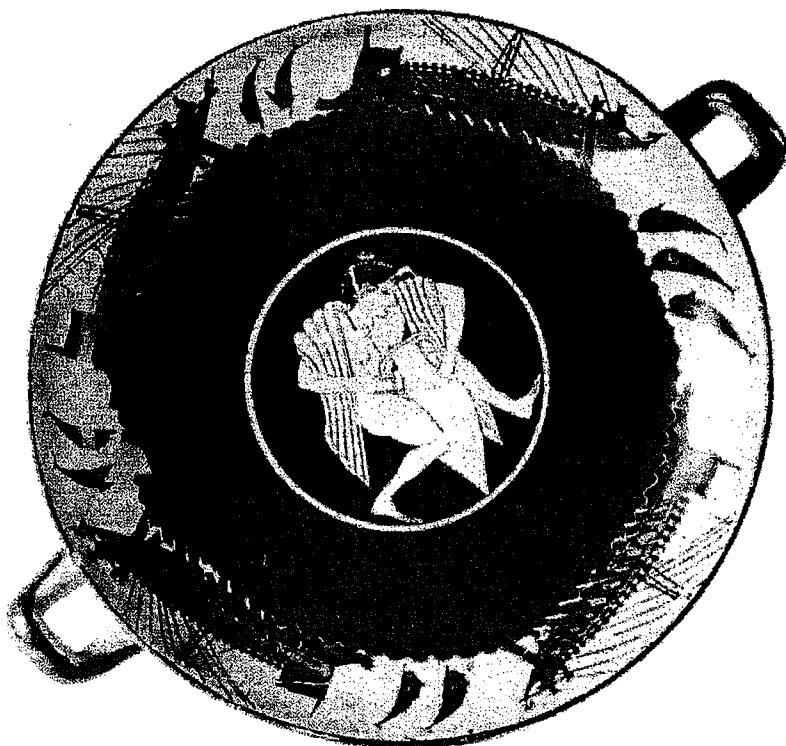
A renewed threat of civil war allowed Pisistratus to establish a tyranny, but Athens continued to grow in prosperity and power throughout his tyranny (546–527) and that of his son, Hippias. Hippias was driven out in 510, and three years later Cleisthenes put through the reforms that established a democracy. Immediately Athens was attacked by enemies on every side. The Spartan king Cleomenes led the army of the Peloponnesian League against her but turned back at the border, because the Corinthians refused to fight in an unjust war. Meanwhile the Boeotians had invaded Attica from the north and the Chalcidians from the east. As soon as Cleomenes had turned back, the Athenian army hurried north, defeated the Boeotians and then crossed to Euboea and inflicted a crushing defeat on the Chalcidians, taking and destroying their city.

When Aristagoras arrived in Athens to ask for help in the Ionian revolt against Persia, the Athenian people were confident enough to accept his appeal (see page 220). Since Hippias had taken refuge with the Persians, their motives were not entirely disinterested. Less than ten years later, Athens faced the might of Persia alone at Marathon, and her victory there filled the democracy with boundless pride and confidence.

Although Athens was now powerful by land, her navy was still inconsiderable. The founder of Athenian sea power was Themistocles, the victor of Salamis, who foresaw that the future of Athens lay by sea and who, as archon in 493/492 B.C., had begun the fortification of the Piraeus. Ten years later an exceptionally rich vein of silver was found in the state mines at Laurium. It was proposed to divide this windfall up among the citizens, but Themistocles persuaded the Assembly to use the money to build a new fleet. Two years later at Salamis we find that Athens had a fleet of 200 triremes, more than half the whole Greek force of 350 ships. Themistocles as admiral of the Athenian contingent had the greatest influence in the allied councils and devised the tactics that won victory at Salamis in 480 B.C. If Sparta remained the greatest land power among the Greeks, from now on there could be no doubt that Athens would take the lead by sea.

When representatives of the thirty-one loyal Greek states had met at Corinth in 481 B.C. to plan resistance to Xerxes' imminent invasion, the allies agreed without dispute to give Sparta command by both land and sea. News of Xerxes' preparations must have reached Greece a good time before this. He had summoned contingents from all over his empire and spent the winter of 481/480 at Sardis assembling and preparing his invasion force. According to Herodotus, his navy consisted of 1,207 ships and his army of

1,700,000 fighting men. The figure for the navy may be approximately correct, but that for the army is absurd. It may have numbered 200,000. To bring this great host into Europe, Xerxes' engineers constructed two bridges of boats across the Hellespont (480 B.C.). When they were destroyed by a storm, two new and stronger bridges were built, and the army crossed the Hellespont and proceeded along the coast, supplied by the navy. At Mount Athos, off which the Persian fleet had been wrecked in 492 B.C., a canal had been dug across the promontory, one and a half miles or two and a half kilometers long, to forestall a similar disaster (see map, page 230). The invading force continued inexorably through Macedonia and into Thessaly. There was no resistance; the Greeks had abandoned any idea of making a stand anywhere north of Thermopylae, the only place where geography made it possible to hold off the Persians by a combined operation by sea and land. The next defensible point was the Isthmus of Corinth, but withdrawal to this would mean abandoning Attica. Even the wall across the Isthmus would not provide effective defense, if the position could be circumvented by a landing of the Persian fleet south of the Isthmus.



Around the outside of this cup four Athenian warships are being rowed, with dolphins leaping beside their prows. They are not triremes, which with 170 oarsmen were too complicated for any artist to draw on a vase. They are penteconteres, which had fifty oarsmen. Note the helmsmen holding the steering oars, the high platform in the bows where the lookout stood, and the bronze beaks that were used for ramming the enemy.

## Classical Greek

### Archilochus

For Archilochus, see pages 121, 173, and 231. In the following epigram (poem 5, Gerber), he defiantly tells the world that in a battle against a Thracian tribe, the Saioi, he threw away his shield and ran:

ἀσπίδι μὲν Σαίων τις ἀγάλλεται, ἦν παρὰ θάμνῳ,

ἔντος ἀμώμητον, κάλλιπον οὐκ ἐθέλων·

αὐτὸν δ' ἐξέσάωσα. τί μοι μέλει ἀσπίς ἐκείνη;

ἔρρέτω· ἐξαὔτις κτήσομαι οὐ κακίῳ.

[ἀσπίδι (from ἀσπίς), *my shield* ἀγάλλεται + dat., *enjoys* παρὰ θάμνῳ, *by a bush* ἔντος, *a weapon* ἀμώμητον, *blameless, excellent* κάλλιπον = κατέλιπον αὐτὸν = ἑμαυτὸν ἐξέσάωσα = ἐξέσωσα (from ἐκσώζω, *I keep X safe*) τί μοι μέλει ἀσπίς ἐκείνη, *what do I care about that shield?*, lit., *why is that shield a concern to me?* ἔρρέτω, *let it go!* ἐξαὔτις = αὐτίς κτήσομαι (supply ἄλλην), *I will get (another)* κακίῳ = κακίονα]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 10.25–29

#### The Good Samaritan

καὶ ἰδοὺ νομικός τις ἀνέστη ἐκπειράζων αὐτὸν λέγων, “διδάσκαλε, τί ποιήσῃς ζωὴν αἰώνιον κληρονομήσω;” ὁ δὲ εἶπεν πρὸς αὐτόν, “ἐν τῷ νόμῳ τί γέγραπται; πῶς ἀναγινώσκεις;” ὁ δὲ ἀποκριθεὶς εἶπεν, “ἀγαπήσεις κύριον τὸν θεόν σου ἐξ ὅλης καρδίᾳς σου καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ ψυχῇ σου καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ ἰσχύϊ σου καὶ ἐν ὅλῃ τῇ διανοίᾳ σου, καὶ τὸν πλησίον σου ὡς σεαυτόν.” εἶπεν δὲ αὐτῷ, “ὁρθῶς ἀπεκρίθης· τοῦτο ποίει καὶ ζήσῃ.” ὁ δὲ θέλων δικαιῶσαι ἑαυτὸν εἶπεν πρὸς τὸν Ἰησοῦν, “καὶ τίς ἐστὶν μου πλησίον;”

[νομικός, *lawyer* ἀνέστη, *stood up* ἐκπειράζων, *testing* αὐτόν, i.e., *Jesus* διδάσκαλε, *teacher* ζωὴν, *life* αἰώνιον, *eternal* κληρονομήσω, *will I inherit* τῷ νόμῳ, *the law* γέγραπται, *has been/is written* ἀναγινώσκεις = ἀναγινώσκεις, *do you read* ἀποκριθεὶς, *aorist passive participle with active meaning, answering* ἀγαπήσεις, *you will love* κύριον, *the Lord* ὅλης, *whole* καρδίᾳς, *heart* ἐν, *here best translated with* τῇ ψυχῇ, *the soul* τῇ ἰσχύϊ, *the strength* τῇ διανοίᾳ, *the mind* πλησίον, *adv. or prep. + gen., near; τὸν πλησίον σου = your neighbor* ζήσῃ (from \*ζάω), *you will live* δικαιῶσαι, *to justify* μου πλησίον = ὁ πλησίον μου, *the one near me, my neighbor*]

Concluded at the end of the chapter

# Η ΕΝ ΤΑΙΣ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΑΙΣ ΜΑΧΗ (β)



οἱ Ἕλληνες μνημεῖον ἐποίησαν τῷ Λεωνίδῃ,  
ἀνδρὶ ἀρίστῳ, λέοντα λίθινον.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀγγέλλω, [ἀγγελε-] ἀγγελῶ,  
[ἀγγειλ-] ἡγγεῖλα, ἀγγεῖλας,  
*I announce; I tell*

ἀναχωρέω, ἀναχωρήσω,  
ἀνεχώρησα, ἀναχωρήσας,  
*I retreat, withdraw*

ἀντέχω [= ἀντι- + ἔχω], imperfect,  
ἀντεῖχον (irregular augment),  
ἀνθέξω (irregular), [σχ-]  
ἀντέσχον, ἀντισχόν + dat., *I re-*  
*sist*

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα,  
γράψας, *I write*

διέρχομαι [= δια- + ἔρχομαι],  
[εἰ-/ι-] δῖειμι, [ἐλθ-] διήλθον,  
διελθών, *I come through; I go*  
*through*

παραγίγνομαι, [γενε-] παρ-  
αγενήσομαι, [γεν-] παρε-  
γενόμην, παραγενόμενος, *I ar-*  
*rive*

φράζω, φράσω, ἔφρασα,  
φράσας, *I show; I tell; I tell of,*  
*explain*

### Nouns

ὁ πόλεμος, τοῦ πολέμου, *war*  
αἱ πύλαι, τῶν πυλῶν, pl.,  
*double gates; pass (through the*  
*mountains)*

### Adjectives

ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν, *all; ev-*  
*ery; whole*  
ὅδε, ἧδε (note the accent), τόδε,  
*this here; pl., these here*

Note the predicate position:  
ὅδε ὁ ἄνθρωπος or ὁ  
ἄνθρωπος ὅδε, *this man*  
*here*

πολέμιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *hostile; en-*  
*emy*

οἱ πολέμιοι, τῶν  
πολεμίων, *the enemy*



<i>Adverb</i>	ἢ Βοιωτίᾳ τῆς Βοιωτίᾳς <i>Boeotia</i>
ὅπου, <i>where</i>	
<i>Conjunctions</i>	ὁ Ἐφιάλτης, τοῦ Ἐφιάλτου, <i>Ephialtes</i>
ἕως, <i>until</i>	
ὡς, <i>when</i>	ἡ Πελοπόννησος, τῆς Πελοποννήσου, <i>the Peloponnesus</i>
<i>Expression</i>	
τῇ προτεραίᾳ, <i>on the day before</i>	ὁ Σπαρτιάτης, τοῦ Σπαρτιάτου, <i>a Spartan</i>
<i>Proper Names</i>	
τὸ Ἀρτεμίσιον, τοῦ Ἀρτεμισίου, <i>Artemisium</i>	τὸ Φάληρον, τοῦ Φαλήρου, <i>Phalerum</i> (the old harbor of Athens)
ἡ Ἀττική, τῆς Ἀττικῆς, <i>Attica</i>	

“τῇ δ’ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ βάρβαροι αὐθις προσβάλλοντες οὐδὲν ἄμεινον ἔπραττον ἢ τῇ προτεραίᾳ. ὥς οὖν ἠπόρει ὁ Ξέρξης, προσῆλθε πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀνὴρ τις τῶν Ἑλλήνων, Ἐφιάλτης ὀνόματι, ἔφρασέ τε τὴν ἀτραπὸν τὴν διὰ τοῦ ὄρους φέρουσαν εἰς τὰς Θερμοπύλας. ταῦτα δὲ μαθὼν ὁ Ξέρξης τοὺς ἀθανάτους ταύτῃ ἐπεμψεν, κελεύων αὐτοὺς ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν λαβεῖν τοὺς Ἑλλήνας. οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες μαθόντες τί γίγνεται πρῶτον μὲν ἠπόρουν τί δεῖ πράξαι, τέλος δὲ ἔδοξε τῷ Λεωνίδῃ τοὺς μὲν ἄλλους ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς τὴν Ἀττικὴν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἔμενεν ἐν ταῖς Θερμοπύλαις τριᾶκοσίους ἔχων Σπαρτιάτας ἐν νῷ ἔχων τὰς πύλας φυλάττειν.

[τε, *and* τὴν ἀτραπὸν, *the path* φέρουσαν, *leading* ταύτῃ, *this way* ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν, *from the rear* τριᾶκοσίους, *three hundred*]

“οἱ μὲν οὖν βάρβαροι προσέβαλον, οἱ δὲ Σπαρτιάται ἐμάχοντο πρὸς πολεμίους πολλαπλασίους ὄντας καὶ πλείστους δὴ ἀπέκτειναν· τῶν δ’ Ἑλλήνων ἄλλοι τε πολλοὶ ἔπεσον καὶ αὐτὸς ὁ Λεωνίδης, ἀνὴρ ἄριστος γενόμενος. τέλος δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι οἱ διὰ τοῦ ὄρους διελθόντες παρεγένοντο καὶ ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν προσέβαλον. τότε δὴ οἱ Σπαρτιάται εἰς τὸ στενὸν τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀνεχώρουν καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἐμάχοντο ἕως ἅπαντες ἔπεσον.

[πολλαπλασίους, *many times their number*]

“οἱ δὲ Ἑλληνες μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον τοὺς τριᾶκοσίους ἔθαψαν ὅπου ἔπεσον καὶ μνημεῖον ἐποίησαν τῷ Λεωνίδῃ, λέοντα λίθινον, ὃν καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν ἰδεῖν. καὶ τοῦτο τὸ ἐπίγραμμα ἐν στήλῃ λιθίνῃ ἔγραψαν·

ὃ ξεῖν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε  
 κείμεθα, τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι.

[ἔθαψαν, *they buried* ἐπίγραμμα, *inscription* στήλη, *tombstone* ὃ ξεῖν' = ὃ  
 ξένε ἀγγέλλειν: infinitive used as imperative τῇδε, *here* κείμεθα, *we lie*  
 τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι, *their words*]

“ἐν δὲ τούτῳ κατὰ θάλατταν οἱ Ἕλληνες πρὸς τῷ Ἀρτεμισίῳ  
 μένοντες τὰ στενὰ ἐφύλαττον καὶ ναυμαχοῦντες τοὺς βαρβάρους 25  
 ἐνίκησαν καίπερ πλέονας ὄντας καὶ ἡμῶν. ὥς δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι τὰς  
 Θερμοπύλας εἶλον, οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκέτι ἐφύλαττον τὰ στενὰ ἀλλὰ  
 πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα ταῖς ναυσὶν ἀνεχώρουν. κατὰ δὲ γῆν οὐκέτι  
 ἐδύναντο ἀντέχειν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον πρὸς τὴν  
 Πελοπόννησον, τὴν τε Βοιωτίαν καὶ τὴν Ἀττικὴν τοῖς πολεμίοις 30  
 καταλιπόντες. οὕτως οὖν οἱ βάρβαροι κατὰ μὲν γῆν προχωρήσαντες  
 ταῖς Ἀθήναις προσβαλεῖν ἐν νῶ εἶχον, κατὰ δὲ θάλατταν εἰς τὸ  
 Φάληρον πλεύσαντες ἐν τῷ λιμένι ὥρμουν.”

[ναυμαχοῦντες, *fighting at sea* ταῖς ναυσὶν, *with their ships* ἐδύναντο, *they*  
*were able* ὥρμουν (from ὁρμέω), *came to lie at anchor*]

## WORD BUILDING

*Deduce the meanings of the words in the following sets:*

- |                |                   |                      |              |
|----------------|-------------------|----------------------|--------------|
| 1. ὁ στρατός   | ἡ στρατιά         | στρατεύω (-ομαι)     | τὸ στράτευμα |
| 2. ὁ στρατηγός | στρατηγέω         | στρατηγικός, -ή, -όν | ὁ στρατιώτης |
| 3. ὁ πόλεμος   | πολέμιος, -α, -ον | πολεμικός, -ή, -όν   | πολεμέω      |

## GRAMMAR

### 5. Demonstrative Adjectives

Here are three demonstrative adjectives, used when pointing to particular things (cf. the Latin *dēmōnstrō*, “I point out”):

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this*  
 ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that*  
 ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this here*

In the chart below, note that the demonstrative adjective οὗτος begins with τ everywhere the definite article does; the feminine has -αυ- instead of -ου- everywhere except in the genitive plural; and the neuter plural nominative and accusative have -αυ-:

Singular			Plural			
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, <i>this</i>						
<b>Nom.</b>	οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
<b>Gen.</b>	τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
<b>Dat.</b>	τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
<b>Acc.</b>	τούτον	ταύτην	τούτο	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that*

<b>Nom.</b>	ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκείναι	ἐκεῖνα
<b>Gen.</b>	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
<b>Dat.</b>	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
<b>Acc.</b>	ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

The demonstrative adjective ὅδε is formed from the definite article plus -δε.

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this here*

<b>Nom.</b>	ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε	οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
<b>Acc.</b>	τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε

Note that these demonstrative adjectives require the definite article to be used with the noun and that the adjectives stand outside the definite article-noun group, i.e., in the *predicate position* (see Chapter 5, Grammar 7b, page 66), e.g.:

οὗτος ὁ ἀνὴρ or ὁ ἀνὴρ οὗτος = *this man*

ἐκείνη ἡ γυνή or ἡ γυνή ἐκείνη = *that woman*

τόδε τὸ ἔργον or τὸ ἔργον τόδε = *this work*

The datives ταύτῃ and τῇδε are used as adverbs, meaning *in this way*; *here*.

### Exercise 14δ

Give the correct form of the demonstrative to fit the following phrases:

- |                         |                            |
|-------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. (οὗτος) αἱ γυναῖκες  | 6. (οὗτος) οἱ βάρβαροι     |
| 2. (ἐκεῖνος) τὸ δένδρον | 7. (ἐκεῖνος) τοῦ στρατοῦ   |
| 3. (οὗτος) τὰ ὀνόματα   | 8. (οὗτος) τῇ πόλει        |
| 4. (ὅδε) τῶν νεανιῶν    | 9. (ὅδε) οἱ γέροντες       |
| 5. (οὗτος) τῆς παρθένου | 10. (οὗτος) τοῦ στρατιώτου |

**Exercise 14e***Translate:*

1. ἐκεῖνο τὸ δένδρον μέγιστόν ἐστιν· οὐδέποτε (*never*) εἶδον δένδρον μείζον.
2. ἄρ' ὁρῶς τούσδε τοὺς παῖδας, οἳ ἐκείνον τὸν κύνα διώκουσιν;
3. ταῦτα μαθοῦσαι αἱ γυναῖκες εὐθὺς τοὺς ἄνδρας ἐκάλεσαν.
4. τί οὐ βούλει τῷ ἀρότρῳ τούτῳ χρῆσθαι; ἄμεινον γάρ ἐστιν ἐκείνου.
5. τί ποιεῖς, ὦ πάτερ; ἄρα ταύτῃ τῇ γυναικὶ διαλέγει;
6. οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνδρειότεροι ἦσαν τῶν Περσῶν.
7. οἱ Σπαρτιᾶται πάντες ἀπέθανον ἀνδρειότατα μαχόμενοι.
8. This road is worse than that, but that (one) is longer.
9. After seeing this (*use the neuter plural*), that old man was growing very angry.
10. These women are wiser than those young men.

**6. Interrogative and Indefinite Pronouns, Adjectives, and Adverbs**

In Chapter 7 (Grammar 8 and Grammar 9, pages 108–109) you learned the interrogative pronoun τίς, τί, *who? what?* and the corresponding indefinite adjective τις, τι, meaning *a certain, a, or an*. The interrogative pronoun always has an acute accent, while the indefinite adjective is enclitic.

Interrogative adverbs also have corresponding indefinite, enclitic forms:

**Interrogative Adverbs**

ποῦ;	<i>where?</i>
πόθεν;	<i>from where? whence?</i>
ποι;	<i>to where? whither?</i>
ποτε;	<i>when?</i>
πῶς;	<i>how?</i>

**Indefinite Adverbs**

που	<i>somewhere, anywhere</i>
ποθέν	<i>from somewhere</i>
ποι	<i>to somewhere</i>
ποτε	<i>at some time, at one time, once, ever</i>
πως	<i>somehow, in any way</i>

These indefinite adverbs cannot stand first in their clause, and they attach themselves to some important word as enclitics.

If an enclitic is followed by another enclitic, the first receives an accent but the second does not, e.g.: δυνατόν ἐστί ποτε, *it is ever possible*. (Remember that ἐστί is enclitic.) If an enclitic is followed by more than one enclitic, all but the last receive acute accents, e.g.: δυνατόν ἐστί σοί ποτε, *it is ever possible for you*.

**Exercise 14ζ**

*Translate into English. Locate indefinite adjectives and adverbs and explain why the accents are used that accompany them. Consult Enclitics and Proclitics, page 285, if necessary.*

1. τίνες ἐλαύνουσι τοὺς βοῦς; γέροντές τινες αὐτοὺς ἐλαύνουσιν.
2. ποῖ πορεύεται ὁ βασιλεὺς; ὁ βασιλεὺς πορεύεται ποι πρὸς τὰ ὄρη.
3. ποῦ εἰσιν οἱ ναῦται; ἐν τῷ λιμένι ποῦ εἰσιν οἱ ναῦται.
4. τί πάσχετε, ὦ παῖδες; ἄρα κακόν τι πάσχετε;
5. πόθεν ἦκεις, ὦ ἄνερ; ἦκω ἀπὸ τῶν ὁρῶν ποθεν, ὦ γύναι.
6. πότε ἐν νῷ ἔχεις εἰς τὸ ἄστυ ἰέναι; δι' ὀλίγου ποτὲ ἐκεῖσε ἰέναι ἐν νῷ ἔχω.
7. πῶς τοῦτο ἐποίησας; τοῦτο ἐποίησα τεχνικῶς (*skillfully*) πως.
8. ποῦ μένει ὁ ἀδελφός; ὁ σὸς ἀδελφὸς μένει που ἐγγὺς τῆς ἀγορᾶς.

## ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑ ΥΠΕΡ ΘΕΡΜΟΠΥΛΩΝ ΣΤΕΝΑ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ

*Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 7.215–219) and answer the comprehension questions:*

ὁ δὲ Ξέρξης, μαθὼν ὅτι ἀτραπὸς ἐστὶν ὑπὲρ τὸ ὄρος φέρουσα, μάλα χαίρων ἔπεμψε τὸν Ὑδάρνην, στρατηγὸν ὄντα ἄριστον, καὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας ὧν ἐστρατήγει ὁ Ὑδάρνης. ὠρμῶντο δὲ πρὸς ἐσπέρᾱν ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατοπέδου, ἡγεῖτο δὲ αὐτοῖς ὁ Ἐφιάλης. αὕτη δὲ ἡ ἀτραπὸς ἄρχεται ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ποταμοῦ. οἱ οὖν Πέρσαι τὸν Ἀσωπὸν διαβάντες ἐπορεύοντο πᾶσαν τὴν νύκτα. ἐγένετο δὲ ἡμέρᾱ, καὶ οἱ Πέρσαι ἀφίκοντο εἰς ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος. κατὰ δὲ τοῦτο τοῦ ὄρους ἐφύλαττον Ἕλλήνων χίλιοι ὁπλίται.

[ὕπερ + acc., *over* τὸν Ὑδάρνην, *Hydarnes* στρατηγόν, *general* ὧν ἐστρατήγει, *of whom (he) was in command* τοῦ στρατοπέδου, *the camp* ἄρχεται, *begins* τοῦ Ἀσωποῦ ποταμοῦ, *the Asopus River* διαβάντες, *having crossed* κατὰ . . . τοῦτο τοῦ ὄρους, *on this (part) of the mountain* χίλιοι, *a thousand*]

1. What had Xerxes learned? Whom did he send?
2. When did they set out? Who led them?
3. Where did the path begin?
4. How long did the Persians march?
5. Who were guarding the top of the mountain?

οὗτοι δὲ οὐκ εἶδον τοὺς Πέρσας ἀναβαίνοντας· πολλὰ γὰρ ἦν δένδρα κατὰ τὸ ὄρος. ψόφον δὲ ἀκούοντες ἔμαθον ὅτι ἀνέβησαν οἱ Πέρσαι. ἔδραμον οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ ἐνέδυσαν τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ εὐθὺς παρῆσαν οἱ βάρβαροι. ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι εἶδον

ἄνδρας ἐνδύοντας ὅπλα, ἐθαύμαζον· ἐλπίζοντες γὰρ οὐδένα φυλάττειν τὴν ἀτραπὸν, ἐνεκύρησαν στρατῷ. ὁ μὲν οὖν Ὑδάρνης διέταξε τοὺς Πέρσας εἰς μάχην· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐλπίζοντες τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐν νῶ ἔχειν προσβαλεῖν, ἔφυγον εἰς τὸν τοῦ ὄρους κόρυμβον καὶ παρεσκευάζοντο μαχόμενοι ἀποθανεῖν. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιοῦντο, κατέβησαν δὲ τὸ ὄρος ὡς τάχιστα.

15

[ψόφον, *noise* ἀνέβησαν, *had come up, had ascended* ἐνέδυσον (from ἐνδύω) τὰ ὅπλα, *began to put on their armor, began to arm themselves* ἐνεκύρησαν (from ἐγκυρέω) + dat., *they met, came face to face with* διέταξε (from διατάττω), *arranged, marshaled* εἰς + acc., *for* τὸν . . . κόρυμβον, *the top, the peak* οὐδένα λόγον ἐποιοῦντο + gen., *were taking no notice of, lit., were making no calculation of* κατέβησαν, *they went down*]

6. Why didn't the Greeks see the Persians approaching?
7. How did they learn of the Persians' arrival?
8. What did the Greeks do immediately?
9. Why were the Persians surprised to see the Greeks?
10. What did Hydarnes do?
11. What was the response of the Greeks?
12. What did the Persians do?

### Exercise 14η

*Translate into Greek:*

1. When the Persians had taken (*use aorist*) Thermopylae, they went toward (*use προσχωρέω*) Attica.
2. The Greeks retreated both by land and by sea, leaving (behind) Attica to the enemy.
3. The Athenians, having sent the women and children and old men to the Peloponnesus and Salamis, were preparing to fight by sea.
4. So they asked the other Greeks to sail to Salamis as quickly as possible.
5. The Peloponnesians (οἱ Πελοποννήσιοι), who were making a wall across (διά + gen.) the Isthmus (*use ὁ Ἴσθμός*), were not wishing to come to aid the Athenians, but nevertheless sent their ships to Salamis.

## Classical Greek

### Theognis

For Theognis, see pages 163 and 185. In the following lines (1197–1200), while in exile, he hears the crane, which in its autumn migration to Africa is a sign that it is time to plow:

ὄρνιθος φωνήν, Πολυπαΐδη, ὅξυ βοώσης  
 ἤκουσ', ἥ τε βροτοῖς ὄγγελος ἦλθ' ἀρότου  
 ὠραίου· καί μοι κραδίην ἐπάταξε μέλαιναν,  
 ὅτι μοι εὐανθεῖς ἄλλοι ἔχουσιν ἀγρούς.

[ὄρνιθος φωνήν, *the voice of the bird* (ὄρνις) i.e., the crane Πολυπαΐδη, voc., Poly-  
 paides is the friend to whom Theognis addresses his poetry ὅξυ, *loudly* ἥ τε, *which*  
 βροτοῖς, *to mortals* ἦλθ(εν), *gnomic aorist, translate as present, comes* ἀρότου  
 ὠραίου, *of plowing (being) seasonable*, i.e., of the season of plowing μοι κραδίην,  
*my heart* ἐπάταξε, *struck* μέλαιναν, *black* ὅτι = ὅτι, *because* εὐανθεῖς, *fair-*  
*flowering*]

## New Testament Greek

### Luke 10.30–37

#### The Good Samaritan (concluded)

ὑπολαβὼν ὁ Ἰησοῦς εἶπεν, “ἄνθρωπός τις κατέβαινεν ἀπὸ Ἱερουσαλὴμ εἰς Ἱεριχὼ καὶ λησταῖς περιέπεσεν, οἱ καὶ ἐκδύσαντες αὐτὸν καὶ πληγὰς ἐπιθέντες ἀπῆλθον ἀφέντες ἡμιθανῆ. κατὰ συγκυρίαν δὲ ἱερεὺς τις κατέβαινεν ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ ἐκείνῃ καὶ ἰδὼν αὐτὸν ἀντιπαρῆλθεν· ὁμοίως δὲ καὶ Λευίτης κατὰ τὸν τόπον ἐλθὼν καὶ ἰδὼν ἀντιπαρῆλθεν. Σαμαρίτης δὲ τις ὁδεύων ἦλθεν κατ’ αὐτὸν καὶ ἰδὼν ἐσπλαγχνίσθη, καὶ προσελθὼν κατέδησεν τὰ τραύματα αὐτοῦ ἐπιχέων ἔλαιον καὶ οἶνον, ἐπιβιβάσας δὲ αὐτὸν ἐπὶ τὸ ἴδιον κτῆνος ἤγαγεν αὐτὸν εἰς πανδοχεῖον καὶ ἐπεμελήθη αὐτοῦ. . . . τίς τούτων τῶν τριῶν πλησίον δοκεῖ σοι γεγονέναι τοῦ ἐμπεσόντος εἰς τοὺς ληστὰς;” ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, “ὁ ποιήσας τὸ ἔλεος μετ’ αὐτοῦ.” εἶπεν δὲ αὐτῷ ὁ Ἰησοῦς, “πορεύου καὶ σὺ ποίει ὁμοίως.”

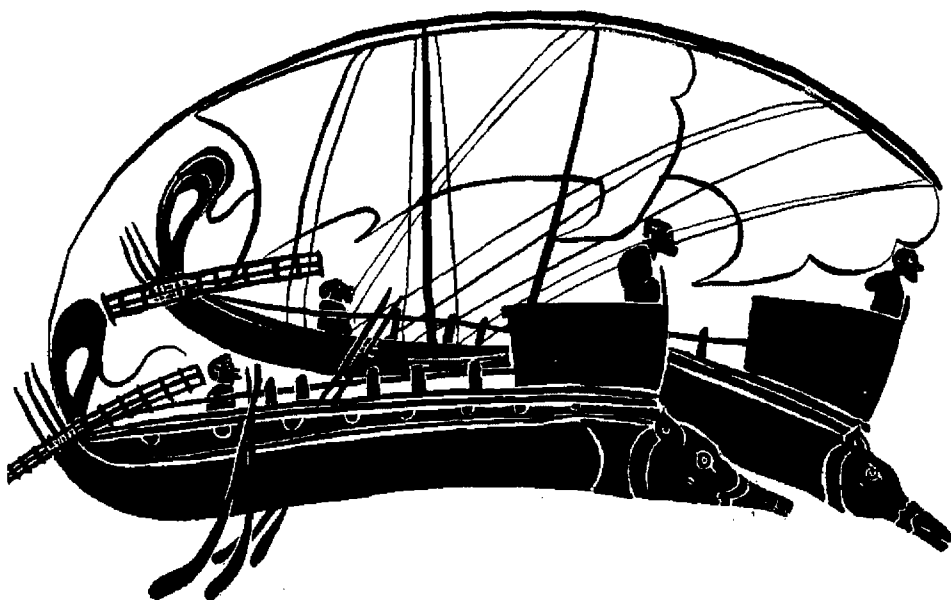
[ὑπολαβὼν, *answering* λησταῖς, *thieves* ἐκδύσαντες, *having stripped* πληγὰς ἐπιθέντες, *having put blows on him* ἀφέντες (from ἀφήμι) ἡμιθανῆ, *having left (him) half dead* κατὰ συγκυρίαν, *by chance* ἀντιπαρῆλθεν, *went past on the other side* ὁμοίως, *likewise* κατὰ τὸν τόπον, *to the place* ὁδεύων, *journeying, on a journey* ἐσπλαγχνίσθη, *was filled with pity* κατέδησεν, *he bound up* τὰ τραύματα, *the wounds* ἐπιχέων, *pouring on* ἔλαιον, *olive oil* ἐπιβιβάσας, *having mounted* τὸ ἴδιον κτῆνος, *his own beast* πανδοχεῖον, *inn* ἐπεμελήθη + gen., *he cared for* (ὁ) πλησίον . . . τοῦ ἐμπεσόντος, *the neighbor of the one who fell among* γεγονέναι, *to have been* ὁ ποιήσας τὸ ἔλεος, *the one who had* (lit., *who made*) *pity on* μετ(ά), *on*]

# 15

## Η ΕΝ ΤΗ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ

### ΜΑΧΗ (α)

---



οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι εἰς τὰς ναῦς εἰσβάντες παρεσκευάζοντο κατὰ θάλατταν μάχεσθαι.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω,  
 ἠνάγκασα, ἀναγκάσας,  
*I compel*  
 διαφθείρω, [φθερε-] διαφθερῶ,  
 [φθειρ-] διέφθειρα, διαφθείρας,  
*I destroy*  
 εἴκω, εἴξω, εἴξα (no aug-  
 ment), εἴξας + dat., *I yield*

#### Nouns

ἡ ἀπορίᾱ, τῆς ἀπορίᾱς, *per-  
 plexity; difficulty; the state of  
 being at a loss*  
 Cf. ἀπορέω, *I am at a loss*  
 ὁ ναύαρχος, τοῦ ναυάρχου,  
*admiral*

ὁ νοῦς, τοῦ νοῦ, *mind*

Cf. ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have  
 in mind; intend*

ὁ στρατηγός, τοῦ στρατηγοῦ,  
*general*

ἡ φυγή, τῆς φυγῆς, *flight*

#### Adjective

μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone; only*

#### Adverb

μηκέτι (cf. Vocabulary 3α)  
 + imperative, *don't . . . any  
 longer; + infin., no longer*  
 μόνον, *only*

#### Conjunctions

οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not  
 only . . . but also*



*Proper Name*

ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, τοῦ Θεμισ-  
τοκλέους, *Themistocles*

“οἱ μὲν οὖν Ἀθηναῖοι ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ἦσαν πλείστη· ὁ δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς  
ἔπεισεν αὐτοὺς μὴ εἶκιν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀλλὰ ὑπὲρ τῆς ἐλευθερίᾳς  
μάχεσθαι. τὰς τ’ οὖν γυναῖκας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας καὶ τοὺς γέροντας εἰς  
τὴν τε Πελοπόννησον καὶ τὴν Σαλαμῖνα ἐκόμισαν, τὴν τ’ Ἀττικὴν  
καὶ τὴν πόλιν τοῖς πολεμίοις καταλιπόντες. αὐτοὶ δὲ εἰς τὰς ναῦς  
εἰσβάντες πρὸς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα προσέπλευσαν καὶ παρεσκευάζοντο  
ὡς κατὰ θάλατταν μαχοῦμενοι.

[εἰσβάντες, *having gotten into, having embarked upon*]

“ἐν δὲ τούτῳ οἱ μὲν τῶν Ἑλλήνων στρατηγοὶ ἐν τῇ Σαλαμῖνι  
συνελθόντες οὕτως ἐφοβοῦντο ὥστε ἀποφυγεῖν ἐβούλοντο πρὸς τὴν  
Πελοπόννησον· ὁ δὲ Θεμιστοκλῆς ἐν τῷ συνεδρίῳ ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὅτι  
ἔτι καὶ νῦν δύνανται τοὺς πολεμίους νικῆσαι· ἐν γὰρ τοῖς στενοῖς  
μαχόμενοι οὐ δυνήσονται οἱ βάρβαροι τῷ πλήθει χρῆσθαι· δεῖ οὖν  
ἀναγκάσαι αὐτοὺς ἐκεῖ συμβαλεῖν.

[τῷ συνεδρίῳ, *the council* ἀναστὰς, *having stood up* δύνανται, *they were (lit., are) able*]

“οὕτως εἰπὼν οὐ μόνον τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς ἔπεισε  
μάχεσθαι, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἄγγελον παρὰ τὸν Ξέρξην ἔπεμψε λάθρα, ὡς  
λέξοντα ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες παρασκευάζονται εἰς φυγὴν. ὁ οὖν Ξέρξης,  
ὡς ἔγνω ὅτι ἀποφυγεῖν ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν οἱ Ἕλληνες, βουλόμενος  
αὐτοὺς ὡς τάχιστα διαφθεῖραι, διέγνω αὐτοὺς ἀναγκάσαι ἐν  
Σαλαμῖνι μάχεσθαι. τῶν οὖν νεῶν τὰς μὲν ἔπεμψε περὶ τὴν νῆσον,  
κελεύων τοὺς ναυάρχους τοὺς ἔκπλους φυλάττειν, τὰς δὲ ἐκέλευσε  
φυλάττειν τὰ στενὰ ὥστε μηκέτι ἐξεῖναι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν ἀποπλεῖν.”

[λάθρα, *secretly* εἰς + acc., *for* ἔγνω, *he learned* διέγνω, *decided* τῶν ...  
νεῶν τὰς μὲν ... τὰς δὲ, *some of the ships ... others* τοὺς ἔκπλους, *the escape routes*]

## WORD STUDY

Identify the Greek stems in the English words below and give the meanings of the English words:

1. monogamy (what does γαμέω mean?)
2. monologue
3. monochrome (what does τὸ χρώμα mean?)
4. monosyllable (what does ἡ συλλαβή mean? From what verb is this noun formed?)
5. monograph

## GRAMMAR

### 1. Athematic 2nd Aorists

The following common verbs form their aorist indicatives, imperatives, and infinitives by adding the appropriate endings directly to a long-vowel stem without a thematic vowel in between. The participles are formed on the short-vowel stem. We call these *athematic 2nd aorists*. The aorist of βαίνω is used only in compounds in Attic Greek:

βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην

*I step, walk, go*

**Aorist Stems:** βη-/βα-

Indic.	Imper.	Infin.	Partic.
ἔβην		βῆναι	βᾶς,
ἔβης	βῆθι		βάσα,
ἔβη			βάν,
ἔβημεν		gen., βάντος, etc.	
ἔβητε	βῆτε		
ἔβησαν			

γινώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων

*I come to know; I perceive; I learn*

**Aorist Stems:** γνω-/γνο-

Indic.	Imper.	Infin.	Partic.
ἔγνων		γνῶναι	γνούς,
ἔγνω	γνῶθι		γνοῦσα,
ἔγνω			γνόν,
ἔγνωνμεν		gen., γνόντος, etc.	
ἔγνωτε	γνῶτε		
ἔγνωσαν			

The other tenses of the following verb will be presented in Book II:

ἔστην

*I stood; I stopped*

**Aorist Stems:** στη-/στα-

Indic.	Imper.	Infin.	Partic.
ἔστην		στήναι	στάς,
ἔστης	στήθι		στάσα,
ἔστη			σtάν,
ἔστημεν		gen., σtάντος, etc.	
ἔστητε	στήτε		
ἔστησαν			

The participles of ἔβην and ἔστην are declined the same as sigmatic 1st aorist participles (see Chapter 12, Grammar 2, page 199). The participle of ἔγνων is declined the same as the present participle of εἰμί (see Chapter 9, Grammar 1, page 136), except for the masculine nominative singular.

Note the meanings of the following words:

ἀνέβην, *I went up*

ἀνάβηθι, *go up!*

ἀναβῆναι, *to go up*

ἀναβάς, *having gone up, after going up, sometimes, going up*

ἔγνων, *I came to know; I perceived; I learned*

γνῶθι, *know!*

γῶναι, *to know; to perceive; to learn*

γνοός, *having learned, after learning, sometimes, learning*

ἔστην, *I stood; I stopped*

στήθι, *stand! stop!*

σῆναι, *to stand; to stop*

στάς, *having stood, after standing, sometimes, standing;*

*having stopped, after stopping, sometimes, stopping*

### Exercise 15α

*In the reading passage at the beginning of this chapter, locate four instances of the above verbs or compounds of them; identify each form.*

### Exercise 15β

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. ἄρ' οὐ βούλεσθε γῶναι τί εἶπεν ὁ ἄγγελος;
2. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι, γνόντες ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι τὰς τε Θερμοπύλας εἶλον καὶ τῇ Ἀττικῇ προσχωροῦσιν, μάλα ἐφοβοῦντο.
3. ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, στρατηγὸς ὢν, ἀνέστη καὶ τοὺς Ἀθηναίους ἔπεισε μὴ εἶκιν τοῖς πολεμίοις.
4. οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὰς τε γυναῖκας καὶ τοὺς παῖδας εἰς τὴν Σαλαμῖνα κομίσαντες εἰς τὰς ναῦς εἰσέβησαν.
5. ὁ Ξέρξης, γνοὺς ὅτι ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν ἀποφυγεῖν οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐβούλετο ἀναγκάσαι αὐτοὺς σῆναί τε καὶ πρὸς τῇ Σαλαμῖνι μάχεσθαι.
6. ἐκβηθι ἐκ τῆς νεώς, ὦ παῖ, καὶ στήθι ἐν τῷ χώματι (*pier*).
7. ὁ ναύκληρος τὸν παῖδα ἐκέλευσεν ἀναστάντα ἐκβῆναι ἐκ τῆς νεώς.
8. αἱ γυναῖκες εἰς τὴν ἀγορὰν εἰσελθοῦσαι ἔστησαν πάντα θαυμάζουσαι.
9. ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἐν τοῖς Δελφοῖς ἔφη· “γνῶθι σεαυτόν.”
10. στήτε, ὦ φίλοι, καὶ ἐμὲ μείνατε.

**Exercise 15γ**

*Translate into Greek, using athematic aorist verbs from page 252 with the prepositional prefixes ἀνα-, εἰς-, ἐκ-, and ἐπι- as appropriate (check the vocabularies at the end of the book as necessary). Participles and infinitives when compounded with prefixes retain the accent of their uncompounded forms, but the accent of compound indicatives and imperatives is recessive.*

1. After going into the house, the women were sitting talking to one another.
2. Be silent, boy; stand up and help me.
3. Having gone into the temple, the priest stood and prayed to the god.
4. After climbing the mountain, we stood and were looking at the city.
5. The old man told the boys to stand up and listen.
6. Having learned what had happened (*use aorist*), the boy went out of the house to look for his father.
7. The women want to know why they must leave their homes behind.
8. Having learned that the barbarians were approaching (*use present tense*), the women embarked on the ships.
9. The soldiers, whom Xerxes sent, climbed the mountain very quickly.
10. When they arrived at the top (τὸ ἄκρον), they saw the Greeks, who did not stand bravely but fled away.

**2. More 3rd Declension Nouns with Stems in -εσ-**

In Chapter 13, Grammar 4, pages 226–227, you learned the declension of nouns with stems in -εσ-, such as τὸ τεῖχος (stem τειχεσ-) and ἡ τριήρης (stem τριηρεσ-). The noun ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέους also has a stem in -εσ-, but with a preceding ε so that the following contractions occur:

**Stem:** Θεμιστοκλε-εσ-, *Themistocles*

**Nom.** ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς

**Gen.** τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέ-εσ-ος > Θεμιστοκλέους

**Dat.** τῷ Θεμιστοκλέ-εσ-ι > Θεμιστοκλεῖ

**Acc.** τὸν Θεμιστοκλέ-εσ-α > Θεμιστοκλέᾱ

**Voc.** ὦ Θεμιστόκλε-εσ- > Θεμιστόκλεις

As usual, the intervocalic σ is lost. The last two vowels then contract in the usual ways, except that after ε the vowels ε + α > ᾱ, and not η, thus τὸν Θεμιστοκλέᾱ. The names Ἡρακλῆς, Περικλῆς, and Σοφοκλῆς are declined the same way.

### Aeschylus's *Persae*

Aeschylus, the first of the three great Athenian writers of tragedy, had fought at the battle of Marathon and probably also at Salamis. He certainly saw the battle, and he has left us an eyewitness account of it. Eight years after the battle, he entered his play *The Persians* (Πέρσαι) in the dramatic contest at the festival of Dionysus in 472 B.C. This is our earliest extant Greek tragedy, and it is unique in that it has an historical theme; all other extant tragedies draw their plots from myth. For Aeschylus, human events were interwoven with the divine; he saw the defeat and humiliation of Xerxes as the supreme example of *hubris* (human pride) punished by *Nemesis* (Divine Vengeance).

The scene of the play is Susa, the Persian capital, where the Elders anxiously wait for news of Xerxes' expedition. Since he left, they have heard nothing, and their hearts are heavy with foreboding as they wonder what has happened to the host that went forth in pride to cast the yoke of slavery on Greece. As they speculate gloomily, they see Atossa, the Queen-mother, approaching. She tells them that ever since her son left, she has been troubled by dreams and that now she has had a dream of unmistakable significance: she saw Xerxes yoke two women to his chariot, one in Asian dress, the other in Greek. The Asian woman was proud of her harness and was obedient to the reins, but the Greek struggled, tore the harness from the chariot, threw off the bridle, and broke the yoke. When Atossa woke and went to the altar to pray for deliverance from evil, she saw another terrible omen: an eagle (the king of birds = Xerxes) flew to Apollo's altar, pursued by a falcon (= the Greeks), which clawed at its head, while it cowered unresisting.

As the Elders attempt to calm and comfort Atossa, a messenger is seen approaching in haste, who without preamble reveals the news they have dreaded: "Cities of all the lands of Asia, by one blow your great prosperity has been destroyed and the flower of the Persians is fallen and gone; the whole host has perished."

While Atossa is stunned to silence, the Elders lament wildly until the queen recovers and with quiet dignity asks the messenger how it could have happened since the Persians surely outnumbered the Greeks. The messenger replies (337-347, tr. Podlecki):

Be sure of this, that in a matter of sheer numbers,  
The ships on our side would have conquered, for the Greeks'  
Entire total of ships was only three hundred ten. . . .  
But the multitude of ships in Xerxes' fleet—I know  
The facts—were no less than a thousand, those in speed  
Surpassing, two hundred seven. This is the total sum.  
Was it here you think we were surpassed when battle came?  
No, not by numbers, but some Spirit crushed the host,  
Threw in an evil fate against us in the scales.  
The gods are keeping the Goddess Pallas' city safe.

The messenger then describes the battle as follows (386-430, tr. Podlecki):

But when the white-horsed chariot of dawn appeared  
And filled the entire earth with radiance to behold,  
The first thing was a sound, a shouting from the Greeks,  
A joyful song, and to it, making shrill response,  
From the island rocks about there came an antiphony  
Of echoes; fear stood next to each one of our men,  
Tripped up in their hopes: for not as if in flight  
Were the Greeks raising then a solemn paeon-strain,  
But rushing into battle with daring confidence;  
A trumpet, too, blazed over everything its sound.  
At once, with measured stroke of surging, sea-dipped oar,  
They struck the brine and made it roar from one command,  
And quickly all of them were visible to sight.  
Their right wing first, in order just as they had been  
Arranged, led off, and next the whole remaining force  
Came out to the attack, and with the sight we heard  
A loud voice of command: "O sons of Greeks, go on,  
Bring freedom to your fatherland, bring freedom to  
Your children, wives, and seats of your ancestral gods,  
And your forebears' graves; now the struggle is for all."  
Of course, on our side, too, a roar of Persian tongues  
Went forth in answer; the moment would not brook delay.  
Immediately ship struck its brazen-plated beak  
On ship. The ramming was begun by a Greek ship  
And it snapped off from one of the Phoenicians the whole  
Curving stern, and men on both sides shot their spears.  
At first the streaming Persian force withstood the shocks;  
But when their crowd of ships was gathered in the straits,  
And no assistance could be given one to another,  
But they were being struck by their own brazen rams,  
They kept on breaking all their equipage of oars,  
And the ships of the Greeks, with perfect plan and order, came  
Around them in a circle and struck, and hulls of ships  
Were overturned; and the sea no longer was visible,  
Filled as it was with shipwrecks and the slaughter of men.  
The beaches, too, and the reefs around were filled with corpses.  
Now every ship that came with the Persian armament  
Was being rowed for quick escape, no order left.  
And they kept striking us, deboning us, like tunnies  
Or a catch of fish, with broken fragments of oars, or bits  
Of flotsam from the wrecks; and all this time, moaning  
And wailing held control of that area of sea,  
Until the eye of black night took it away.  
So great a crowd of ills, not even if I took  
Ten days in order to tell, could I tell the tale in full.

*New Testament Greek*Luke 2.1-14  
The Birth of Jesus

ἐγένετο δὲ ἐν ταῖς ἡμέραις ἐκείναις ἐξῆλθεν δόγμα παρὰ Καίσαρος Αὐγούστου ἀπογράφεσθαι πᾶσαν τὴν οἰκουμένην. αὕτη ἀπογραφή πρώτη ἐγένετο ἡγεμονεύοντος τῆς Συρίᾳς Κυρηνίου. καὶ ἐπορεύοντο πάντες ἀπογράφεσθαι, ἕκαστος εἰς τὴν ἑαυτοῦ πόλιν. ἀνέβη δὲ καὶ Ἰωσήφ ἀπὸ τῆς Γαλιλαΐας ἐκ πόλεως Ναζαρεθ εἰς τὴν Ἰουδαϊὰν εἰς πόλιν Δαυὶδ ἣτις καλεῖται Βηθλέεμ, διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν ἐξ οἴκου καὶ πατριᾶς Δαυὶδ, ἀπογράψασθαι σὺν Μαριὰμ τῇ ἐμνηστευμένη αὐτῷ, οὔσῃ ἐγκύῳ. ἐγένετο δὲ ἐν τῷ εἶναι αὐτοὺς ἐκεῖ ἐπλήσθησαν αἱ ἡμέραι τοῦ τεκεῖν αὐτήν, καὶ ἔτεκεν τὸν υἱὸν αὐτῆς τὸν πρωτότοκον, καὶ ἐσπαργάνωσεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἀνέκλινεν αὐτὸν ἐν φάτνῃ, διότι οὐκ ἦν αὐτοῖς τόπος ἐν τῷ καταλύματι.

[δόγμα, *order, decree* παρὰ + *gen., from* ἀπογράφεσθαι, *to be registered, enrolled (in the census)* τὴν οἰκουμένην, *the inhabited world, the Roman Empire* ἡγεμονεύοντος . . . Κυρηνίου, *when Quirinius was governor* ἕκαστος, *each* διὰ τὸ εἶναι αὐτὸν, *because of his being* πατριᾶς, *family, nation, people* σὺν + *dat., with* Μαριὰμ: *indeclinable* τῇ ἐμνηστευμένη, *the betrothed* ἐγκύῳ, *pregnant* ἐπλήσθησαν, *were fulfilled* τεκεῖν (from τίκω), *to give birth* τὸν υἱὸν, *the son* πρωτότοκον, *first-born* ἐσπαργάνωσεν, *she wrapped X in swaddling bands* ἀνέκλινεν (from ἀνακλίνω) *she made X recline* φάτνῃ, *manger, feeding-trough* διότι, *because* τόπος, *place* τῷ καταλύματι, *the inn*]

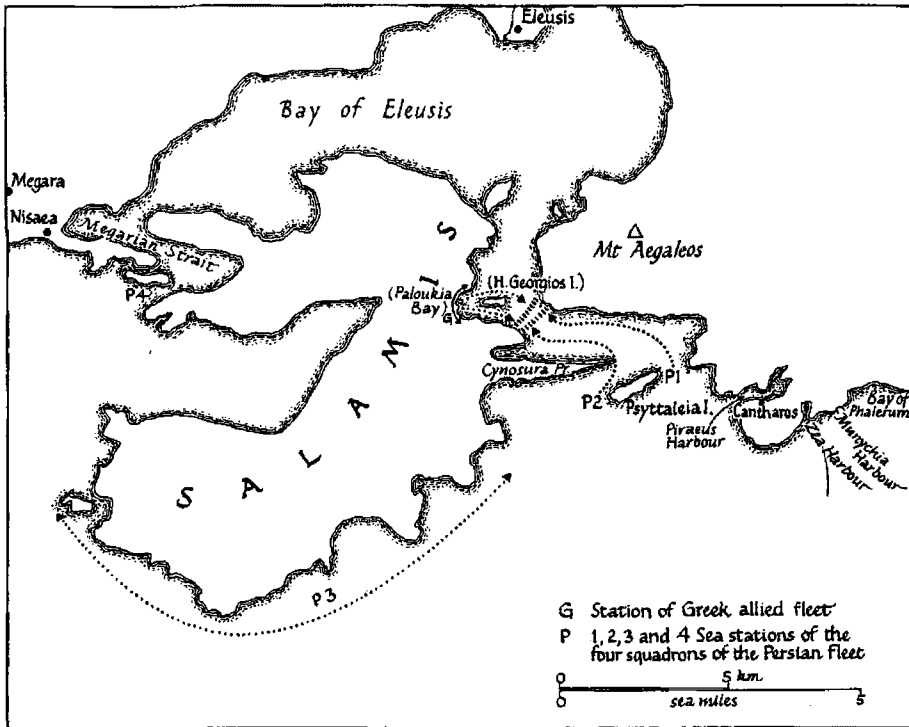
καὶ ποιμένες ἦσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ τῇ αὐτῇ ἀγραυλοῦντες καὶ φυλάσσοντες φυλακὰς τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τὴν ποίμνην αὐτῶν. καὶ ἄγγελος κυρίου ἐπέστη αὐτοῖς καὶ δόξα κυρίου περιέλαμψεν αὐτούς, καὶ ἐφοβήθησαν φόβον μέγαν. καὶ εἶπεν αὐτοῖς ὁ ἄγγελος, “μὴ φοβεῖσθε, ἰδοὺ γὰρ εὐαγγελίζομαι ὑμῖν χαρὰν μεγάλην ἣτις ἔσται παντὶ τῷ λαῷ, ὅτι ἐτέχθη ὑμῖν σήμερον σωτὴρ ὅς ἐστιν Χριστὸς κύριος ἐν πόλει Δαυὶδ. καὶ τοῦτο ὑμῖν τὸ σημεῖον, εὐρήσετε βρέφος ἐσπαργανωμένον καὶ κείμενον ἐν φάτνῃ.” καὶ ἐξαίφνης ἐγένετο σὺν τῷ ἁγγέλῳ πλῆθος στρατιᾶς οὐρανοῦ αἰνούντων τὸν θεὸν καὶ λεγόντων,

“δόξα ἐν ὑψίστοις θεῷ

καὶ ἐπὶ γῆς εἰρήνῃ ἐν ἀνθρώποις εὐδοκίας.”

[ποιμένες, *shepherds* τῇ χώρᾳ, *the place* ἀγραυλοῦντες, *living out of doors* φυλάσσοντες = φυλάττοντες φυλακὰς, *watches* ἐπὶ + *acc., over* τὴν ποίμνην, *the flock* ἄγγελος, *angel* κυρίου, *of the Lord* δόξα, *the glory* περιέλαμψεν, *shone around* ἐφοβήθησαν, *they feared* φόβον, *fear* εὐαγγελίζομαι, *I announce* χαρὰν, *joy* τῷ λαῷ, *the people* ἐτέχθη (from τίκω), *was born* σήμερον, *today* σωτὴρ, *savior* τὸ σημεῖον, *the sign* βρέφος, *baby, infant* ἐσπαργανωμένον, *wrapped in swaddling bands* κείμενον, *lying* ἐξαίφνης, *suddenly* στρατιᾶς, *of an army, host* οὐρανοῦ, *heavenly* αἰνούντων, *of ones praising* ἐν ὑψίστοις, *lit., among the highest (things), in heaven* εἰρήνῃ, *peace* εὐδοκίας, *of good will or of (His) choice*] Concluded in Chapter 16β

# Η ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗ (β)



ἡ ἐν τῇ Σαλαμῖνι μάχη

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

ἀνέστην, ἀναστᾶς, *I stood up*  
 βλάπτω, [βλαβ-] βλάψω,  
 ἔβλαψα, βλάψας, *I harm, hurt*  
 δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα,  
 δηλώσας, *I show*  
 ἐλευθερόω, ἐλευθερώσω,  
 ἤλευθέρωσα, ἐλευθερώσας,  
*I free, set free*  
 ἐμπίπτω [= ἐν- + πίπτω],  
 ἐμπεσοῦμαι (irregular),  
 ἐνέπεσον (irregular),  
 ἐμπεσὼν + dat., *I fall into;*  
*I fall upon; I attack*  
 ἐπιπλέω, [πλευσ-] ἐπιπλεύ-

σομαι, ἐπέπλευσα, ἐπιπλεύ-  
 σās + dat. or + εἰς + acc., *I sail*  
*against*  
 ναυμαχέω, ναυμαχήσω,  
 ἐναυμάχησα, ναυμαχήσας,  
*I fight by sea*  
 πειράω, πειράσω (note that be-  
 cause of the ρ the α lengthens to ᾱ  
 rather than η), ἐπείρᾱσα,  
 πειράσας, active or middle,  
*I try, attempt*  
 πιστεύω, πιστεύσω,  
 ἐπίστευσα, πιστεύσας + dat.,  
*I trust, am confident (in); I be-*  
*lieve; + ὡς, I believe (that)*



συμπίπτω [= συν- + πίπτω],  
 συμπεσοῦμαι (irregular),  
 [πετ-] συνέπεσον (irregular),  
 συμπεσών, *I clash*; + dat.,  
*I clash with*

## Nouns

ὁ ἀγών, τοῦ ἀγῶνος, *struggle*;  
*contest*

ἡ ἀρετή, τῆς ἀρετῆς, *excel-*  
*lence*; *virtue*; *courage*

ὁ θόρυβος, τοῦ θορύβου, *uproar*,  
*commotion*

ὁ κόσμος, τοῦ κόσμου, *good or-*  
*der*

κόσμῳ, *in order*

τὸ μέρος, τοῦ μέρους, *part*

ὁ νεκρός, τοῦ νεκροῦ, *corpse*

ἡ νίκη, τῆς νίκης, *victory*

ἡ πατρίς, τῆς πατρίδος, *father-*  
*land*

ὁ πέπλος, τοῦ πέπλου, *robe*;  
*cloth*

ὁ πρόγονος, τοῦ προγόνου, *an-*  
*cestor*

ἡ σπουδή, τῆς σπουδῆς, *haste*;  
*eagerness*

ἡ τύχη, τῆς τύχης, *chance*;  
*luck*; *fortune*

## Adjectives

δεξιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *right* (i.e., on  
 the right hand)

πεζός, -ή, -όν, *on foot*

## Adverb

πανταχοῦ, *everywhere*

## Conjunction

ὥς, *that*

## Proper Names

ὁ Αἰσχύλος, τοῦ Αἰσχύλου,  
*Aeschylus*

ἡ Ἀσίᾱ, τῆς Ἀσιᾶς, *Asia* (i.e.,  
*Asia Minor*)

Περσικός, -ή, -όν, *Persian*

ὁ Σιμωνίδης, τοῦ Σιμωνίδου,  
*Simonides*

“πᾶσαν οὖν τὴν νύκτα οἱ βάρβαροι ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα ἤρεσσον τὰ τε  
 στενὰ φυλάττοντες καὶ τοὺς ἔκπλους, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἡσύχαζον  
 παρασκευαζόμενοι μάχεσθαι. ἐπεὶ δὲ πρῶτον ἡμέρᾱ ἐγένετο,  
 προὔχωρουν οἱ βάρβαροι εἰς τὰ στενά, πιστεύοντες ὥς ῥαδίως  
 μέλλουσι νικήσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐξαίφνης δὲ βοὴν μεγίστην 5  
 ἤκουσαν ὥστε μάλα ἐφοβοῦντο. οἱ γὰρ Ἕλληνες, κόσμῳ χρώμενοι  
 εἰς μάχην προὔχωρουν καὶ ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους πλέοντες τὸν  
 παιᾶνα ἐβόων.

[ἔνθα καὶ ἔνθα, *this way and that*    ἐξαίφνης, *suddenly*    τὸν παιᾶνα, *the battle*  
*song*]

“οὕτω δὲ ὁ Αἰσχύλος ὁ ποιητής, ὃς καὶ αὐτὸς τῇ μάχῃ παρῆν,  
 τοὺς Ἕλληνας ποιεῖ ἐπὶ τοὺς βαρβάρους ἐπιπλέοντας·

10

τὸ δεξιὸν μὲν πρῶτον εὐτάκτως κέρᾱς

ἡγεῖτο κόσμῳ, δεύτερον δ' ὁ πᾶς στόλος

ἐπεξεχώρει, καὶ παρῆν ὁμοῦ κλύειν

πολλὴν βοήν, ὧ παιῖδες Ἑλλήνων ἔτε,

ἐλευθεροῦτε πατρίδ', ἐλευθεροῦτε δὲ  
 παῖδας, γυναῖκας, θεῶν τε πατρώων ἔδη,  
 θήκᾱς τε προγόνων· νῦν ὑπὲρ πάντων ἀγών.'

15

[ποιεῖ, here, describes τὸ δεξιὸν . . . κέρας, the right wing εὐτάκτως, in an orderly manner δεύτερον, secondly ἐπεξεχώρει, was coming out against (them) παρῆν, it was possible ὁμοῦ, together, at the same time κλύειν, to hear θεῶν: pronounce as one syllable πατρώων, ancestral (τὰ) ἔδη, seats, shrines θήκᾱς, tombs (The quotation is from Aeschylus, *Persians* 399–405.)]

οὕτως οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες τῷ Περσικῷ στρατῷ προσέβαλλον καὶ ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς συμπύπτοντες ἐναυμάχουν ὀλίγοι πρὸς πολλούς. οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι, καίπερ πλείστᾱς ἔχοντες ναῦς, οὐκ ἐδύναντο πάσαις ταῖς 20 ναυσὶν ἅμα χρῆσθαι. καὶ οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες τὰς πρώτᾱς τῶν βαρβάρων ναῦς ἢ ἔβλαψαν ἢ κατέδυσαν τοσαύτῃ σπουδῇ προσβάλλοντες ὥστε οἱ βάρβαροι μάλα φοβούμενοι ἐτρέποντο καὶ ἐπειρῶντο ἐκφυγεῖν. ἐνταῦθα δὴ πλείστος ἐγένετο θόρυβος. αἱ γὰρ τῶν βαρβάρων νῆες ἀλλήλαις ἐνέπιπτον, αἱ μὲν ἐκ τῆς μάχης 25 πειρώμεναι ἐκφυγεῖν, αἱ δὲ εἰς τὴν μάχην προχωροῦσαι. τέλος δὲ πάντες οἱ βάρβαροι ἔφευγον οὐδενὶ κόσμῳ χρώμενοι, οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες διώκοντες πλείστᾱς δὴ ναῦς κατέδυσαν· καὶ πανταχοῦ μὲν ἦν ναυάγια, πανταχοῦ δὲ νεκροί, ὥστε τὴν θάλατταν οὐκέτι ἐξῆν ἰδεῖν. οὕτως οὖν ἐμάχοντο ἕως νύξ ἐγένετο. 30

[ἐδύναντο, were able κατέδυσαν, sank ναυάγια, shipwrecks]

“ἐν δὲ τούτῳ ὁ Ξέρξης ἐκαθίζετο ἐπὶ ὄχθῳ τινὶ ἐγγὺς τῆς θαλάττης τὴν μάχην θεώμενος· ἐπίστευε γὰρ ὡς ῥαδίως νικήσουσιν οἱ Πέρσαι· ἡγνόει γὰρ τὰ τῆς τύχης οὐδ’ ἔγνω τί ἐν νῷ ἔχουσιν οἱ θεοὶ ἀλλ’ αἰεὶ ὕβρει ἐχρῆτο.

[ὄχθῳ, hill ἡγνόει, he was ignorant of τὰ τῆς τύχης, the (things) of chance, i.e., that chance rules human affairs ὕβρει, insolence, pride]

“γνοὺς δὲ ὅτι νικῶσι μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες οἱ δὲ βάρβαροι 35 ἀποφεύγουσιν, ἀνέστη καὶ τοὺς πέπλους ἔρρηξεν. ἐν ἀπορίᾳ γὰρ μεγίστῃ ἦν· ἀπολέσᾱς γὰρ τὸ ναυτικὸν οὐκέτι ἐδύνατο σίτον παρέχειν τῷ πεζῷ στρατῷ μεγίστῳ ὄντι. τοὺς μὲν οὖν στρατηγούς

ἐκέλευσε τὸν πεζὸν στρατὸν ἄγειν κατὰ γῆν πρὸς τὴν Ἀσίαν, αὐτὸς δὲ ἀπέφυγεν ὀδυρόμενος.

40

[ἔρρηξεν (from ῥήγνυμι, *I break*), *he tore* ἀπολέσας (from ἀπόλλυμι), *having lost* ὀδυρόμενος, *lamenting*]

“οὕτως οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες τοὺς Πέρσας νίκησαντες τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἡλευθέρωσαν. καὶ δὴ καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ ἔργῳ οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι πλείστας τε ναὺς παρέσχον τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ πλείστην ἐδήλωσαν ἀρετὴν, ὥστε ἔξεστιν ἀληθῶς λέγειν ὅτι οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι τὴν Ἑλλάδα ἔσωσαν, καὶ οὐχ ἥκιστα ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς, ὃς στρατηγὸς ὢν Ἀθηναῖος μάλιστα αἴτιος ἦν τῆς νίκης.

45

[καὶ δὴ καὶ, *and in particular, and what is more* ἥκιστα, *least*]

“τοῦτο τὸ ἐπίγραμμα τοῖς Ἀθηναίοις τοῖς ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πολέμῳ ἀποθανοῦσιν ἔγραψεν ὁ Σιμωνίδης, ποιητὴς ὢν ἄριστος·

εἰ τὸ καλῶς θνήσκειν ἀρετῆς μέρος ἐστὶ μέγιστον,

ἡμῖν ἐκ πάντων τοῦτ' ἀπένειμε Τύχη·

50

Ἑλλάδι γὰρ σπεύδοντες ἐλευθερίην περιθεῖναι

κείμεθ' ἀγηράντῳ χρώμενοι εὐλογίῃ.”

[τὸ ἐπίγραμμα, *epigram* τὸ καλῶς θνήσκειν, *to die well* (this infinitive phrase is the subject of the sentence) ἀπένειμε (from ἀπονέμω), *bestowed, gave* περιθεῖναι (from περιτίθημι), *to put around, to put X (acc.) on Y (dat.)*, as one would put a garland or a crown on someone's head κείμεθ(α), *we lie* (in our graves) ἀγηράντῳ (cf. τὸ γῆρας, *old age*), *ageless* εὐλογίῃ, *praise, eulogy*]

## WORD BUILDING

*In the following pairs of words, deduce the meaning of the nouns and the adjective from the meanings of the verbs. Note the change in vowels from ε in the verbs to ο in the nouns and the adjective:*

- |          |         |           |                 |
|----------|---------|-----------|-----------------|
| 1. λέγω  | ὁ λόγος | 4. μένω   | ἡ μονή          |
| 2. τρέπω | ἡ τροπή | 5. σπεύδω | ἡ σπουδή        |
| 3. πέμπω | ἡ πομπή | 6. λείπω  | λοιπός, -ή, -όν |

## GRAMMAR

### 3. Contract Verbs in -ο-

In the vocabulary list and reading passage above, you have seen examples of two contract verbs with stems ending in -ο- instead of in -ε- or

-α-, namely, δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, and ἐλευθερώω, ἐλευθερώσω, ἠλευθέρωσα. Verbs in -ο- contract as follows:

**Stem:** δηλο-, *show*

### Present Active

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δηλό-ω>	δηλῶ	δηλοῦν	
δηλό-εις>	δηλοῖς	δήλο-ε >	δηλό-ων > δηλῶν,
δηλό-ει>	δηλοῖ	δήλου	δηλό-ουσα > δηλοῦσα,
δηλό-ομεν>	δηλοῦμεν		δηλό-ον > δηλοῦν,
δηλό-ετε>	δηλοῦτε	δηλό-ετε >	gen., δηλοῦντος
δηλό-ουσι(ν) >	δηλοῦσι(ν)	δηλοῦτε	

### Present Middle

Shown here in contracted forms only

δηλοῦμαι		δηλοῦσθαι	δηλούμενος, -η, -ον
δηλοῖ	δηλοῦ		
δηλοῦται			
δηλούμεθα			
δηλοῦσθε	δηλοῦσθε		
δηλοῦνται			

### Imperfect Active

ἐ-δήλο-ον >	ἐδήλουν
ἐ-δήλο-ες >	ἐδήλους
ἐ-δήλο-ε >	ἐδήλου
ἐ-δηλό-ομεν >	ἐδηλοῦμεν
ἐ-δηλό-ετε >	ἐδηλοῦτε
ἐ-δήλο-ον >	ἐδήλουν

### Imperfect Middle

ἐδηλο-ό-μην >	ἐδηλούμην
ἐδηλό-ε-σο >	ἐδηλοῦ
ἐδηλό-ε-το >	ἐδηλοῦτο
ἐδηλο-ό-μεθα >	ἐδηλούμεθα
ἐδηλό-ε-σθε >	ἐδηλοῦσθε
ἐδηλό-ο-ντο >	ἐδηλοῦντο

The following rules for these contractions may be observed:

1. ο + ε, ο, or ου > ου.
2. ο + ει, οι, or η > οι.
3. ο + η or ω > ω.

There are only a few contract verbs in -ο-; examples are ἀρόω, *I plow*, δηλόω, *I show*, ἐλευθερώω, *I free, set free*, δουλόω, *I enslave*, and πληρώω, *I fill*. The futures and aorists obey the usual rules for contract verbs, lengthening the stem vowel.

### Exercise 15δ

Locate four examples of -ο- contract verbs in reading passage β in this chapter and identify the form of each.

**Exercise 15ε**

*Make two photocopies of the Verb Charts on pages 282 and 283 and on one set fill in the forms of δηλώω that you have learned to date in the active voice and on the other, in the middle voice.*

**4. Contract Nouns of the 2nd Declension**

A few nouns of the 2nd declension with stems ending in -oo- show the same process of contraction as is seen in the verbs above.

**Stem:** voo-, *mind*

	Singular	Plural
<b>Nom.</b>	ὁ νόο-ς > νοῦς	οἱ νόοι > νοῖ
<b>Gen.</b>	τοῦ νόου > νοῦ	τῶν νόων > νῶν
<b>Dat.</b>	τῷ νόῳ > νῷ	τοῖς νόοις > νοῖς
<b>Acc.</b>	τὸν νόο-ν > νοῦν	τοὺς νόους > νοῦς
<b>Voc.</b>	ὦ νόε > νοῦ	ὦ νόοι > νοῖ

**Exercise 15ζ**

*Read aloud and translate:*

- ὁ στρατηγὸς τὰ ἀληθῆ γινὸς πάντα τῷ δήμῳ δηλοῖ.
- οἱ πολέμιοι τὴν πόλιν ἐλόντες τοὺς ἐνοίκους (*inhabitants*) δουλοῦσιν.
- δεῖ ἀνδρείως μάχεσθαι, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ ἐλευθεροῦν τὴν πατρίδα.
- τὴν ἀρετὴν δηλοῦτε ἣν αἰεὶ ἐδήλουν οἱ πρόγονοι.
- οἱ ὁπλῖται, ταῦτα γνόντες, τοῖς πολεμίοις προσέβαλον καὶ πλείστην ἀρετὴν δηλοῦντες τὴν πόλιν ἡλευθέρωσαν.
- τί ἐν νῷ ἔχει ὁ Ξέρξης; ἐν νῷ ἔχει πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα δουλοῦν.
- τοῖς Ἑλλήσιν ἔδοξε τοὺς τε βαρβάρους ἀμύνειν καὶ τὴν Ἀσίαν ἐλευθερῶσαι.

**5. More Numbers**

You have already learned the cardinals 1–10 and the ordinals 1st–10th (see Chapter 8, Grammar 5, page 128). You should learn to recognize the following cardinals and ordinals, including the cardinals on page 264:

11	ἑνδεκα	11th	ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον
12	δωδεκα	12th	δωδέκατος, -η, -ον
20	εἴκοσι(ν)	20th	εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν
100	ἑκατόν	100th	ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν
1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α	1,000th	χίλιοστός, -ή, -όν
10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α	10,000th	μυριοστός, -ή, -όν

13, etc. = τρεῖς καὶ δέκα, etc. 21, etc. = εἴς καὶ εἴκοσι(ν), etc.

The numbers 30 to 90 are formed from the cardinal numbers for 3 to 9 + -κοντα (with some variations in spelling): τριάκοντα, τετταράκοντα, πενήκοντα, ἑξήκοντα, ἑβδομήκοντα, ὀγδοήκοντα, ἐνενήκοντα.

The numbers 200 to 900 are formed from the cardinal numbers for 2 to 9 + -κοσιοι, -αι, -α (with some variations in spelling): διακόσιοι, τριακόσιοι, τετρακόσιοι, πεντακόσιοι, ἑξακόσιοι, ἑπτακόσιοι, ὀκτακόσιοι, ἑνακόσιοι.

The word μῦριοι, -αι, -α is used in the general sense of *numberless, countless*; note the different accent from that of μῦριοι, -αι, -α, 10,000, on the previous page.

## 6. Uses of ὥς and Its Compounds

### a. As Adverbs

Exclamatory (*how*): “ὦ Θεσεῦ,” φᾶσιν, “ὥς ἀνδρείος εἶ.” (6b:22)

Introducing a parenthetical comment (*just as*): ὥσπερ λέγει ὁ ποιητής (8a:23)

Expressing purpose with future participle (*to*): “ἐγὼ δὲ ἐν τῷ ἄστει μενῶ ὥς τὰς τραγωδίᾱς θεᾷσόμενος.” (10β:13–14 and 10 Gr 7)

With superlatives (*as . . . as possible*): οἱ μὲν οὖν ἄλλοι εὐθύς παρεσκευάσαντο βουλόμενοι ὥς τάχιστα πορεύεσθαι. (12α: 2–3 and 14 Gr 4d)

Introducing a parenthetical comment (*as*, cf. ὥσπερ above): “ὀργίζεται ἡμῖν,” ἔφη, “ὁ Ποσειδῶν, ὥς δοκεῖ.” (13β:10)

### b. As Conjunctions

Expressing result (*that*): οὕτω δὲ ταχέως τρέχουσιν ὥστε δι' ὀλίγου οὐ δυνατόν ἐστιν ὁρᾶν οὔτε τὸν κύνα οὔτε τὸν λαγών. (5α:7–8)

Expressing time (*when*): ὥς οὖν ἠπόρει ὁ Ξέρξης, προσήλθε πρὸς αὐτὸν ἀνὴρ τις τῶν Ἑλλήνων. (14β:2–3)

Introducing an indirect statement (*that*): προύχωρον οἱ βάρβαροι εἰς τὰ στενά, πιστεύοντες ὥς ῥαδίως μέλλουσι νικήσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας. (15β:4–5)

## ΟΙ ΠΕΡΣΑΙ ΤΑΣ ΑΘΗΝΑΣ ΑΙΡΟΥΣΙΝ

Read the following passages (based on Herodotus 8.51–53) and answer the comprehension questions:

οἱ Πέρσαι αἰροῦσιν ἔρημον τὸ ἄστυ, καὶ τινὰς εὐρίσκουσι τῶν Ἀθηναίων ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ ὄντας, ταμίᾱς τε τοῦ ἱεροῦ καὶ πένητας ἀνθρώπους, οἳ φραξάμενοι τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν ἡμύνοντο τοὺς προσβάλλοντας. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι καθιζόμενοι ἐπὶ τὸν ὄχθον τὸν ἐναντίον τῆς Ἀκροπόλεως, ὃν οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι καλοῦσιν Ἀρειόπαγον, ἐπολιόρκουν.

[ἔρημον, deserted ταμίᾱς, stewards πένητας, poor φραξάμενοι, having barricaded ἐπὶ τὸν ὄχθον, upon the hill ἐναντίον + gen., opposite

'Αρειόπαγον, *the Areopagus* (Hill of Ares, the god of war) ἐπολιόρκουν, *were besieging*]

1. When the Persians take the city, whom do they find in the temple?
2. What had these people done, and what were they doing?
3. How did the Persians situate themselves to besiege the Acropolis?

οἱ δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι, καίπερ κάκιστα πάσχοντες, οὐκ ᾔθελον εἶκιν ἀλλὰ ἡμύνοντο, ὥστε πολὺν χρόνον Ξέρξης ἠπόρει, οὐ δυνάμενος αὐτοὺς ἐλεῖν. τέλος δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι οὕτως εἶλον· ἀνέβησαν γάρ τινες ὅπου ἀπόκρημνος ἦν ὁ χώρος καὶ οὐκ ἐφύλαττον οἱ Ἀθηναῖοι ἀλλ' ἐπίστευον ὡς οὐδεὶς δύναται ταύτῃ ἀναβῆναι. ὡς δὲ εἶδον αὐτοὺς ταύτῃ ἀναβεβηκότας ἐπὶ τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν, οἱ μὲν ἔρριπτον ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τὸ τεῖχος καὶ ἀπέθανον, οἱ δὲ εἰς τὸ ἱερὸν ἔφευγον. οἱ δὲ Πέρσαι πρῶτον μὲν τοὺς ἱκέτας ἀπέκτειναν, ἔπειτα δὲ τὸ ἱερὸν σὺλήσαντες ἐνέπρησαν πᾶσαν τὴν Ἀκρόπολιν.

[ἀπόκρημνος, *sheer* ὁ χώρος, *the place* ἀναβεβηκότας (perfect participle of ἀναβαίνω), *having gone up* ἔρριπτον (from ῥίπτω), *threw* τοὺς ἱκέτας, *the suppliants* σὺλήσαντες, *having plundered* ἐνέπρησαν (from ἐπιπύρημι), *they set fire to*]

4. How were the Athenians faring and what were their intentions?
5. Why was it possible for the Persians finally to scale the Acropolis?
6. What did the Athenians do when they saw the Persians coming up?
7. What did the Persians do that showed their ignorance of or lack of respect for customary forms of Greek behavior?

### Exercise 15η

*Translate into Greek:*

1. When the Athenians learned that the Persians were advancing (*use present tense*) toward Attica, they sent messengers to Delphi (*use* οἱ Δεῖλοι).
2. These, having gone into the temple, asked the god what the Athenians must (δεῖ) do.
3. The god, answering (*use aorist participle*), said: "Athena is not able (οὐ δύναται) to save you. The barbarians will take Athens. Only the wooden (*use* ξύλινος, -ον) wall will be unsacked (*use* ἀπόρθητος, -ον)."
4. The messengers wrote these words and having returned to Athens announced them to the people (*dative*).
5. Themistocles, having stood up, said: "Hear, Athenians, what the oracle (τὸ χρηστήριον) means (λέγει); the ships of the Athenians are the wooden wall; for these will save the city."
6. Having spoken thus, he persuaded the Athenians not to yield to the barbarians but to fight by sea.

# 16

## ΜΕΤΑ ΤΗΝ ΕΝ ΤΗΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗΝ (α)

---



τάς τε πυραμίδας ἐθεωρήσαμεν καὶ τὴν Σφίγγα καὶ ζῶα ἔκτοπα.

### VOCABULARY

#### Verbs

δύναμαι, imperfect, ἐδυνάμην,  
δυνήσομαι, aorist to be pre-  
sented later, *I am able; I can*  
ἐπίσταμαι, imperfect,  
ἠπιστάμην, ἐπιστήσομαι, no  
aorist middle, *I understand;*  
*I know*  
καταλαμβάνω, [ληβ-]  
καταλήψομαι, [λαβ-]  
κατέλαβον, καταλαβών,  
*I overtake, catch*  
κείμει, imperfect, ἐκείμεν,  
κείσομαι, no aorist, *I lie*  
κατάκειμαι, *I lie down*  
στρατεύω, στρατεύσω,  
ἐστράτευσα, στρατεύσας, ac-  
tive or middle, *I wage war,*  
*campaign; + ἐπί + acc., I cam-*  
*paign (against)*  
συναγείρω, [ἀγερε-] συνα-  
γερῶ, [ἀγειρ-] συνήγειρα,  
συναγείρας, active, transitive,  
*I gather X; middle, intrans-*  
*sitive, I gather together*

τελευτάω, τελευτήσω,  
ἐτελεύτησα, τελευτήσας,  
*I end; I die*

#### Nouns

ὁ ἔνοικος, τοῦ ἐνοίκου, *inhabi-*  
*tant*  
ὁ σύμμαχος, τοῦ συμμάχου,  
*ally*  
ἡ συμφορά, τῆς συμφορᾶς, *mis-*  
*fortune; disaster*

#### Adjectives

διᾱκόσιοι, -αι, -α, *two hun-*  
*dred*  
ἑκατόν, indeclinable, *a hun-*  
*dred*  
πόσος; πόση; πόσον; *how much?*  
*pl., how many?*

#### Preposition

ὑπό + gen., *under; of agent,*  
*by;\** + dat., *under; + acc., un-*  
*der*

#### Adverbs

οὐδαμοῦ, *nowhere*  
πολλαχόσε, *to many parts*  
ὕστερον, *later*



*Expressions*

καὶ δὴ καὶ, *and in particular;  
and what is more*  
ποῦ γῆς; *where (in the world)?*

*Proper Names*

For the proper names in this  
reading, see the vocabulary at  
the end of the book.

\* The preposition ὑπό + the genitive case, meaning *by*, will often be found with verbs in the passive voice, e.g., ὑπὸ τῶν βαρβάρων ἔτι εἶχοντο, *they were still being held by the barbarians*. In the present and imperfect tenses the passive voice, introduced in this chapter, has the same forms as the middle voice, which you have seen since Chapter 6. In the following reading you will find a number of verbs with middle voice endings, with which you are familiar, but being used in the passive voice. The context will tell you whether the verb is being used as middle or passive; if it is accompanied by a prepositional phrase with ὑπό + the genitive case, it is most likely passive.

οὕτως οὖν περᾶνᾱς τὸν λόγον ὁ ναύτης κατέκειτο ἐπὶ τῷ κατα-  
στρώματι, ὁ δὲ Δικαιοπόλις καὶ ὁ Φίλιππος ἐσίγων, πάντα  
θαυμάζοντες ἅπερ εἶπεν. τέλος δὲ ὁ Φίλιππος, “ὡς ἀνδρείως,” ἔφη,  
“ἐμάχοντο οἱ Ἕλληνες, ὡς λαμπρῶς τοῖς συμμάχοις ἡγοῦντο οἱ  
Ἀθηναῖοι. σὺ δὲ τί ἐποίεις μετὰ τὸν πόλεμον; ἄρα ἔμπορος 5  
γενόμενος ἐν ὀλκάσιν ἔπλεις;” ὁ δέ, “οὐδαμῶς,” ἔφη, “οὐ γὰρ  
ἐτελεύτησεν ὁ πόλεμος, ἀλλὰ πολὺν ἔτι χρόνον ἔδει πρὸς τοὺς  
βαρβάρους μάχεσθαι. πᾶσαί τε γὰρ αἱ νῆσοι καὶ πᾶσα ἡ Ἰωνία ὑπὸ  
τῶν βαρβάρων ἔτι εἶχοντο.

[περᾶνᾱς (from περαίνω), *having finished* τῷ καταστρώματι, *deck* ὀλκάσιν,  
*merchant ships*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἀλλὰ πόσον χρόνον ἔδει μάχεσθαι; ἄρα πολλὰς 10  
παρῆσθα μάχαις;”

ὁ δὲ ναύτης, “μάλιστά γε, ὦ παῖ,” ἔφη, “πλείσταις τε μάχαις παρῆν  
καὶ πολλαχόσε τῆς γῆς ἔπλεον μετὰ τῶν συμμάχων. αἰὲν γὰρ οἱ  
βάρβαροι ἐμάχοντο, αἰὲν δὲ ἐνίκωντο.”

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἀλλὰ ποῦ γῆς ἐμάχεσθε;” 15

ὁ δέ, “πρῶτον μὲν ἅμα ἦρι ἀρχομένῳ οἱ Ἴωνες ὑφ’ ἡμῶν  
ἐλευθεροῦνται· πλεύσαντες γὰρ ἑκατὸν ναυσὶ πρὸς τὴν Σάμον καὶ τὸ  
τῶν βαρβάρων ναυτικὸν εἰς τὴν Μυκαλὴν διώξαντες, οὕτω προθύμως  
αὐτοῖς προσβάλλομεν ὥστε νικᾶται τε ὁ στρατὸς αὐτῶν καὶ  
διαφθείρεται τὸ ναυτικόν. οἱ δὲ Ἴωνες, ὡς ἠπίσταντο ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι 20

νικῶνται, ἡμῖν ἐβοήθουν· οὕτως οὖν πᾶσά τε ἡ Ἰωνία ἐλευθεροῦται καὶ πᾶσαι αἱ νῆσοι. οὐδαμοῦ γὰρ δύνανται οἱ βάρβαροι ἡμῖν ἀντέχειν.

[ἅμα ἢρι ἀρχομένῳ, *together with the beginning of spring* ἑκατὸν ναυσὶ, *with a hundred ships* προθύμως, *eagerly*]

“ὕστερον δέ, ὥς οἱ Πέρσαι στρατὸν τε μέγιστον καὶ ναῦς διακοσίᾱς συναγείραντες εἰς τὸν Αἰγαῖον πόντον αὐθις εἰσβιάζεσθαι ἐπειρῶντο, καταλαβόντες αὐτοὺς πρὸς τῷ Εὐρυμέδοντι ποταμῷ ἐνίκησαμεν ἐν μάχῃ μεγίστη κατὰ γῆν τε καὶ θάλατταν.

[εἰσβιάζεσθαι, *to force their way into* ποταμῷ, *river*]

“καὶ δὴ καὶ εἰς τὴν Αἴγυπτον ἐστρατεύσαμεν καὶ τοῖς ἐνοίοις βοηθοῦντες τοὺς Πέρσας ἐξηλάσαμεν. ἀνά τε γὰρ τὸν Νεῖλον ἐπλεύσαμεν καὶ τὴν Μέμφιν εἴλομεν, πόλιν μεγίστην ἐπὶ τῷ Νεῖλῳ κειμένην. ἔξ οὖν ἔτη ἐν τῇ Αἰγύπτῳ ἐμένομεν καὶ πολλὰ θαύματα εἶδομεν. τὰς τε γὰρ πυραμίδας ἐθεωρήσαμεν, σήματα μέγιστα οὐσᾶς τῶν βασιλέων τῶν ἀρχαίων, καὶ τὴν Σφίγγα, εἰκόνα δεινοτάτην, τὸ μὲν ἡμισυ λέαιναν, τὸ δὲ ἡμισυ γυναῖκα. καὶ δὴ καὶ ζῶα ἔκτοπα εἶδομεν, κροκοδίλους τε καὶ στρουθοὺς. τέλος δὲ οἱ Πέρσαι, στρατὸν μέγιστον συναγείραντες, ἡμῖν προσέβαλον· νικώμεθα οὖν καὶ ἐξ Αἰγύπτου ἐξελαυνόμεθα. οὕτως οὖν συμφορὰν μεγίστην ἐπάθομεν· διακοσίᾱς γὰρ ναῦς ἀπολέσαντες μόλις ἡμεῖς αὐτοὶ ἐξεφύγομεν.”

[ἔτη, *years* θαύματα, *wonders* πυραμίδας, *pyramids* σήματα, *tombs* ἀρχαίων, *old, ancient* εἰκόνα, *a statue* τὸ . . . ἡμισυ, *half* λέαιναν, *lioness* ζῶα, *animals* ἔκτοπα, *out of the way, unusual* κροκοδίλους, *crocodiles* στρουθοὺς, *ostriches* ἀπολέσαντες (from ἀπόλλυμι), *having lost*]

## WORD STUDY

*How are the following words derived from the Greek verb δύναμαι and the related noun δύναμις?*

1. dynamic
2. dynamo
3. dynamite
4. dynasty

## GRAMMAR

## 1. The Passive Voice

For the concepts of active, passive, and middle voice, see Chapter 6, Grammar 2, pages 75–76.

In the present and imperfect tenses, the passive forms of verbs are spelled the same as middle voice forms. In the aorist and future tenses, the forms are different, and those forms will be introduced in Book II of this course. For the present and imperfect tenses, the context will make clear whether the verb is middle or passive in meaning, e.g.:

Active Voice:

ἡ γυνὴ τὸν ἄνδρα ἐγείρει.

*The woman **wakes** her husband.*

Middle Voice:

ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐγείρεται.

*The husband **wakes himself up/wakes up**.*

Passive Voice:

ὁ ἀνὴρ ὑπὸ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐγείρεται.

*The husband **is woken up by his wife**.*

Note that the *agent* by whom the action is performed is expressed with the preposition *ὑπό* + the genitive. The *thing* with which or by which the action is performed is expressed by a noun in the dative case (*dative of means or instrument*) without a preposition (see Chapter 6, Grammar 6d, page 88):

ὁ λύκος μαχαίρᾳ τύπτεται ὑπὸ τοῦ παιδός.

*The wolf **is struck with a knife** by the boy.*

Here is a set of examples with the imperfect tense:

Active Voice:

ἡ μήτηρ τοὺς παῖδας ἔλουεν.

*The mother **was washing** her children.*

Middle Voice:

οἱ παῖδες ἐλούοντο.

*The children **were washing themselves/were washing**.*

Passive Voice:

οἱ παῖδες ὑπὸ τῆς μητρὸς ἐλούοντο.

*The children **were being washed by their mother**.*

## Exercise 16α

Make four photocopies of the Verb Chart on page 282 and fill in the present and imperfect passive forms of λαμβάνω, φιλέω, τιμάω, and δηλόω that you have learned to date. Translate each form. Keep these charts.

**Exercise 16β**

*Read aloud and translate. Identify all passive verb forms (both indicatives and participles):*

1. οἱ βόες πρὸς τὸν ἀγρὸν βραδέως ἐλαύνονται ὑπὸ τοῦ αὐτουργοῦ.
2. πᾶσαν τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπόνει ὁ αὐτουργός, τῷ ἡλίῳ κατατριβόμενος (κατατριβῶ, *I wear out*).
3. ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐσπέρᾳ γίγνεται, ὁ αὐτουργὸς παύεται ἐργαζόμενος· οἱ δὲ βόες λύονται καὶ τὸ ἄροτρον ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ λείπεται.
4. ἐν ᾧ δὲ οἴκαδε ἤλαύνοντο οἱ βόες ὑπὸ τοῦ δούλου, ὁ αὐτουργὸς μάλα κάμνων πρὸς τῇ ὁδῷ ἐκαθίζετο.
5. ἐξαίφνης (*suddenly*) δὲ βοῇ ἐγείρεται καὶ τῶν παιδῶν ἀκούει ἑαυτὸν καλούντων.
6. ἐλθὲ δεῦρο, ὦ πάτερ, καὶ βοήθει· διωκόμεθα γὰρ ὑπὸ λύκου.
7. οἱ παῖδες ὑπὸ τοῦ λύκου διωκόμενοι μάλα ἐφοβοῦντο.
8. μὴ φοβείσθε, ὦ παῖδες· οὐδὲν γὰρ βλάπτεσθε ὑπὸ τοῦ λύκου.
9. οὕτως εἰπὼν, τὸν κύνα ἔλυσεν· ὁ δὲ λύκος ὑπὸ τοῦ κυνὸς διωκόμενος ἀπέφυγεν.
10. οὕτως οὖν σφάζονται οἱ παῖδες καὶ μετὰ τοῦ πατρὸς οἴκαδε σπεύδουσιν.

**Exercise 16γ**

*Translate the following pairs of sentences:*

1. οἱ βάρβαροι ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων νικώμενοι ἐτρέψαντο καὶ πρὸς τὴν γῆν ἔφυγον.  
The sailors, pursued by the pirates (ὁ ληστής), raised their sails and fled to the harbor.
2. οἱ Ἕλληνας καίπερ ἐν ἀπορίᾳ ὄντες μεγίστη ὑπὸ τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέους πείθονται μὴ εἶκειν τοῖς βαρβάροις.  
The Persians, although having very many ships, are being defeated by the Greeks.
3. ἀναγκαζόμενοι ἐν τοῖς στένοις μάχεσθαι οὐκ ἐδύναντο πάσαις ταῖς ναυσὶ χρῆσθαι.  
They were being pursued by the Greeks, and all their ships were either being damaged or destroyed.
4. ὁ Δικαιοπόλις ὑπὸ τῆς γυναικὸς ἐπείθετο πρὸς τὸ ἄστυ πορεύεσθαι.  
Philip was being pursued by a certain big wolf.
5. τῷ χειμῶνι ἀναγκαζόμεθα εἰς τὸν λιμένα ἐπανελθεῖν.  
We are ordered by our father to disembark from the ship.

**Exercise 16δ***Translate into Greek:*

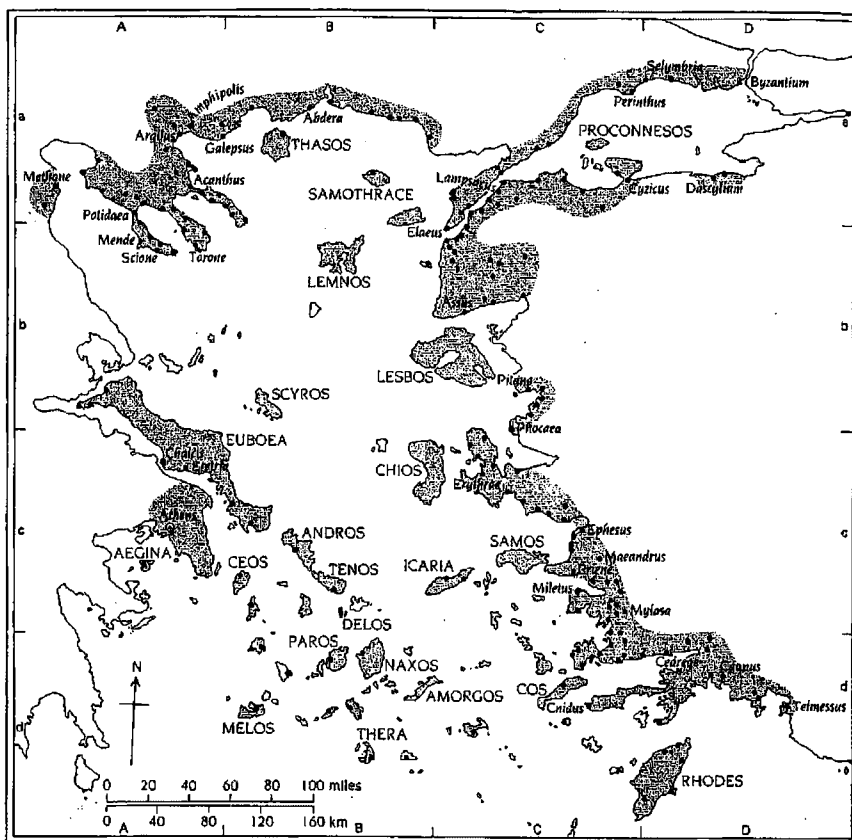
1. The women are loved and honored by their husbands.
2. The girls, pursued by some young men, were hurrying home to their mothers.
3. Don't go away; we are ordered by the king to wait (*use present tense*) in the market place.
4. When evening was falling, a messenger arrived.
5. "Citizens," he said, "you are ordered to hurry (*use aorist*) home and return (*use aorist*) tomorrow."

**The Athenian Empire**

During the invasion of Xerxes, the loyal Greeks had accepted without question the leadership of Sparta by both land and sea; for she was still the dominant power in Greece. In spring of 479 B.C., the allied fleet, led by a Spartan general, was based at Delos and, invited by the Samians, sailed to Ionia, defeated the Persians at Mycale, and liberated the Ionians, who revolted from their Persian masters (see map, page 230). The following year the allied forces were led by Pausanias, the Spartan commander at Plataea. In a brilliant campaign he first liberated most of Cyprus from Persian rule and then sailed north and took Byzantium, the key to the Black Sea. Here he fell victim to *hubris*; he adopted Persian dress, intrigued with the Persian authorities, and alienated the allies by his outrageous and tyrannical behavior. In consequence, the allies appealed to the Athenians for protection, and Pausanias was recalled to Sparta and later executed.

Meanwhile the Athenians took over the leadership of the allies. Representatives met at Delos and agreed to form a voluntary league (the Delian League) to carry on the war against Persia under the leadership of Athens. Each member state was to provide ships or money in proportion to its means, of which an assessment was made. The representatives threw lumps of lead into the sea and swore to maintain the League until the lead swam.

Led by Cimon, their Athenian general, the fleet of the League had a series of very successful campaigns, expelling the Persian garrisons wherever they remained and finally defeating them in the great battle of the Eurymedon River on the southern coast of Asia Minor when they tried to make a comeback (ca. 467 B.C.). As the Persian danger receded, some members became less willing to contribute ships or money. Around 469 B.C. the important island of Naxos seceded from the League; the allied fleet blockaded the island and forced it back into the League on terms that made it a subject of Athens. This was the first step of the Athenians on the road to empire.



The Athenian Empire

As time went by, more and more members ceased to provide ships and contributed money instead, and soon only three large and wealthy islands (Lesbos, Chios, and Samos) were independent members contributing ships. The rest had become tributary allies, in whose internal affairs Athens began to interfere. In 454 B.C., a highly significant step was taken when the treasury of the League was transferred from Delos to Athens, ostensibly because the defeat of the Athenian expeditionary force in Egypt in 456 B.C. left the Aegean exposed to danger.

A number of inscriptions carved on stone have been found in Athens that throw much light on the development and organization of the Empire in these years. These include records of the annual tribute paid by each member from 454 B.C., when the treasury of the League was moved to Athens, until 415 B.C. We find that the Empire included nearly all the Aegean Sea and stretched from the coast of the Black Sea to the south of Asia Minor. In 449 B.C., the Athenians made peace with Persia; the purpose of the Delian League had come to an end. The following year the tribute list is very short; many mem-

bers must have refused to pay. We then find a decree that introduced measures for tightening up the collection of the tribute, and the next year's tribute list is long; recalcitrant members had been forced to pay up. At the same time, evidence accumulates of Athenian interference in the internal affairs of League members. Uniform coinage, weights, and measures are imposed by decree; democracies are installed in some cities under the supervision of Athenian officials; garrisons of Athenian troops are stationed at some danger points; settlements of Athenian citizens are made on allied territory; and judicial cases involving an Athenian and an ally are referred to Athenian courts. All such measures infringed the sovereignty of "independent" allies, who were being reduced to the status of subjects in what the Athenians now openly called their Empire (ἡ ἀρχή).

These developments were inspired by Pericles, who dominated the Athenian democracy for nearly thirty years, until his death in 429 B.C. They were largely responsible for the great war between Athens and the Peloponnesian League led by Sparta, for the Peloponnesians not only feared the ever-growing power of Athens but also condemned the "enslavement" of fellow Greeks. The final ultimatum sent by Sparta to Athens said: "The Spartans want peace; and there would be peace, if you let the Greeks be independent." Even at Athens not all approved of the Empire, despite the economic and military advantages it brought. Not even Pericles himself sought moral justification for it. In a speech to the people shortly before his death, he said: "The Empire you hold is a tyranny, which you may think it was wrong to acquire, but it is dangerous to give it up."



Athenian tribute list

This fragment records the tribute paid in 440/439 B.C. by the Hellespontine district of the Empire. In the columns below the heading (ΗΕΛΛΕΣΠΟΝΤΙΟΣ ΦΟΡΟΣ) are listed on the left the amount of tribute and on the right the name of the city concerned.

# META THN EN THΙ ΣΑΛΑΜΙΝΙ ΜΑΧΗΝ (β)



τὸ Αἰτναῖον ὄρος εἶδον ποταμούς πυρὸς πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἐκβάλλον.

## VOCABULARY

### Verbs

λυπέω, λυπήσω, ἐλύπησα,  
λυπήσῃς, *I grieve, vex, cause  
pain to X; passive, I am  
grieved, distressed*  
πολιορκέω [= πόλις, *city* + ἔρκος,  
*wall*], πολιορκήσω, ἐπολιόρ-  
κησα, πολιορκήσῃς, *I besiege*

### Nouns

ὁ βίος, τοῦ βίου, *life*  
ἡ εἰρήνη, τῆς εἰρήνης, *peace*  
τὸ ἔτος, τοῦ ἔτους, *year*  
ὁ θάνατος, τοῦ θανάτου, *death*  
ὁ θῦμός, τοῦ θύμοῦ, *spirit*  
ὁ ποταμός, τοῦ ποταμοῦ, *river*  
ἡ σπονδή, τῆς σπονδῆς, *libation*

(drink offering)

αἱ σπονδαί, τῶν σπονδῶν,  
pl., *peace treaty*

### Adjectives

ἄξιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *worthy*; + gen.,  
*worthy of*

### Expression

ἥκιστα γε, *least of all, not at all*  
Cf. μάλιστα γε, *certainly,*  
*indeed*

### Proper Names

For the proper names in this  
reading, see the Greek to En-  
glish Vocabulary at the end of  
the book.

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἄρ’ οὐ τοσαύτην συμφορὰν παθόντες τοῦ  
πολέμου ἐπαύσασθε;”



ὁ δὲ ναύτης, “ἤκιστα γε,” ἔφη· “οὐδὲν γὰρ ἐδύνατο τὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων θῦμὸν καθαιρεῖν. δι’ ὀλίγου οὖν ὁ Κίμων τῷ ναυτικῷ εἰς Κύπρον ἡγησάμενος τοὺς Πέρσας αὐθις ἐνίκησεν, αὐτοὺς δὲ πόλιν 5 τινὰ πολιορκῶν ἀπέθανεν. ἡμεῖς οὖν λυπούμενοι οἴκαδε ἀπεπλεύσαμεν. τῷ δὲ ἐπιγιγνομένῳ ἔτει σπονδαὶ ποιοῦνται ὑπὸ τοῦ δήμου πρὸς τοὺς Πέρσας. τοσαῦτα οὖν εἰργασάμεθα πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους μαχόμενοι. ἀγὼν οὖν μέγιστος πρόκειται σοι, ὦ παῖ· δεῖ γάρ σε ἄξιον γίγνεσθαι τῶν πατέρων.” 10

[καθαίρειν, *to reduce* τῷ... ἐπιγιγνομένῳ ἔτει, *the next year* πρὸς + acc., *with* πρόκειται σοι, *lies before you*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “ἀληθῆ λέγεις, ὦ γέρον,” ἔφη· “ἐὰν δὲ ἴλεως ᾖ ὁ θεός, ἐγὼ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθὸς γίγνεσθαι πειράσομαι, ἄξιος τῶν πατέρων. ἀλλὰ τί ἐποίεις σὺ ἐν τῇ εἰρήνῃ;”

[ἐὰν... ᾖ, *if... is*]

ὁ δὲ γέρων, “οὐκέτι νεανίας ἦν ἐγώ,” ἔφη, “οὐδὲ τοσαύτη ῥώμη ἐχρώμην ὥστε ἐν τῷ ναυτικῷ ἐρέσσειν. μισθοφορῶν οὖν ἐν ὁλκάσι 15 πολλαχόσε τῆς γῆς ἔπλεον. εἷς τε γὰρ τὴν Σικελίαν ἦλθον, οὐπὲρ τὸ Αἰτναῖον ὄρος εἶδον ποταμοὺς πυρὸς πρὸς τὸν οὐρανὸν ἐκβάλλον, καὶ εἰς τὴν Σκυθίαν ἔπλευσα, οὐπὲρ τοῦ χειμῶνος τοσαῦτά ἐστιν τὰ ψύχη ὥστε πήγνυσθαι καὶ τὴν θάλατταν. νῦν δὲ μάλα γεραῖος ὢν πλοῦς τινὰς μικροὺς ποιοῦμαι περὶ τὰς νήσους, καὶ θάνατον 20 εὐκόλος προσδέχομαι.”

[ῥώμη, *strength* μισθοφορῶν, *hiring myself out* οὐπὲρ, *where* τοῦ χειμῶνος, *in winter* τὰ ψύχη, *the frosts* πήγνυσθαι (present passive infinitive of πήγνυμι, *I make solid, make stiff*), *freezes* πλοῦς, *voyages* εὐκόλος, *contented(ly)* προσδέχομαι, *I await*]

ὁ δὲ Φίλιππος, “πολλὰ μὲν εἶδες, ὦ γέρον,” ἔφη, “ἐν τῷ μακρῷ βίω, πολλὰ δὲ καὶ ἔπαθες. οὐ γὰρ αὐτὸς ὁ Ὀδυσσεὺς πορρωτέρω ἐπλανᾶτο ἢ σὺ.”

[πορρωτέρω, *further* ἐπλανᾶτο (from πλανᾶω, *I lead X astray, make X wander*; passive, *I wander*), *was used to wandering*]

ὁ δὲ γέρων πρὸς τὴν γῆν βλέψας ἀνέστη καί, “ἰδού,” ἔφη, “ἤδη γὰρ 25 ἡ ναὺς ἀνέμῳ οὐρίῳ φερομένη τῷ λιμένι προσχωρεῖ. χαίρετε οὖν.”

[οὐρίῳ, *favorable*]

οὕτως εἰπὼν ἀπέβη πρὸς τὴν πρῶραν, οἱ δὲ ἔμενον πάντα ἐνθυμούμενοι ἅπερ εἶπεν.

[τὴν πρῶραν, *the bow of the ship* ἐνθυμούμενοι, *thinking about, pondering*]

οἱ δ' ὅτε δὴ λιμένος πολυβενθέος ἐντὸς ἵκοντο,

ἰστία μὲν στείλαντο, θέσαν δ' ἐν νηὶ μελαίνῃ . . .

30

καρπαλίμως, τὴν δ' εἰς ὄρμον προέρεσαν ἑρετμοῖς.

[πολυβενθέος, *gen. sing., very deep* ἐντός + *gen., within* ἵκοντο (unaugmented aorist in Homer), *they arrived* στείλαντο (unaugmented aorist in Homer; from στέλλω, *I make ready; I send; of sails, I take down, furl*) *they took down* θέσαν (unaugmented aorist in Homer), *they put* μελαίνῃ, *black* καρπαλίμως, *quickly* τὴν, *it, i.e., the ship* ὄρμον, *anchorage* προέρεσαν ἑρετμοῖς (unaugmented aorist in Homer), *they rowed . . . forward with the oars* (The quotation is from *Iliad* 1.432, 433, and 435.)]

## WORD BUILDING

The following adjectives, verbs, and nouns are related to the word ὁ θυμός, *spirit*, with the prefixes ἀ-, *not*, εὖ-, *good*, and προ-, *before; forth* (often indicating readiness). Deduce the meaning of the following compounds:

- |                  |             |            |
|------------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. ἄθυμος, -ον   | ἀθυμέω      | ἡ ἀθυμία   |
| 2. εὖθυμος, -ον  | εὖθυμέω     | ἡ εὖθυμία  |
| 3. πρόθυμος, -ον | προθυμέομαι | ἡ προθυμία |

## GRAMMAR

### 2. Verbs with Athematic Presents and Imperfects: δύναμαι, κείμαι, and ἐπίσταμαι

The following common deponent verbs add personal endings directly to the stem with no thematic vowel between the stem and the ending (note that intervocalic σ remains except in the two alternative imperfect forms). The verbs δύναμαι and ἐπίσταμαι do not have aorist middle forms; their aorists will be introduced in Chapter 17 at the beginning of Book II. The verb κείμαι was not used in the aorist.

## Present

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι  
**Stem:** δύνα-, *be able*

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δύνα-μαι		δύνα-σθαι	δυνά-μεν-ος, -η, -ον
δύνα-σαι	δύνα-σο		
δύνα-ται			
δυνά-μεθα			
δύνα-σθε	δύνα-σθε		
δύνα-νται			

κείμαι, κείσομαι  
**Stem:** κει-, *lie*

κεί-μαι		κεί-σθαι	κεί-μεν-ος, -η, -ον
κεί-σαι	κεί-σο		
κεί-ται			
κεί-μεθα			
κεί-σθε	κεί-σθε		
κεί-νται			

έπίσταμαι, έπιστήσομαι  
**Stem:** έπίστα-, *understand, know*

έπίστα-μαι		έπίστα-σθαι	έπιστά-μεν-ος, -η, -ον
έπίστα-σαι	έπίστα-σο		
έπίστα-ται			
έπιστά-μεθα			
έπίστα-σθε	έπίστα-σθε		
έπίστα-νται			

## Imperfect Indicative

έ-δυνά-μην	έ-κεί-μην	ήπιστά-μην
έ-δύνα-σο or έδύνω	έ-κει-σο	ήπίστα-σο or ήπιστω
έ-δύνα-το	έ-κει-το	ήπίστα-το
έ-δυνά-μεθα	έ-κεί-μεθα	ήπιστά-μεθα
έ-δύνα-σθε	έ-κει-σθε	ήπίστα-σθε
έ-δύνα-ντο	έ-κει-ντο	ήπίστα-ντο

## Exercise 16ε

*Read aloud and translate:*

1. ὦ ξεῖν', ἀγγέλλειν Λακεδαιμονίοις ὅτι τῇδε  
κείμεθα τοῖς κείνων ῥήμασι πειθόμενοι. (See Chapter 14β, page 244.)
2. ἄρ' ἐπίστασθε τί οὐ δύνανται ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν οἱ σύμμαχοι;
3. ἡ γυνὴ οὐκ ἠπίστατο ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ἐν ἐκείνῃ τῇ μάχῃ ἀπέθανεν.
4. αὕτη ἡ νῆσος οὕτως ἐγγὺς (*near*) ἔκειτο τῇ ἡπείρῳ (*mainland*) ὥστε  
ῥαδίως ἐκεῖσε διέβημεν.
5. ἐν οὐδεμίᾳ ναυμαχίᾳ ἐδύναντο οἱ βάρβαροι τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῆσαι.
6. τέλος δὲ ὁ Ξέρξης ἠπίστατο ὅτι αἱ τῶν βαρβάρων νῆες ταῖς τῶν Ἑλ-  
λήνων οὐ δύνανται ἀντέχειν.
7. καίπερ ἄριστα μαχόμενοι, οὐκ ἐδύναντο οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι τοὺς βαρβάρους  
ἀμῦναι.
8. τί οὐκ ἐργάζει, ὦ νεανίᾳ, ἀλλὰ οὕτω ἄργος κεῖσαι;
9. ἐπιστάμενοι ὅτι ὁ δεσπότης προσχωρεῖ, οἱ δοῦλοι, οἱ ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ ἔκειντο,  
ἀνέστησαν καὶ εἰργάζοντο.
10. τοῦτο ἐπίστασο, ὅτι οὐ δύνασαι τοὺς θεοὺς ἐξαπατᾶν (*to deceive*).

## Ο ΞΕΡΞΗΣ ΠΡΟΣ ΤΗΝ ΑΣΙΑΝ ΑΝΑΧΩΡΕΙ

*Read the following passage (adapted from Herodotus 8.118) and answer the comprehension questions below:*

After the defeat at Salamis, Xerxes accompanied his army on the retreat northwards. In Thessaly he left a large army under Mardonius to renew the attack the following year. Herodotus gives two versions of the rest of his journey home, of which this is the second.

ἔστι δὲ καὶ ὁδε ἄλλος λόγος, ὅτι, ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξέρξης ἀπελαύνων ἐξ Ἀθηνῶν ἀφίκετο εἰς Ἡΐονα, οὐκέτι κατὰ γῆν ἐπορεύετο ἀλλὰ τὴν μὲν στρατίαν Ὑδάρνει ἐπιτρέπει ἀπάγειν εἰς τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, αὐτὸς δὲ εἰς ναὺν εἰσβάς ἐπλεῖ εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. πλέοντι δὲ αὐτῷ ἄνεμος μὲν μείζων ἐγίγνετο, ἡ δὲ θάλαττα ἐκύμαιεν. ἡ δὲ ναὺς πλείστους φέρουσα ἀνθρώπους τῶν Περσῶν, οἱ τῷ Ξέρξει ἠκολούθουν, ἐν κινδύνῳ ἦν. ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς μάλα φοβούμενος τὸν κυβερνήτην ἤρετο εἴ τις σωτηρίᾳ ἐστὶν αὐτοῖς. ὁ δὲ εἶπεν· “ὦ δέσποτα, οὐκ ἔστιν οὐδεμία σωτηρία, ἐὰν μὴ ἀπαλλάγωμέν τινων τῶν πολλῶν ἐπιβατῶν.”

[ἀπελαύνων, *marching away* Ἡΐονα, *Eion* (a town in Thrace) τὴν . . .  
στρατίαν, *the army* Ὑδάρνει, *to Hydarnes* ἐπιτρέπει, *entrusts* ἀπάγειν, *to*  
*lead back* τὸν Ἑλλήσποντον, *the Hellespont* ἐκύμαιεν, *was becoming rough*  
ἠκολούθουν + dat., *were following, accompanying* τὸν κυβερνήτην, *the steers-*

man σωτηρίᾳ, *safety, salvation* ἐὰν μὴ, *unless* ἀπαλλάγωμέν (from ἀπαλλάττω) + gen., *get rid of* ἐπιβατῶν, *passengers*]

1. In this second version of the story of Xerxes' return to Asia, what did he do with his army and what did he do himself?
2. What happened during the voyage?
3. What did Xerxes ask his helmsman?
4. On what did the helmsman say their salvation depended?

καὶ Ξέρξης ταῦτα ἀκούσας εἶπεν· “ὦ ἄνδρες Πέρσαι, νῦν δεῖ ὑμᾶς δηλοῦν εἰ τὸν βασιλέα φιλεῖτε· ἐν ὑμῖν γάρ, ὡς δοκεῖ, ἔστιν ἡ ἐμὴ σωτηρία.” ὁ μὲν ταῦτα 10 εἶπεν, οἱ δὲ αὐτὸν προσκυνοῦντες ἔρριψαν ἑαυτοὺς εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ ἡ ναὺς ἐπικουφισθεῖσα οὕτω δὴ ἔσωσε τὸν βασιλέα εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. ὡς δὲ ἐξέβη εἰς τὴν γῆν, ὁ Ξέρξης ἐποίησε τοῦτο· ὅτι μὲν ἔσωσε τὸν βασιλέα, χρῦσοῦν στέφανον τῷ κυβερνήτῃ ἔδωκεν, ὅτι δὲ Περσῶν πολλοὺς διέφθειρεν ἀπέταμε τὴν κεφαλὴν αὐτοῦ. [προσκυνοῦντες, *bowing down to* ἔρριψαν (from ῥίπτω), *they threw* ἐπικουφισθεῖσα (from ἐπικουφίζω), *lightened* ὅτι, *because* χρῦσοῦν στέφανον, *a golden crown* ἔδωκεν (from δίδωμι), *he gave* ἀπέταμε (from ἀποτέμνω), *he cut off*]

5. What does Xerxes say that the Persians must now show?
6. Upon whom does Xerxes say his salvation depends?
7. What two things do the Persians do?
8. What is the result of their action?
9. Why did Xerxes give his helmsman a golden crown?
10. Why did he cut off his head?

### Exercise 16ζ

*Translate into Greek:*

1. After the battle, Xerxes and his generals, having stayed a certain few days in Attica, set out (*use aorist active*) toward Boeotia.
2. The king ordered Mardonius (*use ὁ Μαρδόνιος*) (on the one hand) to stay in Thessaly (*use ἡ Θεσσαλία*) during the winter, and (on the other hand) at the beginning of spring (*ἄμα ἡρι ἀρχομένῳ*) to advance against the Peloponnesus.
3. When they arrived in Thessaly, Mardonius (on the one hand) selected (*ἐξελέξατο*) the best of his soldiers, (on the other hand) Xerxes leaving them there marched as quickly as possible to the Hellespont.
4. We cannot trust the other story that they tell about the return (*use ὁ νόστος*) of Xerxes.
5. Those who understand the truth say that retreating to Asia by land he arrived at the Hellespont within forty-five (*πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα; indeclinable*) days (*use genitive*).

## Classical Greek

### Sappho: Love's Power

The following two fragments (47 and 130, Campbell) of Sappho's poetry describe how love ("Ερος) affected her once in the past and how it affects her again in the present. For Sappho, see pages 131 and 202. The dialect is Aeolic.

"Ερος δ' ἐτίναξέ μοι

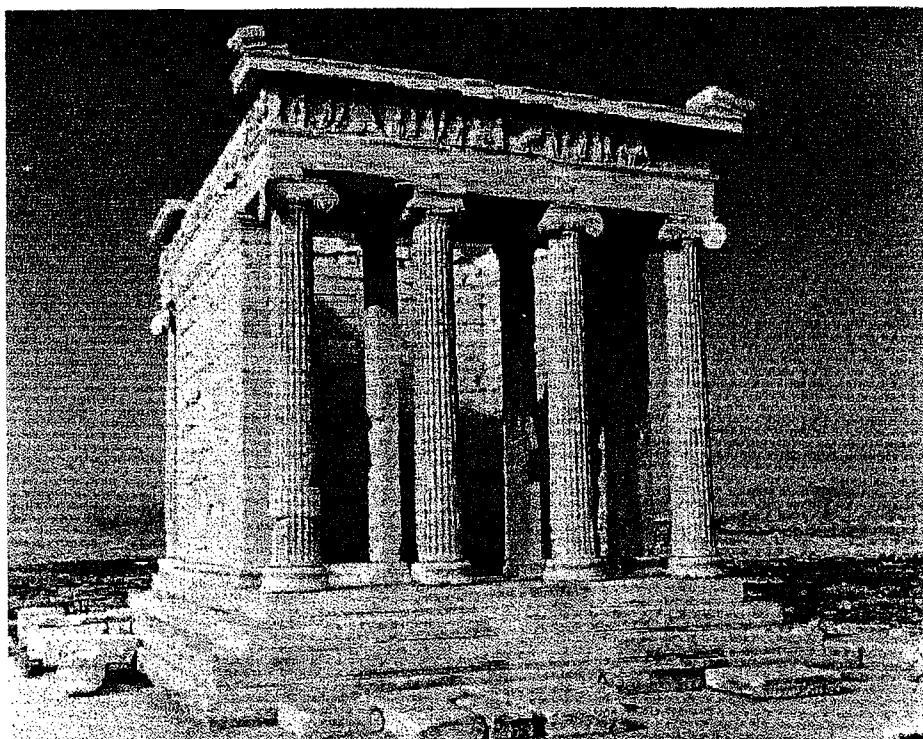
φρένας, ὥς ἄνεμος κατ' ὄρος δρύσιν ἐμπέτων.

[ἐτίναξε, *shook* μοι: take as possessive with φρένας φρένας, *heart* ὥς = ὡς, *as* κατ' = κατὰ + acc., *on* δρύσιν, *oak trees* ἐμπέτων = ἐμπεσών + dat, *falling on*]

"Ερος δηῶτέ μ' ὁ λῦσιμέλης δόνει,

γλυκύπικρον ἀμάχανον ὄρπετον.

[δηῶτε = δὴ αὖτε, *again* ὁ λῦσιμέλης, *the limb-relaxing* (lit., *relaxing the limbs*, τὰ μέλη) δόνει, *shakes; excites* γλυκύπικρον, *bitter-sweet* (lit., *sweet-bitter*) ἀμάχανον = ἀμήχανον, *against whom or which one cannot fight; irresistible* ὄρπετον = ἔρπετόν, *creature*]



Temple of Athena Nike on the Acropolis  
The Athenians built this temple in 427–424 B.C.  
to commemorate their victories in the Persian Wars.

## Classical Greek

Simonides

You have already read two epitaphs that Simonides wrote for the Athenians who died in the war against the Persians (pages 244 and 261); see also the epitaph on page 151. He wrote the following epitaph (no. IX, Campbell) for the Spartans who died at Plataea, where the Greeks defeated the Persian land army in 479 B.C. and ended Xerxes' attempt to conquer Greece.

ἄσβεστον κλέος οἶδε φίλη περὶ πατρίδι θέντες  
 κῦάνεον θανάτου ἀμφεβάλλοντο νέφος·  
 οὐδὲ τεθνᾶσι θανόντες, ἐπεὶ σφ' ἀρετὴ καθύπερθε  
 κῦδαίνουσ' ἀνάγει δώματος ἐξ 'Αΐδεω.

[ἄσβεστον κλέος, *inextinguishable/imperishable glory* περὶ . . . θέντες, *putting X (acc.) around Y (dat.), clothing Y with X* κῦάνεον . . . νέφος, *the dark cloud* ἀμφεβάλλοντο, *they threw around themselves, clothed themselves in* οὐδὲ τεθνᾶσι θανόντες, *and although having died they are not dead* ἐπεὶ, *since* σφ' = σφε = αὐτούς, *them* καθύπερθε κῦδαίνουσα, *giving (them) glory (τὸ κῦδος) from (the earth) above* δώματος . . . 'Αΐδεω, *the house of Hades (= death)]*

## New Testament Greek

Luke 2.15–20

The Birth of Jesus (concluded)

καὶ ἐγένετο ὡς ἀπῆλθον ἀπ' αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν οὐρανὸν οἱ ἄγγελοι, οἱ ποιμένες ἐλάλουν πρὸς ἀλλήλους, “διέλθωμεν δὴ ἕως Βηθλέεμ καὶ ἴδωμεν τὸ ρῆμα τοῦτο τὸ γεγονὸς ὃ ὁ κύριος ἐγνώρισεν ἡμῖν. καὶ ἦλθαν σπεύσαντες καὶ ἀνεῦραν τὴν τε Μαριὰμ καὶ τὸν Ἰωσήφ καὶ τὸ βρέφος κείμενον ἐν τῇ φάτνῃ· ἰδόντες δὲ ἐγνώρισαν περὶ τοῦ ρήματος τοῦ λαληθέντος αὐτοῖς περὶ τοῦ παιδίου τούτου. καὶ πάντες οἱ ἀκούσαντες ἐθαύμασαν περὶ τῶν λαληθέντων ὑπὸ τῶν ποιμένων πρὸς αὐτούς· ἡ δὲ Μαριὰμ πάντα συνετήρει τὰ ρήματα ταῦτα συμβάλλουσα ἐν τῇ καρδίᾳ αὐτῆς. καὶ ὑπέστρεψαν οἱ ποιμένες δοξάζοντες καὶ αἰνοῦντες τὸν θεὸν ἐπὶ πᾶσιν οἷς ἤκουσαν καὶ εἶδον καθὼς ἐλαλήθη πρὸς αὐτούς.

[οἱ ἄγγελοι, *the angels* οἱ ποιμένες, *the shepherds* ἐλάλουν, *were saying* διέλθωμεν, *subjunctive, let us go* ἕως, *to* ἴδωμεν, *subjunctive, let us see* τὸ ρῆμα, *saying; event, happening* γεγονός, *having happened, that has happened* ὁ κύριος, *the Lord* ἐγνώρισεν, *made known* ἦλθαν . . . ἀνεῦραν = ἦλθον . . . ἀνεῦρον τὸ βρέφος, *baby, infant* τῇ φάτνῃ, *manger, feeding-trough* λαληθέντος, *that had been spoken* τοῦ παιδίου, *child, infant* συνετήρει, *was keeping, remembering* συμβάλλουσα, *thinking about, pondering* τῇ καρδίᾳ, *the heart* ὑπέστρεψαν, *turned back, returned home* δοξάζοντες, *glorifying* αἰνοῦντες, *praising* ἐπὶ πᾶσιν οἷς, *for all the things that* καθὼς, *just as* ἐλαλήθη, *they had been spoken]*

# VERB CHART: PRESENT AND IMPERFECT

Principal Parts of Verb: \_\_\_\_\_

Exercise Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## Present

Indicative	Subjunctive	Optative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____	_____	_____

## Imperfect

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

\_\_\_\_\_

For participles, fill in the nominative singular, masculine, feminine, and neuter and the genitive singular masculine of participles having 3rd and 1st declension forms.

For middle voice participles, give the masculine nominative singular and the feminine and neuter endings.



# VERB CHART: FUTURE AND AORIST

First Principal Part of Verb: \_\_\_\_\_

Exercise Number: \_\_\_\_\_

## Future

Indicative	Subjunctive	Optative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
_____	_____	_____		_____	_____
_____	_____	_____			_____
_____	_____	_____			_____
_____	_____	_____			_____
_____	_____	_____			

## Aorist

_____	_____	_____		_____	_____
_____	_____	_____	_____		_____
_____	_____	_____			_____
_____	_____	_____			_____
_____	_____	_____	_____		
_____	_____	_____			

# SYLLABLES AND ACCENTS

A Greek word has as many syllables as it has vowels and diphthongs, e.g.: ἄν-θρω-πος.

In dividing words into syllables, single consonants go with the following vowel (note -πος in ἄν-θρω-πος above); a group of consonants that cannot stand at the beginning of a word is divided between two syllables (note how the consonants νθρ are divided in ἄν-θρω-πος above); and double consonants are divided between syllables, e.g., θά-λατ-τα.

The final syllable is called the *ultima*, the next to the last, the *penult*, and the third from the end, the *antepenult*. These terms are useful in discussing the placement of accents.

A syllable is said to be long (1) if it contains a long vowel or diphthong or (2) if it contains a short vowel followed by two or more consecutive consonants or by one of the double consonants ζ, ξ, or ψ. Exceptions to these rules are the diphthongs αι and οι, which are regarded as short when they stand as the final element in a word (except in the optative mood, to be studied in Book II). Note that η and ω are long vowels, ε and ο are short vowels, and α, ι, and υ may be either long or short—when long they are marked with a macron in this book.

For the three types of accents, see Introduction, page xv. The acute accent can stand on any of the last three syllables of a word; the circumflex can stand on either of the last two syllables; and the grave can stand only on the ultima. The grave accent replaces an acute on the ultima when that word is followed immediately by another word with no intervening punctuation, except when the following word is an enclitic (see below).

The accent on finite forms of verbs is *recessive*, i.e., it is placed as far toward the beginning of the word as is allowed by the rule in d1 below. The accent on a noun, adjective, or participle is *persistent*, i.e., it remains as it is in the nominative case unless forced to change by one of the rules in d1 and d2 below. The placement of the accent in the nominative must be learned by observation, e.g.: ἄν-θρω-πος, ὁ-λί-γος, κα-λός, λῦ-ό-με-νος, λῦ-ων, and λι-πών.

## Placement of Accents

### a. On the antepenult

Only an acute accent may stand on the antepenult, e.g.: ἄν-θρω-πος.

### b. On the penult

If the penult is accented, it will have a circumflex if it contains a diphthong or a long vowel and if the vowel or diphthong of the final syllable is short, e.g.: οἶ-κος, οἶ-κοι. Otherwise, it will have an acute, e.g.: ἄν-θρώ-που, πό-νου.

### c. On the ultima

If the ultima is accented, its accent will be an acute (changed to a grave as noted above) or a circumflex (by special rules, particularly in contract verbs).

### d. Shifts and changes of accent

1. The acute cannot stand on the antepenult if the ultima is long. Therefore, ἄν-θρω-πος becomes ἄν-θρώ-που in the genitive case.
2. Since the circumflex can stand on the accented penult only if the vowel or diphthong of the ultima is short, the circumflex on οἶ-κος changes to an acute in the genitive case (οἶ-κου).

# ENCLITICS AND PROCLITICS

Enclitics lean upon the preceding word, and the two words taken together are accented to some extent as if they were one word. Enclitics met in Book I of *Athenaze* include the short forms of the personal pronouns (μου, μοι, με; σου, σοι, σε); the indefinite pronoun and adjective τις, τι; the indefinite adverbs που, πως, ποτέ, ποθέν, and ποι; the particle γε; the conjunction τε; and the forms of εἰμί and φημί in the present indicative (except for the 2nd person singular).

- a. An acute accent on the ultima of a word preceding an enclitic does not change to a grave, and the enclitic has no accent, e.g.:

ἀγρός τις

ἀγροί τινες.

- b. If a circumflex stands on the ultima of a word preceding an enclitic, the enclitic has no accent, e.g.:

ἀγρῶν τινῶν

- c. A word with an acute on its penult does not change its accent when followed by an enclitic, but a disyllabic enclitic will require an accent on its ultima (an acute accent if the ultima is short and a circumflex if it is long), e.g.:

πόνος τις

ἀνθρώπου τινός

ἀνθρώπων τινῶν

The acute on the ultima of the enclitic will, of course, change to a grave if the enclitic is followed by another word with no intervening punctuation.

- d. A word with an acute on its antepenult will need to add an acute to its ultima to support an enclitic, e.g.:

ἄνθρωπός τις

ἄνθρωποί τινες

The enclitics need no accents.

- e. If a word has a circumflex on its penult, an acute accent is added to its ultima to support a following enclitic, e.g.:

οἶκός τις

οἶκοί τινες

- f. If an enclitic is followed by another enclitic, the first receives an acute accent but the second does not, e.g.:

δυνατόν ἐστί σοι

If an enclitic is followed by more than one enclitic, all but the last receive acute accents, e.g.:

δυνατόν ἐστί σοί ποτε

- g. The enclitic ἐστί(ν) receives an acute accent on its penult:

1. when it stands at the beginning of its sentence or clause, e.g., ἔστι λύκος ἐκεῖ. *There's a wolf there.*

2. when it follows οὐκ, e.g., οὐκ ἔστι λύκος ἐκεῖ. *There isn't a wolf there.*

3. when it means *it is possible*, e.g., σπεῦδε, ὦ πάτερ· οὐ γὰρ ἔστιν ἀπελαύνειν τὸν λύκον. *Hurry, father; for it's not possible to drive the wolf away.*

Note: the other enclitic forms of εἰμί retain their accents when they follow οὐκ, and the proclitic has no accent, e.g.: οὐκ εἰμὶ ἄργός. *I am not lazy.* See next page.

## Proclitics

Proclitics are words of a single syllable that normally do not have accents, e.g., οὐ and εἰ. The following words are proclitic: the adverbs οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ; the definite articles ὁ, ἡ, οἱ, and αἱ; the prepositions ἐν, εἰς, ἐκ, and ἐξ; the conjunctions εἰ and ὥς; and the adverb ὥς. When followed by enclitics, they must be accented, e.g.:

εἴ τις

οὐ τις

Exceptions: οὐκ followed by an enclitic form of εἰμί, e.g., οὐκ εἰμὶ ἄργός. *I am not lazy*. See the previous page for οὐκ followed by ἐστί(v). Here is how the six forms of εἰμί are accented with οὐκ:

οὐκ εἰμὶ

οὐκ ἐσμέν

οὐκ εἶ

οὐκ ἐστέ

οὐκ ἔσσι(v)

οὐκ εἰσί(v)



Greek warrior attacking a Persian archer

# FORMS

## 1. THE DEFINITE ARTICLE (see page 50)

	Singular			Plural		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ὁ	ἡ	τό	οἱ	αἱ	τά
G.	τοῦ	τῆς	τοῦ	τῶν	τῶν	τῶν
D.	τῷ	τῇ	τῷ	τοῖς	ταῖς	τοῖς
A.	τόν	τήν	τό	τούς	τάς	τά

## 2. NOUNS OF THE 1ST DECLENSION

### Feminine (see pages 40–42)

	Singular		Plural			Singular		Plural	
N.	ἡ	κρήνη	αἱ	κρήναι		ἡ	ὕδριᾱ	αἱ	ὕδριαι
G.	τῆς	κρήνης	τῶν	κρήνων		τῆς	ὕδριᾱς	τῶν	ὕδριων
D.	τῇ	κρήνῃ	ταῖς	κρήναις		τῇ	ὕδριᾱ	ταῖς	ὕδριαις
A.	τήν	κρήνην	τάς	κρήνας		τήν	ὕδριᾱν	τάς	ὕδριᾱς
V.	ὦ	κρήνη	ὦ	κρήναι		ὦ	ὕδριᾱ	ὦ	ὕδριαι
N.	ἡ	μέλιττα	αἱ	μέλιτται		ἡ	μάχαιρᾱ	αἱ	μάχαιραι
G.	τῆς	μέλιττης	τῶν	μέλιττων		τῆς	μαχαίρᾱς	τῶν	μαχαιρῶν
D.	τῇ	μέλιττι	ταῖς	μέλιτταις		τῇ	μαχαίρᾱ	ταῖς	μαχαίραις
A.	τήν	μέλιτταν	τάς	μέλιττας		τήν	μάχαιρᾱν	τάς	μαχαίρᾱς
V.	ὦ	μέλιττα	ὦ	μέλιτται		ὦ	μάχαιρᾱ	ὦ	μάχαιραι

### Masculine (see pages 47–48)

	Singular		Plural			Singular		Plural	
N.	ὁ	δεσπότης	οἱ	δεσπότες		ὁ	νεᾷνιᾱς	οἱ	νεᾷνιαι
G.	τοῦ	δεσπότης	τῶν	δεσποτῶν		τοῦ	νεᾷνίου	τῶν	νεᾷνιῶν
D.	τῷ	δεσπότῃ	τοῖς	δεσπότης		τῷ	νεᾷνιᾱ	τοῖς	νεᾷνιαις
A.	τόν	δεσπότην	τούς	δεσπότες		τόν	νεᾷνιᾱν	τούς	νεᾷνιᾱς
V.	ὦ	δέσποτα*	ὦ	δεσπότες		ὦ	νεᾷνιᾱ	ὦ	νεᾷνιαι

\*Irregular accent. Normally the accent is persistent as with the noun ὁ πολίτης, vocative, ὦ πολίτα.

## 3. NOUNS OF THE 2ND DECLENSION

**Masculine** (see page 31)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ ἄγρoς	οἱ ἄγρoί
G.	τοῦ ἄγρoῦ	τῶν ἄγρoῶν
D.	τῷ ἄγρoῳ	τοῖς ἄγρoῖς
A.	τὸν ἄγρoν	τοὺς ἄγρoύς
V.	ὦ ἄγρe	ὦ ἄγρoί

**Neuter** (see page 31)

	Singular	Plural
N.	τὸ δένδρoν	τὰ δένδρa
G.	τοῦ δένδρoυ	τῶν δένδρoν
D.	τῷ δένδρoι	τοῖς δένδρoις
A.	τὸ δένδρoν	τὰ δένδρa
V.	ὦ δένδρoν	ὦ δένδρa

**Feminine:** e.g., ἡ ὁδός (see page 48)

**Contract: Masculine** (see page 263):

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ νοῦς	οἱ νοῖ
G.	τοῦ νοῦ	τῶν νῶν
D.	τῷ νῷ	τοῖς νοῖς
A.	τὸν νοῦν	τοὺς νοῦς
V.	ὦ νοῦ	ὦ νοῖ

**Attic Declension**

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ λαγός	οἱ λαγῶ
G.	τοῦ λαγῶ	τῶν λαγῶν
D.	τῷ λαγῶ	τοῖς λαγῶς
A.	τὸν λαγῶν/ῶ	τοὺς λαγῶς
V.	ὦ λαγός	ὦ λαγῶ

**Contract Neuter:** τὸ κανοῦν (rare; not formally presented in this course; for an example, see κανῶ, 9β:6)

## 4. NOUNS OF THE 3RD DECLENSION

**Labial Stems** (β, π, φ; see page 107)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ κλώψ	οἱ κλῶπες
G.	τοῦ κλωπός	τῶν κλωπῶν
D.	τῷ κλωπί	τοῖς κλωπί(ν)
A.	τὸν κλωπα	τοὺς κλωπας
V.	ὦ κλώψ	ὦ κλῶπες

**Velar Stems** (γ, κ, χ; see page 98)

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ φύλαξ	οἱ φύλακες	N.	ὁ αἴξ	οἱ αἴγες
G.	τοῦ φύλακος	τῶν φυλάκων	G.	τοῦ αἰγός	τῶν αἰγῶν
D.	τῷ φύλακι	τοῖς φύλαξι(ν)	D.	τῷ αἰγί	τοῖς αἰξί(ν)
A.	τὸν φύλακα	τοὺς φύλακας	A.	τὸν αἴγα	τοὺς αἴγας
V.	ὦ φύλαξ	ὦ φύλακες	V.	ὦ αἴξ	ὦ αἴγες

**Dental Stems** (δ, θ, τ; see page 99)

	Singular		Plural			Singular		Plural	
N.	ὁ	παῖς	οἱ	παῖδες	τὸ	ὄνομα	τὰ	ὀνόματα	
G.	τοῦ	παιδός	τῶν	παίδων	τοῦ	ὀνόματος	τῶν	ὀνομάτων	
D.	τῷ	παιδί	τοῖς	παισί(ν)	τῷ	ὀνόματι	τοῖς	ὀνόμασι(ν)	
A.	τὸν	παῖδα	τούς	παῖδας	τὸ	ὄνομα	τὰ	ὀνόματα	
V.	ὦ	παῖ	ὦ	παῖδες	ὦ	ὄνομα	ὦ	ὀνόματα	

**Stems in -ντ-** (see page 145)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ γέρων	οἱ γέροντες
G.	τοῦ γέροντος	τῶν γερόντων
D.	τῷ γέροντι	τοῖς γέρουσι(ν)
A.	τὸν γέροντα	τούς γέροντας
V.	ὦ γέρον	ὦ γέροντες

**Liquid Stems** (λ, ρ; see page 107)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ ῥήτωρ	οἱ ῥήτορες
G.	τοῦ ῥήτορος	τῶν ῥητόρων
D.	τῷ ῥήτορι	τοῖς ῥήτορσι(ν)
A.	τὸν ῥήτορα	τούς ῥήτορας
V.	ὦ ῥήτωρ	ὦ ῥήτορες

**Nasal Stems** (ν; see pages 106–107)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ χειμών	οἱ χειμῶνες
G.	τοῦ χειμῶνος	τῶν χειμῶνων
D.	τῷ χειμῶνι	τοῖς χειμῶσι(ν)
A.	τὸν χειμῶνα	τούς χειμῶνας
V.	ὦ χειμών	ὦ χειμῶνες

**Stems in -ρ-** (see pages 124–125)**Singular**

N.	ὁ ἀνὴρ	ὁ πατήρ	ἡ μήτηρ	ἡ θυγάτηρ
G.	τοῦ ἀνδρός	τοῦ πατρός	τῆς μητρός	τῆς θυγατρός
D.	τῷ ἀνδρί	τῷ πατρί	τῇ μητρί	τῇ θυγατρί
A.	τὸν ἄνδρα	τὸν πατέρα	τὴν μητέρα	τὴν θυγάτερα
V.	ὦ ἄνερ	ὦ πάτερ	ὦ μήτερ	ὦ θύγατερ

**Plural**

N.	οἱ ἄνδρες	οἱ πατέρες	αἱ μητέρες	αἱ θυγατέρες
G.	τῶν ἀνδρῶν	τῶν πατέρων	τῶν μητέρων	τῶν θυγατέρων
D.	τοῖς ἀνδράσι(ν)	τοῖς πατράσι(ν)	ταῖς μητράσι(ν)	ταῖς θυγατράσι(ν)
A.	τούς ἄνδρας	τούς πατέρας	τὰς μητέρας	τὰς θυγατέρας
V.	ὦ ἄνδρες	ὦ πατέρες	ὦ μητέρες	ὦ θυγατέρες

**Stems in -εσ-** (see pages 226–227)

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
N.	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχη	ή	τριήρης	αἱ τριήρεις
G.	τοῦ τείχους	τῶν τευχῶν	της	τριήρους	τῶν τριήρων
D.	τῷ τείχει	τοῖς τείχεσι(ν)	τῇ	τριήρει	ταῖς τριήρεσι(ν)
A.	τὸ τεῖχος	τὰ τεῖχη	τήν	τριήρη	τάς τριήρεις
V.	ὦ τεῖχος	ὦ τεῖχη	ὦ	τριήρες	ὦ τριήρεις

**Also ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς** (see page 254)

N.	ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς
G.	τοῦ Θεμιστοκλέους
D.	τῷ Θεμιστοκλεῖ
A.	τὸν Θεμιστοκλέα
V.	ὦ Θεμιστόκλεις

**Stems Ending in a Vowel** (see page 145)

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
N.	ἡ πόλις	αἱ πόλεις	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστυ	
G.	τῆς πόλεως	τῶν πόλεων	τοῦ ἄστεως	τῶν ἄστεων	
D.	τῇ πόλει	ταῖς πόλεσι(ν)	τῷ ἄστει	τοῖς ἄστεσι(ν)	
A.	τήν πόλιν	τάς πόλεις	τὸ ἄστυ	τὰ ἄστυ	
V.	ὦ πόλι	ὦ πόλεις	ὦ ἄστυ	ὦ ἄστυ	

**Stems in Diphthongs or Vowels** (see page 146)

	Singular	Plural
N.	ὁ βασιλεύς	οἱ βασιλεῖς
G.	τοῦ βασιλέως	τῶν βασιλέων
D.	τῷ βασιλεῖ	τοῖς βασιλεῦσι(ν)
A.	τὸν βασιλέα	τούς βασιλέας
V.	ὦ βασιλεῦ	ὦ βασιλεῖς

**Irregular**

	Singular	Plural		Singular	Plural
N.	ἡ ναῦς	αἱ νῆες	ὁ βοῦς	οἱ βόες	
G.	τῆς νεώς	τῶν νεῶν	τοῦ βοός	τῶν βοῶν	
D.	τῇ νηϊ	ταῖς ναυσί(ν)	τῷ βοί	τοῖς βουσί(ν)	
A.	τήν ναῦν	τάς ναῦς	τὸν βοῦν	τούς βοῦς	
V.	ὦ ναῦ	ὦ νῆες	ὦ βοῦ	ὦ βόες	



**Irregular** (see page 125)

	<b>Singular</b>		<b>Plural</b>		<b>Singular</b>		<b>Plural</b>
<b>N.</b>	ἡ	γυνή	αἱ γυναῖκες		ἡ	χεῖρ	αἱ χεῖρες
<b>G.</b>	τῆς	γυναικός	τῶν γυναικῶν		τῆς	χειρός	τῶν χειρῶν
<b>D.</b>	τῇ	γυναικί	ταῖς γυναιξί(ν)		τῇ	χειρί	ταῖς χειρσί(ν)
<b>A.</b>	τὴν	γυναῖκα	τὰς γυναῖκας		τὴν	χεῖρα	τὰς χεῖρας
<b>V.</b>	ὦ	γύναι	ὦ γυναῖκες		ὦ	χεῖρ	ὦ χεῖρες

**5. ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF THE 1ST AND 2ND DECLENSIONS****Adjectives** (see pages 48–49)

Singular			Plural			
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
N.	καλός	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά
G.	καλοῦ	καλῆς	καλοῦ	καλῶν	καλῶν	καλῶν
D.	καλῷ	καλῇ	καλῷ	καλοῖς	καλαῖς	καλοῖς
A.	καλόν	καλήν	καλόν	καλοὺς	καλάς	καλά
V.	καλέ	καλή	καλόν	καλοί	καλαί	καλά

Singular			Plural			
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
N.	ῥάδιος	ῥαδίᾱ	ῥάδιον	ῥάδιοι	ῥάδια	ῥάδια
G.	ῥαδίου	ῥαδίᾱς	ῥαδίου	ῥαδίων	ῥαδίων	ῥαδίων
D.	ῥαδίῳ	ῥαδίᾱ	ῥαδίῳ	ῥαδίοις	ῥαδίαῖς	ῥαδίοις
A.	ῥάδιον	ῥαδίᾱν	ῥάδιον	ῥαδίους	ῥαδίᾱς	ῥάδια
V.	ῥάδιε	ῥαδίᾱ	ῥάδιον	ῥάδιοι	ῥάδια	ῥάδια

**Present or Progressive Middle Participles** (see pages 115–116 and 262)

	<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>Neuter</b>
<b>Singular</b>			
<b>N.</b>	λϋόμενος	λϋομένη	λϋόμενον
<b>G.</b>	λϋομένου	λϋομένης	λϋομένου
<b>D.</b>	λϋομένῳ	λϋομένῃ	λϋομένῳ
<b>A.</b>	λϋόμενον	λϋομένην	λϋόμενον
<b>V.</b>	λϋόμενε	λϋομένη	λϋόμενον
<b>Plural</b>			
<b>N., V.</b>	λϋόμενοι	λϋόμεναι	λϋόμενα
<b>G.</b>	λϋομένων	λϋομένων	λϋομένων
<b>D.</b>	λϋομένοις	λϋομέναις	λϋομένοις
<b>A.</b>	λϋομένους	λϋομένας	λϋόμενα

**Singular**

<b>N.</b>	φιλούμενος	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον
<b>G.</b>	φιλουμένου	φιλουμένης	φιλουμένου
<b>D.</b>	φιλουμένῳ	φιλουμένῃ	φιλουμένῳ
<b>A.</b>	φιλούμενον	φιλουμένην	φιλούμενον
<b>V</b>	φιλούμενε	φιλουμένη	φιλούμενον

**Plural**

<b>N., V.</b>	φιλούμενοι	φιλούμεναι	φιλούμενα
<b>G.</b>	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων	φιλουμένων
<b>D.</b>	φιλουμένοις	φιλουμέναις	φιλουμένοις
<b>A.</b>	φιλουμένους	φιλουμένᾱς	φιλούμενα

**Exempli gratia:**

<b>N.</b>	τιμώμενος	τιμωμένη	τιμώμενον
-----------	-----------	----------	-----------

**Exempli gratia:**

<b>N.</b>	δηλούμενος	δηλουμένη	δηλούμενον
-----------	------------	-----------	------------

**Sigmatic 1st Aorist and Thematic 2nd Aorist Middle Participles** (see pages 199 and 180)

**Exempli gratia:**

<b>N.</b>	λυσάμενος	λυσαμένη	λυσάμενον
<b>N.</b>	γενόμενος	γενομένη	γενόμενον

## 6. ADJECTIVES OF IRREGULAR DECLENSION (see page 49)

**Singular****Plural**

	<b>M.</b>	<b>F.</b>	<b>N.</b>	<b>M.</b>	<b>F.</b>	<b>N.</b>
<b>N.</b>	μέγας	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
<b>G.</b>	μεγάλου	μεγάλης	μεγάλου	μεγάλων	μεγάλων	μεγάλων
<b>D.</b>	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλῃ	μεγάλῳ	μεγάλοις	μεγάλαις	μεγάλοις
<b>A.</b>	μέγαν	μεγάλην	μέγα	μεγάλους	μεγάλας	μεγάλα
<b>V.</b>	μεγάλε	μεγάλη	μέγα	μεγάλοι	μεγάλαι	μεγάλα
<b>N.</b>	πολύς	πολλή	πολύ	πολλοί	πολλαί	πολλά
<b>G.</b>	πολλοῦ	πολλῆς	πολλοῦ	πολλῶν	πολλῶν	πολλῶν
<b>D.</b>	πολλῷ	πολλῇ	πολλῷ	πολλοῖς	πολλαῖς	πολλοῖς
<b>A.</b>	πολύν	πολλήν	πολύ	πολλούς	πολλάς	πολλά
<b>V.</b>	none					

## 7. ADJECTIVES OF THE 3RD DECLENSION

Adjectives with Stems in -ov- (see pages 107–108)

Singular		Plural	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. σῶφρων	σῶφρον	σῶφρονες	σῶφρονα
G. σῶφρονος	σῶφρονος	σῶφρόνων	σῶφρόνων
D. σῶφρονι	σῶφρονι	σῶφροσι(v)	σῶφροσι(v)
A. σῶφρονα	σῶφρον	σῶφρονας	σῶφρονα
V. σῶφρον	σῶφρον	σῶφρονες	σῶφρονα

Irregular comparative adjectives, such as ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον (see page 235), are declined like σῶφρων, σῶφρον, but have some alternative forms that will be presented in Book II.

Adjectives with Stems in -εσ- (see page 227):

M. & F.	N.
N. ἀληθής	ἀληθές
G. ἀληθοῦς	ἀληθοῦς
D. ἀληθεῖ	ἀληθεῖ
A. ἀληθῇ	ἀληθές
V. ἀληθές	ἀληθές
N. ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῇ
G. ἀληθῶν	ἀληθῶν
D. ἀληθέσι(v)	ἀληθέσι(v)
A. ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῇ
V. ἀληθεῖς	ἀληθῇ

## 8. ADJECTIVES AND PARTICIPLES OF 1ST AND 3RD DECLENSIONS

## Adjectives

πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, *all; every; whole* (see page 126).

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
N., V.	πᾶς	πᾶσα	πᾶν
G.	παντός	πάσης	παντός
D.	παντί	πάσῃ	παντί
A.	πάντα	πᾶσαν	πᾶν
N., V.	πάντες	πᾶσαι	πάντα
G.	πάντων	πᾶσῶν	πάντων
D.	πᾶσι(v)	πᾶσαις	πᾶσι(v)
A.	πάντας	πάσας	πάντα

**ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ, quick, swift** (see pages 227–228)

	<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>Neuter</b>
<b>N.</b>	ταχύς	ταχεῖα	ταχύ
<b>G.</b>	ταχέος	ταχεῖας	ταχέος
<b>D.</b>	ταχεῖ	ταχεῖα	ταχεῖ
<b>A.</b>	ταχύν	ταχεῖαν	ταχύ
<b>V.</b>	ταχύ	ταχεῖα	ταχύ
<b>N.</b>	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖαι	ταχέα
<b>G.</b>	ταχέων	ταχειῶν	ταχέων
<b>D.</b>	ταχέσι(ν)	ταχεῖαις	ταχέσι(ν)
<b>A.</b>	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖας	ταχέα
<b>V.</b>	ταχεῖς	ταχεῖαι	ταχέα

**Present or Progressive Active Participles**

	<b>Masculine</b>	<b>Feminine</b>	<b>Neuter</b>
<b>εἰμί</b> (see page 136):			
<b>N., V.</b>	ὢν	οὔσα	ὄν
<b>G.</b>	ὄντος	οὔσης	ὄντος
<b>D.</b>	ὄντι	οὔσῃ	ὄντι
<b>A.</b>	ὄντα	οὔσαν	ὄν
<b>N., V.</b>	ὄντες	οὔσαι	ὄντα
<b>G.</b>	ὄντων	οὔσων	ὄντων
<b>D.</b>	οὔσι(ν)	οὔσαις	οὔσι(ν)
<b>A.</b>	ὄντας	οὔσας	ὄντα

**λύω** (see page 136):

<b>N., V.</b>	λύων	λύουσα	λύον
<b>G.</b>	λύοντος	λυούσης	λύοντος
<b>D.</b>	λύοντι	λυούσῃ	λύοντι
<b>A.</b>	λύοντα	λύουσαν	λύον
<b>N., V.</b>	λύοντες	λύουσαι	λύοντα
<b>G.</b>	λύόντων	λυουσῶν	λύόντων
<b>D.</b>	λύουσι(ν)	λυούσαις	λύουσι(ν)
<b>A.</b>	λύοντας	λυούσας	λύοντα

**φιλέω** (see page 136):

<b>N., V.</b>	φιλῶν	φιλοῦσα	φιλοῦν
<b>G.</b>	φιλοῦντος	φιλούσης	φιλοῦντος
<b>D.</b>	φιλοῦντι	φιλούσῃ	φιλοῦντι
<b>A.</b>	φιλοῦντα	φιλοῦσαν	φιλοῦν

N., V.	φιλοῦντες	φιλοῦσαι	φιλοῦντα
G.	φιλοῦντων	φιλουσῶν	φιλοῦντων
D.	φιλοῦσι	φιλούσαις	φιλοῦσι
A.	φιλοῦντας	φιλούσας	φιλοῦντα

τιμάω (see pages 136–137):

N., V.	τιμῶν	τιμῶσα	τιμῶν
G.	τιμῶντος	τιμώσης	τιμῶντος
D.	τιμῶντι	τιμώσῃ	τιμῶντι
A.	τιμῶντα	τιμώσαν	τιμῶν
N., V.	τιμῶντες	τιμῶσαι	τιμῶντα
G.	τιμῶντων	τιμωσῶν	τιμῶντων
D.	τιμῶσι	τιμώσαις	τιμῶσι
A.	τιμῶντας	τιμώσας	τιμῶντα

δηλόω (see page 262; declined like φιλῶν above; we give only the nominative):

δηλῶν	δηλοῦσα	δηλοῦν
-------	---------	--------

**Sigmatic 1st Aorist Active Participles (see page 199)**

N., V.	λύσας	λύσασα	λύσαν
G.	λύσαντος	λύσάσης	λύσαντος
D.	λύσαντι	λύσάσῃ	λύσαντι
A.	λύσαντα	λύσασαν	λύσαν
N., V.	λύσαντες	λύσασαι	λύσαντα
G.	λύσάντων	λύσασῶν	λύσάντων
D.	λύσασι(ν)	λύσάσαις	λύσασι(ν)
A.	λύσαντας	λύσασας	λύσαντα

**Thematic 2nd Aorist Active Participles (see page 180)**

N., V.	λιπών	λιποῦσα	λιπόν
G.	λιπόντος	λιπούσης	λιπόντος
D.	λιπόντι	λιπούσῃ	λιπόντι
A.	λιπόντα	λιποῦσαν	λιπόν
N., V.	λιπόντες	λιποῦσαι	λιπόντα
G.	λιπόντων	λιπουσῶν	λιπόντων
D.	λιποῦσι(ν)	λιπούσαις	λιποῦσι(ν)
A.	λιπόντας	λιπούσας	λιπόντα

## 9. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
----------	-------------	-------------

**Regular** (see pages 234–235)

1st and 2nd Declension

ἀνδρείος	ἀνδρειότερος	ἀνδρειότατος
χαλεπός	χαλεπώτερος	χαλεπώτατος

3rd Declension

ἀληθής	ἀληθέστερος	ἀληθέστατος
σώφρων	σωφρονέστερος	σωφρονέστατος

**Irregular** (see page 235)

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν	ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον	ἄριστος, -η, -ον
κακός, -ή, -όν	κακίων, κάκιον	κάκιστος, -η, -ον
καλός, -ή, -όν	καλλίων, κάλλιον	κάλλιστος, -η, -ον
μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα	μείζων, μείζον	μέγιστος, -η, -ον
ὀλίγος, -η, -ον	ἐλάττιον, ἔλαττον	ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον
πολύς, πολλή, πολύ	πλείων/πλέον, πλείον, πλέον	πλείστος, -η, -ον

## 10. DEMONSTRATIVE ADJECTIVES

οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this* (see pages 244–245)

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. οὗτος	αὕτη	τοῦτο	οὗτοι	αὗται	ταῦτα
G. τούτου	ταύτης	τούτου	τούτων	τούτων	τούτων
D. τούτῳ	ταύτῃ	τούτῳ	τούτοις	ταύταις	τούτοις
A. τοῦτον	ταύτην	τοῦτο	τούτους	ταύτας	ταῦτα

ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that* (see page 245):

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ἐκεῖνος	ἐκείνη	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκεῖνοι	ἐκεῖναι	ἐκεῖνα
G. ἐκείνου	ἐκείνης	ἐκείνου	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων	ἐκείνων
D. ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνῃ	ἐκείνῳ	ἐκείνοις	ἐκείναις	ἐκείνοις
A. ἐκεῖνον	ἐκείνην	ἐκεῖνο	ἐκείνους	ἐκείνας	ἐκεῖνα

ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε, *this here* (see page 245):

Singular			Plural		
M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N. ὅδε	ἥδε	τόδε	οἷδε	αἷδε	τάδε
G. τοῦδε	τῆσδε	τοῦδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε	τῶνδε
D. τῷδε	τῇδε	τῷδε	τοῖσδε	ταῖσδε	τοῖσδε
A. τόνδε	τήνδε	τόδε	τούσδε	τάσδε	τάδε

11. THE ADJECTIVE αὐτός, -ή, -ό, *-self, -selves; same* (see pages 68–69)

Masculine		Feminine	Neuter
N.	αὐτός	αὐτή	αὐτό
G.	αὐτοῦ	αὐτῆς	αὐτοῦ
D.	αὐτῷ	αὐτῇ	αὐτῷ
A.	αὐτόν	αὐτήν	αὐτό
N.	αὐτοί	αὐταί	αὐτά
G.	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν	αὐτῶν
D.	αὐτοῖς	αὐταῖς	αὐτοῖς
A.	αὐτούς	αὐτάς	αὐτά

## 12. THE INTERROGATIVE ADJECTIVE (see page 108)

Singular		Plural	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. τίς	τί	τίνες	τίνα
G. τίνος	τίνος	τίνων	τίνων
D. τίνι	τίνι	τίσι(ν)	τίσι(ν)
A. τίνα	τί	τίνας	τίνα

## 13. THE INDEFINITE ADJECTIVE (see page 109)

Singular		Plural	
M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N. τις	τι	τινές	τινά
G. τινός	τινός	τινῶν	τινῶν
D. τινί	τινί	τισί(ν)	τισί(ν)
A. τινά	τι	τινάς	τινά

## 14. NUMERICAL ADJECTIVES (see pages 128 and 263–264)

## Cardinals

1	εἷς, μία, ἓν	11	ἑνδεκα
2	δύο	12	δώδεκα
3	τρεις, τρία	13	τρεις (τρία) καὶ δέκα or τρεισκαίδεκα
4	τέτταρες, τέτταρα	14	τέτταρες (τέτταρα) καὶ δέκα
5	πέντε	15	πεντεκαίδεκα
6	ἕξ	16	ἑκκαίδεκα
7	ἑπτά	17	ἑπτακαίδεκα
8	ὀκτώ	18	ὀκτωκαίδεκα
9	ἐννέα	19	ἐννεακαίδεκα
10	δέκα	20	εἴκοσι(ν)

	21	εἷς καὶ εἴκοσι(ν)		
	100	ἐκατόν		
	1,000	χίλιοι, -αι, -α		
	10,000	μύριοι, -αι, -α		
<b>M.</b>	<b>F.</b>	<b>N.</b>		
<b>N.</b> εἷς	μία	ἓν		
<b>G.</b> ἐνός	μιᾶς	ἐνός		
<b>D.</b> ἐνί	μιᾷ	ἐνί		
<b>A.</b> ἓνα	μίαν	ἓν		
<b>M. F. N.</b>	<b>M. F.</b>	<b>N.</b>	<b>M. F.</b>	<b>N.</b>
<b>N.</b> δύο	τρεις	τρία	τέτταρες	τέτταρα
<b>G.</b> δυοῖν	τριῶν	τριῶν	τεττάρων	τεττάρων
<b>D.</b> δυοῖν	τρισί(ν)	τρισί(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)	τέτταρσι(ν)
<b>A.</b> δύο	τρεις	τρία	τέτταρας	τέτταρα

**Ordinals**

1st	πρῶτος, -η, -ον	9th	ἔνατος, -η, -ον
2nd	δεύτερος, -α, -ον	10th	δέκατος, -η, -ον
3rd	τρίτος, -η, -ον	11th	ἐνδέκατος, -η, -ον
4th	τέταρτος, -η, -ον	12th	δωδέκατος, -η, -ον
5th	πέμπτος, -η, -ον	20th	εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν
6th	ἕκτος, -η, -ον	100th	ἐκατοστός, -ή, -όν
7th	ἑβδομος, -η, -ον	1,000th	χιλιοστός, -ή, -όν
8th	ὀγδοος, -η, -ον	10,000th	μυριοστός, -ή, -όν

## 15. PERSONAL PRONOUNS (see pages 64–65)

**1st Person Singular**

N.	ἐγώ	I
G.	ἐμοῦ μου	of me
D.	ἐμοί μοι	to or for me
A.	ἐμέ με	me

**1st Person Plural**

ἡμεῖς	we
ἡμῶν	of us
ἡμῖν	to or for us
ἡμᾶς	us

**2nd Person Singular**

N.	σύ	you
G.	σοῦ σου	of you
D.	σοί σοι	to or for you
A.	σέ σε	you

**2nd Person Plural**

ὑμεῖς	you
ὑμῶν	of you
ὑμῖν	to or for you
ὑμᾶς	you



## 3rd Person

Masculine		Feminine	Neuter
G.	αὐτοῦ <i>of him or it</i>	αὐτῆς <i>of her or it</i>	αὐτοῦ <i>of it</i>
D.	αὐτῷ <i>to or for him or it</i>	αὐτῇ <i>to or for her or it</i>	αὐτῷ <i>to it</i>
A.	αὐτόν <i>him or it</i>	αὐτήν <i>her or it</i>	αὐτό <i>it</i>
G.	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>	αὐτῶν <i>of them</i>
D.	αὐτοῖς <i>to or for them</i>	αὐταῖς <i>to or for them</i>	αὐτοῖς <i>to or for them</i>
A.	αὐτούς <i>them</i>	αὐτάς <i>them</i>	αὐτά <i>them</i>

## 16. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS (see pages 100–101)

1st Person		2nd Person	
Masculine	Feminine	Masculine	Feminine
G.	ἐμαυτοῦ	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτῆς
D.	ἐμαυτῷ	σεαυτῷ	σεαυτῇ
A.	ἐμαυτόν	σεαυτόν	σεαυτήν
G.	ἑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν	ὑμῶν αὐτῶν
D.	ἑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐτοῖς	ὑμῖν αὐταῖς
A.	ἑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτούς	ὑμᾶς αὐτάς
3rd Person		Neuter	
Masculine	Feminine		
G.	ἐαυτοῦ	ἐαυτοῦ	
D.	ἐαυτῷ	ἐαυτῷ	
A.	ἐαυτόν	ἐαυτό	
G.	ἐαυτῶν	ἐαυτῶν	
D.	ἐαυτοῖς	ἐαυτοῖς	
A.	ἐαυτούς	ἐαυτά	

## 17. THE RECIPROCAL PRONOUN

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter
G.	ἀλλήλων	ἀλλήλων
D.	ἀλλήλοις	ἀλλήλοις
A.	ἀλλήλους	ἄλληλα

## 18. POSSESSIVES (see pages 66–67)

## Possessive Adjectives

	Singular	Plural
1st Person	ἐμός, -ή, -όν, <i>my, mine</i>	ἡμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, <i>our, ours</i>
2nd Person	σός, -ή, -όν, <i>your, yours</i>	ὑμέτερος, -ᾱ, -ον, <i>your, yours</i>

**Possessive Pronouns** (used for 3rd person possessives)**Singular**

<b>Masculine</b>	αὐτοῦ	<i>of him, his; of it, its</i>
<b>Feminine</b>	αὐτῆς	<i>of her, her; of it, its</i>
<b>Neuter</b>	αὐτοῦ	<i>of it, its</i>

**Plural**

<b>M., F., N.</b>	αὐτῶν	<i>of them, their</i>
-------------------	-------	-----------------------

## 19. THE INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN

For the interrogative pronoun τίς, τι, *who? what?* see page 108. Its forms are the same as those of the interrogative adjective (see above) and are not repeated here; it always has an acute accent on the first syllable.

## 20. THE INDEFINITE PRONOUN

For the indefinite pronoun τις, τι, *someone; something; anyone; anything*, see page 109. This pronoun is enclitic, and it has the same forms as the indefinite adjective (see above).

## 21. THE RELATIVE PRONOUN (see pages 224–225)

Singular			Plural			
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	ὅς	ἥ	ὅ	οἱ	αἱ	ἃ
G.	οὗ	ἥς	οὗ	ῶν	ῶν	ῶν
D.	ᾧ	ᾧ	ᾧ	οἷς	αἷς	οἷς
A.	ὃν	ἣν	ὃ	οὓς	ἃς	ἃ

## 22. FORMATION OF ADVERBS (see page 50)

Adverbs regularly have the same spelling and accent as the genitive plural of the corresponding adjective, but with the final ν changed to ς:

- Adjective καλός (genitive plural, καλῶν) > adverb καλῶς
- Adjective σώφρων (genitive plural, σωφρόνων) > adverb σωφρόνως
- Adjective ἀληθής (genitive plural, ἀληθῶν) > adverb ἀληθῶς
- Adjective ταχύς (genitive plural, ταχέων) > adverb ταχέως

## 23. COMPARISON OF ADVERBS (see page 236)

For the comparative adverb the neuter singular of the comparative adjective is used, and for the superlative the neuter plural of the superlative adjective:

**Regular**

ἀνδρείως	ἀνδρειότερον	ἀνδρειότατα
χαλεπῶς	χαλεπώτερον	χαλεπώτατα
ἀληθῶς	ἀληθέστερον	ἀληθέστατα
σωφρόνως	σωφρονέστερον	σωφρονέστατα

**Irregular**

εὖ	ἄμεινον	ἄριστα
κακῶς	κάκϊον	κάκιστα
πῶλυ	πλέον	πλείστα
μᾶλα	μᾶλλον	μάλιστα

**Verbs**

## 24. VERBS WITH THEMATIC PRESENTS, SIGMATIC FUTURES, AND SIGMATIC 1ST AORISTS

λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, *I loosen, loose; middle, I ransom*

PRESENT ACTIVE (THEMATIC) (see pages 38 and 136)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
λύω		λύειν	λύων,
λύεις	λύε		λύουσα,
λύει			λύον,
λύομεν			gen., λύοντος, etc.
λύετε	λύετε		
λύουσι(ν)			

PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (THEMATIC) (see pages 77 and 115)

λύομαι		λύεσθαι	λύόμενος, -η, -ον
λύει or λύῃ	λύου		
λύεται			
λύόμεθα			
λύεσθε	λύεσθε		
λύονται			

IMPERFECT ACTIVE (THEMATIC) (see page 214)

ἔλυον  
ἔλυες  
ἔλυε(ν)  
ἐλύομεν  
ἐλύετε  
ἔλυον

## IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (THEMATIC) (see page 214)

**Indicative**

ἐλϋόμην  
 ἐλϋου  
 ἐλϋετο  
 ἐλϋόμεθα  
 ἐλϋεσθε  
 ἐλϋοντο

## SIGMATIC FUTURE ACTIVE (THEMATIC) (see page 158; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 158–159)

**Indicative**

λύσω  
 λύσεις  
 λύσει  
 λύσομεν  
 λύσετε  
 λύσουσι(ν)

**Infinitive**

λύσειν

**Participle**

λύσων,  
 λύσουσα,  
 λύσον,  
 gen., λύσοντος, etc.

## SIGMATIC FUTURE MIDDLE (THEMATIC) (see page 158; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 158–159)

λύσομαι  
 λύσει or λύση  
 λύσεται  
 λυσόμεθα  
 λύσεσθε  
 λύσονται

λύσεσθαι

λυσόμενος, -η, -ον

## SIGMATIC 1ST AORIST ACTIVE (see page 196; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 197–198)

**Indicative**

ἔλυσα  
 ἔλυσας  
 ἔλυσε(ν)  
 ἐλύσαμεν  
 ἐλύσατε  
 ἔλυσαν

**Imperative**

λύσον  
  
 λύσατε

**Infinitive**

λύσαι

**Participle**

λύσᾱς,  
 λύσᾱσα,  
 λύσαν,  
 gen., λύσαντος, etc.

## SIGMATIC 1ST AORIST MIDDLE (see page 197; for consonant-stem verbs, see pages 197–198)

ἐλυσάμην  
 ἐλύσω  
 ἐλύσατο

λύσαι,

λύσασθαι,

λυσάμενος, -η, -ον

ἐλυσάμεθα	
ἐλύσασθε	λύσασθε
ἐλύσαντο	

## 25. VERBS WITH ATHEMATIC PRESENTS AND IMPERFECTS (see pages 276–277)

δύναμαι, δυνήσομαι, *I am able; I can*

## PRESENT

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δύναμαι		δύνασθαι	δυνάμενος, -η, -ον
δύνασαι	δύνασο		
δύναται			
δυνάμεθα			
δύνασθε	δύνασθε		
δύνανται			

## IMPERFECT

ἐδυνάμην  
 ἐδύνασο or ἐδύνω  
 ἐδύνατο  
 ἐδυνάμεθα  
 ἐδύνασθε  
 ἐδύναντο

κείμει, κείσομαι, *I lie*

## PRESENT

κείμει		κείσθαι	κείμενος, -η, -ον
κείσαι	κείσο		
κείται			
κείμεθα			
κείσθε	κείσθε		
κείνται			

## IMPERFECT

ἐκείμεν  
 ἔκεισο  
 ἔκειτο  
 ἐκείμεθα  
 ἔκεισθε  
 ἔκειντο

ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, *I understand; I know*

## PRESENT

ἐπίσταμαι		ἐπίστασθαι	ἐπιστάμενος, -η, -ον
ἐπίστασαι	ἐπίτασο		
ἐπίσταται			

ἐπιστάμεθα	
ἐπίστασθε	ἐπίστασθε
ἐπίστανται	

**IMPERFECT****Indicative**

ἠπιστάμην
ἠπίστασο or ἠπίστω
ἠπίστατο
ἠπιστάμεθα
ἠπίστασθε
ἠπίσταντο

**26. CONTRACT VERBS**φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, *I love***PRESENT ACTIVE** (see pages 39 and 136)

<b>Indicative</b>	<b>Imperative</b>	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Participle</b>
φιλῶ		φιλεῖν	φιλῶν,
φιλεῖς	φίλει		φιλοῦσα,
φιλεῖ			φιλοῦν,
φιλοῦμεν			gen., φιλοῦντος, etc.
φιλεῖτε	φιλεῖτε		
φιλοῦσι(ν)			

**PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE** (see pages 77 and 115–116)

φιλοῦμαι		φιλεῖσθαι	φιλούμενος, η, -ον
φιλεῖ or φιλῇ	φιλοῦ		
φιλεῖται			
φιλούμεθα			
φιλεῖσθε	φιλεῖσθε		
φιλοῦνται			

**IMPERFECT ACTIVE** (see page 214)

ἐφίλουν
ἐφίλεις
ἐφίλει
ἐφιλοῦμεν
ἐφιλεῖτε
ἐφίλουν

**IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE** (see page 214)

ἐφιλούμην
ἐφιλοῦ
ἐφιλεῖτο

ἐφιλούμεθα  
ἐφιλείσθε  
ἐφιλοῦντο

**FUTURE ACTIVE** (see page 159)

φιλήσω, etc., like λύσω above

**FUTURE MIDDLE** (see page 159)

φιλήσομαι, etc., like λύσομαι above

**AORIST ACTIVE** (see page 198)

ἐφίλησα, etc., like ἔλυσα above

**AORIST MIDDLE** (see page 198)

ἐφιλησάμην, etc., like ἐλύσάμην above

τιμάω, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα, *I honor*

**PRESENT ACTIVE** (see pages 56 and 136–137)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
τιμῶ		τιμᾶν	τιμῶν,
τιμᾷς	τίμᾱ		τιμῶσα,
τιμᾷ			τιμῶν,
τιμῶμεν			gen., τιμῶντος, etc.
τιμᾶτε	τιμᾶτε		
τιμῶσι(ν)			

**PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE** (see pages 77–78 and 116)

τιμῶμαι		τιμᾶσθαι	τιμώμενος, -η, -ον
τιμᾷ	τιμῶ		
τιμᾶται			
τιμώμεθα			
τιμᾶσθε	τιμᾶσθε		
τιμῶνται			

**IMPERFECT ACTIVE** (see page 214)

ἐτίμων  
ἐτίμας  
ἐτίμα  
ἐτιμῶμεν  
ἐτιμᾶτε  
ἐτίμων

## IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 214)

ἐτιμώμην  
ἐτιμῶ  
ἐτιμᾶτο  
ἐτιμώμεθα  
ἐτιμᾶσθε  
ἐτιμῶντο

## FUTURE ACTIVE (see page 159)

τιμήσω, etc., like λύσω above

## FUTURE MIDDLE (see page 159)

τιμήσομαι, etc., like λύσομαι above

## AORIST ACTIVE (see page 198)

ἐτίμησα, etc., like ἔλυσα above

## AORIST MIDDLE (see page 198)

ἐτιμησάμην, etc., like ἐλύσάμην above

δηλῶ, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, *I show*

## PRESENT ACTIVE (see page 262)

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
δηλῶ		δηλοῦν	δηλῶν,
δηλοῖς	δήλου		δηλοῦσα,
δηλοῖ			δηλοῦν,
δηλοῦμεν			gen., δηλοῦντος, etc.
δηλοῦτε	δηλοῦτε		
δηλοῦσι(ν)			

## PRESENT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 262)

δηλοῦμαι		δηλοῦσθαι	δηλούμενος, -η, -ον
δηλοῖ	δηλοῦ		
δηλοῦται			
δηλούμεθα			
δηλοῦσθε	δηλοῦσθε		
δηλοῦνται			

## IMPERFECT ACTIVE (see page 262)

ἐδήλουν  
ἐδήλους  
ἐδήλου



ἐδηλοῦμεν  
ἐδηλοῦτε  
ἐδήλουν

# IMPERFECT MIDDLE/PASSIVE (see page 262)

## Indicative

ἐδηλούμην  
ἐέδηλοῦ  
ἐδηλοῦτο  
ἐδηλούμεθα  
ἐδηλοῦσθε  
ἐδηλοῦντο

# FUTURE ACTIVE (see page 262)

δηλώσω, etc., like λύσω above

# FUTURE MIDDLE (see page 262)

δηλώσομαι, etc., like λύσομαι above

# AORIST ACTIVE (see page 262)

ἐδήλωσα, etc., like ἔλυσα above

# AORIST MIDDLE (see page 262)

ἐδηλωσάμην, etc., like ἐλύσάμην above

## 27. ASIGMATIC CONTRACT FUTURE OF VERBS IN -ίζω (see page 159)

κομίζω, <sup>κομιῶ</sup>καμῶ, ἐκόμισα, *I bring; I take; middle, I get for myself, acquire*

### FUTURE ACTIVE

#### Indicative

κομιῶ  
κομιεῖς  
κομιεῖ  
κομιοῦμεν  
κομιεῖτε  
κομιοῦσι(ν)

#### Infinitive

κομιεῖν

#### Participle

κομιῶν,  
κομιοῦσα,  
κομιοῦν,  
gen., κομιοῦντος, etc.

### FUTURE MIDDLE

κομιοῦμαι  
κομιεῖ σι κομιῇ  
κομιεῖται

κομιεῖσθαι κομιούμενος, -η, -ον

κομιούμεθα  
κομείσθε  
κομοῦνται

28. ASIGMATIC CONTRACT FUTURE OF VERBS WITH LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS (see pages 166–167)

μένω, μενῶ, ἔμεινα, intransitive, *I stay* (in one place); *I wait*; transitive, *I wait for*

FUTURE ACTIVE

**Indicative**

μενῶ  
μενεῖς  
μενεῖ  
μενοῦμεν  
μενεῖτε  
μενοῦσι(ν)

**Infinitive**

μενεῖν

**Participle**

μενῶν,  
μενούσα,  
μενούν,  
gen., μενούντος, etc.

κάμνω, καμοῦμαι, ἔκαμον, *I am sick*; *I am tired*

FUTURE MIDDLE

καμοῦμαι  
καμεί or καμῆ  
καμκεῖται  
καμούμεθα  
καμείσθε  
καμοῦνται

καμείσθαι καμούμενος, -η, -ον

29. ASIGMATIC 1ST AORIST OF VERBS WITH LIQUID AND NASAL STEMS (see page 207)

αἴρω, ἄρῶ, ἦρα, *I lift*; with reflexive pronoun, *I get up*

AORIST ACTIVE

**Indicative**

ἦρα  
ἦρας  
ἦρε(ν)  
ἦραμεν  
ἦρατε  
ἦραν

**Imperative**

ἄρον  
  
  
ἄρατε

**Infinitive**

ἄραι

**Participle**

ἄρᾱς,  
ἄρᾱσα,  
ἄραν,  
gen., ἄραντος, etc.

AORIST MIDDLE

ἠράμην  
ἦρω  
ἦρατο

ἄραι

ἄρασθαι

ἠράμενος, -η, -ον

ἤράμεθα	
ἤρασθε	ἄρασθε
ἤραντο	

## 30. THEMATIC 2ND AORISTS (see pages 177–178)

λείπω, λείψω, ἔλιπον, *I leave*

## AORIST ACTIVE

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔλιπον		λιπεῖν	λιπών,
ἔλιπες	λίπε		λιποῦσα,
ἔλιπε(ν)			λιπόν,
ἐλίπομεν			gen., λιπόντος, etc.
ἐλίπετε	λίπετε		
ἔλιπον			

γίγνομαι, γενήσομαι, ἐγενόμην, *I become*

## AORIST MIDDLE

ἐγενόμην		γενέσθαι	γενόμενος, -η, -ον
ἐγένου	γενοῦ		
ἐγένετο			
ἐγενόμεθα			
ἐγένεσθε	γένεσθε		
ἐγένοντο			

## 31. ATHEMATIC 2ND AORISTS (see pages 252–253)

βαίνω, βήσομαι, ἔβην, *I step, walk, go*

## ACTIVE

ἔβην		βῆναι	βάς,
ἔβης	βῆθι		βάσα,
ἔβη			βάν,
ἔβημεν			gen., βάντος, etc.
ἔβητε	βῆτε		
ἔβησαν			

γιγνώσκω, γνώσομαι, ἔγνων, *I come to know; I perceive; I learn*

## ACTIVE

ἔγνων		γῶναι	γνούς,
ἔγνως	γῶθι		γνοῦσα,
ἔγνω			γνόν,
ἔγνωνμεν			gen., γνόντος, etc.
ἔγνωτε	γῶτε		
ἔγνωσαν			

**ἔστην, *I stood; I stopped***

**ACTIVE**

Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔστην		στήναι	στάς,
ἔστης	στήθι		στάσα,
ἔστη			σάν,
ἔστημεν			gen., σάντος, etc.
ἔστητε	στήτε		
ἔστησαν			

**32. THE IRREGULAR VERB εἰμί, *I am***

**εἰμί, ἔσομαι, *I am***

**PRESENT (see pages 39 and 136)**

εἰμί		εἶναι	ὢν,
εἶ	ἴσθι		οὔσα,
ἐστί(ν)			ὄν,
ἐσμέν			gen., ὄντος, etc.
ἐστέ	ἔστε		
εἰσί(ν)			

**IMPERFECT (see page 215)**

ἦ or ἦν  
ἦσθα  
ἦν  
ἦμεν  
ἦτε  
ἦσαν

**FUTURE (see page 160)**

Indicative	Infinitive	Participle
ἔσομαι	ἔσεσθαι	ἐσόμενος, -η, -ον
ἔσει or ἔση		
ἔσται		
ἐσόμεθα		
ἔσεσθε		
ἔσονται		

33. THE IRREGULAR VERB εἶμι, *I will go*

FUTURE/PRESENT (see pages 168–169)

Future	Present	Usually Present	Usually Present
Indicative	Imperative	Infinitive	Participle
εἶμι		ἵέναι	ἰών,
εἶ	ἴθι		ιοῦσα,
εἴσι(ν)			ἰόν,
ἴμεν			gen., ἰόντος, etc.
ἴτε	ἴτε		
ἰᾶσι(ν)			

IMPERFECT (see page 215)

ἦα	or	ἦειν
ἦεισθα	or	ἦεις
ἦειν	or	ἦει
ἦμεν		
ἦτε		
ἦσαν	or	ἦεσαν

# INDEX OF LANGUAGE AND GRAMMAR

---

This listing of topics will help you find information on language and grammar in this book.

## **ACCENTS, 284–286**

- accent shifting**, ἄνθρωπος, οἶκος, and σπεύδει/σπεύδε 32–33
- accents on thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives**, 26, 189–190
- acute**, xv, 9, 32
- augmented compound verbs**, accenting of, 189, 209
- circumflex**, xiii, xv, 9, 20, 21, 32, 33, 41, 47, 49, 57, 78, 98, 126, 167, 284, 285
- contract verbs**, accents on, 57, 78, 116
- enclitics**, 285, *and see* **ENCLITICS**
- grave**, xv, 9
- infinitives of compound verbs retain the accent of the uncompounded infinitive**, 254
- participles of compound verbs retain the accent of the uncompounded participle**, 254
- persistent accent of nouns and adjectives**, 20–21, 32, 41, 49, 98, 99
- pitch accent**, xv, xvi
- proclitics**, 286, *and see* **PROCLITICS**
- recessive accent of finite verbs in the indicative and imperative**, 21, 56–57
  - irregular accent of certain singular thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives, 189–190
  - irregular accent of thematic 2nd aorist middle imperative, γενοῦ, 177–178
  - recessive accent of compound indicatives and imperatives, 254
- stress accent**, xv

## **ADJECTIVES: *see also* “Forms,” pages 291–298**

- cardinal adjectives**, 128–129, 263–264
- comparison of adjectives**: positive, comparative, and superlative, 234–235
  - comparatives declined like σῶφρον, σῶφρον (107–108) with some alternative forms to be presented later
  - comparatives, uses of, 236–238
    - with ἤ, *than*, 236–237
    - with genitive of comparison, 237
  - irregular comparison of adjectives, 235
  - special meanings of comparatives (= *rather/somewhat*) and superlatives (= *very*), 237–238
  - strengthened comparisons with dative of degree of difference, 237
  - superlatives, uses of, 237–238
    - with partitive genitive, 237
    - with ὥς, 237
- compound adjectives**: no separate feminine forms, 37
- declensions**
  - 1st and 2nd declension adjectives, καλός, -ή, -όν, and ῥάδιος, -ᾱ, -ον 48–49

so also:

- comparative adjectives, regular, 234–235
- middle participles, e.g., 115–116
- ordinal adjectives, 128, 263
- possessive adjectives, 66
- superlative adjectives, 234–235

1st and 3rd declension adjective *πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν* 126

- attributive position, 126
- predicate position, 126
- substantive use of, 126
- without definite article, 126

1st and 3rd declension adjectives with 3rd declension stems in *-υ-* and *-ε-*,  
*ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ* 227–228

3rd declension adjective, *σώφρων, σῶφρον* 107–108

3rd declension adjective with stem in *-εσ-*, *ἀληθής -ές* 227  
rules for contraction, 226

**demonstrative adjectives**, *οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο; ἐκεῖνος, ἐκείνη, ἐκεῖνο; and ὅδε, ἥδε, τόδε* 244–245

predicate position, 222, 232, 242, 245

**indefinite adjective**, *τις, τι* 109, 246

**intensive adjective**, *αὐτός, -ή, -ό* 68–69

- intensive in predicate position, 68–69
- meaning *same* in attributive position, 69

**intervocalic sigma in adjectives**, loss of, 227

**irregular declension**, adjectives of, *μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα* and *πολύς, πολλή, πολύ* 49

**interrogative adjective**, *τίς, τί* 108

**ordinal adjectives**, 128–129, 263

**possessive adjectives**, 66

**substantive use of adjectives**, 96

substantive use of *πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν*, 126

**ADVERBS:** *see also* “Forms,” pages 300–301

**comparison of adverbs:** positive, comparative, superlative, 236

comparatives, uses of, 236–238

with *ἢ, than*, 236–237

with genitive of comparison, 237

special meanings of comparatives (= *rather/somewhat*) and superlatives (= *very*), 237–238

strengthened comparisons with dative of degree of difference, 237

superlatives, uses of, 237–238

with partitive genitive, 237

with *ὥς*, 237

**formation of positive adverbs**, 50

**indefinite adverbs**, 246

list, 246

**interrogative adverbs**, 246

list, 246

**use of ὥς as an adverb**, 170, 237, 264

**AGREEMENT**

**agreement of definite articles, adjectives, and nouns**, 5

**agreement of subject and verb**: neuter plural subjects take singular verbs, 64

**ALPHABET**

**alphabet**, xii

**digamma**, 146

**ALPHA-PRIVATIVE**, 206**ARTICLE**: *see* **DEFINITE ARTICLE****ASPECT**

**present participles**, 115

*see* **VERBS**, aspect

**ASPIRATION**

**aspiration**, xii, xiii

**rough breathing**, xiii

**smooth breathing**, xiii

**CASES, Uses of the**, 20**accusative**

after certain prepositions, 20

for direct object, 5, 20

of duration of time, 128–129

**dative**

after certain prepositions, 20, 88

of degree of difference, 237

of indirect object, 88

of means or instrument, 88, 269

of respect, 88

of the possessor, 88

of time when, 88, 128–129

with certain verbs, 88

list of verbs that take the dative case, 88

with comparatives and superlatives, 237

**genitive**

after certain prepositions, 20, 147, with ὑπό to express the agent with a passive verb, 267, 269

of comparison, 237

of possession, 147

of the whole, 147 and 237

of time within which, 129, 147

partitive genitive, 147

with superlatives, 237

with certain verbs, 147



**nominative**

for subject and complement, 5, 6, 20

**vocative**

for direct address, 20

**CONJUNCTIONS****use of ὥς and ὥστε as conjunctions, 264****CONSONANTS****aspirated consonants, xiv****consonant sounds, classifications of, xv****double consonants, xiv****-ντ- lost when followed by σ and the preceding vowel lengthens, πάντ-ς > πᾶς 126, ὄντ-σι(ν) > οὔσι(ν) 135–136, λύσαντ-ς > λύσᾱς 199****paired consonants, xiv****sigma, intervocalic, loss of, 76, 159, 166, 226–227, 254, 276****stops**

all stop consonants lost in word-final position, 99, 125, 126, 135

labial stops (π, β, φ) + σ &gt; ψ, xv, κλώψ 107, sigmatic future 158, sigmatic 1st aorist 197

dental stops (τ, δ, θ) and ζ lost before σ, xv, παῖς 99, sigmatic future 159, sigmatic 1st aorist 197–198

velar stops (κ, γ, χ) + σ &gt; ξ, xv, φύλαξ, αἵξ 98, sigmatic future 158, sigmatic 1st aorist 197

**CONTRACTIONS****nouns and adjectives, 226–227, 254, 263****verbs, see VERBS, contract verbs****DECLENSIONS****1st, 2nd, and 3rd declensions, 40, 97****see NOUNS and ADJECTIVES****DEFINITE ARTICLE: see also "Forms," page 287****as case indicator, 50****at the beginning of a clause to indicate a change of subject, 58, 148****definite article, 2, 21, 50****definite article, use of the, 6**

sometimes translated into English with a possessive adjective, 6

sometimes used in Greek where not used in English, 6

**plus adjective to form a noun phrase, 148****plus adverb, prepositional phrase, or genitive to form a noun phrase, 148****plus neuter of an adjective to form an abstract noun, 148****plus participle to form a noun phrase = attributive use of participle, 115, 148****DIPHTHONGS, xiii, and see VOWELS**

**ENCLITICS, 285**

- accenting of, 9, 285**
- accenting of more than one consecutive enclitic, 246**
- forms of the verb εἰμί, 4, 26, 39, 57**
- list, 285**
- personal pronouns, some forms enclitic, 65**
- proclitic + enclitic, accenting of, 14, 286**
- τις, τι, 94, 109, 246**

**ELISION, 58–59****FUNCTIONS OF WORDS IN SENTENCES**

**Functions: S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, 6**

**IMPERATIVES: see VERBS****INFINITIVES: see VERBS****MOVABLE ν, 4****MOODS: see VERBS, moods****NOUNS: see also "Forms," pages 287–291**

- accenting of, see ACCENTS**
- agreement, 5**
- cases, 5**
- declensions: 1st, 2nd, and 3rd, 40, 97**
  - 1st or alpha declension nouns, feminine, forms of, ἡ κρίνη, ἡ ὑδρία, ἡ μέλιττα, and ἡ μάχαιρα 40–42
  - 1st or alpha declension nouns, masculine, forms of, ὁ δεσπότης, ὁ Ξανθιάς, ὁ πολίτης, and ὁ νεανίας 47–48
  - 2nd or omicron declension nouns, masculine and neuter, forms of, ὁ ἀγρός and τὸ δένδρον 31
  - 2nd or omicron declension nouns, feminine, ἡ ὁδός and ἡ νῆσος 48
  - 2nd or omicron declension nouns, masculine, contract, ὁ νοῦς 263
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: dental stems, ὁ παῖς and τὸ ὄνομα 99
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: labial stems, ὁ κλῶψ 107
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: liquid stems, ὁ ῥήτωρ 107
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: nasal stems, ὁ χειμών 106–107
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: stems in -εσ-, τὸ τεῖχος and ἡ τριήρης 226–227, ὁ Θεμιστοκλῆς 254
    - rules for contraction, 226
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: stems in -ντ-, ὁ γέρων 145
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: stems in -ρ-, ὁ πατήρ, ἡ μήτηρ, ἡ θυγάτηρ, and ὁ ἀνὴρ 124–125
  - 3rd declension consonant stem nouns: velar stems, ὁ φύλαξ and ὁ αἶξ 98
  - 3rd declension nouns with stems ending in a vowel, ἡ πόλις and τὸ ἄστυ, 145
    - quantitative metathesis, 145

3rd declension nouns with stems ending in a diphthong or vowel, ὁ βασιλεύς, ἡ  
ναῦς, and ὁ βοῦς 146

3rd declension nouns, irregular, ἡ γυνή and ἡ χεὶρ 125

**endings**, 5

**gender**

grammatical gender, 4–5

natural gender, 4

**intervocalic sigma in nouns**, loss of, 226–227, 254

**stems**, 5

## NUMBERS

*see* **ADJECTIVES**, cardinal adjectives, and **ADJECTIVES**, ordinal adjectives

**PARTICIPLES**: *see* **VERBS**

## POSSESSIVES

**possessive adjectives**, 66

attributive and predicate positions of, 66

**possessive genitives**, 67

predicate position of certain possessive genitives, 67

**POSTPOSITIVES**, οὖν 2, γάρ 2, δέ 2, μέν . . . δέ 12, placement of another postpositive  
with μέν 22, φησί(ν) 24, τε 24, φᾶσί(ν) 84, γε 84, δή 84

## PREPOSITIONS

**prepositions**, 19, 89

agent with passive verbs = ὑπό + gen., 267, 269

place where, place from which, place to which, 89

list, 89

**PROCLITICS**, 14, 286

**accents**, 14, 286

**list**, 286

**PRONOUNS**: *see also* “Forms,” pages 298–300

**indefinite pronoun**, τις, τι 109, 246

**interrogative pronoun**, τίς, τί 108, 246

**personal pronouns**, 64–65

declensions, 65

some forms enclitic, 65

subject pronouns expressed where emphatic, 14

**reflexive pronouns**, 100–101

**relative pronouns**, 224–225

declension, 224

**PRONUNCIATION****practice**, xviii–xix**pronunciation of vowels, consonants, diphthongs, and digraphs**, xii–xiv, xvi**restored pronunciation**, xvi**PUNCTUATION****comma, dot above the line, period, question mark**, xv**QUANTITATIVE METATHESIS**, 145**QUESTIONS****interrogative pronouns, adjectives, and adverbs**, 246**questions**, review of, 171**RELATIVE CLAUSES****antecedent of relative pronoun**, 225**relative clauses**, 224–225**relative pronouns**, 224–225

declension, 224

**rules governing gender, number, and case of relative pronouns**, 225**suffix -περ**, 222, 225**SYLLABLES**, 284**TRANSLITERATION**, xvi**VERBS**: *see also* “Forms,” pages 301–311**accents**, *see* **ACCENTS****aspect**

aorist aspect

gnomic aorist, 178–179

imperatives, aspect of aorist, 179

indicatives, aspect of aorist, 178–179

infinitives, aspect of aorist, 179

ingressive aorist, 216

participles, aspect of aorist, 179–180

aspect: progressive, aorist, perfective, 155

imperfect or past progressive tense, aspect of, 216–217

attempt to do something in past time: conative imperfect, 216–217

beginning of an action in past time: inchoative imperfect, 216

continuous or incomplete action in past time, 216

present participles, aspect of, 115, 135

**athematic presents and imperfects**, verbs with, δύναιμι, κεῖμαι, and ἐπίσταμαι  
276–277**augment**, 154, 155, 176, 180, 190–191, 196

augment of compound verbs, 209

irregular augment, 191, 198, 215

- syllabic augment, 190
- temporal augment, 190–191
- compound verbs**, 19
  - accent of augmented compound verbs, 189, 209
  - compounds of εἰμί, 160
  - compounds of ἔρχομαι, 169
  - elision, 59
- contract verbs**
  - accenting of, 57, 78, 116, 136–137
  - contract verbs in -α-, τιμάω
    - present, 56–57, 77–78
    - imperfect, 214
    - future, 159
    - aorist, 198
    - participles, active 136–137, middle 116
    - rules for contraction, 56
  - contract verbs in -ε-, φιλέω
    - present, 39, 77
    - imperfect, 214
    - future, 159
    - aorist, 198
    - participles, active 136, middle 115–116
    - rules for contraction, 39
      - exception: πλέω, present 74, imperfect 214
  - contract verbs in -ο-, δηλόω
    - present, 262
    - imperfect, 262
    - future, 159, 262
    - aorist, 198, 262
    - participles, active and middle, 262
    - rules for contraction, 262
- deponent verbs**, 78, 115
  - list, 78
- endings**, 4, 13
  - primary and secondary, 177
  - secondary endings on imperfect, 213
- finite forms**, 56
- imperative mood**, 15, *and see* moods, imperative
- impersonal verbs**, 170
  - δεῖ 10β, δοκεῖ 11α, 11β, ἔξεστι(ν) 10β
  - with infinitive as subject, 170
  - with accusative and infinitive as subject, 170
- indicative mood**, 13, *and see* moods, indicative
- infinitives**
  - definition of, 27
  - accenting of
    - sigmatic and asigmatic 1st aorist active, next to the last syllable,
      - κελεῦσαι 197, ἀποκτεῖναι 207
    - sigmatic 1st aorist middle, λῶσασθαι 197
    - thematic 2nd aorist active, circumflex on last syllable, λιπεῖν 177–178

**VERBS (continued)**

thematic 2nd aorist middle, on next to the last syllable, γενέσθαι 177–178

aspect, 179

subject of impersonal verbs, 170

**intervocalic sigma in verbs**, loss of, 76, 159, 166, 276

**intransitive**, 6, 75, 86–87

**irregular verbs**

εἰμί, 39, future 160, imperfect 215

εἶμι, 168–169, imperfect 215

**moods**

indicative

use of, 13

accent, recessive, 56–57

aorist, 176, 190–191

aspect, aorist 178–179, imperfective 216–217

imperative

use of, 15

accent

recessive accent, 56–57

irregular accent of certain singular thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives, 189–190

irregular accent of thematic 2nd aorist middle imperative, γενοῦ, 177–178

**negative commands**, 15

**number**: singular, plural, dual, 4

**participles**, *see also* “Forms,” pages 291–292, 294–295

accent: persistent

N.B. thematic 2nd aorist participles, λιπών, λιποῦσα, λιπόν, 177–178, 180

aspect

aorist, 179–180

present, 115, 135

attributive use of participles, 115, 148

circumstantial use of participles, 114

future participle with or without ὥς to express purpose, 170

present or progressive: active voice, 135–137

endings, 135

forms, 136–137

suffixes, -οντ-, -ουσ- 135

present or progressive: middle voice, 114–116

endings, 115

forms, 115–116

suffix, -μεν- 115

sigmatic 1st aorist: active and middle voices, 199

forms, 199

supplementary use of participles, 115

thematic 2nd aorist: active and middle voices, 180

forms, 180

**passive voice**, 75, 267, 269

**past progressive tense**, 213–215, *and see* tenses, imperfect or past progressive tense

- past tense:** the aorist, 176, *and see* **tenses**, aorist  
**person**, 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4  
**preview of new verb forms**, 154–155  
**principal parts**, 155  
**prohibitions**, 15  
**review of verb forms**, 152–153  
**stems**, 4, 155  
**tenses**, present, imperfect, future, aorist, perfect, and pluperfect, 154  
     **present tense**  
         regular verbs, λύω 38, λύομαι 77, all forms 152  
         contract verbs, τιμῶ 56, τιμῶμαι 77–78, all forms 153, φιλῶ 39, φιλοῦμαι 77,  
             all forms 152, πλέω 74, δηλῶ 262, δηλοῦμαι 262  
         irregular verbs, εἰμί 39, all forms 153, (εἶμι; present and future forms 169)  
     **imperfect or past progressive tense**, 213–215  
         regular verbs, ἔλθον and ἐλθόμεν 214  
         contract verbs, ἐφίλουν, ἐφιλούμεν, ἐτίμων, ἐτιμώμεν, and ἔπλεον 214,  
             ἐδήλουν and ἐδηλούμεν 262  
         irregular verbs, from εἰμί, ἦ or ἦν, and from εἶμι, ἦα or ἦεν 215  
     **future tense**, 158–160  
         asigmatic contract future of verbs in -ίζω, 159  
         asigmatic contract future of verbs with liquid and nasal stems, μενῶ 166–  
             167, 207  
             list, 167  
         deponent futures, 159–160  
             list, 159–160  
             with sigmatic 1st aorists, 198  
         future of εἰμί, 160  
         sigmatic future, λύσω and λύσομαι 158–159  
             of verbs with labial, velar, and dental stems, 158–159  
         sigmatic future of contract verbs, 159  
     **aorist**  
         asigmatic 1st aorist of verbs with liquid and nasal stems, ἦρα and ἠράμεν  
             207  
             list, 207  
         athematic 2nd aorists, ἔβην, ἔγων, and ἔστην 252–253  
         sigmatic 1st aorist, 176, ἔλυσα and ἐλυσάμεν 196–198  
             accents, 197  
             of contract verbs, 198  
             of verbs with deponent futures, list, 198  
             of verbs with labial, velar, and dental stems, 197–198  
             irregular sigmatic 1st aorists, 208  
                 list, 208  
         thematic 2nd aorist, 176, ἔλιπον and ἐγενόμην 177–178  
             accents, 178  
             accents on thematic 2nd aorist active imperatives, 189–190  
             common verbs with thematic 2nd aorists, 180–181  
                 list, 181  
             thematic 2nd aorists from unrelated stems, 189  
                 list, 189  
**thematic vowels**, 76, 115, 154, 155, 177, 178, 213

**VERBS (continued)****transitive**, 6, 75, 86–87**voice**: active, middle, passive, 75–76, 155, 267, 269

active voice, middle voice, meaning of verbs in, 86–87

middle, forms of verbs in, see **tenses**, present, imperfect, future, aorist

middle voice: reflexive with accusative sense, 75, 86–87

middle voice: reflexive with dative sense, 75–76, 87

middle voice: reflexive with causative sense, 76

passive voice: 267, 269

with ὑπό + gen. for agent, 267, 269

with dative of instrument or means, 269

**VOICE**: see **VERBS**, voice**VOWELS****alphabet**, xii**digraphs**, xiii, xiv**diphthongs**, xiii**iota subscript**, xiii, xiv**long diphthongs**, xiv**long vowel digraphs**, xiv**long vowels**, xiii**macrons**, xiii**short vowels**, xiii**WORD ORDER****attributive and predicate position**, 66

attributive position, 66

of αὐτός, -ή, -ό meaning *same*, 69

of genitive of possession, 147

of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 126

of possessive adjectives, 66

participles in attributive position, 115, 148

predicate position, 66

of αὐτός, -ή, -ό as intensive adjective, 68–69

of demonstrative adjectives, 222, 232, 242, 245

of genitive of possession of personal pronouns (αὐτοῦ, αὐτῆς, αὐτῶν), 147

of πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, 126

of possessive adjectives, 66

of certain possessive genitives, 67

**WORDS IN SENTENCES****functions**: S, C, DO, LV, TV, IV, 6**WRITING GREEK LETTERS**, xvi–xviii



# GREEK TO ENGLISH VOCABULARY

We do not give principal parts of contract verbs except when they are irregular.

For the principal parts of most compound verbs, see the corresponding simple verb.

We give the principal parts of other regular and irregular verbs, with their stems when their stems are different from what is seen in the present indicative form and with their aorist participles.

For compound verbs we give in brackets the prefix and the simple verb when elision or elision and assimilation take place, e.g. ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἵκνέομαι].

Note: 5β means that the vocabulary item appears in the vocabulary list in the second half of Chapter 5, i.e., in 5β. A notation such as 14Gr 2 indicates that Chapter 14, Grammar 2.

Sample principal parts of contract verbs:

φιλέω, φιλήσω, ἐφίλησα, φιλήσας  
τιμάω, τιμήσω, ἐτίμησα, τιμήσας  
δηλόω, δηλώσω, ἐδήλωσα, δηλώσας

## A

ἀγαθός, -ή, -όν, *good* (5β and 14 Gr 2)

ἀμείνων, ἄμεινον, *better* (14 Gr 2)

ἄριστος, -η, -ον, *best; very good; noble* (9β and 14 Gr 2)

Ἀγαμέμνων, Ἀγαμέμνωνος, ὁ, *Agamemnon* (7α)

ἄγαν, adv., *very much; too much, in excess*

ἀγγέλλω, [ἀγγελε-] ἀγγεῖλω, [ἄγγειλ-] ἡγγεῖλα, ἀγγεῖλās, *I announce; I tell* (14β)

ἄγγελος, ἀγγέλου, ὁ, *messenger* (4α)

ἄγε; pl., ἄγετε, *come on!* (9α)

ἀγείρω, [ἀγερε-] ἀγερῶ, [ἀγειρ-] ἡγειρα, ἀγείρās, *I gather*

ἀγορά, ἀγορās, ἡ, *agora, city center, market place* (8β)

ἄγριος, -α, -ον, *savage; wild; fierce* (5β)

ἀγρίως, adv., *savagely; wildly; fiercely*

ἀγρός, ἀγροῦ, ὁ, *field* (1α and 3 Gr 2)  
ἐν τοῖς ἀγροῖς, *in the country*

ἄγω, ἄξω, [ἄγαγ-] ἡγαγον, ἀγαγών, *I lead; I take* (2β)

ἄγε; pl., ἄγετε, *come on!* (9α)

ἀγών, ἀγῶνος, ὁ, *struggle; contest* (15β)

ἀδελφός, ἀδελφοῦ, ὁ, ὦ ἄδελφε, *brother* (11α)

ἀδύνατος, -ον, *impossible*

ἀεί, adv., *always* (4β)

ἀθάνατοι, ἀθανάτων, οἱ, *the Immortals*

Ἀθήναζε, adv., *to Athens* (12β)

Ἀθῆναι, Ἀθηῶν, αἱ, *Athens* (6α)

Ἀθήνησι, *at Athens*

ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις, *in Athens* (1α)

ἡ Ἀθηνᾶ, τῆς Ἀθηνᾶς, τῇ Ἀθηνᾷ, τὴν Ἀθηνᾶν, ᾧ Ἀθηνᾶ, *Athena* (daughter of Zeus) (9α)

Ἀθηναῖος, -α, -ον, *Athenian* (1α)

Ἀθηναῖοι, Ἀθηναίων, οἱ, *the Athenians*

Ἀθήνησι, *at Athens*

Αἰγαῖος πόντος, Αἰγαίου πόντου, ὁ, *Aegean Sea*

Αἰγεύς, Αἰγέως, ὁ, *Aegeus* (king of Athens) (6α)

Αἰγύπτιοι, Αἰγυπτίων, οἱ, *Egyptians*

Αἴγυπτος, Αἰγύπτου, ἡ, *Egypt*

αἶξ, αἰγός, ὁ or ἡ, *goat* (7α and 7 Gr 3α)

Αἴολος, Αἰόλου, ὁ, *Aeolus*

αἱρέω, αἱρήσω, [ἐλ-] εἶλον (irregular augment), ἐλὼν, *I take* (7α, 11β)  
 αἶρω, [ἄρε-] ἄρῶ, [ἄρ-] ἦρα, ἄρᾱς, *I lift*; with reflexive pronoun, *I get up* (1β, 10β, and 12 Gr 3)  
 Αἰσχύλος, Αἰσχύλου ὁ, *Aeschylus* (15β)  
 αἰτέω, *I ask*; *I ask for* (11α)  
 αἵτιος, -α, -ον, *responsible (for); to blame* (3α)  
 Αἵτναϊον ὄρος, Αἵτναίου ὄρους, τό, *Mount Etna* (16β)  
 ἀκίνητος, -ον, *motionless, unmoved*  
 ἀκούω, ἀκούσομαι, ἤκουσα, ἀκούσας, *intransitive, I listen*; *transitive + gen. of person, acc. of thing, I listen to; I hear* (4α)  
 Ἀκρόπολις, Ἀκροπόλεως, ἡ, *the Acropolis (the citadel of Athens)* (8β)  
 ἄκρος, -α, -ον, *top (of)* (5α)  
 ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος, *the top of the mountain/hill* (5α)  
 ἀκτή, ἀκτῆς, ἡ, *promontory*  
 ἀληθής, ἀληθές, *true* (13β, 13 Gr 4, and 14 Gr 1)  
 ἀληθῶς, *adv., truly* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀληθέστερον, *adv., more truly* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀληθέστατα, *adv., most truly* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀληθῆ, ἀληθῶν, τὰ, *the truth* (13β)  
 ἀλλά, *conj., but* (1α)  
 ἀλλ' ἀντοπώλης, ἀλλ' ἀντοπώλου, ὁ, *sausage-seller*  
 ἀλλήλων, *of one another* (13α)  
 ἄλλος, -η, -ο, *other, another* (4β)  
 ἅμα, *adv., together, at the same time* (13β)  
 ἅμα, *prep. + dat., together with*  
 ἅμαξα, ἀμάξης, ἡ, *wagon*  
 ἀμείνων, ἀμεινον, *better* (14 Gr 2)  
 ἄμεινον, *adv., better* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀμύνω, [ἀμυνε-] ἀμυνῶ, [ἀμυν-] ἡμῶνα, ἀμύνᾱς, *active, transitive, I ward off X (acc.) from Y (dat.); middle,*

*transitive, I ward off X (acc.); I defend myself against X (acc.)* (13β)  
 ἀνά, *prep. + acc., up* (5α)  
 ἀναβαίνω, *I go up, get up; + ἐπί + acc., I climb, go up onto* (8β)  
 ἀναβλέπω, *I look up*  
 ἀναγκάζω, ἀναγκάσω, ἡνάγκασα, ἀναγκάσας, *I compel* (15α)  
 ἀνάστηθι, *stand up!*  
 ἀναχωρέω, *I retreat, withdraw* (14β)  
 ἀνδρείος, -α, -ον, *brave* (3β, and 14 Gr 1)  
 ἀνδρείως, *adv., bravely* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀνδρείοτερον, *adv., more bravely* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἀνδρειότατα, *adv., most bravely* (14 Gr 3)  
 ἄνεμος, ἀνέμου, ὁ, *wind* (13α)  
 ἀνέστην, ἀναστᾶς, *I stood up* (15β)  
 ἀνὴρ, ἀνδρός, ὁ, *man; husband* (4α and 8 Gr 2)  
 ἄνθρωπος, ἀνθρώπου, ὁ, *man; human being; person* (1α and 3 Gr 3)  
 ἀντέχω [= ἀντι- + ἔχω], *imperfect, ἀντίχων (irregular augment), ἀνθέξω (irregular), [σχ-] ἀντέσχον, ἀντισχών + dat., I resist* (14β)  
 ἄντρον, ἄντρου, τό, *cave*  
 ἄξιος, -α, -ον, *worthy; + gen., worthy of* (16β)  
 ἅπας, ἅπασα, ἅπαν, *all; every; whole* (14β)  
 ἄπειμι [= ἀπο- + εἰμί], *I am away* (5α)  
 ἀπέκτονε (perfect of ἀποκτείνω), *he/she has killed*  
 ἀπελαύνω [= ἀπο- + ἐλαύνω], *I drive away*  
 ἀπέρχομαι [= ἀπο- + ἔρχομαι], *I go away* (6α)  
 ἀπό, *prep. + gen., from* (4α)  
 ἀπο-, *as a prefix in compound verbs, away* (4α)  
 ἀποβαίνω, *I go away*  
 ἀποθνήσκω, [θανε-] ἀποθανοῦμαι, [θαν-] ἀπέθανον, ἀποθανών, *I die* (11α)

ἀποκρίνομαι, [κρινε-] ἀπο-  
κρινοῦμαι, [κρίν-] ἀπεκρινάμην,  
ἀποκρινάμενος, *I answer* (7β)  
ἀποκτείνω, [κτενε-] ἀποκτενῶ,  
[κτειν-] ἀπέκτεινα, ἀποκτείνῃς, *I kill*  
(6α, 10β)  
ἀπόλλυμι [= ἀπο- + ἄλλυμι], [όλε-]  
ἀπολῶ, ἀπόλεσα, ἀπολέσῃς, *I de-*  
*stroy; I lose*  
'Απόλλων, 'Απόλλωνος, ὁ, *Apollo*  
ἀποπέμπω, *I send away*  
ἀποπλέω, *I sail away*  
ἀπορέω, *I am at a loss* (12α)  
ἀπορίᾳ, ἀπορίᾳς, ἡ, *perplexity; diffi-*  
*culty; the state of being at a loss* (15α)  
ἀποφεύγω, *I flee (away), escape* (5β and  
10β)  
ἄρα, particle; introduces a question (4α  
and 10 Gr 9)  
"Αργος, "Αργου, ὁ, *Argus* (name of a  
dog; cf. ἀργός, -ή, -όν, *shining; swift*)  
(5α)  
ἄργος [= ἀεργός = ἄ-, *not* + ἐργ-, *work*],  
-όν, *not working, idle, lazy* (2α and 4α)  
ἀργύριον, ἀργυρίου, τό, *silver;*  
*money* (11β)  
ἀρετή, ἀρετῆς, ἡ, *excellence; virtue;*  
*courage* (15β)  
'Αριάδνη, -ης, ἡ, *Ariadne* (daughter  
of King Minos) (6α)  
ἀριστερά, ἀριστερᾶς, ἡ, *left hand*  
(9α)  
ἄριστος, -η, -ον, *best; very good;*  
*noble* (9β)  
ἄριστα, adv., *best* (14 Gr 3)  
ἄροτος, ἀρότου, ὁ, *plowing*  
ἄροτρον, ἀρότρου, τό, *plow* (2α)  
ἀρόω, *I plow*  
'Αρτεμισιον, 'Αρτεμισίου, τό,  
*Artemisium* (14β)  
ἀρχή, ἀρχῆς, ἡ, *beginning* (13β)  
'Ασίᾳ, 'Ασιᾶς, ἡ, *Asia* (i.e., Asia Minor)  
(15β)  
'Ασκληπιός, 'Ασκληπιοῦ, ὁ, *Ascle-*  
*pious* (the god of healing) (11β)  
ἄσκος, ἀσκοῦ, ὁ, *bag*

ἄστυ, ἄστεως, τό, *city* (8α and 9 Gr 3)  
ἄτη, ἄτης, ἡ, *ruin*  
ἀτραπός, ἀτραποῦ, ἡ, *path*  
'Αττική, 'Αττικῆς, ἡ, *Attica* (14β)  
αὖθις, adv., *again* (3α)  
αὖλιον, αὐλίου, τό, *sheepfold*  
αὐξάνω, [αὐξε-] αὐξήσω, ηὔξησα,  
αὐξήσῃς, *I increase* (9β)  
αὔριον, adv., *tomorrow* (11α)  
αὐτήν, *her; it*  
αὐτό, *it* (3)  
αὐτόν, *him* (1β); *it* (3α)  
αὐτός, -ή, -ό, intensive adjective, *-self,*  
*-selves; adjective, same; pronoun in*  
*nom., gen., dat., and acc. cases, him, her,*  
*it, them* (5β, 5 Gr 6, and 5 Gr 9)  
αὐτουργός, αὐτουργοῦ, ὁ, *farmer*  
(1α)  
ἀφικνέομαι [= ἀπο- + ἰκνέομαι], [ἰκ-]  
ἀφίξομαι, ἀφικόμην, ἀφικόμενος, *I*  
*arrive; + εἰς + acc., I arrive at* (6α and  
10α)  
'Αχαιοί 'Αχαιῶν, οἱ, *Achaean;*  
*Greeks* (7α)

## B

βαδίζω, [βαδιε-] βαδιοῦμαι, [βαδι-]  
ἐβάδισα, βαδίσῃς, *I walk; I go* (1β)  
βαίνω, [βη-] βήσομαι, ἔβην, βᾶς, *I*  
*step; I walk; I go* (2β, 15 Gr 1)  
βάλλω, [βαλε-] βαλῶ, [βαλ-] ἔβαλον,  
βαλῶν, *I throw; I put; I pelt; I hit, strike*  
(7β)  
βάρβαρος, βαρβάρου, ὁ, *barbarian*  
(13β)  
βασιλεύς, βασιλέως, ὁ, *king* (6α and  
9 Gr 4)  
βασιλεύω, βασιλεύσω,  
ἐβασίλευσα, βασιλεύσῃς, *I rule* (6α)  
βέβαιος, -α, -ον, *firm, steady* (13α)  
βίος, βίου, ὁ, *life* (16β)  
βλάπτω, [βλαβ-] βλάψω, ἔβλαψα,  
βλάψῃς, *I harm, hurt* (15β)  
βλέπω, βλέψομαι, ἔβλεψα, βλέψῃς,  
usually intransitive, *I look; I see* (2β)

βοάω, βοήσομαι, ἐβόησα, βοήσας, *I shout* (5α)

βοή, βοῆς, ἡ, *shout* (10β)

βοηθέω, *I come to the rescue*; + dat., *I come to X's aid*; *I come to rescue/aid X* (6α)

Βοιωτία, Βοιωτίας, ἡ, *Boeotia* (14β)

βότρες, βοτρύων, οἱ, *grapes*

βούλομαι, [βουλε-] βουλήσομαι, *no aorist middle*, + infin., *I want*; *I wish* (6α)

βοῦς, βοός, ὁ, *ox* (2β and 9 Gr 4)

βραδύς, βραδεῖα, βραδύ, *slow* (13 Gr 5)

βραδέως, *adv.*, *slowly* (2β)

Βρόμιος, Βρομίου, ὁ, *the Thunderer* (a name of Dionysus) (9β)

βωμός, βωμοῦ, ὁ, *altar* (8β)

## Γ

γάρ, *postpositive conj.*, *for* (1α)

γε, *postpositive enclitic*; *restrictive*, *at least*; *intensive*, *indeed* (6β)

γέγονε (*perfect of γίνομαι*), *he/she/it has become*; *he/she/it is*

γεραιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *old* (12α)

γέρων, γέροντος, *old* (9β and 9 Gr 2)

γέρων, γέροντος, ὁ, *old man* (9β and 9 Gr 2)

γέφυρα, γεφύρας, ἡ, *bridge*

γεωργέω, *I farm*

γῆ, γῆς, ἡ, *land*; *earth*; *ground* (4β)

κατὰ γῆν, *by land* (14α)

ποῦ γῆς; *where* (in the world)? (16α)

γίγας, γίγαντος, ὁ, *giant*

γίνομαι, [γενε-] γενήσομαι, [γεν-] ἐγενόμην, γενόμενος, *I become* (6α, 10α, 11 Gr 2, and 11 Gr 4)

γίνεται, *he/she/it becomes*; *it happens* (6α)

γινώσκω, [γνώ-] γνώσομαι, ἔγνω, γνούς, *I come to know*; *I perceive*; *I learn* (5β, 15 Gr 1)

γνώθι, *know!*

γράφω, γράψω, ἔγραψα, γράψας, *I write* (14β)

γυνή, γυναικός, ἡ, *woman*; *wife* (4α and 8 Gr 3)

## Δ

δακρύω, δακρύσω, ἐδάκρυσα, δακρύσας, *I cry*, *weep* (11α)

δέ, *postpositive particle*, *and*, *but* (1α)

δεῖ, *impersonal* + acc. and infin., *it is necessary* (10β and 10 Gr 8)

δεῖ ἡμᾶς παρεῖναι, *we must be there* (10β and 10 Gr 8)

δεινός, -ή, -όν, *terrible* (6α)

δεινά, *terrible things*

δεινῶς, *adv.*, *terribly*, *frightfully*

δειπνέω, *I eat*

δεῖπνον, δείπνου, τό, *dinner* (3β); *meal*

δέκα, *indeclinable*, *ten* (8 Gr 5)

δέκατος, -η, -ον, *tenth* (8 Gr 5)

Δελφοί, Δελφῶν, οἱ, *Delphi*

δένδρον, δένδρου, τό, *tree* (2β and 3 Gr 2)

δεξιός, -ᾶ, -όν, *right* (i.e., on the right hand) (15β)

δεξιὰ, δεξιᾶς, ἡ, *right hand* (9α)

δεσμωτήριο, δεσμωτηρίου, τό, *prison*

δεσπότης, δεσπότου, ὁ, ὁ δέσποτα, *master* (2β and 4 Gr 4)

δεῦρο, *adv.*, *here*, i.e., *hither* (3α)

δεύτερος, -ᾶ, -ον, *second* (8 Gr 5)

δέχομαι, δέξομαι, ἐδεξάμην, δεξάμενος, *I receive* (6α)

δή, *postpositive particle*; *emphasizes that what is said is obvious or true*, *indeed*, *in fact* (6β)

δηλώω, *I show* (15β and 15 Gr 3)

δῆμος, δήμου, ὁ, *the people* (9β)

διά, *prep.* + gen., *through* (9α)

δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* (5α)

διαβαίνω, *I cross*

διαβιβάζειν (aorist infin. of διαβιβάζω), *to take across*, *transport*

διακόσιοι, -αι, -α, 200 (15 Gr 5 and 16α)

διαλέγομαι, διαλέξομαι, δι-

- ελεξάμην, διαλεξάμενος + dat., *I talk to, converse with* (8α)
- διαφθείρω, [φθερε-] διαφθερῶ, [φθειρ-] διέφθαιρα, διαφθεірᾶς, *I destroy* (15α)
- διέρχομαι [= δια- + ἔρχομαι], *I come through; I go through* (14β)
- Δικαιόπολις, Δικαιοπόλιδος, ὁ, τῷ Δικαιοπόλιδι, τὸν Δικαιοπόλιν, ὦ Δικαιοπόλι, *Dicaeopolis* (1α)
- δικαίος, -ᾱ, -ον, *just*
- δι' ὀλίγου, *soon* (5α)
- Διονύσια, Διονυσίω, τὰ, *the festival of Dionysus* (4α)
- τὰ Διονύσια ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι, *I celebrate the festival of Dionysus* (4α)
- Διόνυσος, Διονύσου, ὁ, *Dionysus* (8α)
- διώκω, διώξομαι, ἐδίωξα, διώξας, *I pursue, chase* (5α)
- δοκεῖ, impersonal, [δοκ-] δόξει, ἔδοξε(ν), δόξαν, *it seems (good); + dat., e.g., δοκεῖ μοι, it seems good to me; I think it best* (11α); + dat. and infin., e.g., δοκεῖ αὐτοῖς σπεύδειν, *it seems good to them to hurry, they decide to hurry* (11β)
- ὥς δοκεῖ, *as it seems* (13β)
- δοῦλος, δούλου, ὁ, *slave* (2α)
- δουλόω, *I enslave*
- δραμεῖν (aorist infin. of τρέχω), *to run*
- δραχμή, δραχμῆς, ἡ, *drachma* (a silver coin worth six obols) (11β)
- δύναμαι, imperfect, ἐδυνάμην, δυνήσομαι, aorist middle not used in Attic Greek, *I am able; I can* (16α and 16 Gr 2)
- δυνατός, -ή, -όν, *possible* (3α)
- δύο, *two* (7β and 8 Gr 5)
- δώδεκα, indeclinable, *twelve* (15 Gr 5)
- δωδέκατος, -η, -ον, *twelfth* (15 Gr 5)
- Ε
- ἐαυτοῦ: *see ἐμαυτοῦ*
- ἐβδομήκοντα, indeclinable, *seventy* (15 Gr 5)
- ἔβδομος, -η, -ον, *seventh* (8 Gr 5)
- ἐβην: *see βαίνω*
- ἐγγυάω, *I give/hand over X as security (for a loan); I borrow (money)*
- ἐγγός, adv., *nearly*
- ἐγγός, prep. + gen., *near* (13β)
- ἐγείρω, [ἐγερε-] ἐγερῶ, [ἐγειρ-] ἡγείρα, ἐγειρᾶς, active, transitive, *I wake X up; middle and passive, intransitive, I wake up* (8β)
- ἐγνων: *see γινώσκω*
- ἐγώ, ἐμοῦ or μου, *I* (2α and 5 Gr 6)
- ἐγωγε, strengthened form of ἐγώ, *I indeed*
- ἔδραμον: *see τρέχω*
- ἐθέλω, [ἐθελε-] ἐθελήσω, ἠθέλησα, ἐθελήσας + infin., *I am willing; I wish* (4α)
- εἰ, conj., *if; in indirect questions, whether* (11α)
- εἰ μή, *unless*
- εἴ πως, *if somehow, if perhaps*
- εἴκοσι(ν), indeclinable, *twenty* (15 Gr 5)
- εἰκοστός, -ή, -όν, *twentieth* (15 Gr 5)
- εἴκω, εἴξω, εἴξα (no augment), εἴξας + dat., *I yield* (15α)
- εἰκῶν, εἰκόνης, ἡ, *statue*
- εἶλον: *see αἰρέω*
- εἰμί [ἐσ-], imperfect, ἦ or ἦν, ἔσομαι, *I am* (1α, 4 Gr 1, 10 Gr 1, and 13 Gr 1)
- εἶμι [εἰ-/ἴ-], imperfect, ἦα or ἦεν, *I will go* (10 Gr 6 and 13 Gr 1)
- εἶπον (aorist of λέγω), *I/they said; I/they told; I/they spoke*
- εἰπέ; pl., εἴπετε, *tell!*
- εἰπεῖν, *to say; to tell*
- εἰπὼν, *having said, after saying, sometimes, saying; having told, after telling, sometimes, telling*
- εἰρήνη, εἰρήνης, ἡ, *peace* (16β)
- εἰς, prep. + acc., *into; to; at* (2β); *for*
- εἰς καιρόν, *at just the right time*
- εἷς, μία, ἓν, *one* (7β and 8 Gr 5)

εἰς καὶ εἴκοσι(ν), *twenty-one* (15 Gr 5)  
 εἰσάγω, *I lead in; I take in* (2β and 11α)  
 εἰσβαίνω, *I go in; I come in*  
 εἰσβάντες, *having embarked*  
 εἰς ναὺν εἰσβαίνω, *I go on board ship, embark*  
 εἰσελαύνω, *I drive in*  
 εἰσέρχομαι, *I come in(to); I go in(to)*  
 εἴσελθε; pl., εἰσέλθετε (aorist imperative of εἰσέρχομαι), *come in(to)!*  
 εἰσελθὼν, *having come in(to), after coming in(to), sometimes, coming in(to)*  
 εἰσιέναι (used as present infinitive of εἰσέρχομαι), *to go in(to)*  
 εἴσιθι; pl., εἴσιτε (used as present imperative of εἰσέρχομαι), *go in(to)!*  
 εισηγέομαι + dat., *I lead in*  
 εἰς καιρὸν, *at just the right time*  
 εἰσκαλέω, *I call in(to)*  
 εἴσοδος, εἰσόδου, ἡ, *entrance*  
 εἰσπλέω, *I sail in(to)*  
 εἰσφέρω, *I bring in(to)*  
 ἐκ, ἐξ, before words beginning with vowels, prep. + gen., *out of* (3α)  
 ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν, *from the rear*  
 ἑκατόν, indeclinable, *100* (15 Gr 5 and 16α)  
 ἑκατοστός, -ή, -όν, *hundredth* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἐκβαίνω, *I step out; I come out* (2α)  
 ἐκβαίνω ἐκ τῆς νεώς, *I disembark*  
 ἐκβάλλω, *I throw out*  
 ἐκεῖ, adv., *there* (6α)  
 ἐκεῖνος, ἐκεῖνη, ἐκεῖνο, *that; pl., those* (13β and 14 Gr 6)  
 ἐκεῖσε, adv., *to that place, thither* (8α)  
 ἐκκαλέω, *I call out*  
 ἐκπέμπω, *I send out*  
 ἐκπίπτω, *I fall out*  
 ἐκπλέω, *I sail out*  
 ἔκπλους, ἔκπλου, ὁ, *escape route*  
 ἔκτοπος, -ον, *out of the way, unusual*  
 ἕκτος, -η, -ον, *sixth* (8 Gr 5)  
 ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν, *from the rear*

ἐκφέρω, *I carry out*  
 ἐκφεύγω, *I flee out, escape*  
 ἐλάττων, ἐλαττον, *smaller, pl., fewer* (14 Gr 2)  
 ἐλαύνω, [ἐλα-] ἐλῶ, ἐλῶς, ἐλᾶ, etc., ἤλασα, ἐλάσας, transitive, *I drive* (2α); intransitive, *I march*  
 ἐλεῖν (aorist infinitive of αἰρέω), *to take*  
 ἐλευθερία, ἐλευθερίας, ἡ, *freedom* (13β)  
 ἐλευθερος, -α, -ον, *free*  
 ἐλευθερώω, *I free, set free* (15β)  
 ἐλθέ; pl., ἐλθετε (aorist imperative of ἔρχομαι), *come!* (2α)  
 ἐλθεῖν (aorist infinitive of ἔρχομαι), *to come; to go*  
 ἔλκω, imperfect, ἔλκων (irregular augment), ἔλξω, [ἐλκυ-] ἐῤλκυσα (irregular augment), ἐλκούσας, *I drag*  
 Ἑλλάς, Ἑλλάδος, ἡ, *Hellas, Greece* (13β)  
 Ἑλλην, Ἑλληνος, ὁ, *Greek; pl., the Greeks* (14α)  
 Ἑλλησποντος, Ἑλλησπόντου, ὁ, *Hellespont*  
 ἐλπίζω, [ἐλπιε-] ἐλπιῶ, [ἐλπι-] ἤλπισα, ἐλπίσας, *I hope; I expect; I suppose* (14α)  
 ἐμαυτοῦ, σεαυτοῦ, ἑαυτοῦ, *of myself, of yourself, of him-, her-, itself* (7α and 7 Gr 4)  
 ἐμός, -ή, -όν, *my, mine* (5 Gr 8)  
 ἐμπίπτω [= ἐν- + πίπτω] + dat., *I fall into; I fall upon; I attack* (15β)  
 ἐμποδίζω [ἐν- + ποῦς, ποδός, ὁ, *foot*], [ἐμποδιε-] ἐμποδιῶ, no aorist, *I obstruct*  
 ἔμπορος, ἐπόρου, ὁ, *merchant* (12β)  
 ἐν, prep. + dat., *in; on* (3β); *among*  
 ἐν μέσῳ + gen., *between* (14α)  
 ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have in mind; I intend* (4α)  
 ἐν ταῖς Ἀθήναις, *in Athens* (1α)  
 ἐν . . . τούτῳ, *meanwhile* (8β)  
 ἐν ᾧ, *while* (8α)  
 ἐνακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *900* (15 Gr 5)

- ἐναντίος, -α, -ον, *opposite*  
 ἔνατος, -η, -ον, *ninth* (8 Gr 5)  
 ἑνδεκα, indeclinable, *eleven* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἑνδέκατος, -η, -ον, *eleventh* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἐνδον, adv., *inside*  
 ἔνειμι, *I am in*  
 ἐνενήκοντα, indeclinable, *ninety* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἐνθάδε, adv., *here; hither; there; thither* (7β)  
 ἐννέα, indeclinable, *nine* (8 Gr 5)  
 ἔνοικος, ἐνοίκου, ὁ, *inhabitant* (16α)  
 ἐνόπλιος, -ον, *in armor, fully armed*  
 ἐνταῦθα, adv., *then; here; hither; there; thither* (5β)  
 ἐνταῦθα δὴ, *at that very moment, then* (5β)  
 ἐξ: see ἐκ  
 ἕξ, indeclinable, *six* (8 Gr 5)  
 ἐξάγω, *I lead out*  
 ἐξαιρέω, *I take out*  
 ἐξακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *600* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἐξελαύνω, *I drive out*  
 ἐξελθών (aorist participle of ἐξέρχομαι), *coming out, having come out*  
 ἐξέρχομαι + ἐκ + gen., *I come out of; I go out of* (6β)  
 ἔξεστι(ν), impersonal + dat. and infin., *it is allowed/possible* (10β and 10 Gr 8)  
 ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν μένειν, *we are allowed to stay, we may stay; we can stay* (10β and 10 Gr 8)  
 ἐξηγέομαι [ἐκ- + ἡγέομαι], *I relate* (12β)  
 ἐξήκοντα, *sixty* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἑορτή, ἑορτης, ἡ, *festival* (4α)  
 ἑορτὴν ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι, *I celebrate a festival* (4β)  
 ἐπαίρω [ἐπι- + αἶρω], *I lift, raise* (7α)  
 ἐπαίρω ἐμαυτόν, *I get up* (7α)  
 ἐπανέρχομαι [= ἐπι- + ἀνα- + ἔρχομαι], infin., ἐπανιέναι, *I come back, return; + εἰς or πρὸς + acc., I return to* (9α)  
 ἐπάνελθε; pl., ἐπανελέθετε (aorist imperative of ἐπανέρχομαι), *come back!*  
 ἐπανιέναι (used as present infinitive of ἐπανέρχομαι), *to come back, return* (9α)  
 ἐπεὶ, conj., *when* (3β); *since*  
 ἔπειτα, adv., *then, thereafter* (2β)  
 ἐπὶ, prep. + gen., *on; + dat., upon, on* (5β); + acc., *at; against* (5β); *onto, upon* (9α); *to*  
 Ἐπίδauρος, Ἐπιδαύρου, ἡ, *Epidaurus* (11β)  
 ἐπικείμει + dat., *I lie near, lie off* (of islands with respect to the mainland)  
 ἐπιλανθάνομαι, [λη-] ἐπιλήσομαι, [λαθ-] ἐπελαθόμεν, ἐπιλαθόμενος + gen., *I forget*  
 ἐπιπέμπω, *I send against; I send in* (14α)  
 ἐπιπλέω + dat. or + εἰς + acc., *I sail against* (15β)  
 ἐπίσταμαι, ἐπιστήσομαι, no aorist middle, *I understand; I know* (16α and 16 Gr 2)  
 ἔπομαι, imperfect, εἰκόμην (irregular augment), ἔψομαι, [σπ-] ἐσπόμην, σπόμενος + dat., *I follow* (8α)  
 ἐπτά, indeclinable, *seven* (8 Gr 5)  
 ἐπτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *700* (15 Gr 5)  
 ἐράω, imperfect, ἤρων + gen., *I love*  
 ἐργάζομαι, imperfect, ἡργαζόμεν or εἰργαζόμεν, ἐργάσομαι, ἡργασάμην or εἰργασάμην, ἐργασάμενος, *I work; I accomplish* (8α)  
 ἔργον, ἔργον, τό, *work; deed* (8α)  
 ἐρέσσω, no future, [ἐρετ-] ἤρεσα, ἐρέσας, *I row* (13α)  
 ἐρέτης, ἐρέτου, ὁ, *rower*  
 ἔρχομαι, [εἰ-/ι-] εἶμι (irregular), [ἐλθ-] ἤλθον, ἐλθών, *I come; I go* (6α, 11β, and 13 Gr 1b) For common compounds, see page 169.  
 ἐρωτάω, ἐρωτήσω, ἡρώτησα, ἐρωτήσας or [ἐρ-] ἡρόμην, ἐρόμενος, *I ask* (12β)  
 ἐσθίω, [εδ-] ἔδομαι, [φαγ-] ἔφαγον, *I eat* (9α)

ἑσπέρᾱ, ἑσπέρᾱς, ἡ, *evening* (8α); *the west*

ἔστην, *I stood; I stopped* (15 Gr 1)

ἐστί(ν), *he/she/it is* (1α)

ἔστω, *let it be so! all right!*

ἐταῖρος, ἐταίρου, ὁ, *comrade, companion* (6α)

ἔτι, *adv., still* (3α)

ἔτοιμος, -η, -ον, *ready* (9β)

ἔτος, ἔτους, τό, *year* (16β)

εὖ, *adv., well* (8α and 14 Gr 3)

ἄμεινον, *adv., better* (14 Gr 3)

ἄριστα, *adv., best* (14 Gr 3)

εὖ γε, *good! well done!* (8α)

Εὐβοία, Εὐβοίᾱς, ἡ, *Euboea* (14α)

εὐθύς, εὐθείᾱ, εὐθύ, *straight*

εὐθύς, *adv., straightway, immediately, at once* (10β)

εὐμενῶς, *adv., kindly*

εὐρίσκω, [εὔρε-] εὐρήσω, [εὐρ-]

ἦβρον or εὔρον, εὐρών, *I find* (7α and 10α)

Εὐρύλοχος, Εὐρυλόχου, ὁ, *Eurylochus*

Εὐρυμέδων ποταμός, Εὐρυμέδοντος ποταμοῦ, ὁ, *the Eurymedon River*

εὐχομαι, εὐξομαι, πύξάμην,

εὐξάμενος, *I pray; + dat., I pray to;*

+ acc. and infin., *I pray (that)* (8β)

ἔφη, *he/she said* (11α)

ἔφασαν, *they said*

Ἐφιάλτης, Ἐφιάλτου, ὁ, *Ephialtes* (14β)

ἔχω, *imperfect, εἶχον (irregular augment), ἔξω (irregular) (I will have) and [σχ-] σχήσω, (I will get), [σχ-] ἔσχον, σχών, I have; I hold* (4α); *middle + gen., I hold onto*

ἐν νῷ ἔχω, *I have in mind; I intend* (4α)

καλῶς ἔχω, *I am well* (11α)

πῶς ἔχεις; *How are you?* (11α)

ἕως, *conj., until* (14β)

## Z

Ζεύς, ὁ, τοῦ Διός, τῷ Δί, τὸν Δία, ὦ

Ζεῦ, *Zeus (king of the gods)* (3α and 8β)

ζητέω, *I seek, look for* (5α)

ζῷον, ζῶον, τό, *animal*

## H

ἢ, *conj., or* (12α)

ἢ . . . ἢ, *conj., either . . . or* (12α)

ἢ, *with comparatives, than* (14α)

ἡγέομαι + dat., *I lead* (6β)

ἤδη, *adv., already; now* (2β)

ἥκιστα, *adv., least*

ἥκιστα γε (the opposite of μάλιστα γε), *least of all, not at all* (16β)

ἦκω, *I have come; imperfect, ἦκον, I had come; future, ἥξω, I will have come* (5β)

ἥλιος, ἡλίου, ὁ, *sun* (1β)

ἡμεῖς, ἡμῶν, *we* (5β and 5 Gr 6)

ἡμέρᾱ, ἡμέρᾱς, ἡ, *day* (6α)

καθ' ἡμέραν, *every day*

ἡμέτερος, -α, -ον, *our* (5 Gr 8)

ἡμίονος, ἡμίονου, ὁ, *mule* (12α)

ἦν, *he/she/it was*

ἡσυχάζω, ἡσυχάσω, ἡσύχασα, ἡσυχάσας, *I keep quiet; I rest* (13α)

ἡσυχος, -ον, *quiet*

## Θ

θάλαττα, θαλάττης, ἡ, *sea* (7α)

κατὰ θάλατταν, *by sea* (11β)

θάνατος, θανάτου, ὁ, *death* (16β)

θαυμάζω, θαυμάσομαι, ἐθαύμασα, θαυμάσας, *intransitive, I am amazed; transitive, I wonder at; I admire* (5β)

θαυμάσιος, -α, -ον, *wonderful, marvelous*

θεάομαι, θεάσομαι (note that because of the ε the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η), ἐθεασάμην, θεασάμενος, *I see, watch, look at* (8α and 10α)

θέατρον, θεάτρου, τό, *theater*

Θεμιστοκλῆς, Θεμιστοκλέους, ὁ, *Themistocles* (15α and 15 Gr 2)

θεός, θεοῦ, ἡ, *goddess* (9α)

θεός, θεοῦ, ὁ, *god* (8α)



θεράπων, θεράποντος, ὁ, *attendant; servant*

Θερμοπύλαι, Θερμοπυλῶν, αἱ,  
*Thermopylae* (14α)

θεωρέω, *I watch; I see* (4α)

θηρίον, θηρίου, τό, *beast, wild beast*

Θησεύς, Θησέως, ὁ, *Theseus* (son of King Aegeus) (6α)

θόρυβος, θορύβου, ὁ, *uproar, commotion* (15β)

θυγάτηρ, θυγατρὸς, ἡ, *daughter* (4α and 8 Gr 2)

θυμός, θυμοῦ, ὁ, *spirit* (16β)

θύρᾱ, θύρας, ἡ, *door* (8α)

# I

ἰάτρεω, ἰατρεύσω, ἰάτρευσα,  
*ἰατρεῦσας, I heal*

ἰατρός, ἱατροῦ, ὁ, *doctor* (11α)

ἰδεῖν (aorist infinitive of ὁράω), *to see*

ἰδοῦ, adv., *look!* (4α)

ἰέναι (infinitive of εἶμι, used as infinitive of ἔρχομαι), *to go* (7α)

ιερεῖον, ἱερείου, τό, *sacrificial victim* (9β)

ιερεύς, ἱερέως, ὁ, *priest* (9β)

ιερόν, ἱεροῦ, τό, *temple* (9α)

ἴθι; pl., ἴτε (imperative of εἶμι, used as imperative of ἔρχομαι), *go!* (5α)

ἴθι δὴ, *go on!* (5α)

ἴλεως, acc., ἴλεων, *propitious* (9β)

ἵππος, ἵππου, ὁ, *horse*

ἴσθι; pl., ἔστε (imperative of εἶμι), *be!*

ἱστία, ἱστιῶν, τά, *sails* (13α)

ἰσχυρός, -ᾱ, -όν, *strong* (1β)

Ἴωνες, Ἰόνων, οἱ, *Ionians*

Ἰωνία, Ἰωνίας, ἡ, *Ionia*

# K

καθεύδω [= κατα- + εὕδω], imperfect, *καθεῦδον* or *καθηῦδον*, *καθευδήσω*, no aorist in Attic Greek, *I sleep* (2α)

καθ' ἡμέραν, *every day*

καθίζω [= κατα- + ἵζω], [καθιε-]

καθιῶ, [καθι-] ἐκάθισα, καθίσας,

active, transitive, *I make X sit down; I*

*set; I place; active, intransitive, I sit* (1β); middle, intransitive, *I seat myself, sit down* (8β)

καί, adv., *even; also, too* (4α)

καί, conj., *and* (1α)

καὶ δὴ καί, *and in particular; and what is more* (16α)

καὶ . . . καί, conj., *both . . . and* (5β)

καίπερ + participle, *although* (12α)

καιρός, καιροῦ, ὁ, *time; right time* (4α)

εἰς καιρόν, *just at the right time*

καίω or κάω, κᾶεις, κᾶει, κᾶομεν, κᾶετε, κᾶουσι(ν), [καυ-] καύσω, ἔκαυσα, καύσας, active, transitive, *I kindle, burn; middle, intransitive, I burn, am on fire* (9β)

κακός, -ή, -όν, *bad; evil* (12α and 14 Gr 2)

κακίων, κάκιον, *worse* (14 Gr 2)

κάκιστος, -η, -ον, *worst* (14 Gr 2)

κακῶς, adv., *badly* (14 Gr 3)

κάκιον, adv., *worse* (14 Gr 3)

κάκιστα, adv., *worst* (14 Gr 3)

κακόν τι, *something bad*

καλέω, καλῶ, ἐκάλεσα, καλέσας, *I call* (2α)

καλός, -ή, -όν, *beautiful* (1α, 3 Gr 2, 4 Gr 3, 4 Gr 6, and 14 Gr 2)

καλλίων, κάλλιον, *more beautiful* (14 Gr 2)

κάλλιστος, -η, -ον, *most beautiful; very beautiful* (9α and 14 Gr 2)

καλῶς, adv., *well* (10α)

κάλλιον, adv., *better*

κάλλιστα, adv., *best*

καλῶς ἔχω, *I am well* (11α)

κάμνω, [καμε-] καμοῦμαι, [καμ-]

ἔκαμον, καμών, *I am sick; I am tired* (9α)

κατά, prep. + acc., *down* (5α); distributive, *each; on; by* (11β)

καθ' ἡμέραν, *every day*

κατὰ γῆν, *by land* (14α)

κατὰ θάλατταν, *by sea* (11β)

κατ' εἰκός, *probably*  
καταβαίνω, *I come down; I go down*  
καταβάλλω, *I throw down; I drop*  
κατάκειμαι, *I lie down* (16α)  
καταλαμβάνω, *I overtake, catch* (16α)  
καταλείπω, *I leave behind, desert* (10β)  
καταπίπτω, *I fall down*  
κατάρρατος, -ον, *cursed*  
κατ' εἰκός, *probably*  
καττίτερος, καττίτερου, ὁ, *tin*  
κείμεναι, *imperfect, ἐκείμην, κείσομαι,*  
no aorist, *I lie* (16α and 16 Gr 2)  
κεῖνος = ἐκεῖνος  
κελεύω, κελεύσω, ἐκέλευσα,  
κελεύσας + acc. and infin., *I order, tell*  
(someone to do something) (7α)  
κεφαλή, κεφαλῆς, ἡ, *head* (10β)  
κήπος, κήπου, ὁ, *garden*  
κήρυξ, κήρυκος, ὁ, *herald* (9β)  
Κίμων, Κίμωνος, ὁ, *Cimon*  
κινδυνός, κινδύνου, ὁ, *danger* (9α)  
Κίρκη, Κίρκης, ἡ, *Circe*  
κλήρος, κλήρου, ὁ, *farm*  
Κνωσός, Κνωσοῦ, ἡ, *Knossos* (6α)  
κολάζω, κολάσω, ἐκόλασα,  
κολάσας, *I punish*  
κομίζω, [κομιε-] κομιῶ, [κομι-]  
ἐκόμισα, κομίσας, *I bring; I take* (11α)  
κόπτω, [κοπ-] κόψω, ἔκωπα, κόψας, *I*  
*strike; I knock on* (a door) (11α)  
κόρη, κόρης, ἡ, *girl*  
Κόρινθος, Κορίνθου, ἡ, *Corinth*  
(14α)  
κόσμος, κόσμου, ὁ, *good order* (15β)  
κόσμος, *in order* (15β)  
κρήνη, κρήνης, ἡ, *spring* (4α and 4  
Gr 3)  
Κρήτη, Κρήτης, ἡ, *Crete* (6α)  
κυβερνήτης, κυβερνήτου, ὁ,  
*steersman*  
Κύκλωψ, Κύκλωπος, ὁ, *Cyclops* (one-  
eyed monster) (7β)  
κύμα, κύματος, τό, *wave* (13β)  
κυμαίνω, [κυμανε-] κυμανῶ, [κυμην-]  
ἐκύμηνα, κυμήνας, *I am rough* (of the  
sea)

Κύπρος, Κύπρου, ἡ, *Cyprus*  
Κυρήνη, Κυρήνης, ἡ, *Cyrene*  
κύων, κυνός, ὁ or ἡ, *dog* (5α)  
κωμάζω, κωμάσω, ἐκώμασα,  
κωμάσας, *I revel*

## Λ

λαβύρινθος, λαβυρίνθου, ὁ,  
*labyrinth*  
λαγώς, ὁ, acc., τὸν λαγών, *hare* (5α)  
Λακεδαιμόνιοι, Λακεδαιμονίων,  
οἱ, *the Lacedaemonians, Spartans*  
(14α)  
λαμβάνω, [ληβ-] λήψομαι, [λαβ-]  
ἐλαβον, λαβών, *I take* (2β); middle  
+ gen., *I seize, take hold of* (11α)  
λαμπρός, -ά, -όν, *bright; brilliant*  
(13α)  
λαμπρῶς, adv., *brightly; brilliantly*  
λέγω, λέξω or [ἐρε-] ἐρῶ, ἔλεξα,  
λέξας or [ἐπ-] εἶπον (irregular aug-  
ment), εἰπών (augment retained), *I say;*  
*I tell; I speak* (1α, 11β)  
λείπω, λείψω, [λιπ-] ἔλιπον, λιπών, *I*  
*leave* (3β, 11α, 11 Gr 2, and 11 Gr 4)  
λέων, λέοντος, ὁ, *lion*  
Λεωνίδης, Λεωνίδου, ὁ, *Leonidas*  
(14α)  
λίθινος, -η, -ον, *of stone, made of*  
*stone*  
λίθος, λίθου, ὁ, *stone* (3α)  
λιμὴν, λιμένος, ὁ, *harbor* (12α)  
λιμός, λιμοῦ, ὁ, *hunger*  
λίνον, λίνου, τό, *thread*  
λόγος, λόγου, ὁ, *word; story* (11α);  
*reason*  
λύκος, λύκου, ὁ, *wolf* (5α)  
λῶπέω, *I grieve, vex, cause pain to X;*  
passive, *I am grieved, distressed* (16β)  
λύω, λύσω, ἔλυσα, λύσας, *I loosen,*  
*loose* (3β, 4 Gr 1, 6 Gr 3, 9 Gr 1, 10 Gr 1,  
12 Gr 1, 12 Gr 2, and 13 Gr 1)  
λύομαι, *I ransom* (6 Gr 2c, 6 Gr 3, 8  
Gr 1, 10 Gr 1, 12 Gr 1, 12 Gr 2, and  
13 Gr 1)

## M

μακρός, -ᾶ, -όν, *long; large* (1α)μάλα, adv., *very* (4α and 14 Gr 3)μᾶλλον, adv., *more; rather* (14 Gr 3)μᾶλλον ἢ, *rather than* (14 Gr 3)μάλιστα, adv., *most, most of all; very much; especially* (4β and 14 Gr 3)μάλιστά γε, *certainly, indeed* (12β)

μανθάνω, [μαθε-] μαθήσομαι, [μαθ-]

ἔμαθον, μαθών, *I learn; I understand*

(11α)

μάχαιρα, μαχαίρᾱς, ἡ, *knife* (4 Gr 3)μάχη, μάχης, ἡ, *fight; battle* (13β)

μάχομαι, [μαχε-] μαχοῦμαι,

ἐμαχεσάμην, μαχεσάμενος, *I fight* (6β); + dat., *I fight against*μέγας, μεγάλη, μέγα, *big, large; great* (3α, 4 Gr 6, and 14 Gr 2)μέγα, adv., *greatly; loudly* (12β)μείζων, μείζον, *bigger, larger; greater* (14 Gr 2)μέγιστος, -η, -ον, *biggest, largest; greatest* (7α and 14 Gr 2)μεθύω, only present and imperfect, *I am drunk*μείζων, μείζον, *bigger, larger; greater* (14 Gr 2)μέλας, μέλαινα, μέλαν, *black*μελέτη, μελέτης, ἡ, *practice*μέλιττα, μελίττης, ἡ, *bee* (4 Gr 3)Μέλιττα, Μελίττης, ἡ, [= *bee*],  
*Melissa* (daughter of Dicaeopolis and Myrrhine) (4α)

μέλλω, [μελλε-] μελήσω,

ἐμέλλησα, μελήσας + infin., *I am about (to); I am destined (to); I intend (to)* (7β)Μέμφις, Μέμφεως or Μέμφιδος or Μέμφιος, ἡ, *Memphis* (16α)μέν . . . δέ . . ., postpositive particles, *on the one hand . . . and on the other hand . . . or on the one hand . . . but on the other hand* (2α)

μένω, [μενε-] μενῶ, [μειν-] ἔμεινα,

μείνω, intransitive, *I stay* (in one place); *I wait*; transitive, *I wait for* (3α, 10β, and 10 Gr 5)μέρος, μέρος, τό, *part* (15β)μέσος, -η, -ον, *middle (of)* (9β)ἐν μέσῳ + gen., *between* (14α)μετά, prep. + gen., *with* (6α); + acc., of time or place, *after* (6α)μέτρον, μέτρον, τό, *measure; due measure, proportion*μή, adv., *not*; + imperative, *don't . . . !* (2α)εἰ μή, *unless*μηδαίς, μηδεμία, μηδέν, used instead of οὐδαίς with imperatives and infinitives, *no one, nothing; no* (13β)μηκέτι, adv., + imperative, *don't . . . any longer!* (3β); + infin., *no longer* (15α)μήτηρ, μητρός, ἡ, *mother* (4α and 8 Gr 2)μικρός, -ᾶ, -όν, *small* (1α)Μίνως, Μίνω, ὁ, *Minos* (king of Crete) (6α)Μινώταυρος, Μινωταύρου, ὁ, *Minotaur* (6α)μισθός, μισθοῦ, ὁ, *reward; pay* (11β)μνημεῖον, μνημείου, τό, *monument*μόλις, adv., *with difficulty; scarcely; reluctantly* (4α)μόνος, -η, -ον, *alone; only* (15α)μόνον, adv., *only* (15α)οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not only . . . but also* (15α)μόσχος, μόσχου, ὁ, *calf*μοχλός, μοχλοῦ, ὁ, *stake*μῦθος, μύθου, ὁ, *story* (5β)Μυκαλή, Μυκαλής, ἡ, *Mycale*μύριοι, -αι, -α, *10,000* (15 Gr 5)μῦριοι, -αι, -α, *numberless, countless* (15 Gr 5)μυρριοστός, -ή, -όν, *ten thousandth* (15 Gr 5)Μυρρίνη, Μυρρίνης, ἡ [= *myrrile*],  
*Myrrhine* (wife of Dicaeopolis) (4α)

μυχός, μυχοῦ, ὁ, *far corner*

## N

ναύαρχος, ναυάρχου, ὁ, *admiral* (15α)

ναύκληρος, ναυκλήρου, ὁ, *ship's captain* (12β)

ναυμαχέω, *I fight by sea* (15β)

ναῦς, νεώς, ἡ, *ship* (6α and 9 Gr 4)

ναύτης, ναύτου, ὁ, *sailor* (12β)

ναυτικόν, ναυτικοῦ, τό, *fleet* (13β)

νεᾶνις, νεᾶνίου, ὁ, *young man* (4 Gr 4 and 8β)

Νεῖλος, Νείλου, ὁ, *Nile*

νεκρός, νεκροῦ, ὁ, *corpse* (15β)

νήσος, νήσου, ἡ, *island* (4 Gr 5 and 6α)

νικάω, *I defeat; I win* (10α)

νίκη, νίκης, ἡ, *victory* (15β)

Νίκη, Νίκης, ἡ, *Nike* (the goddess of victory) (9α)

νοσέω, *I am sick, ill* (11β)

νοστέω, *I return home*

νοῦς, νοῦ, ὁ, *mind* (15α and 15 Gr 4)  
ἐν νῷ ἔχω + infin., *I have in mind; I intend* (4α)

νόμφη, νόμφης, ἡ, *nymph*

νῦν, adv., *now* (5β)

νύξ, νυκτός, ἡ, *night* (6α)

## Ξ

Ξανθίας, Ξανθίου, ὁ, *Xanthias* (2α and 4 Gr 4)

ξένος, ξένου, ὁ, *foreigner; stranger* (7β)

ξεῖνος = ξένος

Ξέρξης, Ξέρξου, ὁ, *Xerxes* (14α)

ξίφος, ξίφους, τό, *sword*

## O

ὁ, ἡ, τό, *the* (4 Gr 8)

ὁ δέ, *and he*

ὀβολός, ὀβολοῦ, ὁ, *obol* (a coin of slight worth) (11β)

ὀγδοήκοντα, indeclinable, *eighty* (15 Gr 5)

ὀγδοος, -η, -ον, *eighth* (8 Gr 5)

ὅδε, ἧδε (note the accent), *τόδε, this here; pl., these here* (14β and 14 Gr 5)

ὁδός, ὁδοῦ, ἡ, *road; way; journey* (4β and 4 Gr 5)

Ὀδυσσεύς, Ὀδυσσέως, ὁ, *Odysseus* (7α)

οἴκαδε, adv., *homeward, to home* (4β)

οἰκέω, *I live; I dwell* (1α)

οἰκία, οἰκίας, ἡ, *house; home; dwelling* (5α)

οἶκος, οἴκου, ὁ, *house; home; dwelling* (1α and 3 Gr 3)

κατ' οἶκον, *at home* (16α)

οἴκοι, note the accent, adv., *at home* (8α)

οἶμοι, note the accent, interjection, *alas!* (11β)

οἶνος, οἴνου, ὁ, *wine* (7β)

ὀκνέω, *I shirk*

ὀκτακόσιοι, -αι, -α, 800 (15 Gr 5)

ὀκτώ, indeclinable, *eight* (8 Gr 5)

ὀλίγος, -η, -ον, *small; pl., few* (14α and 14 Gr 2)

ἐλάττων, ἑλαττον, *smaller; pl., fewer* (14 Gr 2)

ὀλίγιστος, -η, -ον, *smallest; pl., fewest* (14 Gr 2)

ὀλκάς, ὀλκάδος, ἡ, *merchant ship*

Ὀλύμπιοι, Ὀλυμπίων, οἱ, *the Olympian gods*

ὄμιλος, ὀμίλου, ὁ, *crowd* (12α)

ὅμως, conj., *nevertheless* (8α)

ὄνομα, ὀνόματος, τό, *name* (7α and 7 Gr 3)

ὀπισθεν, adv. or prep. + gen., *behind*

ἐκ τοῦ ὀπισθεν, *from the rear*

ὀπλίτης, ὀπλίτου, ὁ, *hoplite* (heavily-armed foot soldier) (14α)

ὅπου, adv., *where* (14β)

ὀράω, imperfect, ἑώρων (double augment), [ὀπ-] ὄρομαι, [ιδ-] εἶδον (irregular augment), ἰδών, *I see* (5α, 11β)

ὀργίζομαι, [ὀργιε-] ὀργιοῦμαι, no aorist middle, *I grow angry; I am an-*

gry; + dat., *I grow angry at; I am angry at*  
 ὀρθός, -ή, -όν, *straight; right, correct* (12α)  
 ὀρμάω, active, transitive, *I set X in motion; active, intransitive, I start; I rush; middle, intransitive, I set myself in motion; I start; I rush; I hasten* (7β)  
 ὄρος, ὄρους, τό, *mountain; hill* (5α)  
 ὅς, ἥ, ὅ, relative pronoun, *who, whose, whom, which, that* (13β and 13 Gr 3)  
 ὅσπερ, ἥπερ (note the accent), ὅπερ, relative pronoun, *emphatic forms, who, whose, whom, which, that* (13β)  
 ὅτε, adv., *when* (13β)  
 ὅτι, conj., *that* (5β)  
 οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ, οὐχί, adv., *not* (1α)  
 οὐ μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καί, *not only . . . but also* (15α)  
 οὐδαμοῦ, adv., *nowhere* (16α)  
 οὐδαμῶς, adv., *in no way, no* (6β)  
 οὐδέ, conj., *and . . . not; nor; not even* (5α)  
 οὐδεὶς, οὐδεμία, οὐδέν, pronoun, *no one; nothing; adjective, no* (7α and 8 Gr 5)  
 οὐδέν, *nothing, no*  
 οὐκέτι, adv., *no longer* (3α)  
 οὖν, a connecting adverb, postpositive, *so (i.e., because of this); then (i.e., after this)* (1α)  
 οὐρανός, οὐρανοῦ, ὁ, *sky, heaven* (9β)  
 οὔτε . . . οὔτε, note the accent, conj., *neither . . . nor* (5α)  
 οὗτος, αὕτη, τοῦτο, *this; pl., these* (14α and 14 Gr 5)  
 οὕτως, adv., *before consonants, οὕτω, so, thus* (2α)  
 ὀφθαλμός, ὀφθαλμοῦ, ὁ, *eye* (7β)  
 ὀψέ, adv., *late; too late*  
 Π  
 παῖς, παιδός, ὁ or ἡ, *boy; girl; son; daughter; child* (3β and 7 Gr 3b)  
 πανηγύρις, πανηγόρεως, ἡ, *festival*

πάντα, *everything*  
 πανταχόσε, adv., *in all directions*  
 πανταχοῦ, adv., *everywhere* (15β)  
 πάππας, πάππου, ὁ, ὁ πάππα, *papa* (6α)  
 πάππος, πάππου, ὁ, *grandfather* (5α)  
 παρά, prep. + acc., *of persons only, to* (11α); *along, past*  
 πάρα = πάρεστι(v), *is near at hand*  
 παραγίγνομαι, *I arrive* (14β)  
 παραπλέω, *I sail by; I sail past; I sail along*  
 παρασκευάζω, *I prepare* (7α)  
 πάρεμι [= παρα- + εἰμί], *I am present; I am here; I am there* (2α); + dat., *I am present at*  
 παρέχω [= παρα- + ἔχω], *imperfect, παρείχον (irregular augment), παρασχῆσω (irregular), [σχ-] παρέσχον, imperative, παράσχες, participle, παρασχών, I hand over; I supply; I provide* (6β)  
 παρθένος, παρθένον, *virgin, chaste*  
 παρθένος, παρθένου, ἡ, *maiden, girl* (6α)  
 Παρθένος, Παρθένου, ἡ, *the Maiden (= the goddess Athena)* (9α)  
 Παρθενών, Παρθενῶνος, ὁ, *the Parthenon (the temple of Athena on the Acropolis in Athens)* (8β)  
 πᾶς, πᾶσα, πᾶν, *all; every; whole* (7β and 8 Gr 4)  
 πάσχω, [πενθ-] πείσομαι, [παθ-] ἔπαθον, παθών, *I suffer; I experience* (5β and 11α)  
 πατήρ, πατρός, ὁ, *father* (3β and 8 Gr 2)  
 πατρίς, πατρίδος, ἡ, *fatherland* (15β)  
 παύω, παύσω, ἔπαυσα, παύσῃς, *active, transitive, I stop X; middle, intransitive + participle, I stop doing X; + gen., I cease from* (7β)  
 παῦε, *stop!* (7β)  
 πεζός, -ή, -όν, *on foot* (15β)

**πείθω, πείσω, ἔπεισα, πείσας, I persuade** (4β)  
**πείθομαι, πείσομαι + dat., I obey** (6α)  
**Πειραιεύς, Πειραιῶς, ὁ, τῷ Πειραιεῖ, τὸν Πειραιᾶ, the Piraeus** (the port of Athens) (11β)  
**πειράω, πειράσω** (note that because of the ρ the α lengthens to ᾱ rather than η), **ἐπειράσα, πειράσας, active or middle, I try, attempt** (15β)  
**Πελοπόννησος, Πελοποννήσου, ἡ, the Peloponnesus** (14β)  
**πέμπτος, -η, -ον, fifth** (8 Gr 5)  
**πέμπω, πέμψω, ἔπεμψα, πέμψας, I send** (6α)  
**πεντακόσιοι, -αι, -α, 500** (15 Gr 5)  
**πέντε, indeclinable, five** (8 Gr 5)  
**πεντήκοντα, indeclinable, fifty** (15 Gr 5)  
**πέπλος, πέπλου, ὁ, robe; cloth** (15β)  
**περί, prep. + gen., about, concerning** (7α); + acc., **around** (7α)  
**Πέρσαι, Περσῶν, οἱ, the Persians** (14α)  
**Περσικός, -ή, -όν, Persian** (15β)  
**πεσεῖν** (aorist infinitive of πίπτω), **to fall**  
**πίνω, [πι-] πίομαι, [πι-] ἔπιον, πιών, I drink** (9α)  
**πίπτω, πεσοῦμαι** (irregular), **ἔπεσον** (irregular), **πεσών, I fall** (3α)  
**πιστεύω, πιστεύσω, ἐπίστευσα, πιστεύσας + dat., I trust, am confident (in); I believe; + ὡς or infin., I believe (that)** (15β)  
**πλείστος, -η, -ον, most; very great; pl., very many** (12β and 14 Gr 2)  
**πλείστα, adv., most** (14 Gr 3)  
**πλείων/πλέων, alternative forms for either masculine or feminine, neuter, more** (12β)  
**πλέον, adv., more** (14 Gr 3)  
**πλέω, [πλευ-] πλεύσομαι or [πλευσε-] πλευσοῦμαι, [πλευ-] ἔπλευσα, πλεύσας, I sail** (6α and 6 Gr 1)

**πλήθος, πλήθους, τό, number, multitude** (14α)  
**πληρόω, I fill**  
**πόθεν; adv., from where? whence?** (7β, 10 Gr 9, and 14 Gr 6)  
**ποθέν, enclitic, from somewhere** (14 Gr 6)  
**ποῖ; to where? whither?** (10 Gr 9 and 14 Gr 6)  
**ποι, enclitic, to somewhere** (14 Gr 6)  
**ποιέω, I make; I do** (4α)  
**ποιητής, ποιητοῦ, ὁ, poet** (8α)  
**πολέμιος, -ᾱ, -ον, hostile; enemy** (14β)  
**πολέμιοι, πολέμιων, οἱ, the enemy** (14β)  
**πόλεμος, πολέμου, ὁ, war** (14β)  
**πολιορκέω [= πόλις, city + ἔρκος, wall], I besiege** (16β)  
**πόλις, πόλεως, ἡ, city** (7α and 9 Gr 3)  
**πολίτης, πολίτου, ὁ, citizen** (8β)  
**πολλάκις, adv., many times, often** (6β)  
**πολλαχόσε, adv., to many parts** (16α)  
**πολύς, πολλή, πολύ, much** (1α, 4 Gr 6, and 14 Gr 2); pl., **many** (3β)  
**πλείων/πλέων, alternative forms for either masculine or feminine, πλέον, neuter, more** (12β and 14 Gr 2)  
**πλείστος, -η, -ον, most; very great; pl., very many** (12β and 14 Gr 2)  
**πολύ, adv., much** (14 Gr 3)  
**πλέον, adv., more** (14 Gr 3)  
**πλείστα, adv., most** (14 Gr 3)  
**πομπή, πομπῆς, ἡ, procession** (9β)  
**πονέω, I work** (1α)  
**πόνος, πόνου, ὁ, toil, work** (1α)  
**Πόντος, Πόντου, ὁ, Pontus, the Black Sea**  
**πορεύομαι, πορεύσομαι, ἐπορευσάμην** (only in compounds), **πορευσάμενος, I go; I walk; I march; I journey** (6β)  
**Ποσειδῶν, Ποσειδῶνος, ὁ, Poseidon** (13β)

πόσος; πόση; πόσον; *how much?* pl., *how many?* (16α)  
 ποταμός, ποταμοῦ, ὁ, *river* (16β)  
 πότε; adv., *when?* (10 Gr 9 and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποτέ, enclitic, *at some time, at one time, once, ever* (10β and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποῦ; adv., *where?* (5α and 14 Gr 6)  
 που, enclitic, *somewhere, anywhere* (10 Gr 9 and 14 Gr 6)  
 ποῦ γῆς; *where (in the world)?* (16α)  
 ποῦς, ποδός, ὁ, *foot*  
 πράττω, [πρᾶκ-] πράξω, ἔπραξα, πράξις, intransitive, *I fare*; transitive, *I do* X (14α)  
 πρό, prep. + gen., of time or place, *before* (10β)  
 πρόβατα, προβάτων, τά, *sheep* (5α)  
 πρόγονος, προγόνου, ὁ, *ancestor* (15β)  
 πρὸς, prep. + dat., *at, near, by* (4α); + acc., *to, toward* (1β); *upon, onto; against* (11β)  
 προσβάλλω + dat., *I attack* (14α)  
 προσέρχομαι + dat. or πρὸς + acc., *I approach* (11β)  
 προσπλέω, *I sail toward*  
 προστρέχω, *I run toward*  
 προσχωρέω + dat., *I go toward, approach* (3α)  
 προτεραίᾱ, τῇ, *on the day before* (14β)  
 προχωρέω, *I go forward; I come forward, advance* (6β); + ἐπί + acc., *I advance against*  
 πρῶτος, -η, -ον, *first* (5β and 8 Gr 5)  
 πρῶτοι, πρῶτων, οἱ, *the leaders*  
 πρῶτον, adv., *first* (4α)  
 τὸ πρῶτον, *at first*  
 πύλη, πύλης, ἡ, *gate*  
 πύλαι, πυλῶν, αἱ, pl., *double gates* (6β); *pass (through the mountains)* (14β)  
 πῦρ, πυρός, τό, *fire* (7β)  
 πυραμίς, πυραμίδος, ἡ, *pyramid*  
 πῶς; adv., *how?* (7β, 10 Gr 9, and 14 Gr 6)  
 πῶς ἔχεις; *How are you?* (11α)

πως, enclitic adv., *somehow, in any way* (14 Gr 6)

## P

ράβδος, ῥάβδου, ἡ, *wand*  
 ῥᾴδιος, -ᾱ, -ον, *easy* (4β and 4 Gr 6)  
 ῥάθυμος [= ῥᾶ, *easily* + θυμός, *spirit*], -ον, *careless* (5α)  
 ῥῆμα, ῥήματος, τό, *word*

## Σ

Σαλαμίς, Σαλαμῖνος, ἡ, *Salamis* (13α)  
 Σάμος, Σάμου, ἡ, *Samos*  
 σεαυτοῦ: *see ἐμαυτοῦ*  
 σιγάω, *I am silent* (9β)  
 Σικελίᾱ, Σικελίας, ἡ, *Sicily*  
 Σιμωνίδης, Σιμωνίδου, ὁ, *Simonides* (15β)  
 σίτος, σίτου, ὁ, pl., τὰ σῖτα, *grain; food* (1α)  
 σκοπέω, [σκεπ-] σκέψομαι, ἑσκεψάμην, σκεψάμενος, *I look at, examine; I consider* (11α)  
 σκότος, σκότου, ὁ, *darkness*  
 Σκυθίᾱ, Σκυθίας, ἡ, *Scythia*  
 σός, -ή, -όν, *your*, sing. (5 Gr 8)  
 σοφός, -ή, -όν, *skilled; wise; clever* (11α)  
 Σπαρτιάτης, Σπαρτιάτου, ὁ, *a Spartan* (14β)  
 σπείρω, [σπερε-] σπερῶ, [σπειρ-] ἔσπειρα, σπείρας, *I sow*  
 σπέρμα, σπέρματος, τό, *seed*  
 σπεύδω, σπεύσω, ἔσπευσα, σπεύσας, *I hurry* (2α)  
 ἡ σπονδή, σπονδῆς, ἡ, *libation (drink offering)* (16β)  
 αἱ σπονδαί, σπονδῶν, αἱ, pl., *peace treaty* (16β)  
 σπουδή, σπουδῆς, ἡ, *haste; eagerness* (15β)  
 στέλλω, [στελε-] στελῶ, [στειλ-] ἔστειλα, στείλας, *I take down (sails)*  
 στενάζω, [στεναγ-] στενάξω, ἔστέναξα, στενάξας, *I groan* (4β)

στενός, -ή, -όν, *narrow* (14α)  
 στενά, στενῶν, τὰ, *narrows, straits; mountain pass* (13β)  
 στοᾶ, στοᾶς, ἡ, *colonnade*  
 στόλος, στόλου, ὁ, *expedition; army; fleet* (14α)  
 στρατεύω, στρατεύσω, ἐστρά-  
 τευσα, στρατεύσας, *active or middle, I wage war, campaign* (16α)  
 στρατηγός, στρατηγοῦ, ὁ, *general* (15α)  
 στρατιώτης, στρατιώτου, ὁ, *soldier* (14α)  
 στρατός, στρατοῦ, ὁ, *army* (14α)  
 στρογγύλος, -η, -ον, *round*  
 σύ, σοῦ or σου, *you, sing.* (3β and 5 Gr 6)  
 συλλαμβάνω [= συν- + λαμβάνω], *I help* (2β); + dat., *I help X* (6 Gr 6g)  
 συμβάλλω [= συν- + βάλλω], *I join battle; + dat., I join battle with* (14α)  
 σύμμαχος, συμμάχου, ὁ, *ally* (16α)  
 συμπίπτω [= συν- + πίπτω], *I clash; + dat., I clash with* (15β)  
 συμφορά, συμφορᾶς, ἡ, *misfortune; disaster* (16α)  
 συναγείρω, *active, transitive, I gather X; middle, intransitive, I gather together* (16α)  
 συνέρχομαι, *I come together* (14α)  
 συφεός, συφεοῦ, ὁ, *pigsty*  
 Σφίγξ, Σφιγγός, ἡ, *Sphinx*  
 σῶζω, σώσω, ἔσωσα, σώσας, *I save* (6α)  
 σώφρων, σώφρον, *of sound mind; prudent; self-controlled* (7β, 7 Gr 7, and 14 Gr 1)

## T

ταύτη, *adv., in this way; here* (14 Gr 5)  
 ταχύς, ταχεῖα, ταχύ, *quick, swift* (13α and 13 Gr 5)  
 ταχέως, *quickly; swiftly* (4α)  
 τάχιστα, *adv., most quickly; most swiftly* (12α)

ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible* (12α)

τε . . . καί or τε καί, the τε is post-positive and enclitic, particle and conjunction, *both . . . and* (3α)  
 τεῖχος, τείχους, τό, *wall* (12α and 13 Gr 4)  
 τεκόντες, τεκόντων, οἱ, *parents* (10β)  
 τελευτάω, *I end; I die* (16α)  
 τέλος, *adv., in the end, finally* (8β)  
 τέμενος, τεμένους, τό, *sacred precinct*  
 τέρπομαι, τέρψομαι, ἑτερψάμην, *τερψάμενος, I enjoy myself; + dat., I enjoy X; + participle, I enjoy doing X* (9β)  
 τέταρτος, -η, -ον, *fourth* (8 Gr 5)  
 τετρακόσιοι, -αι, -α, *400* (15 Gr 5)  
 τετταράκοντα, *indeclinable, forty* (15 Gr 5)  
 τέτταρες, τέτταρα, *four* (8 Gr 5)  
 τῇδε, *adv., in this way; here* (14 Gr 5)  
 τῇ προτεραίᾳ, *on the day before* (14β)  
 τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, *on the next day* (8β)  
 τί; *adv., why?* (2α and 10 Gr 9)  
 τί; *pronoun, what?* (4β and 10 Gr 9)  
 τιμάω, *I honor* (5α, 5 Gr 1, 6 Gr 3, 8 Gr 1, 9 Gr 1, and 13 Gr 1)  
 τίς; τί; *gen., τίνος; interrogative adjective, which . . . ? what . . . ?* (7α and 7 Gr 8)  
 τίς; τί; *gen., τίνος; interrogative pronoun, who? what?* (7α, 7 Gr 8, and 10 Gr 9)  
 τις, τι *gen., τινός, enclitic indefinite adjective, a certain; some; a, an* (7α and 7 Gr 9)  
 τις, τι *gen., τινός, enclitic indefinite pronoun, someone; something; anyone; anything* (7α and 7 Gr 9)  
 τλήμων, τλήμονος, *poor; wretched*  
 τοσοῦτος, τοσαύτη, τοσοῦτο, *so great; pl., so great; so many* (3β)  
 τότε, *adv., then* (12β)  
 τούτῳ, ἐν . . . , *meanwhile* (8β)  
 τραγῳδίᾳ, τραγῳδίας, ἡ, *tragedy*  
 τρεῖς, τρία, *three* (8 Gr 5)



τρεῖς καὶ δέκα, *thirteen* (15 Gr 5)  
 τρέπω, τρέψω, ἔτρεψα, τρέψας, active,  
 transitive, *I turn* X; middle, intransitive,  
*I turn myself, turn* (10β)  
 τρέχω, [δραμε-] δραμοῦμαι, [δραμ-]  
 ἔδραμον, δραμών, *I run* (5α)  
 τριάκοντα, indeclinable, *thirty* (15 Gr 5)  
 τριᾶκόσιοι, -αι, -α, *300* (15 Gr 5)  
 τριήρης, τριήρους, ἡ, *trireme* (a  
 warship) (13β and 13 Gr 4)  
 τρίτος, -η, -ον, *third* (8 Gr 5)  
 Τροία, Τροίᾱς, ἡ, *Troy* (7α)  
 τύπτω, [τυπτε-] τυπτήσω, no other  
 principal parts of this verb in Attic, *I*  
*strike, hit* (5β and 10β)  
 τυφλός, -ή, -όν, *blind* (11α)  
 τύχη, τύχης, ἡ, *chance; luck; fortune*  
 (15β)  
 τῷ ὄντι, *in truth* (13β)

## Y

ὕδρις, ὕδρις, ἡ, *water jar* (4α and 4  
 Gr 3)  
 ὕδωρ, ὕδατος, τό, *water* (10β)  
 ὑλακτέω, *I bark*  
 ὑμεῖς, ὑμῶν, *you*, pl. (5β and 5 Gr 6)  
 ὑμέτερος, -α, -ον, *your*, pl. (5 Gr 8)  
 ὑμνέω, *I hymn, praise*  
 ὑπέρ, prep. + gen., *on behalf of, for* (8β);  
*above*  
 ὑπηρέτης, ὑπηρέτου, ὁ, *servant; at-*  
*tendant*  
 ὑπό, prep. + gen., *under; of agent, by*  
 (16α); + dat., *under* (5β); + acc., *under*  
 (5β)  
 ὑστεραίᾳ, τῇ, *on the next day* (8β)  
 ὕστερον, adv., *later* (16α)  
 ὑφαίνω, *I weave*

## Φ

φαίνομαι, [φανε-] φανήσομαι or  
 φανοῦμαι, no aorist middle, *I appear*  
 (12β)  
 Φάληρον, Φαλήρου, τό, *Phalerum*  
 (the old harbor of Athens) (14β)

φᾶσί(ν), postpositive enclitic, *they say*  
 (6β)  
 Φειδίᾱς, Φειδίου, ὁ, *Pheidias* (the  
 great Athenian sculptor) (9α)  
 φέρω, [οἰ-] οἴσω, [ἐνεγκ-] ἤνεγκα,  
 ἐνέγκας or ἤνεγκον, ἐνεγκών, *I carry*  
 (1β); of roads, *lead*  
 φεῦ, interjection, often used with gen. of  
 cause, *alas!* (10α)  
 φεύγω, φεύξομαι, [φυγ-] ἔφυγον,  
 φυγών, *I flee; I escape* (5α)  
 φησί(ν), postpositive enclitic, *he/she*  
*says* (3α)  
 ἔφη, *he/she said*  
 ἔφασαν, *they said*  
 φιλέω, *I love* (1α, 4 Gr 1, 6 Gr 3, 8 Gr 1, 9  
 Gr 1, and 13 Gr 1)  
 Φίλιππος, Φιλίππου, ὁ, *Philip* (3β)  
 φίλος, -η, -ον, *dear* (4α)  
 φίλος, φίλου, ὁ or φίλη, φίλης, ἡ,  
*friend* (4α)  
 φλυᾶρέω, *I talk nonsense*  
 φοβέομαι, imperfect, usually used for  
 fearing in past time, ἐφοβούμην, φο-  
 βήσομαι, no aorist middle, intransi-  
 tive, *I am frightened, am afraid*; transi-  
 tive, *I fear, am afraid of* (something or  
 someone) (6α)  
 φοβερός, -ά, -όν, *terrifying, frighten-*  
*ing*  
 φορτία, φορτίων, τά, *cargoes; bur-*  
*dens*  
 φράζω, φράσω, ἔφρασα, φράσας, *I*  
*show; I tell (of); I explain* (14β)  
 φροντίζω, [φορμιε-] φροντίω,  
 [φροντι-] ἐφρόντισα, φροντίσας, *I*  
*worry; I care* (12α)  
 φυγή, φυγῆς, ἡ, *flight* (15α)  
 φύλαξ, φύλακος, ὁ, *guard* (7 Gr 3)  
 φυλάττω, [φυλακ-] φυλάξω,  
 ἐφύλαξα, φυλάξας, *I guard* (5α)

## X

χαίρω, [χαιρε-] χαιρήσω,  
 ἐχαίρησα, χαιρήσας, *I rejoice* (1α and  
 4α)

χαῖρε; pl., χαίρετε, *greetings!* (4α)  
 χαίρειν κελεύω + acc., *I bid X*  
*farewell, I bid farewell to X* (12α)  
 χαλεπός, -ή, -όν, *difficult* (1β and 14  
 Gr 1)  
 χειμών, χειμῶνος, ὁ, *storm; winter*  
 (7β and 7 Gr 5)  
 χεῖρ, χειρός, ἡ, *hand* (8β)  
 χίλιοι, -αι, -α, *1,000* (15 Gr 5)  
 χίλιοςτός, -ή, -όν, *thousandth* (15  
 Gr 5)  
 χορός, χοροῦ, ὁ, *dance; chorus* (4α)  
 κράομαι (present and imperfect have η  
 where α would be expected: χρῶμαι,  
 χρῆ, χρῆται, etc.), χρήσομαι (note  
 that the α changes to η even after the  
 ρ), ἐχρησάμην, χρησάμενος + dat., *I*  
*use; I enjoy* (14α)  
 χρόνος, χρόνου, ὁ, *time* (1β)

## Ψ

ψευδής, -ές, *false* (13β)  
 ψευδῆ, ψευδῶν, τὰ, *lies* (13β)  
 ψόφος, ψόφου, ὁ, *noise*

## Ω

ὦ, interjection, introducing a vocative

ὦ Ζεῦ, *O Zeus* (3α)  
 ὅ, ἐν, *while* (8α)  
 ὠθίζομαι, no future or aorist, *I push*  
 ὦν, οὔσα, ὄν, participle of εἰμί, *being* (9  
 Gr 1)  
 ὦνια, ὠνίων, τὰ, *wares*  
 ὡς, adv., in exclamations, *how!* (6β and 15  
 Gr 6a)  
 ὡς, adv. + future participle to express  
 purpose, *to* (10 Gr 7 and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὡς, adv. + superlative adjective or adverb,  
 e.g., ὡς τάχιστα, *as quickly as possible*  
 (12α, 14 Gr 4d, and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὡς, adv., *as* (13β and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὥς δοκεῖ, *as it seems* (13β and 15 Gr  
 6a)  
 ὡς, conj., temporal, *when* (14β and 15 Gr  
 6b)  
 ὡς, conj., see πιστεύω, *that* (15β and 15 Gr  
 6b)  
 ὥσπερ, note the accent, adv., *just as* (8α  
 and 15 Gr 6a)  
 ὥστε, note the accent, conj. + indicative or  
 infinitive, introducing a clause that ex-  
 presses result, *so that, that, so as to* (5α  
 and 15 Gr 6b)  
 ὠφελέω, *I help; I benefit* (11β)

# ENGLISH TO GREEK VOCABULARY

This English to Greek vocabulary is provided merely as a reminder of Greek equivalents of English words. For further information about the Greek words, you must consult the Greek to English Vocabulary and the readings and grammar sections in the various chapters of this book.

## A

a (certain), τις  
able, I am, δύναμαι  
about, περί  
about (to), I am, μέλλω  
accomplish, I, ἐργάζομαι  
Achaean, Ἀχαιοί  
Acropolis, Ἀκρόπολις  
admiral, ναύαρχος  
admire, I, θαυμάζω  
advance (against), I, προ-  
χωρέω  
Aegean Sea, Αἰγαῖος  
πόντος  
Aegeus, Αἰγεύς  
Aeolus, Αἰόλος  
Aeschylus, Αἰσχύλος  
afraid (of), I am, φοβέ-  
ομαι  
after, μετά  
again, αὖθις  
against, ἐπί, πρὸς  
Agamemnon, Ἀγαμέ-  
μνων  
agora, ἀγορά  
alas! οἶμοι, φεῦ  
all, ἅπᾱς, πᾶς  
all right! ἔστω  
allowed, it is, ἔξεστι(ν)  
ally, σύμμαχος  
alone, μόνος  
along, παρά  
already, ἤδη  
also, καί  
altar, βωμός  
although, καίπερ  
always, αἰεί  
am, I, εἰμί  
amazed, I am, θαυμάζω  
among, ἐν  
an, τις

ancestor, πρόγονος  
and, δέ, καί  
and in particular, καὶ δὴ  
καί  
and . . . not, οὐδέ  
and what is more, καὶ δὴ  
καί  
angry (at), I grow/am,  
ὀργίζομαι  
animal, ζῷον  
announce, I, ἀγγέλλω  
another, ἄλλος  
answer, I, ἀποκρίνομαι  
anyone, anything, τις, τι  
anywhere, που  
appear, I, φαίνομαι  
approach, I, προσ-  
έρχομαι, προσχωρέω  
Argus, Ἄργος  
Ariadne, Ἀριάδνη  
army, στόλος, στρατός  
around, περί  
arrive (at), I, ἀφ-  
ικνέομαι, παρα-  
γίγνομαι  
Artemisium, Ἀρτεμί-  
σιον  
as, ὥς  
as it seems, ὥς δοκεῖ  
as quickly as possible, ὥς  
τάχιστα  
Asclepius, Ἀσκληπιός  
Asia (Minor), Ἀσιᾶ  
ask, I, αἰτέω, ἐρωτάω  
ask for, I, αἰτέω  
at, εἰς, ἐπί, πρὸς  
at a loss, I am, ἀπορέω  
at home, κατ' οἶκον,  
οἶκοι  
at just the right time, εἰς  
καιρόν

at least, γε  
at once, εὐθύς  
at one time, ποτέ  
at some time, ποτέ  
at that very moment, ἐν-  
ταῦθα δὴ  
at the same time, ἅμα  
Athena, Ἀθηνᾶ, Παρ-  
θένης  
Athenian, Ἀθηναῖος  
Athenians, Ἀθηναῖοι  
Athens, Ἀθῆναι  
Athens, at, Ἀθήνησι  
Athens, in, ἐν ταῖς  
Ἀθήναις  
Athens, to, Ἀθήναζε  
attack, I, ἐμπίπτω,  
προσβάλλω  
attempt, I, πειράω, πει-  
ράομαι  
attendant, θεράπων,  
ὑπηρέτης  
Attica, Ἀττικὴ  
away, I am, ἀπείμι

## B

bad, κακός  
bag, ἄσκός  
barbarian, βάρβαρος  
bark, I, ὑλακτέω  
battle, μάχη  
bel! ἴσθι  
be so! let it, ἔστω  
beast, θηρίον  
beautiful, καλός  
beautiful, more, καλλίων  
beautiful, most, κάλλισ-  
τος  
become, I, γίγνομαι  
bee, μέλιττα  
before, πρό

beginning, ἀρχή  
 behind, ὀπισθεν  
 being, ὄν  
 believe (that), I, πιστεύω  
 benefit, I, ὠφελέω  
 besiege, I, πολιορκέω  
 best, ἄριστος  
 better, ἀμείνων  
 between, ἐν μέσῳ  
 bid X farewell, I, χαίρειν  
 κελεύω  
 big, μέγας  
 bigger, μείζων  
 biggest, μέγιστος  
 black, μέλας  
 Black Sea, the, Πόντος  
 blame, to (adj.), αἰτίας  
 blind, τυφλός  
 Boeotia, Βοιωτία  
 both... and, καί...  
 καί, τε... καί  
 boy, παῖς  
 brave, ἀνδρείος  
 bravely, ἀνδρείως  
 bridge, γέφυρα  
 bright, λαμπρός  
 brilliant, λαμπρός  
 bring, I, κομίζω  
 bring in(to), I, εἰσφέρω  
 brother, ἀδελφός  
 burn, I, καίω, κάω  
 but, ἀλλά, δέ  
 by, πρός, ὑπό  
 by land, κατά γῆν  
 by sea, κατά θάλατταν

## C

calf, μόσχος  
 call, I, καλέω  
 call in(to), I, εἰσκαλέω  
 call out, I, ἐκκαλέω  
 called, ὀνόματι  
 campaign, I, στρατεύω  
 can, I, δύναμαι  
 captain: see ship's captain  
 care, I, φροντίζω  
 careless, ῥάθυμος  
 carry, I, φέρω  
 carry out, I, ἐκφέρω  
 catch, I, καταλαμβάνω  
 cause pain to, I, λυπέω

cave, ἄντρον  
 cease from, I, παύομαι  
 celebrate a festival, I, εορ-  
 τήν ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι  
 celebrate the festival of  
 Dionysus, I, τὰ Διο-  
 νύσια ποιῶ/ποιοῦμαι  
 certain, α, τις  
 certainly, μάλιστά γε  
 chance, τύχη  
 chase, I, διώκω  
 child, παῖς  
 chorus, χορός  
 Cimon, Κίμων  
 Circe, Κίρκη  
 citizen, πολίτης  
 city, ἄστυ, πόλις  
 city center, ἀγορά  
 clash (with), I, συμπίπτω  
 clever, σοφός  
 climb, I, ἀναβαίνω  
 cloth, πέπλος  
 colonnade, στοά  
 come! ἐλθέ  
 come, I, ἔρχομαι  
 come, I have, ἦκω  
 come back! ἐπάνελθε  
 come back, I, ἐπαν-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 come back, to, ἐπανιέναι  
 come down, I, κατα-  
 βαίνω  
 come forward, I, προ-  
 χωρέω  
 come in, I, εἰσβαίνω,  
 εἰσέρχομαι  
 come on! ἄγε  
 come out (of), I, ἐκ-  
 βαίνω, ἐξέρχομαι  
 come through, I, δι-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 come to know, I, γιγνώ-  
 σκω  
 come to rescue/aid X, I,  
 βοηθέω  
 come to the rescue, I, βο-  
 ηθέω  
 come to X's aid, I, βοηθέω  
 come together, I, συν-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 coming out, ἐξελθών

commotion, θόρυβος  
 companion, ἑταῖρος  
 compel, I, ἀναγκάζω  
 comrade, ἑταῖρος  
 concerning, περί  
 confident (in), I am, πισ-  
 τεύω  
 consider, I, σκοπέω  
 contest, ἀγών  
 converse with, I, δια-  
 λέγομαι  
 Corinth, Κόρινθος  
 corpse, νεκρός  
 correct, ὀρθός  
 courage, ἀρετή  
 Crete, Κρήτη  
 cross, I, διαβαίνω  
 crowd, ὄμιλος  
 cry, I, δακρύω  
 cursed, κατάρκτος  
 Cyclops, Κύκλωψ  
 Cyprus, Κύπρος  
 Cyrene, Κυρήνη

## D

dance, χορός  
 danger, κίνδυνος  
 darkness, σκότος  
 daughter, θυγάτηρ,  
 παῖς  
 day, ἡμέρα  
 day, on the next, τῇ  
 ὑστεραίᾳ  
 day before, on the, τῇ  
 προτεραίᾳ  
 dear, φίλος  
 death, θάνατος  
 decide, I, δοκεῖ μοι  
 deed, ἔργον  
 defeat, I, νικάω  
 defend myself (against), I,  
 ἀμύνομαι  
 desert, I, καταλείπω  
 destined (to), I am, μέλλω  
 destroy, I, ἀπόλλυμι,  
 διαφθείρω  
 Dicaeopolis, Δικαιοπό-  
 λης  
 die, I, ἀποθνήσκω,  
 τελευτάω  
 difficult, χαλεπός

difficulty, ἀπορίᾱ  
 difficulty, with, μόλις  
 dinner, δείπνον  
 Dionysus, Διόνυσος  
 directions, in all, παντα-  
 χόσε  
 disaster, συμφορᾶ  
 disembark, ἐκβαίνω ἐκ  
 τῆς νεώς  
 distressed, I am, λυπέο-  
 μαι  
 do, I, ποιέω, πράττω  
 doctor, ἰατρός  
 dog, κύων  
 don't, μή  
 don't . . . any longer, μη-  
 κέτι  
 door, θύρᾱ  
 down, κατά  
 drachma, δραχμή  
 drag, I, ἔλκω  
 drink, I, πίνω  
 drive, I, ἐλαύνω  
 drive away, I, ἀπελαύνω  
 drive in, I, εἰσελαύνω  
 drive out, I, ἐξελαύνω  
 drop, I, καταβάλλω  
 drunk, I am, μεθύω  
 during (use acc. of dura-  
 tion of time)  
 dwell, I, οἰκέω  
 dwelling, οἰκίᾱ, οἶκος

## E

eagerness, σπουδῇ  
 earth, γῆ  
 easy, ῥάδιος  
 eat, I, δεικνέω, ἐσθίω  
 Egypt, Αἴγυπτος  
 Egyptians, Αἰγύπτιοι  
 eight, ὀκτώ  
 eighth, ὄγδοος  
 either . . . or, ἢ . . . ἢ  
 embark, I, εἰς ναὺν εἰς-  
 βαίνω  
 end, I, τελευτάω  
 enemy, πολέμιος  
 enemy, the, πολέμιοι  
 enjoy, I, χράομαι  
 enjoy (myself), I, τέρπο-  
 μαι

enslave, I, δουλόω  
 entrance, εἴσοδος  
 Ephialtes, Ἐφιάλτης  
 Epidaurus, Ἐπίδαυρος  
 escape (from), I, ἀπο-  
 φεύγω, ἐκφεύγω,  
 φεύγω  
 escape route, ἔκπλους  
 especially, μάλιστα  
 Euboea, Εὐβοία  
 Eurymedon River, the,  
 Εὐρυμέδων  
 even, καί  
 evening, ἐσπέρᾱ  
 ever, ποτέ  
 every, ἅπας, πᾶς  
 every day, καθ' ἡμέραν  
 everything, πάντα  
 everywhere, πανταχοῦ  
 evil, κακός  
 examine, I, σκοπέω  
 excellence, ἀρετή  
 expect, I, ἐλπίζω  
 expedition, στόλος  
 experience, πάσχω  
 explain, I, φράζω  
 eye, ὀφθαλμός

## F

fall, I, πίπτω  
 fall down, I, καταπίπτω  
 fall into, I, ἐμπίπτω  
 fall (of evening, etc.), γί-  
 νεται  
 fall out, I, ἐκπίπτω  
 fall (upon), I, ἐμπίπτω  
 false, ψευδής  
 far corner, μυχός  
 fare, I, πράττω  
 farm, κλήρος  
 farm, I, γεωργέω  
 farmer, αὐτοουργός  
 father, πάππας, πατήρ  
 fatherland, πατρίς  
 fear, I, φοβέομαι  
 festival, εορτή, παν-  
 ἡγυρις

festival of Dionysus, Διο-  
 νύσια  
 few, pl. of ὀλίγος  
 fewer, pl. of ἐλάττων  
 fewest, pl. of ὀλίγιστος  
 field, ἀγρός  
 fierce, ἄγριος  
 fifth, πέμπτος  
 fight, μάχη  
 fight (against), I, μάχο-  
 μαι  
 fight by sea, I, ναυμαχέω  
 fill, I, πληρῶ  
 finally, τέλος  
 find, I, εὐρίσκω  
 fire, πῦρ  
 fire, I am on, καίομαι,  
 κάομαι  
 firm, βέβαιος  
 first, πρῶτον, πρῶτος  
 first, at, τὸ πρῶτον  
 five, πέντε  
 flee, I, φεύγω  
 flee (away), I, ἀποφεύγω  
 flee (out), I, ἐκφεύγω  
 fleet, ναυτικόν, στόλος  
 flight, φυγή  
 flow in, I, εἰσρέω  
 follow, I, ἔπομαι  
 food, σίτος  
 foot, ποῦς  
 foot, on, πεζός  
 for, γάρ, εἰς, ὑπέρ  
 foreigner, ξένος  
 forget, I, ἐπι-  
 λανθάνομαι  
 fortune, τύχη  
 four, τέτταρες  
 fourth, τέταρτος  
 free, ἐλεύθερος  
 free, I, ἐλευθερώω  
 freedom, ἐλευθερίᾱ  
 friend, φίλη, φίλος  
 frightened, I am, φοβέο-  
 μαι  
 frightening, φοβερός  
 frightfully, δεινῶς  
 from, ἀπό  
 from where? πόθεν;

## G

garden, κήπος  
 gates, double, πύλαι  
 gather (together), I, συν-  
 αγείρω  
 general, στρατηγός  
 get (myself) up, I, *see*  
 αἴρω, ἐπαίρω  
 get up, I, ἀναβαίνω  
 giant, γίγας  
 girl, κόρη, παῖς, παρ-  
 θένος  
 go! ἴθι  
 go, I, βαδίζω, βαίνω,  
 ἔρχομαι, πορεύομαι  
 go, to, ἰέναι  
 go away, I, ἀπέρχομαι  
 go down, I, καταβαίνω  
 go forward, I, προχωρέω  
 go in, I, εἰσβαίνω, εἰσ-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 go in, to, εἰσιέναι  
 go on! ἴθι δὴ  
 go on board ship, I, εἰς  
 ναῦν εἰσβαίνω  
 go out of, I, ἐκβαίνω,  
 ἐξέρχομαι  
 go through, I, διέρχομαι  
 go toward, I, προσχωρέω  
 go up (onto), I, ἀνα-  
 βαίνω  
 goat, αἴξ  
 god, θεός  
 goddess, θεός  
 good, ἀγαθός  
 good! εὖ γε  
 good order, κόσμος  
 grain, σίτος  
 grandfather, πάππος  
 grapes, βότρυες  
 great, μέγας  
 greater, μείζων  
 greatest, μέγιστος  
 greatly, μέγα  
 Greece, Ἑλλάς  
 Greek(s), Ἑλλην(ες)  
 Greeks, Ἀχαιοί  
 greetings! χαῖρε  
 grieve, I, λυπέω  
 grieved, I am, λυπέομαι

groan, I, στενάζω  
 ground, γῆ  
 grow angry (at), I, ὀργί-  
 ζομαι  
 guard, φύλαξ  
 guard, I, φυλάττω

## H

hand, χεῖρ  
 hand over, I, παρέχω  
 happens, it, γίνεται  
 harbor, λιμὴν  
 hare, λαγός  
 harm, I, βλάπτω  
 has become, he/she/it,  
 γέγονε  
 haste, σπουδή  
 hasten, I, ὀρμάομαι  
 have, I, ἔχω  
 have come, I, ἦκω  
 have in mind, I, ἐν νῷ  
 ἔχω  
 having come out, ἐξ-  
 ελθών  
 he, and, ὁ δέ  
 head, κεφαλή  
 heal, I, ἰάτρεω  
 hear, I, ἀκούω  
 heaven, οὐρανός  
 Hellas, Ἑλλάς  
 Hellespont, Ἑλλήσπον-  
 τος  
 help, I, συλλαμβάνω,  
 ὠφελέω  
 her, αὐτήν  
 herald, κήρυξ  
 here, δεῦρο, ἐνθάδε,  
 ἐνταῦθα, ταύτη,  
 τῇδε  
 here, I am, πάρειμι  
 herself, of: *see* ἑμαυτοῦ  
 hill, ὄρος  
 him, αὐτόν  
 himself, of: *see* ἑμαυτοῦ  
 hit, I, βάλλω, τύπτω  
 hither, δεῦρο, ἐνθάδε,  
 ἐνταῦθα  
 hold, I, ἔχω  
 hold onto, I, ἔχομαι  
 home, οἰκίᾱ, οἶκος

home, at, κατ' οἶκον,  
 οἶκοι  
 home, to, οἴκαδε  
 homeward, οἴκαδε  
 honor, I, τιμάω  
 hope, I, ἐλπίζω  
 hoplite, ὀπλίτης  
 horse, ἵππος  
 hostile, πολέμιος  
 house, οἰκίᾱ, οἶκος  
 how, ὥς  
 how? πῶς;  
 How are you? πῶς ἔχεις;  
 how many? pl. of πόσος;  
 how much? πόσος;  
 human being, ἄνθρωπος  
 hundred, a, ἑκατόν  
 hunger, λιμός  
 hurry, I, σπεύδω  
 hurt, βλάπτω  
 husband, ἀνὴρ  
 hymn, I, ὑμνέω

## I

I, ἐγώ  
 I am, εἰμί  
 idle, ἀργός  
 if, εἰ  
 if perhaps, if somehow, εἰ  
 πῶς  
 ill, I am, νοσέω  
 immediately, εὐθύς  
 impossible, ἀδύνατος  
 in, ἐν  
 in, I am, ἔνιμι  
 in all directions, παντα-  
 χόσε  
 in any way, πῶς  
 in Athens, ἐν ταῖς  
 Ἀθήναις  
 in no way, οὐδαμῶς  
 in order, κόσμῳ  
 in the end, τέλος  
 in the field, ἐν τῷ ἀγρῷ  
 in this way, ταύτη, τῇδε  
 in truth, τῷ ὄντι  
 increase, I, ἀξάνω  
 indeed, γε, δὴ, μάλιστα  
 γε  
 inhabitant, ἐνοικος

intend (to), I, ἐν νῶ ἔχω,  
μέλλω  
into, εἰς  
Ionia, Ἰωνία  
Ionians, Ἴωνες  
is, he/she/it, ἐστί(ν)  
island, νῆσος  
it, αὐτόν, αὐτήν, αὐτό  
it is necessary, δεῖ  
itself: see ἑμαυτοῦ

## J

jar, water, ὕδρις  
join battle (with), I, συμ-  
βάλλω  
journey, ὁδός  
journey, I, πορεύομαι  
just as, ὥσπερ

## K

keep quiet, I, ἡσυχάζω  
kill, I, ἀποκτείνω  
killed, he/she has, ἀπ-  
έκτονε  
kindle, I, καίω, κάω  
kindly, εὐμενῶς  
king, βασιλεύς  
knife, μάχαιρα  
knock on (a door), I,  
κόπτω  
Knossos, Κνωσός  
know, I, ἐπίσταμαι  
know, come to, I, γινώ-  
σκω

## L

labyrinth, λαβύρινθος  
Lacedaemonians, the,  
Λακεδαιμόνιοι  
land, γῆ  
land, on or by, κατὰ γῆν  
large, μακρός, μέγας  
larger, μείζων  
largest, μέγιστος  
later, ὕστερον  
lazy, ἄργος  
lead, I, ἄγω, ἡγέομαι  
lead in, I, εἰσάγω,  
εἰσηγέομαι  
lead (of roads), I, φέρω

lead out, I, ἐξάγω  
leaders, pl. of πρῶτος  
learn, I, γινώσκω, μαν-  
θάνω  
least of all, ἥκιστα γε  
leave, I, λείπω  
leave behind, I, κατα-  
λείπω  
left hand, ἀριστερά  
Leonidas, Λεωνίδαης  
libation, σπονδή  
lie, I, κείμαι  
lie down, I, κατάκειμαι  
lie near, I, ἐπικείμαι  
lie off, I, ἐπικείμαι  
lies, ψευδῆ  
life, βίος  
lift, I, αἶρω, ἐπαίρω  
lion, λέων  
listen (to), I, ἀκούω  
live, I, οἰκέω  
long, μακρός  
long (of time), πολὺς  
look! ἰδοὺ  
look, I, βλέπω  
look at, I, θεάομαι, σκο-  
πέω  
look for, I, ζητέω  
loose/loosen, I, λύω  
lose, I, ἀπώλλυμι  
loss, I am at a, ἀπορέω  
loss, state of being at a,  
ἀπορίᾱ  
loudly, μέγα  
love, I, ἐράω, φιλέω  
luck, τύχη

## M

made of stone, λίθινος  
maiden, παρθένος  
Maiden, the, Παρθένος  
make, I, ποιέω  
make X sit down, I, καθ-  
ίζω  
man, ἀνὴρ, ἄνθρωπος  
man, young, νεανίας  
many, pl. of πολὺς  
many times, πολλάκις  
march, I, ἐλαύνω, πο-  
ρεύομαι

market place, ἀγορά  
master, δεσπότης  
may, ἔξεστι(ν)  
me, με  
meal, δεῖπνον  
meanwhile, ἐν . . .  
τούτῳ  
Melissa, Μέλιττα  
Memphis, Μέμφις  
merchant, ἔμπορος  
merchant ship, ὀλκάς  
messenger, ἄγγελος  
middle (of), μέσος  
mind, νοῦς  
mind, have in, I, ἐν νῶ  
ἔχω  
mine, ἐμός  
Minos, Μίνως  
Minotaur, Μινώταυρος  
misfortune, συμφορὰ  
money, ἀργύριον  
monument, μνημεῖον  
more, μᾶλλον, πλεί-  
ων/πλέων  
more, and what is, καὶ δὴ  
καί  
most, μάλιστα, πλείσ-  
τος  
most of all, μάλιστα  
most swiftly/quickly, τά-  
χιστα  
mother, μήτηρ  
motion, set in, I, ὀρμάω  
motionless, ἀκίνητος  
Mount Etna, Αἷτναϊον  
ὄρος  
mountain, ὄρος  
mountain pass, στενά  
much, πολὺς  
mule, ἡμίονος  
multitude, πλῆθος  
must, δεῖ  
my, ἐμός  
Mycalē, Μυκαλή  
Myrrhine, Μυρρίνη  
myself, of, ἑμαυτοῦ

## N

name, ὄνομα  
name, by, ὀνόματι

narrow, στενός  
 narrows, στενά  
 near, ἐγγύς, πρὸς  
 necessary, it is, δεῖ  
 neither . . . nor,  
 οὔτε . . . οὔτε  
 nevertheless, ὅμως  
 next day, on the, τῇ  
 ὑστεραίᾳ  
 night, νύξ  
 Nike, Νίκη  
 Nile, Νεῖλος  
 nine, ἐννέα  
 ninth, ἔνατος  
 no, μηδεῖς, οὐδαμῶς,  
 οὐδεῖς, οὐδέν, οὐχί  
 no longer, μηκέτι, οὐ-  
 κέτι  
 no one, μηδεῖς, οὐδεῖς  
 noble, ἄριστος  
 nor, οὐδέ  
 not, μή, οὐ, οὐκ, οὐχ,  
 οὐχί  
 not, and, οὐδέ  
 not at all, ἥκιστα γε  
 not even, οὐδέ  
 not only . . . but also, οὐ  
 μόνον . . . ἀλλὰ καὶ  
 not working, ἄργος  
 nothing, μηδέν, οὐδέν  
 now, ἤδη, νῦν  
 nowhere, οὐδαμοῦ  
 number, πλῆθος  
 nymph, νύμφη

**O**  
 obey, I, πείθομαι  
 obol, ὀβολός  
 obstruct, I, ἐμποδίζω  
 Odysseus, Ὀδυσσεύς  
 of one another, ἀλλήλων  
 of sound mind, σώφρων  
 often, πολλάκις  
 old, γεραιός, γέρων  
 old man, γέρων  
 on, ἐν, ἐπί, κατά, πρὸς  
 on behalf of, ὑπέρ  
 on fire, I am, καίομαι,  
 κάομαι  
 on foot, πεζός

on the day before, προ-  
 τεραία  
 on the next day, τῇ  
 ὑστεραίᾳ  
 on the one hand . . . and on  
 the other hand . . . ; on the  
 one hand . . . but on the  
 other hand, μὲν . . . δέ  
 . . .  
 once, ποτέ  
 one, εἷς  
 one another, of,  
 ἀλλήλων  
 only, μόνον, μόνος  
 onto, ἐπί, πρὸς  
 opposite, ἐναντίος  
 or, ἢ  
 order, I, κελεύω  
 order, in, κόσμω  
 other, ἄλλος  
 our, ἡμέτερος  
 out of, ἐκ, ἐξ  
 overtake, I, κατα-  
 λαμβάνω  
 ox, βοῦς

**P**  
 pain to X, cause, I, λυπέω  
 para, πάππας  
 parents, τεκόντες  
 part, μέρος  
 Parthenon, Παρθενών  
 particular, and in, καὶ δὴ  
 καί  
 parts, to many, πολλα-  
 χόσε  
 pass (through the  
 mountains), πύλαι  
 past, παρὰ  
 path, ἀτραπός  
 pay, μισθός  
 peace, εἰρήνη  
 peace treaty, σπονδαί  
 Peloponnesus, the, Πελο-  
 πόννησος  
 pelt, I, βάλλω  
 people, the, δῆμος  
 perceive, I, γινώσκω  
 perplexity, ἀπορίᾳ  
 Persian, Περσικός

Persians, the, Πέρσαι  
 person, ἄνθρωπος  
 persuade, I, πείθω  
 Phalerum, Φάληρον  
 Pheidias, Φειδίας  
 Philip, Φίλιππος  
 pigsty, συφεός  
 Piraeus, the, Πειραιεύς  
 place, I, καθίζω  
 plow, ἄροτρον  
 plow, I, ἀρώω  
 plowing, ἄροτος  
 poet, ποιητής  
 Pontus, Πόντος  
 poor, τλήμων  
 Poseidon, Ποσειδών  
 possible, δυνατός  
 possible, it is, ἔξεστι(ν)  
 praise, I, ὑμνέω  
 pray (to), pray (that), I,  
 εὐχομαι  
 precinct, sacred, τέμενος  
 prepare, I, παρα-  
 σκευάζω, παρα-  
 σκευάζομαι  
 present (at), I am, πάρ-  
 ειμι  
 priest, ἱερεύς  
 prison, δεσμοτήριον  
 procession, πομπή  
 promontory, ἀκτὴ  
 propitious, ἔλεως  
 provide, I, παρέχω  
 prudent, σώφρων  
 punish, I, κολάζω  
 pursue, I, διώκω  
 push, I, ώθίζομαι  
 put, I, βάλλω  
 pyramid, πυραμῖς

**Q**  
 quick, ταχύς  
 quickly, ταχέως  
 quickly, most, τάχιστα  
 quiet, ἡσυχος  
 quiet, keep, I, ἡσυχάζω

**R**  
 raise, I, ἐπαίρω  
 ransom, I, λύομαι



rather, μάλλον  
 rather than, μάλλον ἢ  
 ready, ἔτοιμος  
 rear, from the, ἐκ τοῦ  
 ὀπισθε(ν)  
 reason, λόγος  
 receive, I, δέχομαι  
 rejoice, I, χαίρω  
 relate, I, ἐξηγέομαι  
 reluctantly, μὲν  
 resist, I, ἀντέχω  
 responsible (for), αἷτιος  
 rest, I, ἡσυχάζω  
 retreat, I, ἀναχωρέω  
 return, to, ἐπανιέναι  
 return home, I, νοστέω  
 return (to), I, ἐπαν-  
 ἔρχομαι  
 revel, I, κωμάζω  
 reward, μισθός  
 right, δεξιός, ὀρθός  
 right hand, δεξιὰ  
 right time, καιρός  
 right time, just at the, εἰς  
 καιρόν  
 river, ποταμός  
 road, ὁδός  
 robe, πέπλος  
 rough, I am, κῦμαίνω  
 round, στρογγύλος  
 route, escape, ἔκπλους  
 row, I, ἐρέσσω  
 rower, ἐρέτης  
 rule, I, βασιλεύω  
 run, I, τρέχω  
 run toward, I, προσ-  
 τρέχω  
 rush, I, ὀρμάομαι, ὀρ-  
 μάω

## S

sacrificial victim, ἱερεῖον  
 said, he/she, ἔφη  
 said, I/they, εἶπον  
 said, they, ἔφασαν  
 sail, I, πλέω  
 sail against, I, ἐπιπλέω  
 sail along, I, παραπλέω  
 sail away, I, ἀποπλέω  
 sail by, I, παραπλέω

sail in(to), I, εἰσπλέω  
 sail out, I, ἐκπλέω  
 sail past, I, παραπλέω  
 sail toward, I, προσπλέω  
 sailor, ναύτης  
 sails, ἱστία  
 Salamis, Σαλαμίς  
 same, αὐτός  
 same time, at the, ἅμα  
 Samos, Σάμος  
 sausage-seller, ἀλλαντο-  
 πώλης  
 savage, ἄγριος  
 save, I, σφίζω  
 say, I, λέγω  
 say, to, εἰπεῖν  
 say, they, φασί(ν)  
 says, he/she, φησί(ν)  
 scarcely, μὲν  
 Scythia, Σκυθία  
 sea, θάλαττα  
 sea, by, κατὰ θάλατταν  
 seat myself, I, καθίζομαι  
 second, δεύτερος  
 see, I, βλέπω, θεάομαι,  
 θεωρέω, ὁράω  
 seed, σπέρμα  
 seek, I, ζητέω  
 seems, as it, ὡς δοκεῖ  
 seems (good), it, δοκεῖ  
 seems good to me, it,  
 δοκεῖ μοι  
 seize, I, λαμβάνομαι  
 -self, -selves, αὐτός  
 self-controlled, σώφρων  
 send, I, πέμπω  
 send against, I, ἐπιπέμπω  
 send away, I, ἀποπέμπω  
 send in, I, ἐπιπέμπω  
 send out, I, ἐκπέμπω  
 servant, θεράπων, ὑπη-  
 ρέτης  
 set, I, καθίζω  
 set free, I, ἐλευθερόω  
 set myself in motion, I,  
 ὀρμάομαι  
 set out, I, ὀρμάομαι,  
 ὀρμάω  
 set X in motion, I, ὀρμάω  
 seven, ἐπτά

seventh, ἑβδομος  
 sheep, πρόβατα  
 sheepfold, αὐλίων  
 ship, ναῦς  
 ship, merchant, ὀλκάς  
 ship's captain, ναύ-  
 κληρος  
 shirk, I, ὀκνέω  
 shout, βοή  
 shout, I, βοάω  
 show, I, δηλώω, φράζω  
 Sicily, Σικελία  
 sick, I am, κάμνω, νο-  
 σέω  
 silent, I am, σιγῶ  
 silver, ἀργύριον  
 Simonides, Σιμωνίδης  
 sit (down), I, καθίζω,  
 καθίζομαι  
 sit down, I make X, καθ-  
 ίζω  
 six, ἕξ  
 sixth, ἕκτος  
 skilled, σοφός  
 sky, οὐρανός  
 slave, δοῦλος  
 sleep, I, καθεύδω  
 slow, βραδύς  
 slowly, βραδέως  
 small, μικρός, ὀλίγος  
 smaller, ἐλάττων, μι-  
 κρότερος  
 smallest, μικρότατος,  
 ὀλίγιστος  
 so, οὖν, οὕτω(ς)  
 so great, τοσοῦτος  
 so many, pl. of τοσοῦτος  
 so that, ὥστε  
 soldier, στρατιώτης  
 some, τις  
 somehow, πως  
 someone, something, τις,  
 τι  
 something bad, κακόν τι  
 somewhere, που  
 somewhere, from, ποθέν  
 somewhere, to, ποι  
 son, παῖς  
 soon, δι' ὀλίγου  
 sow, I, σπείρω

Spartan, Σπαρτιᾶτης  
Spartans, the, Λακεδαι-  
μόνιοι  
speak, I, λέγω  
Sphinx, Σφίγξ  
spirit, θυμός  
spoke, I/they, εἶπον  
spring, κρήνη  
stake, μοχλός  
stand/stood, *see* ἕστην  
stand up! ἀνάστηθι  
start, I, ὀρμάομαι, ὀρ-  
μάω  
state of being at a loss, the,  
ἀπορίᾱ  
statue, εἰκών  
stay, I, μένω  
steady, βέβαιος  
steersman, κυβερνήτης  
step, I, βαίνω  
step out, I, ἐκβαίνω  
still, ἔτι  
stone, λίθος  
stone, of, λίθινος  
stood, I, ἕστην  
stood up, I, ἀνέστην  
stop! παῦε  
stop, I, παύω  
stop (doing), I, παύομαι  
stopped, I, ἕστην  
storm, χειμῶν  
story, λόγος, μῦθος  
straight, ὀρθός  
straightway, εὐθύς  
straits, στενά  
stranger, ξένος  
strike, I, βάλλω, κόπτω,  
τύπτω  
strong, ισχυρός  
struggle, ἀγών  
suffer, I, πάσχω  
sun, ἥλιος  
supply, I, παρέχω  
suppose, I, ἐλπίζω  
swift, ταχύς  
swiftly, ταχέως  
sword, ξίφος

## T

take, I, ἄγω, αἰρέω,  
κομίζω, λαμβάνω

take across, to, δια-  
βιβάσαι  
take down (sails), I,  
στελλω  
take hold of, I, λαμβάνο-  
μαι  
take in, I, εἰσάγω  
take out, I, ἐξαίρέω  
talk nonsense, I, φλυᾶρέω  
talk to, I, διαλέγομαι  
tell! εἰπέ  
tell, I, ἀγγέλλω, λέγω  
tell, to, εἰπεῖν  
tell (of), I, φράζω  
tell (someone to do some-  
thing), I, κελεύω  
temple, ἱερόν  
ten, δέκα  
tenth, δέκατος  
terrible, δεινός  
terrible things, δεινά  
terribly, δεινῶς  
terrifying, φοβερός  
than, ἢ  
that, ἐκεῖνος, ὅς, ὅς-  
περ, ὅτι, ὥς, ὥστε  
the, ὁ, ἡ, τό  
theater, θέατρον  
them: *see* αὐτός  
Themistocles, Θεμισ-  
τοκλῆς  
then, ἐνταῦθα (δή).  
ἔπειτα, οὖν, τότε  
there, ἐκεῖ, ἐνθάδε,  
ἐνταῦθα  
there, I am, πάρειμι  
thereafter, ἔπειτα  
Thermopylae, Θερμο-  
πύλαι  
Theseus, Θησεύς  
things: use neuter plural of  
adjective  
think it best, I, δοκεῖ μοι  
third, τρίτος  
this, pl., these, οὗτος  
this here, pl., these here,  
ὅδε  
thither, ἐκεῖσε, ἐνθάδε,  
ἐνταῦθα  
those, pl., of ἐκεῖνος

thread, λίνον  
three, τρεῖς  
three hundred, τρια-  
κόσιοι  
through, διὰ  
throw, I, βάλλω  
throw down, I,  
καταβάλλω  
throw out, I, ἐκβάλλω  
Thunderer, Βρόμιος  
thus, οὕτω(ς)  
time, χρόνος  
time, (right), καιρός  
tin, καττίτερος  
tired, I am, κάμνω  
to, εἰς, παρά, πρός  
to Athens, Ἀθήναζε  
to blame (adj.), αἵτιος  
to home, οἴκαδε  
to many parts, πολλα-  
χόσε  
to that place, ἐκεῖσε  
together, ἅμα  
toil, πόνος  
told, I/they, εἶπον  
tomorrow, αὔριον  
too, καί  
top (of), ἄκρος  
top of the mountain/hill,  
ἄκρον τὸ ὄρος  
toward, πρός  
tragedy, τραγῳδία  
transport, to, δια-  
βιβάσαι  
tree, δένδρον  
trireme, τριήρης  
Troy, Τροία  
true, ἀληθής  
trust, I, πιστεύω  
truth, ἀληθῆ  
truth, in, τῷ ὄντι  
try, I, πειράομαι, πει-  
ράω  
turn, I, τρέπω  
turn (myself), I, τρέπο-  
μαι  
two, δύο  
two hundred, διακόσιοι

## U

under, ὑπό

understand, I, ἐπίσ-  
ταμαι, μανθάνω  
unless, εἰ μή  
unmoved, ἀκίνητος  
until, ἕως  
up, ἀνά  
upon, ἐπί, πρός  
uproar, θόρυβος  
us, ἡμῶν, ἡμῖν, ἡμᾶς  
use, I, χράσμαι

## V

very, μάλα  
very big, μέγιστος  
very good, ἄριστος  
very great, πλείστος  
very many, pl. of πλείσ-  
τος  
very much, μάλιστα  
vex, I, λυπέω  
victim, sacrificial, ἱερεῖον  
victory, νίκη  
virtue, ἀρετή

## W

wage war, I, στρατεύω  
wagon, ἄμαξα  
wait (for), I, μένω  
wake X up, I, ἐγείρω  
walk, I, βαδίζω, βαίνω,  
πορεύομαι  
wall, τεῖχος  
wand, ῥάβδος  
want, I, βούλομαι  
war, πόλεμος  
ward off, I, ἀμύνω  
wares, ὄνια  
watch, I, θεάομαι, θεω-  
ρέω

water, ὕδωρ  
water jar, ὑδρία  
wave, κῦμα  
way, ὁδός  
way, in any, πως  
way, in this, ταύτη  
we, ἡμεῖς  
weep, I, δακρύω  
well, εὖ, καλῶς  
well, I am, καλῶς ἔχω  
well done! εὖ γε  
what? τί; τίς;  
when, ἐπεὶ, ὅτε, ὥς  
when? πότε;  
whence? πόθεν;  
where, ὅπου  
where? ποῦ;  
where?, from, πόθεν;  
where (in the world)? ποῦ  
γῆς;  
where to? ποῖ;  
whether, εἰ  
which, ὅς, ὅσπερ  
which? τί; τίς;  
while, ἐν ᾧ  
whither? ποῖ;  
who? τίς;  
who, whose, whom,  
which, that, ὅς, ὅσπερ  
whole, ἅπας, πᾶς  
why? τί;  
wife, γυνή  
wild, ἄγριος  
wild beast, θηρίον  
will go, I, εἴμι  
willing, I am, ἐθέλω  
win, I, νικάω  
wind, ἄνεμος  
wine, οἶνος

winter, χειμὼν  
wise, σοφός  
wish, I, βούλομαι,  
ἐθέλω  
with, μετά  
with difficulty, μόλις  
withdraw, I, ἀναχωρέω  
wolf, λύκος  
woman, γυνή  
wonder at, I, θαυμάζω  
word, λόγος  
work, ἔργον, πόνος  
work, I, ἐργάζομαι, πο-  
νέω  
worry, I, φροντίζω  
worse, κακίων  
worst, κάκιστος  
worthy (of), ἄξιος  
wretched, τλήμων  
write, I, γράφω

## X

Xanthias, Ξανθίας  
Xerxes, Ξέρξης

## Y

year, ἔτος  
yield, I, εἵκω  
you, pl., ὑμεῖς  
you, sing., σύ  
young man, νεανίας  
your, pl., ὑμέτερος  
your, sing., σός,  
yourself, of, σεαυτοῦ

## Z

Zeus, Ζεύς  
Zeus, O, ὦ Ζεῦ

# GENERAL INDEX

This index is selective. It does not include the names of the family members when they appear in the stories, but it does include them when they appear in essays. Numbers in boldface refer to illustrations or maps.

## A

Abraham, 93, 95, 105, 106, 200  
 Achaemenids, 219  
*Acharnians*, Aristophanes', 7  
 Achilles, 102, 103  
 Acropolis, 117, **117**, 123, 133, 134, 139, 140, **141**, 264, 265, **280**  
 Acaea, 149  
 Aegean Sea, 91, 110, 118, 119, 201, 220, 221, 268, 272  
 Aegeus, 73, 110, 111  
 Aegina, 201  
 Aeolia, 130  
 Aeolic dialect, 131, 280  
 Aeolus, 130, 131, 149  
 Aeschinus, 183  
 Aeschylus, 221  
     *Persae*, 255–256, 259  
 Aetna, Mount, 275  
 Afghanistan, 220  
 Africa, 249  
 Agamemnon, 95, 102, 103  
 agora, 29, **138**, 139  
 Akkad, 220  
 Al Mina, 201  
 Alcaeus, 202  
 Alexander the Great, 219  
 alphabet, 201  
 altar of the ten eponymous heroes of Athens, 139  
 altar of Zeus, 139  
 Amasis, 201  
 Amazon, **83**  
     Amazons, 82  
 Amphiaras, 183  
 Anacreon, 71  
*Anacreontea*, 71  
 animal sacrifice, 60  
 Antimenidas, 202

Aphrodite, 60, 81  
 Apollo, 60, 61, 151, 168, 219, 255  
     Apollo Patroos, temple of, 139  
     Apollo, sacrifice to, **168**  
 Archaic Greece, xi  
 Archilochus, 121, 173, 231, 241  
 archon, 118  
 Areopagus, 139, 264  
 Ares, 60  
 Argathonius, 210  
 Ariadne, 73, 85, 86, **91**, 91, **92**, 110  
 Aristagoras, 220, 239  
 aristocracy, 201  
 Aristophanes, x, 7, 16  
     *Acharnians*, 7  
 Aristotle, 15, 16  
 army, the Persian, 260  
 Artemis, 60  
 Artemisium, 244  
 Asclepius, 188  
 Asia Minor, 117, 119, 219, 261, 272, 278, 279  
 Asopus River, 247  
 Assembly, Athenian, 29, 43, 118, 139  
 Assyria, 218  
 Assyrian Empire, 218  
 Athena, 60, 81, 81, 140, 162  
     Nike, temple of, **280**  
     Parthenos, 134  
     Parthenos, statue of, inside the Parthenon, **132**, 134, 140  
     Promachos, statue of, 134, 139, 140, **141**  
 Athenian(s), 3, 6–7, 16, 29, 35, 37, 43, 44, 46, 51, 73, 84, 113, 118, 119, 120,

162, 163, 202, 220, 221, 224, 239, 240, **250**, 251, 255, 261, 264, 265, 267, 271, 272, 273, 275, 280, 281  
     Assembly, 29, 43, 118, 139  
     democracy, ix, 7, 29  
     Empire, 119, 120, 271–273, **272**  
     navy, 202  
     tribute list, **273**  
 Athens, ix, 3, 6, 7, 15, 16, 28, 29, 35, 59, 70, 73, 74, 82, 85, 91, 110, 111, **117**, 117–120, **120**, 123, **132**, **138**, 139–140, 162, 202, 206, 213, 220, 224, 230, 238–240, 271–273, 278  
     city of, 139–140  
     rise of, 238–240  
     history of, 117–120  
 athletic competitions, 163  
 Athos, Mount, 221, 240  
 Atlas, 131  
 Atossa, 255  
 Attic dialect, 131  
 Attica, 6, 28, 82, 117, 118, 119, 221, 239, 240, 243, 244, 251  
 Augustus Caesar, 257

## B

Babylon, 202, 218, 219, 220  
 Babylonians, 218  
 Bacchylides, x  
 Bardiya, 220  
 Bay of Cadiz, 201  
 Bay of Naples, 201  
 Beatitudes, the, 185  
 Bethlehem, 257, 281  
 Bias of Priene, 70, 211  
 Birth of Jesus, 257, 281

- Black Sea, 82, 117, 201,  
     271, 272  
 bloodletting, 184  
 Boeotia, 202, 244  
 Boeotians, 239  
 Bouleuterion, 139  
 Britain, 201  
 Brittany, 201  
 Bromios (title of Diony-  
     sus), 143  
 Bronze Age, the, 103, 117,  
     200  
 bull-jumping, 82  
 Byzantium, 271
- C**  
 Cadiz, Bay of, 201  
 Caesar Augustus, 257  
 Callimachus, 23, 53  
 Calypso, 103  
 Cambyses, 220  
 Cantharus, 206  
 Carchemish, 218  
 Caria, 15  
 Carthaginians, 201  
 cavalry, 201  
 cella, 140  
 Chaerestrates, 44  
 Chalcidians, 239  
 Chalcis, 201  
 Charybdis, 171  
 Chilon of Sparta, 61, 70  
 Chios, 272  
 Cholorgus (deme), 28  
 Cholleidae, ix, 6, 28, 187  
 Christ, 257  
 Chryse (place name in *Il-  
     iad*), 61  
 Chryses (character in *Il-  
     iad*), 60, 61  
 Cilla (place name in *Iliad*),  
     61  
 Cimon, 119, 271, 275  
 Circe, 149, 150, 151, 153  
 classes of citizens, 118  
 Cleisthenes, 118, 239  
 Cleobulus of Lindos, 16, 70  
 Cleomenes, 220, 239  
 Colaëus of Samos, 201, 210  
 Colchis, 15
- colonies, 201  
 Comedy, New, 35, 93  
 constitutional reforms, 118  
 Corfu, 120  
 Corinth, ix, 120, 201, 202,  
     233, 239  
     Isthmus of, 240  
 Corinthian ware, 239  
 Corinthians, 239  
 Council of 500, 29  
 Councilors, 29  
 Cratylus, Plato's, 11  
 creation myths, 81  
 Crete, 73, 74, 82, 91, 110  
 Croesus, x, 219  
 Cyclops, ix, 82, 105, 106,  
     130  
 Cylon, 238  
 Cyprus, 271, 275  
 Cyrus, 219, 220
- D**  
 Danube, 220  
 Darius, 118, 119, 220, 221,  
     221  
 Dark Age, the, 117, 200  
 Date Chart, xx  
 David, 257  
 Delian League, 119, 271,  
     272, 273  
 Delos, 119, 271, 272  
 Delphi, 151, 219  
*demarch*, 28  
 deme, 28–29  
 Demeter, 19, 59, 60  
 Democedes, 183, 192  
 democracy, 118, 118, 162,  
     239, 239, 273  
     Athenian, ix, 7, 29  
     radical, 120  
 Dicaeopolis, ix, x, 6, 7, 16,  
     28, 59, 120, 139, 202  
 Dionysia, Greater, 163  
     Rural, 29  
 Dionysus, 60, 92, 143, 156,  
     163  
     festival of, 37, 59, 255  
     precinct of, 140, 143  
     priest of, 143  
     sanctuary of, 134, 135
- statue of, 143  
     temple of, 140  
     theater of, 140, 144  
 doctor, 183  
 Dorian invasions, 117  
 Doric columns, 140
- E**  
 Earth Mother, 60  
 economic reforms, 118  
 Egypt, 201, 201, 202, 202,  
     210, 218, 220, 220, 221,  
     268, 272  
 Egyptians, 218  
 Eion, 278  
*Electra*, 44  
 emigrations, 201  
 Empire, Assyrian, 218  
     Athenian, 119, 120, 271–  
     273, 272  
     Lydian, 218  
     Persian, 119, 219  
 Enyalios, 121  
 Ephesus, 220  
 Ephialtes, 243, 247  
 Epidaurus, 188, 205  
*Epidemics*, 184  
 Epimetheus, 81  
 eponymous heroes of  
     Athens, altar of the ten,  
     139  
 Ercheia (deme), 29  
 Erechtheum, 140  
 Erechtheus, 140  
 Eretria, 201, 221  
 Etruria, 201  
 Euboea, 185, 201, 202, 221,  
     233  
 Euripides, 44  
 Europe, 220, 228, 229, 240  
 Eurotas River, 185  
 Eurylochus, 149, 150  
 Eurymedon River, 268,  
     271
- F**  
 farmers, Athenian, 6–7  
 Fates, the three, xix  
 festival of Dionysus, 37,  
     59, 255

festivals, religious, 44,  
162–163  
folk tale, 83  
France, 117  
frieze of the Parthenon,  
162, 162, 140, 140  
funeral oration, Pericles',  
29, 43, 162

## G

Galilee, 257  
gods, 59–61  
Golden Age, 82  
Goliath, 202  
Good Samaritan, the, 241,  
249  
gospels, xi  
Graces, the three, xix  
Greater Dionysia, 163  
Greater Greece, 201  
Greece, Archaic, xi  
renaissance of, 117  
Greece and the Aegean  
Sea, **xxi**  
Greek medicine, 183–184  
mercenaries, 201  
religion, 60  
science, 183–184  
Greeks, Ionian, 218, 220  
Gulf, Persian, 220  
Gyges, 218

## H

Halys River, 218, 219  
healing, 183  
Hector, 103  
Helios, 172  
Hellas, 220, 228, 229,  
240, 278  
Hellas, district of  
Athenian Empire, 273  
Hephaestion, 131  
Hephaestus, 60, 81  
temple of, 139  
Hera, 60  
Heracles, 82  
Heracitus, 11, 69  
Hercules, Pillars of, 210  
Hermes, 60, 81  
Herodotus, ix, x, 183, 192,

201, 239, 264, 278  
Hesiod, 60, 81, 82, 113, 123,  
202, 203  
*Works and Days*, 60,  
81, 113, 123, 203  
*hippeis*, 7  
Hippias, 118, 239  
Hippocrates, 184  
Hippocratic oath, 184  
Hippolytus, 82  
Hipponax, 93  
history of Athens, 117–120  
Holy Ghost, the, 23  
holy silence, 162  
Homer, x, 60, 82, 83, 102–  
103, 103  
*Iliad*, 61, 102, 103, 117  
*Odyssey*, ix, 82, 102,  
103

Hope, 82  
hoplites, 29, 201  
House of the Double Axe,  
82  
*hubris*, 255, 260  
Hydarnes, 247, 248, 278

## I

Ictinus, 140  
*Iliad*, Homer's, 60, 102,  
103, 117  
Illyria, 15  
"Immortals," the, 234, 243  
India, 220  
Indus River, 220  
Ionia, 103, 118, 183, 218,  
267, 268, 271  
Ionian Greeks, 218, 220  
philosophers, 183  
revolt, 239  
settlements, 117  
Ionians, 118, 220, 221, 267,  
271  
Iran, 218, 219  
Isaiah, 219  
Ischia, 201  
Ismaric wine, 173  
Isthmus of Corinth, 240  
Italy, 201  
Ithaca, 82, 103

## J

Jericho, 249  
Jerusalem, 202, 218, 319,  
249  
Jesus, 23, 35, 53, 71, 93,  
121, 173, 185, 203, 231,  
241, 249  
birth of, 257, 281  
Jews, 202, 218, 219, 220  
John, xi  
Joseph, 71, 257, 281  
Judaea, 257  
Judah, the tribes of, 218

## K

King of Persia, 118  
knights on the Parthenon  
frieze, 162, 162  
Knossos, 73, 82

## L

labyrinth, 82, 84  
*labyrinthos*, 82  
Lacedaemonians, 233, 244  
Laurium, silver mines at,  
202, 239  
law courts, 139  
League, Delian, 119, 271,  
272, 273  
Peloponnesian, ix, 119,  
239, 273  
Leonidas, 233, 243  
Lesbos, 202, 272  
Levant, 220  
Levi, 173  
Levite, 249  
libations, 60  
Long Walls, 139  
Lost Sheep, Parable of the,  
203  
Luke, xi, 11  
Lydia, 218, 218, 219, x  
Lydian Empire, 218  
Lydians, 218

## M

Macedonia, 220, 240  
Maiden, The, 134  
Marathon, 118, 221, 239,  
255

- Mardonius, 119, 278  
 marriage, 44, 93  
 Marseilles (= Massilia), 201  
 Mary, 257, 281  
 Massilia (= Marseilles), 201  
 Medes, 218, 219, 221  
 Media, 218  
 medicine, 184  
 medicine, Greek, 183–184  
*medimnos*, 7  
 Mediterranean, 202  
 Megara, 163, 185  
 Memphis, 268  
 Menander, 35, 173  
     *Twice a Swindler*, 35  
 mercenaries, Greek, 201  
 merchant ship, 202  
 Mesopotamia, 201, 218, 218  
 metics, 15, 143  
 metopes of the Parthenon, 140  
 Metroon, 139  
 Miletus, 183, 201, 220, 220  
     Thales of, 70, 111, 183, 218  
 Miltiades, 221  
 Minos, 73, 82, 84  
 Minotaur, 73, 74, 80, 82, 84, 85, 110, ix  
 Mnesicles, 140  
 monarchy, 118, 201  
 Mount Aetna, 275  
 Mount Athos, 220, 240  
 Mount Olympus (home of the gods), 60, 81  
 Mount Parnes, 28  
 Mount Pentelicon, 28  
 Munychia, 206  
 Muses, the nine, xix  
 Mycale, 119, 267, 271  
 Mycenae, 117  
 myth, 81–83  
     creation, 81  
  
 N  
 Naucratis, 201  
 navy, Athenian, 202  
  
 Naxos, 91, 110, 271  
 Nazareth, 71, 257  
 Nebuchadnezzar, 202, 218  
*Nemesis*, 255  
 New Comedy, 35, 93  
 New Testament, xi  
 Nicoteles, 53  
 Nike, 134  
     statue of, 132  
     temple of Athena Nike, 139, 280  
 Nile River, 201, 268  
 Nineveh, 218  
 nymphs, 60  
  
 O  
 Ocean, 210  
 Odysseus, ix, 82, 95, 96, 103, 104, 105, 106, 130, 149, 151, 153, 171, 172, 275  
*Odyssey*, Homer's, ix, 82, 102, 103  
 Oedipus, 111  
     *Oedipus at Colonos*, Sophocles', 111  
*Oikonomikos*, Xenophon's, 43–44  
*oikos*, 43, 44  
 olive tree, sacred, 140  
 Olympian gods, the, xix, 231, 60, 162  
 Olympus, Mount, home of the gods, 60, 81  
 oral poetry, 103  
 Orontes River, 201  
  
 P  
 Palestine, 184  
 Pallas (Athena), 255  
 Pan, 60  
 Panathenaea, 163  
 Panathenaic procession, 140, 162  
     Way, 139  
 Pandora, 81, 81, 82  
 Parable of the Lost Sheep, 203  
 Parnes, Mount, 28  
  
 Parthenon, 123, 139, 139, 140, 140, 141  
 Parthenon frieze, knights on, 162, 162  
     frieze of the, 140, 140, 162, 162  
     metopes of the, 140  
 Patroclus, 102  
 Pausanias, 271  
 Peloponnesian invasion, 6–7  
     League, 119, 239, 273, ix  
     War, ix, x  
     war, first, 119  
 Peloponnesus, ix, 119, 244, 251  
 Penelope, 103  
*pentacosimeditimnoi*, 7  
 penteconters, 240  
 Pentelicon, Mount, 28  
 Periander of Corinth, 70, 127  
 Pericles, ix, 28, 29, 43, 120, 120, 138, 140, 162, 273  
     funeral oration, 29, 43, 162  
 peristyle, 140  
*Persae*, Aeschylus's, 255–256, 259  
 Persia, 119, 218, 219, 219, 220, 239, 239, 271, 272  
     rise of, 218–221  
 Persian army, 260  
     Empire, 119, 219  
     Gulf, 220  
     soldiers, 119  
     Wars, ix, 118, 230, 280  
 Persians, 118, 119, 140, 192, 218, 219, 220, 233, 240, 243, 247, 248, 255, 260, 261, 264, 268, 275, 278, 279, 281  
*Persians, The*, Aeschylus's, 255–256, 259  
 Phaeacia, 103  
     Phaeacians, 103  
 Pharisees, 121, 173, 203  
 Pheidias, 134, 140

- Philip (in epigram of Cal-  
limachus), 53  
philosophers, Ionian, 183  
Phocaea, 201  
    Phocaeans, 201  
Phoebus (= Apollo), 151  
Phoenicia, 201  
Phoenician script, 201  
Phoenicians, 256  
Phormio, x  
Phraortes, 218  
Pillars of Hercules, 210  
Piraeus, the, 6, 44, **138**,  
    139, 188, 202, **206**, 239  
pirate ship, **202**  
Pisistratus, 118, 239  
Pittacus of Mitylene, 45, 70  
Plataea, 119, 139, 221, 271,  
    281  
Plato, ix  
    *Cratylus*, 11  
Pleiades, 131  
Pleione, 131  
Pnyx, 139  
polis, 28–29, 201  
Polycrates, 192  
Polypaides, 249  
polytheists, 60  
porticoes, 140  
Poseidon, 60, 140, 223  
precinct of Dionysus, 140,  
    143  
Priam, 103  
priest, 162  
    of Dionysus, 143  
procession, 23, 135, 142,  
    143  
Prometheus, 81  
Propylaea, 134, 140, 141  
Psammetichus I, 201, 218  
    II, 201  
Pseudo-Xenophon, 16  
Pteria, 219  
Punjab, the, 220  
Pylos, 117  
pyramids, 268  
Pythion, 184
- Q**  
Quirinius, 257
- R**  
reforms of Solon, 118  
religion, Greek, 60  
religious festivals, 44, 162–  
    163  
renaissance of Greece, 117  
revolt, Ionian, 239  
revolution, 118  
rise of Athens, 238–240  
ritual, 163  
Rural Dionysia, 29  
Russia, 202, 218, 220
- S**  
sabbath, 93  
sacred olive tree, 140  
sacred serpent, 140  
sacrifice to Apollo, **168**  
sacrifice, 162  
    animal, 60  
sacrificial procession, **23**  
Saioi, 241  
Salamis, 119, 223, 239, 239,  
    244, 251, 255, 278  
    battle of, 139  
Samaritan, 249  
Samians, 210, 271  
Samos, 210, 267, 272  
sanctuary of Dionysus,  
    134, 135  
Sappho, 131, 202, 280  
Sardis, 219, 220, 239  
Satan, 93  
satyr play, 163  
sausage-seller, 133  
science, Greek, 183–184  
scolion, 203  
scribes, 121, 173, 203  
Scylla, 171  
Scythia, 15, 202, 275  
    Scythians, 220  
Semonides, 44–45  
Sermon on the Mount, 151,  
    163, 185, 193  
serpent, sacred, 140  
settlements, Ionian, 117  
seven wise men, the, xi, 70
- Sheep, Parable of the Lost,  
    203  
Sicily, 171, 185, 201, 202,  
    202, 275  
silence, holy, 162  
silver mines at Laurium,  
    202, 239  
Simonides, 151, 261, 281  
sinners, 203  
Sirens, 171  
slavery, 15–16  
slaves, 15–16, 17  
Smintheus (epithet of  
    Apollo), 61  
soldiers, Persian, **119**  
Solon of Athens, ix, 70, 118,  
    230, 239  
    reforms of, 118  
Sophocles, 111  
Sophocles' *Oedipus at*  
    *Colonus*, 111  
Spain, 201  
Sparta, ix, 119, 120, 151,  
    185, 220, 221, 238, 239,  
    271, 273  
Spartans (Spartiatæ), 243  
Sphinx, 268  
statue of Athena  
    Parthenos inside the  
    Parthenon, **132**, 134, 140  
    of Athena Promachos,  
        134, 139, 140, **141**  
    of Dionysus, 143  
    of Athena Nike, **132**  
stoas, 139  
Straits of Gibraltar, 201  
Strategeion, 139  
Sumer, 220  
surgery, 184  
Susa, 192, 255  
Syracuse, 201  
Syria, 15, 201, 218, 218,  
    257
- T**  
Tartessus, 201, 210  
tax collectors, 173, 203  
Telemachus, 103  
temple of Apollo Patroos,  
    139



- of Athena Nike, 139,  
     **280**  
 of Dionysus, 140  
 of Hephaestus, 139  
 of the Jews in  
     Jerusalem, 220  
 temples, 60  
 Tenedus (place name in *Il-*  
     *iad*), 61  
 Thales of Miletus, 70, 111,  
     183, 218  
 Thasos, 184  
 theater of Dionysus, 140,  
     **144**  
 Themistocles, 119, 139,  
     239, 251, 261  
 Theognis, 163, 185, 249  
 Thermopylae, 119, 233,  
     240, 243, 244, 247  
 Theseus, ix, 73, 74, **80**, 82,  
     84, 85, 86, **91**, 91, 110,  
     111, 117  
 Thessaly, 240, 278  
*thetes*, 7  
 Thirty Years' Peace, 119,  
     120  
 Tholos, 139  
 Thrace, 15, 220, 220  
     Thracians, 241  
 Thucydides, ix, x, 6, 29, 82  
 Thunderer (title of Diony-  
     sus), 143  
 trade, 200–203  
 tragedies, 163  
 travel, 200–203  
 tribes of Judah, the, 218  
 tribute list, Athenian, **273**  
 tribute, annual, 272  
 triremes, 240  
 Trojan War, 82, 102, 117  
 Trojans, 103  
 Troy, 82, 95, 102, 103, 105  
*Twice a Swindler*,  
     Menander's, 35  
 tyranny, 118, 238  
**W**  
 War, Peloponnesian, ix, x  
     first Peloponnesian, 119  
     Trojan, 82, 102, 117  
 Wars, Persian, ix, 118, **230**,  
     280  
 Widow's Mite, the, 231  
 wise men, the seven, xi, 70  
 women, 43–45  
*Works and Days*, Hesiod's,  
     60, 81, 113, 123, 203  
**X**  
 Xanthias, 16  
 Xanthippus, 28  
 Xenophon, 43  
     *Oikonomikos*, 43–44  
 Xerxes, 119, 221, **221**, 228,  
     229, 233, 239, 240, 243,  
     251, 255, 260, 265, 271,  
     278, 279, 281  
**Z**  
 Zea, **206**  
 Zephyr, 130  
*zeugitai*, 7  
 Zeus, 3, 25, **59**, 60, 123, 134,  
     166, 172, 175, 195  
     father of the  
         Olympians, 231  
     the Cloud-Gatherer,  
         81, 82  
     the Father, 60

# LIST OF MAPS

---

## Page

- xxi Greece and the Aegean Sea. From H. D. Amos and A. G. P. Lang, *These Were the Greeks*, © 1979 by Nelson Thornes, Cheltenham, United Kingdom, page 5.
- 28 Attica and surroundings. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 25.
- 132 αἱ Ἀθῆναι. From Chester G. Starr, *A History of the Ancient World*, Oxford University Press, 1965, page 332.
- 138 The Piraeus and Athens in the time of Pericles. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 27.
- 219 The Persian Empire. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 21.
- 230 The Persian Wars. From Michael Grant and Arthur Banks, *Ancient History Atlas*, © 1971 by Weidenfeld & Nicolson, London, 1971, page 22.
- 258 ἡ ἐν τῇ Σαλαμῖνι μάχη. From J. S. Morrison, J. F. Coates, and N. B. Rankov, *The Athenian Trireme: The History and Reconstruction of an Ancient Greek Warship*, Cambridge, 2nd edition, 2000, page 57.
- 272 The Athenian Empire. From *The Oxford History of the Classical World*, ed. by J. Boardman, J. Griffin, and O. Murray, © 1985 by Oxford University Press, page 134.

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

---

The material on writing Greek letters on pages xvi–xviii is taken from Eugene Van Ness Goetchius's *The Language of the New Testament*, originally published in 1965 by Charles Scribner's Sons, New York, and now available from Pearson Education, Inc., Upper Saddle River, NJ.

The Greek words and the names of the Muses, Graces, and Fates on pages xviii–xix are taken from Jane Gray Carter's *Little Studies in Greek*, published by Silver, Burdett and Company, New York, 1927, pages 63–70 and 101–102.

Most of the passages in the Classical Greek readings and some of the quotations from Greek authors in the stories are taken from Loeb Classical Library editions (Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press) with permission of the publishers and the Trustees of the Loeb Classical Library.

The selections from the Gospel of Luke are taken from *The Greek New Testament*, Fourth Revised Edition, edited by Barbara Aland, Kurt Aland, Johannes Karavidopoulos, Carlo M. Martini, and Bruce M. Metzger, © 1993 Deutsche Bibelgesellschaft, Stuttgart (available in the U.S.A. from the American Bible Society, 1865 Broadway, New York, NY 10023).

The passages from Aeschylus's *Persians* on pages 255–256 are taken from Anthony J. Podlecki, *The Persians by Aeschylus*, Upper Saddle River, NJ: Prentice Hall, 1970.

# LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

---

## Page

- xi Myrrhine, Melissa, and Argus. (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 2 The Moschophoros. Athens, Acropolis Museum. (Photo: Alison Frantz).
- 7 Detail of an Attic black figure cup. Berlin, Antikenmuseum, Staatliche Museen F 1806. (Photo: Museum).
- 8 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 11 Farmer. From *Aristophanic Comedy* by K. J. Dover, © 1972 by B. T. Batsford, Ltd. (Photo: D. A. Harrisiades).
- 12 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 16 Detail of an Attic red figure stamnos. Cambridge, England, Fitzwilliam Museum GR.9-1917. (Photo: Museum).
- 17 Clay plaque. Berlin, Staatliche Museen. (After *Antike Denkmäler I*, pl. 8.7).
- 17 Detail of an Attic red figure column crater. Ht. 17 3/4 in. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 07.286.74, Rogers Fund 1907. (Photo: Museum).
- 18 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 23 Detail of an Attic red figure lekythos. Ht. 31 cm (12 3/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 13.195, Francis Bartlett Donation. (Photo: Museum).
- 24 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 30 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 35 Detail of an Attic red figure drinking cup. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 38.11.2, Fletcher Fund, 1938. (Photo: Museum).
- 36 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 43 Interior of an Attic red figure cylix. Ht. 6 1/8 in; di. 14 3/8 in. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 06.1021.167, Rogers Fund, 1906.
- 45 Attic black figure hydria. Ht. 53 cm (20 7/8 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 61.195, William Francis Warden Fund. (Photo: Museum).
- 46 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 51 Detail of an Attic black figure lekythos. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 31.11.10, Fletcher Fund, 1931. (Photo: Museum).
- 52 Ceramic knucklebone. Vase E804. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 54 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 59 Bronze statue of Zeus. Athens, National Archaeological Museum 15161. (Photo: Museum).
- 61 Attic kylix, white ground interior. Ht. 6.2 cm. (2 1/2 in.); W. 21.7 cm. (8 1/2 in.). All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 1979.11.15, Fletcher and Rogers Funds, 1979. (Photo: Museum).
- 62 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 72 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 80 Attic red figure cylix. Di. 20.4 cm. (8 1/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 68.291, Helen and Alice Colburn Fund. (Photo: Museum).
- 81 Detail of an Attic red figure calyx-crater. Vase E467. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 83 Apulian situla. Ht. 30.5 cm. (12 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 1991.242, Gift of Dr. and Mrs. Jerome M. Eisenberg. (Photo: Museum).

- 84 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 91 Detail of an early Apulian red figure stamnos. Ht. 30 cm (11 13/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 00.349a, Henry Lillie Pierce Fund. (Photo: Museum).
- 92 Detail of a Faliscan red figure calyx-krater. Ht. 49.1 cm. (19 5/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 1970.487, John H. and Ernestine A. Payne Fund. (Photo: Museum).
- 94 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 102 Bust of Homer. Sculpture 1825. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 104 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 112 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 117 The Acropolis of Athens. (Photo: Alison Frantz).
- 119 Relief with Persian guards. Courtesy of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago P-848b/P. 58360/N. 38245. (Photo: Museum).
- 120 Bust of Pericles. Sculpture 549. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 120 Reconstruction of house. From Peter Connolly and Hazel Dodge, *The Ancient City: Life in Classical Athens & Rome*, Oxford University Press, 1998, page 49.
- 121 Floor plan of house. From Peter Connolly and Hazel Dodge, *The Ancient City: Life in Classical Athens & Rome*, Oxford University Press, 1998, page 48.
- 122 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 132 Model of Athena Parthenos. With permission of the Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, Canada 962.228.16. © ROM. (Photo: Museum).
- 138 Model of the Agora. Athens, American School of Classical Studies at Athens. (Photo: American School).
- 140 Relief of frieze from the Parthenon. Paris, Musée du Louvre. (Photo: Alison Frantz).
- 141 Model of the Athenian Acropolis. With permission of the Royal Ontario Museum, Toronto, Canada 956.118. © ROM. (Photo: Museum).
- 141 Parthenon. (Photo: Alison Frantz).
- 142 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 144 Theater of Dionysus. (Photo: Alison Frantz).
- 151 Detail of Attic red figure calyx krater. All rights reserved, New York, The Metropolitan Museum of Art 41.83, gift of Amelia E. White, 1941. (Photo: Museum).
- 153 Boeotian skyphos. Oxford, Ashmolean Museum
- 156 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 162 Relief of frieze from the Parthenon. West Frieze 1.2–3. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 164 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 168 Detail of Attic red figure bell krater. Frankfurt, Archäologisches Museum. (Photo: Museum).
- 174 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 183 Relief. Deutsches Archäologisches Institut Athen NM 3312. (Photo: Wagner).
- 186 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 194 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 202 Detail of an Attic black figure cup. Vase B8436. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).
- 204 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).
- 206 Piraeus. Loyola University Chicago Archives. (Photo: Raymond V. Schoder, S.J.).

- 
- 211 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
212 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
221 Relief. Courtesy of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago. (Photo: Persepolis Expedition of the Oriental Institute of the University of Chicago).  
222 Site of the battle of Salamis. Loyola University Chicago Archives. (Photo: Raymond V. Schoder, S.J.).  
232 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
240 Detail of Attic black (and red) figure cup. Vase E2. Reproduced by courtesy of the Trustees of the British Museum, London. (Photo: Museum).  
242 Lion of Chaeronea. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
250 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
266 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
273 Relief. Athens, National Archaeological Museum. From *The Oxford History of the Classical World*, ed. by J. Boardman, J. Griffin, and O. Murray, © 1985 by Oxford University Press, page 137 (after J. Kirchner, *Imagines Inscriptionum Atticarum*, 1935, pl. 15).  
274 (Drawing: Catherine Balme).  
280 Temple of Athena Nike. (Photo: Alison Frantz).  
286 Attic red figure oinochoe. Ht. 19.3 cm. (7 5/8 in.); with handle 24 cm. (9 7/16 in.). © 2002 Museum of Fine Arts, Boston 13.196, Francis Bartlett Donation. (Photo: Museum).



## PRaise for *ATHENAZE*

"The finest textbook for teaching ancient Greek currently available. Its reading-based approach combined with a strong grammar component and its incorporation of cultural material are the text's primary strengths. The grammar is presented in a systematic but not overwhelming manner."

—Douglas Domingo-Forasté, *California State University, Long Beach*

"Part of the genius of *Athenaze* may be its ability to be as successful at the secondary level as it is with undergraduates."

—F. Carter Philips, *Vanderbilt University*

Combining the best features of traditional and modern methods, *Athenaze: An Introduction to Ancient Greek, 2/e*, provides a unique course of instruction that allows students to read connected Greek narrative right from the beginning and guides them to the point where they can begin reading complete classical texts. Carefully designed to hold students' interest, the course begins in Book I with a fictional narrative about an Attic farmer's family placed in a precise historical context (432–431 B.C.). This narrative, interwoven with tales from mythology and the Persian Wars, gradually gives way in Book II to adapted passages from Thucydides, Plato, and Herodotus and ultimately to excerpts of the original Greek of Bacchylides, Thucydides, and Aristophanes' *Acharnians*. Essays on relevant aspects of ancient Greek culture and history are also provided.

## NEW TO THE SECOND EDITION

- **Short passages from Classical and New Testament Greek** in virtually every chapter
- **The opening lines of the *Iliad* and the *Odyssey*** toward the end of Book II
- **New vocabulary and more complete explanations of grammar**, including material on accents
- **Many new exercises** and additional opportunities for students to practice completing charts of verb forms and paradigms of nouns and adjectives
- **Updated Teacher's Handbooks for Books I and II** containing translations of all stories, readings, and exercises; detailed suggestions for classroom presentation; abundant English derivatives; and additional linguistic information
- Offered for the first time, **Student Workbooks for Books I and II** that include self-correcting exercises, cumulative vocabulary lists, periodic grammatical reviews, and additional readings

## ABOUT THE AUTHORS

**Maurice Balme** is retired Head of Classics, Harrow School, UK. He is the author or coauthor of numerous books, including the *Oxford Latin Course, 2/e* (OUP, 1996).

**Gilbert Lawall** is Professor of Classics Emeritus, University of Massachusetts at Amherst. He has authored, coauthored, and edited many Latin and Greek textbooks for schools and colleges, including *Ecce Romani* (1995).

COVER DESIGN: MARY BELIBASAKIS  
COVER ART: ELIOT PORTER, *TEMPLE OF NIKE, ACROPOLIS, ATHENS, GREECE, MARCH 6, 1970*, DYE TRANSFER PRINT,  
P1990.51.2597.1 © 1990, AMON CARTER MUSEUM, FORT WORTH, TEXAS, BEQUEST OF THE ARTIST.

**OXFORD**

UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com

